



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

## **Numbers**

**Version 27**

# Copyrights & Licensing

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Date:** 2020-03-25

**Version:** 27

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text**

**Date:** 2020-03-25

**Version:** 10

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text**

**Date:** 2020-03-25

**Version:** 10

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Date:** 2020-03-25

**Version:** 12

**Published by:** unfoldingWord®

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Date:** 2020-03-25

**Version:** 14

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament**

**Date:** 2020-02-20

**Version:** 0.12

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible**

**Date:** 2020-02-20

**Version:** 2.1.11

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

*unfoldingWord® Translation Notes*

*Copyright © 2019 by unfoldingWord*

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from [unfoldingword.org/utn](http://unfoldingword.org/utn)". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at [unfoldingword.org/contact/](http://unfoldingword.org/contact/).

# Table of Contents

<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Notes</b>	<b>11</b>
Numbers	11
Introduction to Numbers	12
Numbers 1	14
Numbers 2	69
Numbers 3	104
Numbers 4	156
Numbers 5	206
Numbers 6	238
Numbers 7	266
Numbers 8	356
Numbers 9	383
Numbers 10	407
Numbers 11	445
Numbers 12	481
Numbers 13	498
Numbers 14	532
Numbers 15	578
Numbers 16	620
Numbers 17	671
Numbers 18	685
Numbers 19	718
Numbers 20	741
Numbers 21	771
Numbers 22	807
Numbers 23	850
Numbers 24	881
Numbers 25	907
Numbers 26	926
Numbers 27	992
Numbers 28	1016
Numbers 29	1048
Numbers 30	1090
Numbers 31	1107
Numbers 32	1162
Numbers 33	1205
Numbers 34	1262
Numbers 35	1292
Numbers 36	1327
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Academy</b>	<b>1341</b>
Abstract Nouns	1342
Active or Passive	1344
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	1347



Background Information	1350
Biblical Distance	1353
Biblical Money	1356
Biblical Volume	1358
Biblical Weight	1362
Copy or Borrow Words	1364
Direct and Indirect Quotations	1366
Double Negatives	1368
Doublet	1370
Ellipsis	1372
Euphemism	1374
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'	1376
First, Second or Third Person	1378
Forms of You	1380
Fractions	1381
Go and Come	1384
Hebrew Months	1386
How to Translate Names	1389
Hyperbole	1393
Hypothetical Situations	1397
Idiom	1400
Litotes	1402
Merism	1404
Metaphor	1406
Metonymy	1412
Numbers	1414
Ordinal Numbers	1417
Parallelism	1419
Personification	1422
Possession	1424
Predictive Past	1427
Pronouns	1429
Quotes within Quotes	1431
Rhetorical Question	1434
Simile	1437
Symbolic Action	1440
Symbolic Language	1442
Synecdoche	1444
Translate Unknowns	1446
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Words</b>	<b>1449</b>
Aaron	1450
adversary, enemy	1451
advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels	1452
afflict, affliction, distress	1453
alarm, alarmed	1454
Almighty	1455

altar	1456
amen, truly	1457
Amorite	1458
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather	1459
anoint, anointed, anointing	1461
appoint, appointed	1462
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting	1463
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire	1464
atonement, atone, atoned	1465
avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance	1466
Balaam	1467
barley	1468
Bashan	1469
beast	1470
Benjamin, Benjamite	1471
bind, bond, bound	1472
bless, blessed, blessing	1473
blood	1475
bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee	1476
bread	1477
bronze	1478
brother	1479
burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances	1480
burnt offering, offering by fire	1481
bury, buried, burial	1482
call, call out	1483
Canaan, Canaanite	1485
captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured	1486
cedar, cedarwood	1487
census	1488
chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect	1489
clan	1490
clean, wash	1491
column, pillar	1493
command, commandment	1494
confess, confession	1495
confirm, confirmation, legal	1496
consecrate, consecrated, consecration	1497
consume, devour	1498
covenant	1499
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love	1501
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox	1502
curse, cursed, cursing	1503
cut off	1504
declare, proclaim, announce	1505
dedicate, dedication, established, devoted	1506

delight	1507
deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, ...	1508
descend, descendant	1509
desert, wilderness	1510
destroy, destruction, annihilate	1511
devour	1512
die, dead, deadly, death,	1513
dominion	1515
donkey, mule	1516
drink offering	1517
earth, earthen, earthly	1518
Egypt, Egyptian	1519
elder, older, old	1520
Ephraim, Ephraimite	1521
evil, wicked, unpleasant	1522
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins	1524
exalt, exalted, exaltation	1525
face, facial	1526
faith	1527
faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy	1528
family, household	1530
favor, favorable, favoritism	1531
fear, afraid, dread	1532
feast, feasting	1533
fig	1534
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot	1535
firstborn	1536
firstfruits	1537
flesh	1538
flock, herd	1539
forsake, forsaken, leave	1540
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful	1541
Gad	1543
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway	1544
generation	1545
Gilead, Gileadite	1546
gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt ...	1547
glean, gleanings	1548
glory, glorious, glorify	1549
God	1551
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry	1553
gold, golden	1555
good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best	1556
grace, gracious	1558
grain offering	1559
grain, grainfields	1560

grape, grapevine	1561
hand	1562
head	1564
heart	1565
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred	1566
honey, honeycomb	1568
house	1569
humble, humbled, humility	1570
inherit, inheritance, heir	1571
iniquity	1573
innocent	1574
Israel, Israelite, Jacob	1575
Israel, Israelites	1576
jealous, jealousy	1578
Jebus, Jebusite	1579
Jericho	1580
Jordan River, Jordan	1581
Joseph (OT)	1582
Joshua	1583
joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing	1584
Judah	1586
Judea	1587
judge, judgment	1588
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification	1590
king, kingdom, kingship	1592
kingdom	1593
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish	1595
lamb, Lamb of God	1597
law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law	1599
Levi, Levite, Levitical	1601
life, live, living, alive	1602
livestock, animals	1604
lord, Lord, master, sir	1605
lots, casting lots	1607
manna	1608
messenger	1609
might, mighty, mighty works	1610
miracle, wonder, sign	1611
Moab, Moabite	1613
Moses	1614
mourn, mourner, weeping	1615
name	1616
nation	1617
Negev	1618
new moon	1619
oath, swear, swearing, swear by	1620

oil	1621
olive	1622
ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs	1623
palm	1624
Passover	1625
peace, peaceful, peacemakers	1626
people of God	1627
people, people group,	1628
perish	1630
possess, possessed, possession, dispossess	1631
pray, prayer	1632
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation	1633
priest, priesthood	1635
prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, ...	1637
profane, profaned	1638
promise, promised	1639
Promised Land	1640
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	1641
prosper, prosperity, prosperous	1643
prostitute, harlot, whored	1644
prostrate, worship	1645
proud, pride, prideful	1646
pure, purify, purification	1647
rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness	1648
rebuke	1649
redeem, redeemer, redemption	1650
rest, rested, restless	1651
restore, restoration	1652
return	1653
Reuben	1654
Sabbath	1655
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering	1656
sanctuary	1658
seed, semen	1659
seek, search, look for	1660
servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women	1661
set apart	1663
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach	1664
sign, proof, reminder	1666
silver	1667
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	1668
slaughter, slaughtered	1670
son	1671
spear, spearmen	1673
spirit, spiritual	1674
statute	1676

strength, strengthen, strong	1677
sword, swordsmen	1679
tabernacle	1680
temple	1681
test, tested, testing, testing in the fire	1683
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness	1684
thresh	1686
to minister, ministry	1687
tongue, language	1688
transgress, transgression	1689
tribe, tribal, tribesmen	1690
trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, ...	1691
trumpet, trumpeters	1692
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness	1693
unleavened bread	1694
vine	1695
vineyard	1696
voice	1697
vow	1698
walk, walked	1699
watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out	1700
wine, wineskin, new wine	1701
winnow, sift	1702
wrath, fury	1703
Yahweh	1704
zeal, zealous	1706
<b>Contributors</b>	<b>1707</b>
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors	1707
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors	1713
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors	1714
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors	1714
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors	1715



## **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

### **Numbers**

## Introduction to Numbers

### Part 1: General Introduction

#### Outline of Numbers

1. Preparing to leave Sinai (1:1–10:10)
2. Counting and assembling the tribes (1:1–4:49)
3. Regulations (5:1–6:27)
4. Dedicating the altar (7:1–89)
5. Setting up the lampstand (8:1–4)
6. Setting apart the Levites (8:5–29)
7. Second Passover; the cloud to lead them; trumpets (9:1–10:10)
8. Sinai to Moab, through the wilderness (10:11–17:13)
9. Complaining and murmuring (10:11–11:15)
10. The quails (11:16–35)
11. Miriam's leprosy (12:1–16)
12. The spies selected and sent (13:1–14:45)
13. Commands (15:1–41)
14. Korah's rebellion (16:1–17:13)
15. The Priests and purifying (18:1–19:22)
16. Priests and Levites (18:1–32)
17. The law about purifying (19:1–22)
18. Conflicts (20:1–21:35)
19. Miriam's death (20:1–13)
20. Edom's refusal and Aaron's death (20:14–29)
21. Journey to Moab (21:1–35)
22. The Plains of Moab (22:1–36:13)
23. Balaam (22:1–24:25)
24. Baal Peor (25:1–18)
25. The second counting (26:1–65)
26. Inheritance rights for daughters (27:1–11)
27. Joshua succeeds Moses (27:12–23)
28. Offerings and women's vows (28:1–30:16)
29. Midianite war (31:1–54)
30. Across the Jordan (32:1–42)
31. The people set up camp (33:1–56)
32. Land west of the Jordan; cities for Levites and cities of refuge (34:1–35:34)
33. Female heirs marry (36:1–13)

#### What is the Book of Numbers about?

The Book of Numbers tells about the people of Israel as they traveled from Mount Sinai in the wilderness to the Jordan River. While traveling, the Israelites became discouraged. So they rebelled against the leaders whom God had given them. At the Jordan River, the people of Israel refused to enter the Promised Land. Because the Israelites were afraid and did not trust God, he delayed their entry into the Promised Land for forty years (13:1–14:45). (See: [Promised Land](#))

#### How should the title of this book be translated?

The title of this book, "Numbers," refers to when the number of the Israelites was counted. The people of the project language may already be familiar with the name "Numbers" from other Bible versions. If not, the translator could consider a clearer name for the book, such as "The Counting of the People of Israel." (See: [census](#))



**Who wrote the Book of Numbers?**

The writers of both the Old and New Testament present Moses as being very involved with writing the Book of Numbers. However, at a later time, scribes and priests probably put the book into its present form. They may have included text from other sources. One such source was “the scroll of the Wars of Yahweh” (21:14).

**Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts****How does Numbers present the idea of the whole community being responsible when only a few people sinned?**

The people understood and assumed that God would punish the whole community of Israel if some of the people rebelled against him. God did often punish the entire nation when some of them sinned. All of the people in the ancient Near East would have understood and expected this. However, Moses and Aaron prayed for God to punish only those who were guilty.

**Part 3: Important Translation Issues****Why does Moses speak using third person pronouns about himself?**

When an author wrote about something he was involved in, it was common for him to use the pronoun “he” instead of “I,” or “they” instead of “we.” The translator may decide to use the project’s normal pronouns instead.

## **Numbers 1**

### **Numbers 1 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

The ULT sets the lines in 1:5-15 farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text because they are long lists.

#### **Census**

They counted how many men of military age were in each tribe of Israel. These men would also become the heads of families. It is possible the numbers in this chapter are rounded to the nearest 100.

## Numbers 1:1

### Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

### the first day of the second month

This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day is near the middle of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### the second year

“year 2” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)
- [while he was in the sacred](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses in the tent of meeting in the wilderness of Sinai. This happened on the first day of the second month during the second year after the people of Israel had come out from the land of Egypt. Yahweh said,

### UST

<sup>1</sup> In the second month of the year after the Israelite people had left [Egypt](#), Yahweh spoke to [Moses while he was in the sacred](#) tent, [in the wilderness](#) of Sinai. Yahweh said to him,

## Numbers 1:2

### Count them by name

This means to count the men by recording their names. Alternate translation: "Count them, recording each man's name" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- clan
- head
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- how many Israelite...from...Israel
- by name
- how many Israelite...from...Israel
- each family
- each family
- Count
- each family

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> "Conduct a census of all the men of Israel in each clan, in their fathers' families. Count them by name. Count every male, each man

### UST

<sup>2</sup> "[Count how many Israelite](#) men, from [each family](#) in [Israel](#), and count them [by name](#)."

## Numbers 1:3

### twenty years old

"20 years old" (See: [Numbers](#))

### record the number of men in their armed groups

This refers to assigning the men to their military divisions.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Write down the number](#)
- [of the men](#)
- [those who](#)
- [can serve as soldiers in](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> who is twenty years old or older.  
Count all who can fight as soldiers for Israel. You and Aaron must record the number of men in their armed groups.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> You and Aaron must count the men who are at least twenty years old, [those who can serve as soldiers in](#) the army. [Write down the number of the men](#), along with the names of their clans and families.

## Numbers 1:4

### a clan head

"a leader of a clan"

### serve with you

"help you"

### Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- clan
- a leader
- of the tribes
- clan

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> A man from each tribe, a clan head, must serve with you as his tribe's leader. Each leader must lead the men who will fight for his tribe.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> I have chosen one man from each [of the tribes](#) to help you to do this. Each one must be [a leader](#) of his [clan](#).

## Numbers 1:5

### Elizur...Shedeur

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [name](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [name](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> These are the names of the leaders who must fight with you: From the tribe of Reuben, Elizur son of Shedeur;

#### UST

<sup>5-6</sup> Their names are: Elizur son of Shedeur, from the tribe of Reuben; Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai, from the tribe of Simeon;

## Numbers 1:6

### Shelumiel...Zurishaddai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> from the tribe of Simeon, Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai;

#### UST

<sup>5-6</sup> Their names are: Elizur son of Shedeur, from the tribe of Reuben; Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai, from the tribe of Simeon;



## Numbers 1:7

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to list the leaders of the tribes to Moses. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Judah

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Judah

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> from the tribe of Judah, Nahshon son of Amminadab;

### UST

<sup>7-9</sup> Nahshon son of Amminadab, from the tribe of Judah; Nethanel son of Zuar, from the tribe of Issachar; Eliab son of Helon, from the tribe of Zebulun;

## Numbers 1:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> from the tribe of Issachar, Nethanel  
son of Zuar;

#### UST

## Numbers 1:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son

### Translation Words - UST

- son

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> from the tribe of Zebulun, Eliab son of Helon;

#### UST

<sup>7-9</sup> Nahshon son of Amminadab, from the tribe of Judah; Nethanel son of Zuar, from the tribe of Issachar; Eliab son of Helon, from the tribe of Zebulun;

## Numbers 1:10

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to list the leaders of the tribes to Moses. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)

### ULT

**10** from the tribe of Ephraim son of Joseph, Elishama son of Ammihud; from the tribe of Manasseh, Gamaliel son of Pedahzur;

### UST

**10-11** Elishama son of Ammihud, from the tribe of Joseph's son Ephraim; Gamaliel son of Pedahzur, from the tribe of Joseph's son Manasseh; Abidan son of Gideoni, from the tribe of Benjamin;

## Numbers 1:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Benjamin, Benjamite

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Benjamin, Benjamite

#### ULT

**11** from the tribe of Benjamin, Abidan son of Gideoni;

#### UST

**10-11** Elishama son of Ammihud, from the tribe of Joseph's son Ephraim; Gamaliel son of Pedahzur, from the tribe of Joseph's son Manasseh; Abidan son of Gideoni, from the tribe of Benjamin;

## Numbers 1:12

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to list the leaders of the tribes to Moses. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

### ULT

**12** from the tribe of Dan, Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai;

### UST

**12-15** Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai, from the tribe of Dan; Pagiel son of Ocran, from the tribe of Asher; Eliasaph son of Deuel, from the tribe of Gad; Ahira son of Enan, from the tribe of Naphtali."

## Numbers 1:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son

### Translation Words - UST

- son

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> from the tribe of Asher, Pagiel son of Okran;

#### UST

## Numbers 1:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son

### Translation Words - UST

- son

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> from the tribe of Gad, Eliasaph son of Deuel;

#### UST



## Numbers 1:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son

### Translation Words - UST

- son

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> and from the tribe of Naphtali, Ahira son of Enan."

#### UST

<sup>12-15</sup> Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai, from the tribe of Dan; Pagiel son of Ocran, from the tribe of Asher; Eliasaph son of Deuel, from the tribe of Gad; Ahira son of Enan, from the tribe of Naphtali."

## Numbers 1:16

### the men appointed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the men whom Yahweh appointed" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [head](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [of the Israelite](#)
- [of the clans](#)
- [were the chief men](#)

#### ULT

**16** These were the men appointed from the people. They led their ancestors' tribes. They were the leaders of the clans in Israel.

#### UST

**16** These were the men whom Yahweh chose from the people. They were leaders of their tribes. They [were the chief men of the clans of the Israelite](#) people.

## Numbers 1:17

### took these men

“gathered these men together”

### who were recorded by name

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whose names they had recorded” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [all](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Moses and Aaron took these men,  
who were recorded by name,

### UST

<sup>17</sup> Aaron and [Moses](#) summoned [all](#)  
these leaders,

## Numbers 1:18

### the first day of the second month

This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day is near the middle of April on Western calendars. See how you translated this in [Numbers 1:1](#). (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Then each man...identified his ancestry. He had to name the clans and families descended from his ancestors

The second sentence means basically the same thing as the first and is added for clarification. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### He had to name

Here "name" means to "say." Alternate translation: "Each man had to say" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [congregation](#), [meeting](#)
- [family](#), [household](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and with their names they wrote the names of their](#)
- [and with their names they wrote the names of their](#)
- [and with their names they wrote the names of their](#)
- [they gathered](#)
- [They listed the names](#)
- [clans and their family groups](#)

### ULT

**18** and along with these men they assembled all the men of Israel on the first day of the second month. Then each man twenty years old and older identified his ancestry. He had to name the clans and families descended from his ancestors.

### UST

**18** and [they gathered](#) all of the people on that same day. [They listed the names](#) of all the men who were at least 20 years old, [and with their names they wrote the names of their clans and their family groups](#)

## Numbers 1:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [had commanded](#)
- [They wrote](#)
- [the names while the Israelites were there](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Then Moses recorded their numbers in the wilderness of Sinai, as Yahweh had commanded him to do.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> just as [Moses had commanded. They wrote the names while the Israelites were there in the wilderness](#) of Sinai.

## Numbers 1:20

### were counted all the names

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they counted all the names” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### able to go to war

“who was able to go to war”

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- Reuben
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- clan
- generation
- firstborn
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- Reuben
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- clan
- generation
- firstborn
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

**20** From the descendants of Reuben, Israel's firstborn, were counted all the names of each and every man twenty years old or older able to go to war, from the records of their ancestor's clans and families.

### UST

**20-21** There were 46,500 men from the tribe of Reuben (who was Jacob's oldest son) who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

## Numbers 1:21

### 46,500 men

“forty-six thousand five hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### ULT

**21** They counted 46,500 men from the tribe of Reuben.

#### UST

**20-21** There were 46,500 men from the tribe of Reuben (who was Jacob's oldest son) who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

## Numbers 1:22

### were counted all the names of each and every man... clans and families

The phrase “were counted” can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in [Numbers 1:20](#). Alternate translation: “they counted all the names of each and every man...clans and families” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [clan](#)
- [generation](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [clan](#)
- [generation](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### ULT

**22** From the descendants of Simeon were counted all the names of each and every man twenty years old or older able to go to war, from the records of their ancestor's clans and families.

#### UST

**22-23** There were 59,300 men from the tribe of Simeon who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.



## Numbers 1:23

### 59,300 men

“fifty-nine thousand three hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> They counted 59,300 men from the tribe of Simeon.

#### UST

<sup>22-23</sup> There were 59,300 men from the tribe of Simeon who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

## Numbers 1:24

### were counted all the names of each and every man... clans and families

The phrase “were counted” can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in [Numbers 1:20](#). Alternate translation: “they counted all the names of each and every man...clans and families” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- name
- Gad
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- clan
- generation
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- name
- Gad
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- clan
- generation
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

**24** From the descendants of Gad were counted all the names of each and every man twenty years old or older able to go to war, from the records of their ancestor's clans and families.

#### UST

**24-25** There were 45,650 men from the tribe of Gad who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

## Numbers 1:25

### 45,650 men

“forty-five thousand six hundred and fifty men” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Gad](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Gad](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### ULT

**25** They counted 45,650 men from the tribe of Gad.

#### UST

**24-25** There were 45,650 men from the tribe of Gad who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

## Numbers 1:26

### were counted all the names of each and every man... clans and families

The phrase “were counted” can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in [Numbers 1:20](#). Alternate translation: “they counted all the names of each and every man...clans and families” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- name
- Judea
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- clan
- generation
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- name
- Judea
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- clan
- generation
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

**26** From the descendants of Judah were counted all the names of each and every man twenty years old or older able to go to war, from the records of their ancestor's clans and families.

#### UST

**26-27** There were 74,600 men from the tribe of Judah who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

## Numbers 1:27

### 74,600 men

“seventy-four thousand six hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### ULT

**27** They counted 74,600 men from the tribe of Judah.

#### UST

**26-27** There were 74,600 men from the tribe of Judah who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

## Numbers 1:28

### were counted all the names of each and every man... clans and families

The phrase “were counted” can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in [Numbers 1:20](#). Alternate translation: “they counted all the names of each and every man...clans and families” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- name
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- clan
- generation
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- name
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- clan
- generation
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

**28** From the descendants of Issachar were counted all the names of each and every man twenty years old or older able to go to war, from the records of their ancestor's clans and families.

#### UST

**28-29** There were 54,400 men from the tribe of Issachar who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

## Numbers 1:29

### 54,400 men

“fifty-four thousand four hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### ULT

**29** They counted 54,400 men from the tribe of Issachar.

#### UST

**28-29** There were 54,400 men from the tribe of Issachar who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

## Numbers 1:30

### were counted all the names of each and every man... clans and families

The phrase “were counted” can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in [Numbers 1:20](#). Alternate translation: “they counted all the names of each and every man...clans and families” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- name
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- clan
- generation
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- name
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- clan
- generation
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

**30** From the descendants of Zebulun were counted all the names of each and every man twenty years old or older able to go to war, from the records of their ancestor's clans and families.

#### UST

**30-31** There were 57,400 men from the tribe of Zebulun who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.



## Numbers 1:31

### 57,400 men

“fifty-seven thousand four hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### ULT

**31** They counted 57,400 men from the tribe of Zebulun.

#### UST

**30-31** There were 57,400 men from the tribe of Zebulun who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

## Numbers 1:32

### were counted all the names of each and every man... clans and families

The phrase “were counted” can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in [Numbers 1:20](#). Alternate translation: “they counted all the names of each and every man...clans and families” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- name
- Joseph (OT)
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- clan
- generation
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- name
- Joseph (OT)
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- clan
- generation
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

**32** From the descendants of Ephraim son of Joseph were counted all the names of each and every man twenty years old or older able to go to war, from the records of their ancestor's clans and families.

#### UST

**32-33** There were 40,500 men from the tribe of Ephraim who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

## Numbers 1:33

### 40,500 men

“forty thousand five hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Ephraim](#), [Ephraimite](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Ephraim](#), [Ephraimite](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### ULT

**33** They counted 40,500 men from the tribe of Ephraim.

#### UST

**32-33** There were 40,500 men from the tribe of Ephraim who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

## Numbers 1:34

### were counted all the names of each and every man... clans and families

The phrase “were counted” can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in [Numbers 1:20](#). Alternate translation: “they counted all the names of each and every man...clans and families” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [clan](#)
- [generation](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [clan](#)
- [generation](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### ULT

**34** From the descendants of Manasseh son of Joseph were counted all the names of each and every man twenty years old or older able to go to war, from the records of their ancestor's clans and families.

#### UST

**34-35** There were 32,200 men from the tribe of Manasseh who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

## Numbers 1:35

### 32,200 men

“thirty-two thousand two hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### ULT

**35** They counted 32,200 men from the tribe of Manasseh.

#### UST

**34-35** There were 32,200 men from the tribe of Manasseh who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

## Numbers 1:36

### were counted all the names of each and every man... clans and families

The phrase “were counted” can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in [Numbers 1:20](#). Alternate translation: “they counted all the names of each and every man...clans and families” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [clan](#)
- [generation](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [clan](#)
- [generation](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### ULT

**36** From the descendants of Benjamin were counted all the names of each and every man twenty years old or older able to go to war, from the records of their ancestor's clans and families.

#### UST

**36-37** There were 35,400 men from the tribe of Benjamin who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

## Numbers 1:37

### 35,400 men

“thirty-five thousand four hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Benjamin](#), [Benjamite](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Benjamin](#), [Benjamite](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### ULT

**37** They counted 35,400 men from the tribe of Benjamin.

#### UST

**36-37** There were 35,400 men from the tribe of Benjamin who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

## Numbers 1:38

### were counted all the names of each and every man... clans and families

The phrase “were counted” can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in [Numbers 1:20](#). Alternate translation: “they counted all the names of each and every man...clans and families” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- name
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- clan
- generation
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- name
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- clan
- generation
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

**38** From the descendants of Dan were counted all the names of each and every man twenty years old or older able to go to war, from the records of their ancestor's clans and families.

#### UST

**38-39** There were 62,700 men from the tribe of Dan who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.



## Numbers 1:39

### They counted 62,700

“They counted sixty-two thousand seven hundred” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### ULT

**39** They counted 62,700 from the tribe of Dan.

#### UST

**38-39** There were 62,700 men from the tribe of Dan who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

## Numbers 1:40

### were counted all the names of each and every man... clans and families

The phrase “were counted” can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in [Numbers 1:20](#). Alternate translation: “they counted all the names of each and every man...clans and families” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [clan](#)
- [generation](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [clan](#)
- [generation](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### ULT

**40** From the descendants of Asher were counted all the names of each and every man twenty years old or older able to go to war, from the records of their ancestor's clans and families.

#### UST

**40-41** There were 41,500 men from the tribe of Asher who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

## Numbers 1:41

### They counted 41,500

“They counted forty-one thousand five hundred” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### ULT

**41** They counted 41,500 men from the tribe of Asher.

#### UST

**40-41** There were 41,500 men from the tribe of Asher who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

## Numbers 1:42

### were counted all the names of each and every man... clans and families

The phrase “were counted” can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in [Numbers 1:20](#). Alternate translation: “they counted all the names of each and every man...clans and families” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [clan](#)
- [generation](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [clan](#)
- [generation](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### ULT

<sup>42</sup> From the descendants of Naphtali were counted all the names of each and every man twenty years old or older able to go to war, from the records of their ancestor's clans and families.

#### UST

<sup>42-43</sup> There were 53,400 men from the tribe of Naphtali who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

## Numbers 1:43

### They counted 53,400

"They counted fifty-three thousand four hundred" (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### ULT

<sup>43</sup> They counted 53,400 from the tribe of Naphtali.

#### UST

<sup>42-43</sup> There were 53,400 men from the tribe of Naphtali who were at least twenty years old and were able to fight in battles. They were listed by their names, their clans, and their family groups.

## Numbers 1:44

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house

### ULT

**44** Moses and Aaron counted all these men, together with the twelve men who were leading the twelve tribes of Israel.

### UST

**44-45** That was the number of men from each tribe that Aaron and Moses and the twelve leaders of the tribes of Israel listed, along with the names of their clans.

## Numbers 1:45

### So all the men of Israel...were counted in each of their families

The phrase “were counted” can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in [Numbers 1:20](#). Alternate translation: “So they counted all the men of Israel...in each of their families” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### ULT

<sup>45</sup> So all the men of Israel from twenty years old and older, all who could fight in war, were counted in each of their families.

#### UST

<sup>44-45</sup> That was the number of men from each tribe that Aaron and Moses and the twelve leaders of the tribes of Israel listed, along with the names of their clans.

## Numbers 1:46

### 603,550 men

“six hundred and three thousand five hundred and fifty men” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### ULT

<sup>46</sup> They counted 603,550 men.

#### UST

<sup>46</sup> The total was 603,550 men.



## Numbers 1:47

### the men who were descended from Levi were not counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Moses and Aaron did not count the men who were descended from Levi” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### who were descended from Levi

In some languages this is a passive verb. If needed, this can be written differently. Alternate translation: “who were from the tribe of Levi” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>47</sup> But the men who were descended from Levi were not counted,

#### UST

<sup>47</sup> [But this number](#) did not [include](#) the names of the men of [the tribe of Levi](#),

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [include](#)
- [of Levi](#)
- [But this number](#)
- [the tribe](#)

## Numbers 1:48

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [because Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>48</sup> because Yahweh had said to Moses,

#### UST

<sup>48</sup> [because Yahweh](#) had said [to Moses](#),

## Numbers 1:49

### must not count the tribe of Levi

Here the "tribe of Levi" refers to all of the men in the tribe of Levi.  
 Alternate translation: "must not count the men of the tribe of Levi"  
 (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)
- [head](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [count](#)
- [of](#)
- [When you...the men of the tribes of Israel](#)
- [Levi](#)
- [not count the men](#)

#### ULT

<sup>49</sup> "You must not count the tribe of Levi or include them in the total of the people of Israel.

#### UST

<sup>49</sup> "[When you count the men of the tribes of Israel](#), do [not count the men](#) in the tribe [of Levi](#).

## Numbers 1:50

### the tabernacle of the covenant decrees

The tabernacle was also called by this longer name because the ark with the law of God was placed inside it.

### everything in it

Here "it" refers to the tabernacle.

### The Levites must carry the tabernacle

It was their job to carry the tabernacle when they traveled. Alternate translation: "When you travel, the Levites must carry the tabernacle" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### make their camp around it

This means that they were to set up their tents around the tabernacle. Alternate translation: "set up their tents around it" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- must also take care
- Appoint the male descendants of Levi
- take care of it

### ULT

<sup>50</sup> Instead, assign the Levites to care for the tabernacle of the covenant decrees, and to care for all the furnishings in the tabernacle and for everything in it. The Levites must carry the tabernacle, and they must carry the tabernacle's furnishings. They must care for the tabernacle and make their camp around it.

### UST

<sup>50</sup> [Appoint the male descendants of Levi](#) to take care of the sacred tent and the chest inside it that contains the tablets on which are written the Ten Commandments. They [must also take care](#) of the other things that are inside the tent. When you travel, they are the ones who must carry the sacred tent and all the things that are inside it, and they must [take care of it](#) and set up their tents around it.

## Numbers 1:51

### When the tabernacle is to be set up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When it is time to set up the tabernacle" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Any stranger...must be killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Any stranger...must die" or "You must kill any stranger who comes near the tabernacle" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [the descendants of Levi](#)
- [when it is time to stop traveling, they are](#)

#### ULT

**51** When the tabernacle is to move to another place, the Levites must take it down. When the tabernacle is to be set up, the Levites must set it up. Any stranger who comes near the tabernacle must be killed.

#### UST

**51** Whenever it is time for all of you to move to another location, [the descendants of Levi](#) are the ones who must dismantle the sacred tent. And [when it is time to stop traveling, they are](#) the ones who must set it up again. Any other person who goes near the sacred tent to do this work must be executed.

## Numbers 1:52

### the banner

a large flag

### his armed group

“his military division”

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites

### Translation Words - UST

- The people of
- each Israelite tribe

### ULT

<sup>52</sup> When the people of Israel set up their tents, each man must do so near the banner that belongs to his armed group.

### UST

<sup>52</sup> [The people of each Israelite tribe](#) must set up their tents in their own area, and they must set up a flag that represents their tribe.

## Numbers 1:53

### the tabernacle of the covenant decrees

The tabernacle was also called by this longer name because the ark with the law of God was placed inside it. See how you translated this in [Numbers 1:50](#).

### so that my anger does not come upon the people of Israel

Here Yahweh speaks of not punishing the Israelites as his anger not coming upon them. The phrase “come upon” refers to his anger being applied to them. Alternate translation: “so that in my anger I do not punish the people of Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [descendants of](#)
- [Israelite people](#)
- [descendants of Levi](#)
- [Levi](#)

#### ULT

**53** However, the Levites must set up their tents around the tabernacle of the covenant decrees so that my anger does not come upon the people of Israel. The Levites must care for the tabernacle of the covenant decrees.”

#### UST

**53** But the male [descendants of Levi](#) must set up their tents around the sacred tent in order to protect the other [Israelite people](#) from being punished by Yahweh for coming close to the sacred tent. The [descendants of Levi](#) are the ones who must stand around the sacred tent to guard it.”

## Numbers 1:54

### Yahweh commanded through Moses

Yahweh had commanded Moses everything that the Israelites were to do, and then Moses had commanded the Israelites. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [commanded](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>54</sup> The people of Israel did all these things. They did everything that Yahweh commanded through Moses.

#### UST

<sup>54</sup> So [the Israelite people](#) did everything just like [Yahweh](#) had [commanded Moses](#).



## **Numbers 2**

### **Numbers 2 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

#### **Camping**

Moses told each tribe where to camp. They were each given a specific area in which to stay.

## Numbers 2:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh spoke again to Moses and Aaron. He said,

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then [Yahweh](#) said this to [Aaron](#) and [Moses](#),

## Numbers 2:2

### around his standard

The “standards” were four larger groups that the tribes were divided into. Each standard was commanded to camp together. The standards was represented by a banner.

### with the banners of their fathers’ houses

Each extended family also had a banner under with the camp, which was within the area designated for their standard.

### banners

A banner is a large flag.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- feast, feasting
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- they are to set them up in areas...their tents
- The people of
- that identifies their tribe
- that surround the sacred tent
- Each tribe must put up a flag in that area

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> “Each one of the Israelites must camp around his standard, with the banners of their fathers’ houses. They will camp around the tent of meeting on every side.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> “When the Israelites set up their tents, they are to set them up in areas that surround the sacred tent, but not close to it. The people of each tribe must set up their tents in a different area. Each tribe must put up a flag in that area that identifies their tribe.

## Numbers 2:3

### under their standard

The “standards” were four larger groups that the tribes were divided into. Each standard was commanded to camp together, and was represented by a banner. See how you translated “standards” in [Numbers 2:2](#).

### Nahshon son of Amminadab

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:7](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Judea](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Judea](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Those will be camping on the east of the tent of meeting, where the sun rises, they are the camp of Judah and they are camping under their standard. Nahshon son of Amminadab is the leader of the people of Judah.

### UST

<sup>3-4</sup> The people of the tribe of Judah must set up their tents on the east side of the sacred tent, close to their tribal flag. Nahshon son of Amminadab, will be the leader of the 74,600 men of the tribe of Judah.

## Numbers 2:4

**74600**

“seventy-four thousand six hundred” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> The number of the people of Judah is 74,600.

#### UST

<sup>3-4</sup> The people of the tribe of Judah must set up their tents on the east side of the sacred tent, close to their tribal flag. Nahshon son of Amminadab, will be the leader of the 74,600 men of the tribe of Judah.

## Numbers 2:5

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [Numbers](#))

### Nethanel son of Zuar

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:8](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> The tribe of Issachar must camp next to Judah. Nethanel son of Zuar must lead the army of Issachar.

### UST

<sup>5-6</sup> The people of the tribe of Issachar will set up their tents beside Judah. Nethanel son of Zuar will be the leader of the 54,400 men of the tribe of Issachar.

## Numbers 2:6

### division

This is a military term for a large group of soldiers. Each tribe was its own "division."

### 54,400 men

"fifty-four thousand four hundred men" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> The number in his division is 54,400 men.

### UST

<sup>5-6</sup> The people of the tribe of Issachar will set up their tents beside Judah. Nethanel son of Zuar will be the leader of the 54,400 men of the tribe of Issachar.

## Numbers 2:7

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [Numbers](#))

### Eliab son of Helon

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:9](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> The tribe of Zebulun must camp next to Issachar. Eliab son of Helon must lead the army of Zebulun.

### UST

<sup>7-8</sup> The people of the tribe of Zebulun will set up their tents beside Issachar. Eliab son of Helon, will be the leader of the 57,400 men of the tribe of Zebulun.



## Numbers 2:8

### 57400

“fifty-seven thousand four hundred.” This refers to the number of men. Alternate translation: “57,400 men” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> The number in his division is 57,400.

#### UST

<sup>7-8</sup> The people of the tribe of Zebulun will set up their tents beside Issachar. Eliab son of Helon, will be the leader of the 57,400 men of the tribe of Zebulun.

## Numbers 2:9

### All the number...is 186,400

"All the number...is one hundred and eighty-six thousand four hundred." This number includes all of the men in the tribes that camped under the standard of Judah. Alternate translation: "The number of the men camped under the standard of Judah is 186,400" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the camp of Judah

This refers to the three tribes that camp east of the tent of meeting: the tribes of Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun.

### They will set out first

This means that when the Israelite camp moves, the camp of Judah will start walking out before the other tribes do. Alternate translation: "When travelling, the camp of Judah will start walking first" or "When the Israelites leave, those tribes will leave first" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Whenever the Israelites move to a new location](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> All the number of the camp of Judah is 186,400. They will set out first.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> So there will be 186,400 troops on the east side of the sacred tent. [Whenever the Israelites move to a new location](#), those three tribes must go in front of the others.

## Numbers 2:10

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [Numbers](#))

### under their standard

The “standards” were four larger groups that the tribes were divided into. Each standard was commanded to camp together. The standards were represented by a banner. See how you translated “standards” in [Numbers 2:2](#).

### Elizur son of Shedeur

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:5](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [Reuben](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [Reuben](#)

### ULT

**10** On the south side will be the camp of Reuben under their standard. The leader of the camp of Reuben is Elizur son of Shedeur.

### UST

**10-11** The tribe of Reuben must set up their tents on the south side of the sacred tent, close to their tribal flag. Elizur son of Shedeur, will be the leader of the 46,500 men of the tribe of Reuben.

## Numbers 2:11

### 46500

“forty-six thousand five hundred.” This refers to the number of men.  
Alternate translation: “46,500 men” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### ULT

**11** The number in his division is 46,500.

#### UST

**10-11** The tribe of Reuben must set up their tents on the south side of the sacred tent, close to their tribal flag. Elizur son of Shedeur, will be the leader of the 46,500 men of the tribe of Reuben.

## Numbers 2:12

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [Numbers](#))

### Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:6](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### ULT

**12** Simeon is camping next to Reuben. The leader of the people of Simeon is Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai.

### UST

**12-13** The people of the tribe of Simeon will set up their tents beside Reuben. Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai, will be the leader of the 59,300 men of the tribe of Simeon.

## Numbers 2:13

### 59300

"Fifty-nine thousand three hundred." This refers to the number of men. Alternate translation: "59,300 men" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### ULT

**13** The number in his division is 59,300.

#### UST

**12-13** The people of the tribe of Simeon will set up their tents beside Reuben. Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai, will be the leader of the 59,300 men of the tribe of Simeon.

## Numbers 2:14

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [Numbers](#))

### Eliasaph son of Deuel

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:14](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Gad](#)
- [Gad](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Gad](#)
- [Gad](#)

### ULT

**14** The tribe of Gad is next. The leader of the people of Gad is Eliasaph son of Deuel.

### UST

**14-15** The people of the tribe of Gad will set up their tents beside Simeon. Eliasaph son of Deuel, will be the leader of the 45,650 men of the tribe of Gad.

## Numbers 2:15

### 45650

"forty-five thousand six hundred and fifty." This refers to the number of men. Alternate translation: "45,650 men" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### ULT

**15** The number in his division is 45,650.

#### UST

**14-15** The people of the tribe of Gad will set up their tents beside Simeon. Eliasaph son of Deuel, will be the leader of the 45,650 men of the tribe of Gad.



## Numbers 2:16

### The number of all the men...is 151,450

"The number of all the men...is one hundred and fifty-one thousand four hundred and fifty." This number includes all of the men in the tribes that camped under the standard of Reuben. Alternate translation: "The number of all the men camped under the standard of Reuben, according to their divisions, is 151,450" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### They will set out second

This means that when the Israelite camp moves, the camp of Reuben will start walking out after the camp of Judah goes out. Alternate translation: "When travelling, the camp of Reuben will start walking second" or "When the Israelites leave, those tribes will leave next" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Reuben](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [troops](#)

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> The number of all the men assigned to the camp of Reuben, according to their divisions, is 151,450. They will set out second.

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> So there will be 151,450 [troops](#) on the south side of the sacred tent. Those three tribes will follow the first group when the Israelites travel.

## Numbers 2:17

### the tent of meeting must go out...in the middle of all the camps

This means that the tent of meeting must be carried by the Levites in the middle of the tribes as they travel.

### They must go out

“They” refers to the twelve tribes.

### by his banner

Each man does not have his own personal banner; rather, this refers to the banner belonging to his tribe. Alternate translation: “by his tribe’s banner” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [hand](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Levi](#)
- [will carry its own](#)
- [same order](#)

### ULT

**17** Next, the tent of meeting must go out from the camp with the Levites in the middle of all the camps. They must go out from the camp in the same order as they come into the camp. Every man must be in his place, by his banner.

### UST

**17** Behind that group will walk the descendants of [Levi](#), who will carry the sacred tent. The Israelites will march in the [same order](#) that they always set up their tents. Each tribe [will carry its own](#) flag.

## Numbers 2:18

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

### under their standard

The “standards” were four larger groups that the tribes were divided into. Each standard was commanded to camp together. The standards were represented by a banner. See how you translated “standards” in [Numbers 2:2](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)

### ULT

**18** The divisions of the camp of Ephraim under their standard. The leader of the people of Ephraim is Elishama son of Ammihud.

### UST

**18-19** The tribe of Ephraim must set up their tents on the west side of the sacred tent, close to their tribal flag. Elishama son of Ammihud, will be the leader of the 40,500 men of the tribe of Ephraim.

## Numbers 2:19

### 40500

“Forty thousand five hundred.” This refers to the number of men.  
Alternate translation: “40,500 men” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### ULT

**19** The number in his division is 40,500.

#### UST

**18-19** The tribe of Ephraim must set up their tents on the west side of the sacred tent, close to their tribal flag. Elishama son of Ammihud, will be the leader of the 40,500 men of the tribe of Ephraim.

## Numbers 2:20

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

### Next to them

This means that the tribe of Manasseh will set out next, after the tribe of Ephraim.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### ULT

**20** Next to them is the tribe of Manasseh. The leader of Manasseh is Gamaliel son of Pedahzur.

### UST

**20-21** The people of the tribe of Manasseh will set up their tents beside Ephraim. Gamaliel son of Pedahzur, will be the leader of the 32,200 men of the tribe of Manasseh.

## Numbers 2:21

### 32200

“Thirty-two thousand two hundred.” This refers to the number of men. Alternate translation: “32,200 men” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> The number in his division is 32,200.

#### UST

<sup>20-21</sup> The people of the tribe of Manasseh will set up their tents beside Ephraim. Gamaliel son of Pedahzur, will be the leader of the 32,200 men of the tribe of Manasseh.

## Numbers 2:22

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [Numbers](#))

### Abidan son of Gideoni

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:11](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)

### ULT

**22** Next will be the tribe of Benjamin.  
The leader of Benjamin is Abidan son of Gideoni.

### UST

**22-23** The people of the tribe of Benjamin will set up their tents beside Manasseh. Abidan son of Gideoni, will be the leader of the 35,400 men of the tribe of Benjamin.

## Numbers 2:23

### 35400

"Thirty-five thousand four hundred." This refers to the number of men. Alternate translation: "35,400 men" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> The number in his division is 35,400.

#### UST

<sup>22-23</sup> The people of the tribe of Benjamin will set up their tents beside Manasseh. Abidan son of Gideoni, will be the leader of the 35,400 men of the tribe of Benjamin.



## Numbers 2:24

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [How to Translate Names and Numbers](#))

### All those numbered...108,100

“All those numbered...one hundred and eight thousand one hundred.” This number includes all of the men in the tribes that camped under the standard of Ephraim. Alternate translation: “The number of the men camped under the standard of Ephraim is 108,100” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### They will set out third

This means that when the Israelite camp moves, the camp of Ephraim will start walking out after the camp of Judah and the camp of Reuben go out. Alternate translation: “When travelling, the camp of Ephraim will start walking third” or “When the Israelites leave, those tribes will leave next” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Ephraim, Ephraimite

### Translation Words - UST

- on the west side of the sacred tent

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> All those numbered in the camp of Ephraim is 108,100. They will set out third.

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> So there will be 108,100 troops [on the west side of the sacred tent](#). Those three tribes will follow the second group, behind the descendants of Levi.

## Numbers 2:25

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [How to Translate Names and Numbers](#))

### the divisions of the camp of Dan

The this refers to the divisions of Dan, Asher, and Naphthali that are under the standard of Dan. Alternate translation: “the divisions that camp under the standard of Dan” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:12](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### ULT

**25** On the north will be the divisions of the camp of Dan. The leader of the people of Dan is Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai.

### UST

**25-26** The tribe of Dan must set up their tents on the north side of the sacred tent, close to their tribal flag. Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai, will be the leader of the 62,700 men of the tribe of Dan.

## Numbers 2:26

### 62700

"Sixty-two thousand seven hundred." This refers to the number of men. Alternate translation: "62,700 men" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> The number in his division is 62,700.

#### UST

<sup>25-26</sup> The tribe of Dan must set up their tents on the north side of the sacred tent, close to their tribal flag. Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai, will be the leader of the 62,700 men of the tribe of Dan.

## Numbers 2:27

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [Numbers](#))

### Pagiel son of Okran

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:13](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### ULT

**27** The people of the tribe of Asher camp next to Dan. The leader of Asher is Pagiel son of Okran.

### UST

**27-28** The people of the tribe of Asher will set up their tents beside Dan. Pagiel son of Ocran, will be the leader of the 41,500 men of the tribe of Asher.

## Numbers 2:28

### 41500

“forty-one thousand five hundred.” This refers to the number of men.  
Alternate translation: “41,500 men” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### ULT

**28** The number in his division is 41,500.

#### UST

**27-28** The people of the tribe of Asher will set up their tents beside Dan. Pagiel son of Ocran, will be the leader of the 41,500 men of the tribe of Asher.

## Numbers 2:29

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

### Ahira son of Enan

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:15](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### ULT

**29** The tribe of Naphtali is next. The leader of Naphtali is Ahira son of Enan.

### UST

**29-30** The people of the tribe of Naphtali will set up their tents beside Asher. Ahira son of Enan, will be the leader of the 53,400 men of the tribe of Naphtali.

## Numbers 2:30

### 53400

"fifty-three thousand four hundred." This refers to the number of men. Alternate translation: "53,400 men" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### ULT

**30** The number in his division is 53,400.

#### UST

**29-30** The people of the tribe of Naphtali will set up their tents beside Asher. Ahira son of Enan, will be the leader of the 53,400 men of the tribe of Naphtali.

## Numbers 2:31

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

### All those numbered...157,600

“All those numbered...one hundred and fifty-seven thousand six hundred.” This number includes all of the men in the tribes that camped under the standard of Dan. Alternate translation: “The number of the men camped under the standard of Dan is 157,600” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> All those numbered in the camp with Dan is 157,600. They will go out from the camp last, under their banner.”

#### UST

<sup>31</sup> So there will be 157,600 troops on the north side of the sacred tent. Those three tribes will be last. They must carry their own flags when the Israelites travel.”



## Numbers 2:32

### All those counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses and Aaron counted them all" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### by their divisions

Here "their" refers to the people of Israel.

### are 603,550

"are six hundred and three thousand five hundred and fifty" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [who were listed according to their families](#)
- [able to fight](#)
- [Israelite](#)
- [Israelite](#)
- [ancestors](#)
- [men](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> These are the Israelites, numbered according to their families. All those counted in their camps, by their divisions, are 603,550.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> So there were 603,550 [Israelite men](#) who were [able to fight who were listed according to their families' ancestors](#).

## Numbers 2:33

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [count](#)
- [had commanded](#)
- [people of Israel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [people of Israel](#)
- [Moses and Aaron](#)
- [the Levites](#)

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> But Moses and Aaron did not count the Levites among the people of Israel. This was as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

### UST

<sup>33</sup> But just as [Yahweh had commanded](#), [Moses and Aaron](#) did not [count the Levites](#) among the [people of Israel](#).

## Numbers 2:34

### They went out from the camp

This refers to when they would travel to another place. Alternate translation: "When they traveled, they went out from the camp" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [clan](#)
- [house](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [had told](#)
- [The Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [The Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [and family groups](#)
- [clans](#)
- [and family groups](#)

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> The people of Israel did everything that Yahweh commanded Moses. They camped by their banners. They went out from the camp by their clans, in the order of their ancestor's families.

#### UST

<sup>34</sup> [The Israelites](#) did everything that [Yahweh had told Moses](#). They set up their tents close to their tribal flags, and when they traveled to a new location, they walked with their own [clans and family groups](#).

## **Numbers 3**

### **Numbers 3 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

#### **The tribe of Levi**

The Levites were given a special function in Israel. They belonged to or were specially dedicated to serve Yahweh. They were to be priests and because of this were held to a higher standard than the rest of Israel. Only one of Aaron's sons survived because the others offered improper sacrifices. This tribe had a lot of responsibility during this time. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

## Numbers 3:1

### Now

Here the author uses the word “now” to shift to telling a new historical account.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [generation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [some of the things that happened to](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now this is the history of the descendants of Aaron and Moses when Yahweh spoke with Moses on Mount Sinai.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> These are [some of the things that happened to Aaron](#) and Moses when [Yahweh](#) spoke to [Moses](#) on Mount Sinai.

## Numbers 3:2

### Nadab the firstborn

“Nadab, who was the firstborn”

### Nadab...Abihu...Ithamar

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [Aaron](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [had four sons](#)
- [They were](#)
- [Aaron](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> The names of Aaron's sons were Nadab the firstborn, and Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> [Aaron had four sons.](#) [They were](#) Nadab the oldest, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar.

## Numbers 3:3

### the priests who were anointed and who were ordained

This can be stated in active form Alternate translation: “the priests whom Moses anointed and ordained” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [hand](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [sons](#)
- [the names](#)
- [priests](#)
- [of Aaron's](#)
- [and set apart as priests and](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> These are the names of the sons of Aaron, the priests who were anointed and who were ordained to serve as priests.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> These are [the names of Aaron's sons](#) who were anointed [priests and set apart as priests and](#) whom he ordained to serve as priests.

## Numbers 3:4

### Nadab...Abihu...Ithamar

See how you translated these men's names in [Numbers 3:2](#).

### fell dead before Yahweh

The phrase "fell dead" means to suddenly die. Alternate translation: "suddenly died before Yahweh" (See: [Idiom](#))

### before Yahweh

This refers to Yahweh's presence, meaning that Yahweh saw everything that happened. Alternate translation: "in Yahweh's presence" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### they offered to him unacceptable fire

Here the word "fire" is used to refer to "burning incense." Alternate translation: "they burned an incense offering in a way that Yahweh did not approve of" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Aaron
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- desert, wilderness
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- face, facial

### Translation Words - UST

- sons
- Yahweh was watching
- to what Yahweh had commanded
- Aaron
- their father
- in the wilderness
- died
- because they burned incense
- along with

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But Nadab and Abihu fell dead before Yahweh when they offered to him unacceptable fire in the wilderness of Sinai. Nadab and Abihu had no children, so just Eleazar and Ithamar served as priests with Aaron their father.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> But, while [Yahweh was watching](#), Nadab and Abihu [died in the wilderness](#) of Sinai [because they burned incense](#) in a manner that was disobedient [to what Yahweh had commanded](#). They had no [sons](#), so Eleazar and Ithamar were the only sons of Aaron who were left to be priests, [along with their father Aaron](#).



## Numbers 3:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said,

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> Then [Yahweh](#) said [to Moses](#),

## Numbers 3:6

### Bring the tribe of Levi

Here the word "tribe" refers to the men in the tribe. Alternate translation: "Bring the men of the tribe of Levi" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- priest, priesthood
- Aaron
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

#### Translation Words - UST

- the
- Aaron
- of Levi

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> "Bring the tribe of Levi and present them to Aaron the priest for them to help him.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> "Bring [the](#) men of the tribe [of Levi](#) and present them to [Aaron](#), in order that they may assist him.

## Numbers 3:7

### on behalf of

“for.” This means to do something for someone else, as a representative for them.

### Translation Words - ULT

- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- while they do

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> They must perform the duties on behalf of Aaron and the whole community before the tent of meeting. They must serve in the tabernacle.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> They will serve Aaron and all the other Israelite people, while they do their work inside the sacred tent and outside it.

## Numbers 3:8

### help the tribes of Israel

Here the “tribes of Israel” refer to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “help the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### they must help the tribes of Israel to carry out the tabernacle service

The phrase “carry out” means to “serve.” Alternate translation: “they must help the tribes of Israel by serving in the tabernacle” (See: [Idiom](#))

### tabernacle service

“work of the tabernacle”

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite people
- the Israelite people
- tent

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> They must care for all the furnishings in the tent of meeting, and they must help the tribes of Israel to carry out the tabernacle service.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> They must serve all [the Israelite people](#) by taking care of all the things that are inside the sacred [tent](#).

## Numbers 3:9

### You must give

"You" refers to Moses.

### They are wholly given

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I have given them entirely" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

### Translation Words - UST

- Appoint them to help Aaron and his two sons
- from all
- the Israelite people
- Appoint them to help Aaron and his two sons

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> You must give the Levites to Aaron and his sons. They are wholly given to help him serve the people of Israel.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> [Appoint them to help Aaron and his two sons](#). I have chosen them [from all the Israelite people](#) to do that.

## Numbers 3:10

### any foreigner who comes near must be put to death

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must kill any foreigner who comes near” or “any foreigner who comes near must die” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### but any foreigner who comes near

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “but any foreigner who comes near the tabernacle” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Aaron](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [sacred tent to do that work](#)
- [two sons](#)
- [Appoint Aaron](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> You must appoint Aaron and his sons as priests, but any foreigner who comes near must be put to death.”

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> [Appoint Aaron](#) and his [two sons](#) to do the work that priests do. But anyone else who comes close to the [sacred tent to do that work](#) must be executed.”

## Numbers 3:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said,

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> [Yahweh](#) also told [Moses](#),

## Numbers 3:12

### Look

"Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

### I have taken the Levites

"I have chosen the Levites"

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- firstborn

### Translation Words - UST

- Note that from all the Israelites
- sons of
- Note that from all the Israelites
- the Israelite people
- The male descendants of Levi
- tribe of Levi
- the firstborn

### ULT

**12** "Look, I have taken the Levites from among the people of Israel. I have done this instead of taking each firstborn male who is born among the people of Israel. The Levites belong to me.

### UST

**12** "[Note that from all the Israelites](#) I have chosen the men of the [tribe of Levi](#) to take the places of all [the firstborn sons of the Israelite people](#). [The male descendants of Levi](#) belong to me,



## Numbers 3:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- beast
- firstborn
- firstborn
- firstborn

### Translation Words - UST

- and set them apart for myself
- Yahweh
- of the Israelites
- of Egypt
- domestic animals
- the firstborn males
- the firstborn sons
- the firstborn sons

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> All the firstborn belong to me. On the day that I attacked all the firstborn in the land of Egypt, I set apart for myself all the firstborn in Israel, both people and animals. They belong to me. I am Yahweh."

### UST

<sup>13</sup> because truly all [the firstborn males](#) belong to me. That is because on the day that I killed all [the firstborn sons](#) of the people [of Egypt](#), I spared all [the firstborn sons of the Israelites and set them apart for myself](#). I also set apart the firstborn males of your [domestic animals](#). They belong to me, [Yahweh](#)."

## Numbers 3:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses again](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses in the wilderness of Sinai. He said,

### UST

<sup>14</sup> [Yahweh](#) spoke to [Moses again in the wilderness](#) of Sinai. He said,

## Numbers 3:15

### Count the descendants

Yahweh was commanding Moses to only count the male descendants. Alternate translation: "Count the male descendants" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- son
- son
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- clan
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- Count
- Count
- of the
- the males
- tribe of Levi
- their clans
- the names of
- and family groups

### ULT

**15** "Count the descendants of Levi in each family, in their clans. Count every male who is one month old and older."

### UST

**15** "[Count](#) the male members [of the tribe of Levi](#). Write down their names and [the names of their clans and family groups](#). [Count](#) all [the males](#) who are at least one month old."

## Numbers 3:16

### following the word of Yahweh, just as he was commanded to do

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are used together to emphasize that he obeyed Yahweh. (See: [Parallelism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [commanded](#)
- [counted](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> Moses counted them, following the word of Yahweh, just as he was commanded to do.

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> So [Moses counted](#) them, just as [Yahweh commanded](#).

## Numbers 3:17

### General Information:

This is a list of the descendants of Levi. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- name
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

### Translation Words - UST

- three sons
- whose names were
- Levi

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> The names of Levi's sons were Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> [Levi](#) had [three sons](#), [whose names were](#) Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

## Numbers 3:18

### The clans coming from

Here the author speaks of “descending” as if it were “coming.”  
Alternate translation: “The clans descending from” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- name
- clan

#### Translation Words - UST

- Gershon had two sons
- had the same names as
- The clans who were descended from them

#### ULT

**18** The clans coming from Gershon's sons were Libni and Shimei.

#### UST

**18** [Gershon had two sons](#), Libni and Shimei. [The clans who were descended from them had the same names as](#) those two sons.

## Numbers 3:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [clan](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [had four sons](#)
- [The clans who were descended from them had the same names as those four sons](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> The clans coming from Kohath's sons were Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> Kohath [had four sons](#), Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel. [The clans who were descended from them had the same names as those four sons.](#)

## Numbers 3:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- clan
- family, household
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- had two sons
- Levi
- who were descended
- The clans who were descended
- Those are the clans
- from

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> The clans coming from Merari's sons were Mahli and Mushi. These are the clans of the Levites, listed clan by clan.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> Merari had two sons, Mahli and Mushi. The clans who were descended from them had the same names as those two sons. Those are the clans who were descended from Levi.



## Numbers 3:21

### come from Gershon

Here the author speaks of “descending” as if it were “coming.”  
Alternate translation: “descend from Gershon” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Libnites...Shimeites...Gershonites

“Libnites” and “Shimeites” are the name of clans, named after the head of their family. The “Gershonites” is the name of people who descended from Gershon. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [family, household](#)
- [family, household](#)
- [family, household](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [two clans](#)
- [The](#)
- [that were descended from his sons](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> The clans of the Libnites and the Shimeites come from Gershon. These are the clans of the Gershonites.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> [The two clans](#) descended from Gershon are those [that were descended from his sons](#) Libni and Shimei.

## Numbers 3:22

### All the males from a month old and older were counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses counted all the males from a month old and older" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### 7500

"seventy-five hundred" or "seven thousand five hundred" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [In those two clans there were 7,500](#)
- [old](#)
- [males](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> All the males from a month old and older were counted, totaling 7,500.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> [In those two clans there were 7,500](#) [males](#) who were at least one month [old](#).

## Numbers 3:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- family, household

### Translation Words - UST

- side of the sacred tent

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> The clans of the Gershonites must camp on the west side of the tabernacle.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> They were told to set up their tents on the west [side of the sacred tent](#).

## Numbers 3:24

### Eliasaph...Lael

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [house](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son of](#)
- [The](#)
- [two clans](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Eliasaph son of Lael must lead the clans of the descendants of the Gershonites.

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> [The](#) leader of those [two clans](#) was Eliasaph [son of](#) Lael.

## Numbers 3:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- feast, feasting
- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- Their
- work was to...the sacred
- at

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> The family of Gershon must care for the tent of meeting including the tabernacle. They must care for the tent, its covering, and the curtain used as the entrance to the tent of meeting.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> Their work was to take care of the sacred tent, including its curtains and coverings and the curtain at its entrance,

## Numbers 3:26

### the courtyard hangings

“the curtains in the courtyard”

### the courtyard that surrounds the sanctuary and the altar

“that is, the courtyard that surrounds the sanctuary and the altar”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- altar

#### Translation Words - UST

- the altar

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> They must care for the courtyard hangings, the curtain at the courtyard entrance—the courtyard that surrounds the sanctuary and the altar. They must care for the ropes of the tent of meeting and for everything in it.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> the curtains that formed the walls around the courtyard that is around the tent and around [the altar](#), the curtains that were at the entrance of the courtyard, and the ropes for fastening the tent. They also did all the work of taking care of the things outside the sacred tent.

## Numbers 3:27

### General Information:

This is a list of clans that descended from Kohath. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Kohath

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 3:17](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- family, household
- family, household
- family, household
- family, household
- family, household

### Translation Words - UST

- clans
- descended from
- Hebron
- The
- that were descended from

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> These clans come from Kohath: the clan of the Amramites, the clan of the Izharites, the clan of the Hebronites, and the clan of the Uzzielites. These clans belong to the Kohathites.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> [The clans that were descended from](#) Kohath were those [descended from](#) his sons Amram, Izhar, [Hebron](#), and Uzziel.

## Numbers 3:28

### 8,600 males have been counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses counted 8,600 males" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### 8,600 males

"eight thousand six hundred males" (See: [Numbers](#))

### aged one month old and older

"from a month old and older"

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

### Translation Words - UST

- In those four clans there were...males
- the things that are inside the sacred tent
- The work of the men of the clans was to take care of

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> 8,600 males have been counted aged one month old and older to take care of the things that belong to Yahweh.

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> [In those four clans there were](#) 8,600 [males](#) who were at least one month old. [The work of the men of the clans was to take care of the things that are inside the sacred tent.](#)



## Numbers 3:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- family, household

### Translation Words - UST

- They
- the

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> The Kohath clans must camp on the south side of the tabernacle.

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> They set up their tents on the south side of the sacred tent.

## Numbers 3:30

### General Information:

These verses give us information about the clans that descended from Kohath. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [clan](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son of](#)
- [The](#)
- [clans](#)
- [leader](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Elizaphan son of Uzziel must lead the clans of the Kohathites.

### UST

<sup>30</sup> [The leader](#) of those four [clans](#) was Elizaphan [son of](#) Uzziel.

## Numbers 3:31

### the holy things that are used in their service

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the holy things which the priests use for service” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [the sacred tent](#)
- [that is inside the tent](#)

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> They must care for the ark, the table, the lampstand, the altars, the holy things that are used in their service, the curtain, and all the work around it.

#### UST

<sup>31</sup> The work of the men of those clans was to take care of the sacred chest, the table on which the priest put the sacred bread, the lampstand, the altars, all the items that the priest used in [the sacred tent](#), and the curtain [that is inside the tent](#). Their work was also to take care of the things inside the tent.

## Numbers 3:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- priest, priesthood
- Aaron
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- sacred tent
- He
- Aaron's
- of Levi
- of all the male descendants

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Eleazar son of Aaron the priest must lead the men who lead the Levites. He must supervise the men who care for the holy place.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> Aaron's son Eleazar was the leader of all the male descendants of Levi. He supervised all the work that was done at the sacred tent.

## Numbers 3:33

### General Information:

This is a list of clans that descended from Merari. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- family, household
- family, household
- family, household

### Translation Words - UST

- were descended from
- descended from his sons
- The clans

### ULT

**33** Two clans have come from Merari: the clan of the Mahlites and the clan of the Mushites. These clans have come from Merari.

### UST

**33** [The clans](#) that [were descended from](#) Merari were those [descended from his sons](#) Mahli and Mushi.

## Numbers 3:34

### 6,200 males have been counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses counted 6,200 males" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### 6,200 males

"six thousand two hundred males" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [males](#)
- [old](#)

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> 6,200 males have been counted aged one month old and older.

#### UST

<sup>34</sup> In those two clans there were 6,200 [males](#) who were at least one month [old](#).

## Numbers 3:35

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- clan
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- son of Abihail
- The leader of those two clans
- The leader of those two clans
- The leader of those two clans

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Zuriel son of Abihail must lead the clans of Merari. They must camp on the north side of the tabernacle.

### UST

<sup>35</sup> They were told to set up their tents on the north side of the sacred tent. [The leader of those two clans](#) was Zuriel [son of Abihail](#).

## Numbers 3:36

### the framing

This to the panels that they made by joining together smaller pieces of wood.

### crossbars

These are support beams that give stability to the structure.

### posts

A post is a strong piece of wood set upright and used as a support.

### bases

The bases held the posts in place.

### hardware

This means everything used to join the crossbars, posts, and bases together.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [column, pillar](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [The work of the men](#)
- [the pillars](#)

### ULT

**36** The descendants of Merari must care for the framing of the tabernacle, the crossbars, posts, bases, all the hardware, and everything related to them, including

### UST

**36** [The work of the men](#) of those two clans was to take care of the frames that held up the tent, the crossbars, [the pillars](#), and the bases. They also did all the work that was connected with those items.



## Numbers 3:37

### with their sockets

Here “their” refers to the “pillars and posts.”

### sockets, pegs, and ropes

These are all items used secure the pillars and posts into place.

### Translation Words - ULT

- column, pillar

### Translation Words - UST

- Their work was also to take care of the posts

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> the pillars and posts of the courtyard that surround the tabernacle, with their sockets, pegs, and ropes.

### UST

<sup>37</sup> [Their work was also to take care of the posts](#) that held up the curtains that formed the walls of the courtyard, and all the bases, tent pegs, and ropes that fastened those curtains.

## Numbers 3:38

### his sons

Here “his” refers to Aaron

### toward the sunrise

This is the east side of the tabernacle. Alternate translation: “on the east side, where the sun rises” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### for the fulfillment of the duties

The word “fulfillment” is an abstract noun that can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “to perform the duties” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Any foreigner who approaches the sanctuary must be put to death

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “You must kill any foreigner who approaches the sanctuary” or “Any foreigner who approaches the sanctuary must die” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- sanctuary
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- feast, feasting
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

### Translation Words - UST

- sons
- the Israelite people. Only the priests were permitted to do that. Yahweh declared that anyone else who went near
- Their work was to supervise the work that would
- the Israelite people. Only the priests were permitted to do that. Yahweh declared that anyone else who went near
- Aaron and Moses
- were told to set up...in front of the sacred tent
- Their work was to supervise the work that would

### ULT

**38** Moses and Aaron and his sons must camp on the east side of the tabernacle, in front of the tent of meeting, toward the sunrise. They are responsible for the fulfillment of the duties of the sanctuary and the duties of the people of Israel. Any foreigner who approaches the sanctuary must be put to death.

### UST

**38** [Aaron and Moses](#) and Aaron's [sons](#) [were told to set up](#) their tents in the area [in front of the sacred tent](#), on the east side. [Their work was to supervise the work that would](#) be done in and around the sacred tent, for the benefit of [the Israelite people. Only the priests were permitted to do that. Yahweh declared that anyone else who went near](#) the tent to do the work that the priests do must be executed.

## Numbers 3:39

### twenty-two thousand men

"22,000 men" or "22,000 males" (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)
- [clan](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [total was](#)
- [counted](#)
- [the males](#)
- [to the clans](#)
- [When...Moses](#)
- [descended from Levi, the](#)
- [to the clans](#)

#### ULT

<sup>39</sup> Moses and Aaron counted all the males in the clans of Levi who were aged one month old and older, just as Yahweh commanded. They counted twenty-two thousand men.

#### UST

<sup>39</sup> [When](#) Aaron and [Moses counted](#) all [the males](#) who were at least one month old, who belonged [to the clans descended from Levi, the total was](#) twenty-two thousand.

## Numbers 3:40

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [firstborn](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Now count](#)
- [males](#)
- [the other](#)
- [Then Yahweh](#)
- [their names](#)
- [in Israel](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [firstborn](#)

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, "Count all the firstborn males of the people of Israel who are aged one month old and older. List their names.

### UST

<sup>40</sup> [Then Yahweh](#) said to [Moses](#), "[Now count](#) all [the other firstborn males in Israel](#) who are at least one month old, and write down [their names](#)."

## Numbers 3:41

### the livestock of the Levites

This refers to all the Levites' livestock. Alternate translation: "you must take all the Levites' livestock" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- beast
- firstborn
- firstborn

#### Translation Words - UST

- of the other Israelites
- of the other
- to be substitutes for
- of the other Israelites
- Israelite people
- descendants of Levi
- descendants of Levi
- livestock
- the firstborn males
- firstborn

#### ULT

**41** You must take the Levites for me—I am Yahweh—instead of all the firstborn of the people of Israel, and the livestock of the Levites instead of the firstborn of the livestock of the descendants of Israel."

#### UST

**41** Also, set apart for me the [descendants of Levi to be substitutes for the firstborn males of the other Israelites](#). And set apart for me the [livestock](#) of the [descendants of Levi](#) to be substitutes for the [firstborn](#) livestock [of the other Israelite people](#)."

## Numbers 3:42

### all the firstborn people

“all the firstborn sons”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [firstborn](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [had commanded](#)
- [Israelite people](#)
- [He counted](#)
- [as Yahweh](#)
- [Israelite people](#)
- [So Moses did](#)
- [the firstborn males](#)

#### ULT

<sup>42</sup> Moses counted all the firstborn people of Israel as Yahweh had commanded him to do.

#### UST

<sup>42</sup> [So Moses did](#) that. [He counted the firstborn males](#) of all the [Israelite people](#), [as Yahweh had commanded](#).

## Numbers 3:43

### 22,273 men

“twenty-two thousand two hundred and seventy-three men” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [firstborn](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [of those who...one month old was](#)
- [of those who...one month old was](#)
- [of those who...one month old was](#)

#### ULT

<sup>43</sup> He counted all the firstborn males by name, aged one month old and older. He counted 22,273 men.

#### UST

<sup>43</sup> The total [of those who](#) were at least [one month old was](#) 22,273.

## Numbers 3:44

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>44</sup> Again, Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said,

#### UST

<sup>44</sup> Then [Yahweh](#) said [to Moses](#),



## Numbers 3:45

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- Levi, Levite, Levitical (2)
- beast
- beast
- firstborn

### Translation Words - UST

- Levi to be substitutes for the firstborn males of the other Israelite people. The
- Yahweh
- Levi to be substitutes for the firstborn males of the other Israelite people. The
- Levi to be substitutes for the firstborn males of the other Israelite people. The
- Levi to be substitutes for the firstborn males of the other Israelite people. The
- descendants of Levi belong...me (2)
- Levi to be substitutes for the firstborn males of the other Israelite people. The
- Levi to be substitutes for the firstborn males of the other Israelite people. The
- Levi to be substitutes for the firstborn males of the other Israelite people. The

### ULT

<sup>45</sup> "Take the Levites instead of all the firstborn among the people of Israel, and take the Levites' livestock instead of the people's livestock. The Levites belong to me—I am Yahweh.

### UST

<sup>45</sup> "Set apart the descendants of [Levi to be substitutes for the firstborn males of the other Israelite people](#). [The descendants of Levi belong to me](#), [Yahweh](#).

## Numbers 3:46

### for the redemption of

The noun “redemption” can be translated with the verb “redeem.”  
Alternate translation: “to redeem” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### 273 firstborn

“two hundred and seventy-three firstborn” (See: [Numbers](#))

### firstborn people of Israel

“firstborn sons of Israel”

### five shekels

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. Alternate translation: “about 55 grams of silver” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Biblical Money](#))

### who exceed the number of the Levites

This means that there are 273 more firstborn males among the other tribes of the Israelites than there are total number of Levite males.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

### Translation Words - UST

- of the other
- Israelite people
- descendants of Levi

#### ULT

<sup>46</sup> You must collect five shekels for the redemption of each of the 273 firstborn people of Israel who exceed the number of the Levites.

#### UST

<sup>46</sup> There are 273 more firstborn males [of the other Israelite people](#) than of the [descendants of Levi](#).

## Numbers 3:47

### You must use the shekel of the sanctuary as your standard weight

This means that the shekel must weight the same as those in the sanctuary. Alternate translation: "You must use the weight of the shekels in the sanctuary as your stand weight" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### twenty gerahs

"20 gerahs." A gerah is a unit of weight equal to about .57 kilograms. (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)

### ULT

<sup>47</sup> You must use the shekel of the sanctuary as your standard weight. The shekel equals twenty gerahs.

### UST

<sup>47-48</sup> To pay for these 273 males, collect five pieces of silver for each of them. Each of those pieces of silver must weigh the same as each of the silver pieces that are stored in the sacred tent. Give this silver to Aaron and his sons."

## Numbers 3:48

### the price of redemption that you paid

Here the word "price" refers to the shekels that Moses collected.  
Alternate translation: "the money that you collected for their redemption" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [silver](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [silver](#)

#### ULT

**48** You must give the price of redemption that you paid to Aaron and his sons."

#### UST

**47-48** To pay for these 273 males, collect five pieces of silver for each of them. Each of those pieces of silver must weigh the same as each of the silver pieces that are stored in the sacred tent. Give this silver to Aaron and his sons."

## Numbers 3:49

### of redemption from

The noun “redemption” can be translated with the verb “redeem.”  
Alternate translation: “to redeem” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)
- [silver](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [from those 273 males](#)
- [silver](#)

#### ULT

<sup>49</sup> So Moses collected the payment of redemption from those who exceeded the number of those redeemed by the Levites.

#### UST

<sup>49</sup> So [Moses](#) did that. He collected the [silver from those 273 males](#).

## Numbers 3:50

### 1,365 shekels

"one thousand three hundred and sixty-five shekels." A shekel is 11 grams. Alternate translation: "about 15 kilograms of silver" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Money](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Israel, Israelites
- silver
- firstborn

#### Translation Words - UST

- The total was...same as each of the silver pieces stored in the
- sacred tent
- The total was...same as each of the silver pieces stored in the
- of silver
- The total was...same as each of the silver pieces stored in the

#### ULT

<sup>50</sup> Moses collected the money from the firstborn of the people of Israel. He collected 1,365 shekels, weighing with the shekel of the sanctuary.

#### UST

<sup>50</sup> The total was 1,365 pieces of silver. Each silver piece weighed the same as each of the silver pieces stored in the sacred tent.

## Numbers 3:51

### the redemption money

This refers to the money that Moses collected.

### to his sons

Here "his" refers to Aaron

### he was told to do by Yahweh's word, as Yahweh had commanded him

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### he was told to do by Yahweh's word

Here "Yahweh's word" refers to Yahweh who spoke to Moses. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that Yahweh had told him to do" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [silver](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [as Yahweh had commanded](#)
- [sons](#)
- [as Yahweh had commanded](#)
- [as Yahweh had commanded](#)
- [Moses gave](#)
- [Moses gave](#)
- [silver pieces](#)

### ULT

<sup>51</sup> Moses gave the redemption money to Aaron and to his sons. Moses did everything he was told to do by Yahweh's word, as Yahweh had commanded him.

### UST

<sup>51</sup> [Moses gave](#) these [silver pieces](#) to Aaron and his [sons, as Yahweh had commanded](#).

## **Numbers 4**

### **Numbers 4 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Counting the Levites by clans**

Moses gave special instructions for each of the families of the tribes of Levi. Each family was given a special role in the ministry of the tabernacle. (See: [tabernacle](#))



## Numbers 4:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses and to Aaron](#)
- [to Moses and to Aaron](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses and to Aaron.  
He said,

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then [Yahweh](#) said [to Moses and to Aaron](#),

## Numbers 4:2

### Kohath

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 3:17](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [clan](#)
- [head](#)
- [house](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [names of the](#)
- [descended from](#) (2)
- [descended from](#)
- [clans](#)
- [descended from](#)
- [men who belong](#)
- [to the](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> "Conduct a census of the male descendants of Kohath from among the Levites, by their clans and families.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> "Write down the [names of the men who belong to the clans descended from](#) Kohath.

## Numbers 4:3

### thirty to fifty years old

“30 to 50 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

### join the company

The word “company” refers to the rest of the people working in the tent of meeting.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Write the names of the men](#)
- [who are between...50 years old](#)
- [at](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Count all the men who are thirty to fifty years old. These men must join the company to serve in the tent of meeting.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> [Write the names of the men who are between](#) 30 and [50 years old](#). These will be men who will do work [at](#) the sacred tent.

## Numbers 4:4

### reserved for me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that I have specially selected for myself" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- descendants of
- items that are used when the people worship at...sacred
- the
- will be to take care of the sacred

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> The descendants of Kohath must take care of the most holy things reserved for me in the tent of meeting.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> The work of these [descendants of Kohath](#) [will be to take care of the sacred items that are used when the people worship at the sacred](#) tent.

## Numbers 4:5

### When the camp prepares

Here “camp” refers to all of the people in the camp. Alternate translation: “When the people prepare” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### to move forward

This refers to the people moving to another location. Alternate translation: “to move to another location” (See: [Idiom](#))

### cover the ark of the testimony with it

The word “it” refers to the curtain that separated the most holy place from the holy place.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and his sons](#)
- [When you Israelites...Aaron](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> When the camp prepares to move forward, Aaron and his sons must go into the tent, take down the curtain that separates the most holy place from the holy place and cover the ark of the testimony with it.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> [When you Israelites](#) move to another location, [Aaron and his sons](#) must enter the tent to take down the curtain that separates the very holy place from the holy place in the sacred tent. They must cover the sacred chest with that curtain.

## Numbers 4:6

### insert the poles

The poles were inserted into rings on the sides of the ark so that the poles could be used to carry the ark. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “insert the poles into the rings on the ark’s sides” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [for carrying it](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> They must cover the ark with a piece of fine leather. They must spread a blue cloth over it. They must insert the poles to carry it.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> Then they must cover that with a covering made from fine leather skins. Over that they must spread a blue cloth. Then they must insert into the rings on the chest the poles [for carrying it](#).

## Numbers 4:7

### the bread of the presence

This bread represents the presence of Yahweh. Alternate translation: "the bread of Yahweh's presence" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### On it they must put

Here "it" refers to the blue cloth.

### bowls, and jars for pouring

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "bowls and jars used to pour out drink offerings" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Bread must always continue to be

There must always be bread"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bread](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the sacred bread](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> They are to spread a blue cloth on the table of the bread of the presence. On it they must put the dishes, spoons, bowls, and jars for pouring. Bread must always continue to be on the table.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Then they must put a blue cloth over the table on which the priests will put the bread to display before God. On top of the cloth they must put the bowls for incense, the pans, the other dishes, the jars for the wine that will be offered as a sacrifice, and [the sacred bread](#).

## Numbers 4:8

### They are to spread over them

Here the word “them” refers to “the dishes, spoons, bowls, and jars” (verse 7).

### scarlet cloth

“red cloth”

### insert poles

The poles were inserted into rings on the corners of the table so that the poles could be used to carry the table. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “insert poles into the rings at the corners of the table” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [for carrying it](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> They are to spread over them a scarlet cloth and cover the same with hides of fine leather. They must insert poles to carry the table.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Over all of this they must spread a scarlet cloth. Finally, they must put on top a covering made from fine leather skins. Then they must insert into the rings at the corners of the tables the poles [for carrying it](#).



## Numbers 4:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- olive
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- olive oil
- lamps

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> They must take a blue cloth and cover the lampstand, along with its lamps, tongs, trays, and all the jars of oil for the lamps.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Then with another blue cloth they must cover the lampstand, the lamps, the lamp snuffers, the trays, and the special jars of [olive oil](#) to burn in the [lamps](#).

## Numbers 4:10

### **They must put...into a covering of fine leather**

"They must cover...with fine leather"

### **they must put it on a carrying frame**

"they must place all of these things on a frame for carrying them"

#### **ULT**

**10** They must put the lampstand and all its accessories into a covering of fine leather, and they must put it on a carrying frame.

#### **UST**

**10** They must cover the lampstand and all the other items with a covering made from fine leather skins. They must place all these things on a frame for carrying them.

## Numbers 4:11

### insert the carrying poles

The poles were inserted into rings on the sides of the altar so they could be used to carry it. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "insert the carrying poles into the rings on the sides of the altar" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- appoint, appointed
- gold, golden

#### Translation Words - UST

- altar which is used for burning incense
- for carrying it
- the gold

#### ULT

**11** They must spread a cloth of blue on the gold altar. They must cover it with a covering of fine leather, and then insert the carrying poles.

#### UST

**11** Then they must spread another blue cloth over [the gold altar which is used for burning incense](#). Over this they must spread a covering made from fine leather skins. Then they must insert into the rings of that altar the poles [for carrying it](#).

## Numbers 4:12

### the carrying frame

a wooden rectangle made with poles used to carry things

### for the work in the holy place

The word “work” is an abstract noun that can be expressed with the verb “serving.” Alternate translation: “used when serving Yahweh in the holy place” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [other items](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> They must take all the equipment for the work in the holy place and wrap it in a blue cloth. They must cover that with the hides of fine leather and put the equipment on the carrying frame.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> They must take all the [other items](#) that are inside the sacred tent and wrap them in a blue cloth, cover that with a covering made from fine leather skins, and place all that on a frame for carrying it.

## Numbers 4:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar

### Translation Words - UST

- the altar

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> They must remove the ashes from the altar and spread a purple cloth on the altar.

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> Then they must remove the ashes from [the altar](#) on which they have burned sacrifices. Then they must cover the altar with a purple cloth.

## Numbers 4:14

### in the work of the altar

The word “work” is an abstract noun that can be expressed with the verb “serving.” Alternate translation: “when serving at the altar” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### insert the carrying poles

The poles were inserted into rings on the sides of the altar so they could be used to carry it. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “insert the carrying poles into the rings on the sides of the altar” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- appoint, appointed
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- the sides of the altar
- for carrying it
- all the items used at the altar

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> They must put on the carrying frame all the equipment that they use in the work of the altar. These objects are the firepans, forks, shovels, bowls, and all the other equipment for the altar. They must cover the altar with fine leather hides and then insert the carrying poles.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> Then they must spread on top of the cloth [all the items used at the altar](#)—the pans for carrying the hot coals, the meat forks, the shovels, the bowls that hold the blood to sprinkle on the people, and all the other containers. Then they must spread over all those things a covering made from fine leather skins. Then they must insert into the rings at [the sides of the altar](#) the poles [for carrying it](#).

## Numbers 4:15

### to carry the holy place

Here the holy place refers to all the items that make up the holy place that Aaron and his sons covered in cloth and skins. Alternate translation: “to carry all of the items of the holy place” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### when the camp moves forward

Here the word “camp” refers to all of the people in the camp. Alternate translation: “when the people move forward” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Kohath

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 3:17](#).

### the holy instruments

“the holy equipment”

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Aaron
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- feast, feasting
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### Translation Words - UST

- sons
- But the descendants of
- The descendants of
- sacred
- sacred
- sacred items, because they will
- When Aaron
- things
- but they must not touch them
- immediately die if they touch them

### ULT

**15** When Aaron and his sons have completely covered the holy place and all its equipment, and when the camp moves forward, then the descendants of Kohath must come to carry the holy place. If they touch the holy instruments, they must die. This is the work of the descendants of Kohath, to carry the furnishings in the tent of meeting.

### UST

**15** [When Aaron](#) and his [sons](#) have finished covering all these [sacred things](#), the Israelite people will be ready to move to a new location. [The descendants of](#) Kohath must come and carry all the [sacred](#) things to the next place where the Israelites will set up their tents. [But the descendants of](#) Kohath must not touch any of these [sacred items, because they will immediately die if they touch them](#). They are the ones who will carry these things, [but they must not touch them](#).

## Numbers 4:16

### the oil for the light

Here the word "light" is used to refer to the "lamps." Alternate translation: "the oil for the lamps" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the care of

Here the abstract noun "care" can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: "those who care for" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- priest, priesthood
- Aaron
- olive
- oil
- grain offering

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- priests. Eleazar is...supervise the work that is done
- Aaron's
- of taking care of the olive oil
- and the olive oil
- the flour that will be burned

### ULT

**16** Eleazar son of Aaron the priest oversees the care of the oil for the light, the sweet incense, the regular grain offering, and the anointing oil. He oversees the care of the entire tabernacle and all that is in it, the holy place and its equipment."

### UST

**16** [Aaron's son](#) Eleazar will have the work [of taking care of the olive oil](#) for the lamps, the sweet smelling incense, [the flour that will be burned](#) on the altar each day, [and the olive oil](#) for anointing the [priests](#). [Eleazar is](#) the one who will [supervise the work that is done](#) at the sacred tent and the men who take care of everything that is in it."



## Numbers 4:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses and to Aaron. He said,

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> Then [Yahweh](#) said to [Aaron](#) and [Moses](#),

## Numbers 4:18

### to be removed from among the Levites

This phrase refers to the death of the Kohathites. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “to do anything that will cause me to completely remove them from among the Levites” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- cut off
- family, household
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### Translation Words - UST

- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- cut off
- family, household
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### ULT

**18** “Do not allow the Kohathite tribal clans to be removed from among the Levites.

### UST

**18-20** “When the descendants of Kohath approach the sacred items in the sacred tent to take them to another location, Aaron and his sons must always go in with them and show each of them what work to do and what things to carry. But the descendants of Kohath must not enter the sacred tent at any other time and look at the things that are in it. If they do that, I will get rid of all the descendants of Kohath.”

## Numbers 4:19

### by doing this

This phrase refers to what Yahweh says next. Moses will protect the Kohathites by not allowing them to go in and see the holy place.

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- appoint, appointed
- Aaron
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- appoint, appointed
- Aaron
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

### ULT

**19** Protect them, that they may live and not die, by doing this. When they approach the most holy things

### UST

## Numbers 4:20

### Kohathites

This refers to the descendants of Kohath. See how you translated this in [Numbers 3:27](#).

### to his work, to his special tasks

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#),

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#),

### ULT

**20** they must not go in to see the holy place even for a moment, or they must die. Aaron and his sons must go in, and then Aaron and his sons must assign each of the Kohathites to his work, to his special tasks."

### UST

**18-20** "When the descendants of Kohath approach the sacred items in the sacred tent to take them to another location, Aaron and his sons must always go in with them and show each of them what work to do and what things to carry. But the descendants of Kohath must not enter the sacred tent at any other time and look at the things that are in it. If they do that, I will get rid of all the descendants of Kohath."

## Numbers 4:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Yahweh spoke again to Moses. He said,

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> [Yahweh](#) also said [to Moses](#),

## Numbers 4:22

### of the descendants of Gershon

This refers only to men. Alternate translation: “of the male descendants of Gershon” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Gershon

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 3:17](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- clan
- head
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- of all
- the
- to the clans descended
- men who belong
- from

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> “Conduct a census of the descendants of Gershon also, by their ancestor’s families and by their clans.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> “Write down the names [of all the men who belong to the clans descended from](#) Gershon.

## Numbers 4:23

### thirty years old to fifty years old

“30 years old to 50 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

### join the company to serve in the tent of meeting

The word “company” refers to the rest of the people working in the tent of meeting. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 4:3](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [feast](#), [feasting](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [men who are between thirty and fifty years old...the](#)
- [Write the names of the](#)
- [men who are between thirty and fifty years old...the](#)
- [do work at...sacred tent](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Count those who are thirty years old to fifty years old. Count all of them who will join the company to serve in the tent of meeting.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> [Write the names of the men who are between thirty and fifty years old](#). They will be men who will also [do work at the sacred tent](#).

## Numbers 4:24

### This is the work of the clans...when they serve and what they carry

This sentence is a description that tells us what the following verses are about.

#### Gershonites

This refers to the descendants of Gershon. See how you translated this in [Numbers 3:21](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [family](#), [household](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [and the](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> This is the work of the clans of the Gershonites, when they serve and what they carry.

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> This is the work that they must do [and the](#) things that they must carry when you move to a new location:



## Numbers 4:25

### the covering of fine leather hides that is on it

This is an outer covering that is placed on top of the tent of meeting's covering. Alternate translation: "the covering of fine leather hides that is placed on top of that" or "the outer covering made of fine leather hides" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [feast, feasting](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [of the sacred](#)
- [of the sacred](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> They must carry the curtains of the tabernacle, the tent of meeting, its covering, the covering of fine leather hides that is on it, and the curtains for the entrance to the tent of meeting.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> They must carry the curtains [of the sacred](#) tent. They must carry the sacred tent and all the things that cover it, including the outer covering made from fine leather skins, and the curtain which is at the entrance [of the sacred](#) tent.

## Numbers 4:26

### Whatever should be done with these things

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Whatever work that these things require" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

#### Translation Words - UST

- and the altar
- at the entrance

#### ULT

**26** They must carry the curtains of the court, the curtain for the doorway of the court's gate, which is near the tabernacle and near the altar, their ropes, and all the instruments for their service. Whatever should be done with these things, they must do it.

#### UST

**26** They must also carry the curtains that form the wall that surrounds the courtyard that surrounds the sacred tent [and the altar](#), the curtain that is [at the entrance](#) to the courtyard, and the ropes that fasten the curtains. They must also do the packing and loading of these things.

## Numbers 4:27

### must direct all the service of the descendants of the Gershonites

“must tell the descendants of the Gershonites how they are to serve Yahweh in the tent of meeting”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- appoint, appointed
- Aaron
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

#### Translation Words - UST

- and his sons
- all the descendants of Gershom. That work includes carrying those things
- will supervise the work...and doing other work that is necessary...of the descendants of Gershom
- Aaron
- for moving them
- what things they must carry

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Aaron and his sons must direct all the service of the descendants of the Gershonites, in everything that they transport, and in all their service. You must assign them to all their responsibilities.

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> Aaron and his sons will supervise the work of all the descendants of Gershom. That work includes carrying those things and doing other work that is necessary for moving them. They must tell each of the descendants of Gershom what things they must carry.

## Numbers 4:28

### This is the service of the clans of the descendants of the Gershonites for the tent of meeting

Here the word “service” is an abstract noun that can be expressed by a verb. Here the word “This” refers to what Yahweh just said.

Alternate translation: “This is how the clans of the descendants of the Gershonites will serve in the tent of meeting” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Ithamar

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:2](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- priest, priesthood
- Aaron
- hand
- family, household
- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- descended from
- son
- the one
- Aaron’s
- who will supervise
- to the clans
- who will supervise

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> This is the service of the clans of the descendants of the Gershonites for the tent of meeting. Ithamar son of Aaron the priest must lead them in their service.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> Those are the tasks that you must give to the men who belong [to the clans descended from](#) Gershom. [Aaron’s son](#) Ithamar is [the one who will supervise](#) their work.

## Numbers 4:29

### the descendants of Merari

This refers only to men. Alternate translation: “the male descendants of Merari” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Merari

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 3:17](#).

### order them

“list them”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [clan](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Count also](#)
- [descended from](#)
- [the](#)
- [the clans](#)
- [men who belong](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> You must count the descendants of Merari by their clans, and order them by their ancestor’s families,

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> [Count also the men who belong](#) to [the clans descended from](#) Merari.

## Numbers 4:30

### thirty years old...fifty years old

“30 years old...50 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

### join the company and serve in the tent of meeting

The word “company” refers to the rest of the people working in the tent of meeting. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 4:3](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [feast](#), [feasting](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [old](#)
- [Write the names of the](#)
- [men who are between thirty and fifty years](#)
- [at](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> from thirty years old and older up to fifty years old. Count everyone who is going to join the company and serve in the tent of meeting.

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> [Write the names of the men who are between thirty and fifty years old](#). They will be men who will also work [at](#) the sacred tent.

## Numbers 4:31

### This is their responsibility

"This" refers to what Yahweh says next.

### crossbars, posts, and sockets

These are all parts of the framing of the tabernacle. See how you translated all of these parts in [Numbers 3:36-37](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- feast, feasting
- column, pillar

### Translation Words - UST

- will be to carry
- frames...hold up the sacred tent
- the posts that hold up the curtains

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> This is their responsibility and their work in all their service for the tent of meeting. They must care for the framing of the tabernacle, its crossbars, posts, and sockets,

### UST

<sup>31</sup> Their work [will be to carry](#) the [frames](#) that [hold up the sacred tent](#), the crossbars, [the posts that hold up the curtains](#), and the bases.

## Numbers 4:32

### their sockets, pegs, and their ropes, with all their hardware

Here “their” refers to the posts of the court.

### sockets, pegs, and their ropes

These are all parts of the framing of the tabernacle. See how you translated all of these parts in [Numbers 3:36-37](#).

### List by name the articles they must carry

“List by each man’s name the articles he must carry”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [burden](#), [burdened](#), [burdensome](#), [heavy](#), [hard work](#), [hard labor](#), [utterances](#)
- [column](#), [pillar](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [must carry](#)
- [what things](#)
- [the posts](#)

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> along with the posts of the courtyard around the tabernacle, their sockets, pegs, and their ropes, with all their hardware. List by name the articles they must carry.

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> They must also carry [the posts](#) for the curtains that form the walls of the courtyard and the bases for the posts, the tent pegs, and the ropes to fasten the curtains. Tell each man [what things](#) he [must carry](#).



## Numbers 4:33

### under the direction of Ithamar son of Aaron the priest

The word “direction” is an abstract noun that is expressed by a verb.  
Alternate translation: “as Ithamar son of Aaron the priest directs them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Ithamar

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:2](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- priest, priesthood
- Aaron
- hand
- family, household
- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- descendants of
- son
- the one who will supervise
- Aaron’s
- them
- the
- at

### ULT

**33** This is the service of the clans of the descendants of Merari, what they are to do for the tent of meeting, under the direction of Ithamar son of Aaron the priest.”

### UST

**33** Those are the tasks that [the descendants of](#) Merari must do [at](#) the sacred tent. [Aaron’s son](#) Ithamar is [the one who will supervise them](#).”

## Numbers 4:34

### the descendants of the Kohathites

The refers to men. Alternate translation: “the male descendants of the Kohathites” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Kohathites

This refers to the descendants of Kohath. See how you translated this in [Numbers 3:27](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [clan](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [descendants](#)
- [counted](#)
- [and Moses](#)
- [of their clans](#)
- [writing also the names](#)

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> Moses and Aaron and the leaders of the community counted the descendants of the Kohathites by the clans of their ancestor's families.

### UST

<sup>34</sup> So Aaron [and Moses](#) and the Israelite leaders [counted](#) the [descendants](#) of Kohath, [writing also the names of their clans](#) and family groups.

## Numbers 4:35

### thirty years old...fifty years old

"30 years old...50 years old" (See: [Numbers](#))

### everyone who would join the company

Here the word "would" does not mean that the men "chose" to join the company but rather that they were "assigned" to the company. Alternate translation: "everyone who was assigned to join the company" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### join the company to serve in the tent of meeting

The word "company" refers to the rest of the people working in the tent of meeting. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 4:3](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- feast, feasting
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- They counted all the men who were between thirty and fifty years old who were able to work
- They counted all the men who were between thirty and fifty years old who were able to work
- at the
- They counted all the men who were between thirty and fifty years old who were able to work

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> They counted them from thirty years old and older up to fifty years old. They counted everyone who would join the company to serve in the tent of meeting.

#### UST

<sup>35</sup> They counted all the men who were between thirty and fifty years old who were able to work at the sacred tent.

## Numbers 4:36

### 2,750 men

“two thousand seven hundred and fifty men” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [clan](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [total](#)
- [The](#)

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> They counted 2,750 men by their clans.

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> [The total](#) was 2,750 men.

## Numbers 4:37

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)
- [family](#), [household](#)
- [feast](#), [feasting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [were](#)
- [counted](#)
- [Yahweh had commanded](#)
- [and Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [them](#)
- [the descendants](#)
- [at the](#)

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> This was the list of all the Kohathites who served in the tent of meeting. Moses and Aaron counted them according to Yahweh's command that was given through Moses.

### UST

<sup>37</sup> They [were the descendants](#) of Kohath who were able to work [at the](#) sacred tent. Aaron [and Moses counted them](#) just as [Yahweh had commanded Moses](#).

## Numbers 4:38

### The descendants of Gershon

This refers to the men. Alternate translation: "The male descendants of Gershon" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### The descendants of Gershon were counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses and Aaron counted the descendants of Gershon" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [clan](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the descendants of](#)
- [They also counted](#)
- [of their clans](#)
- [writing also the names](#)

### ULT

**38** The descendants of Gershon were counted in their clans, by their ancestor's families,

### UST

**38** [They also counted the descendants of](#) Gershon, [writing also the names of their clans](#) and family groups.

## Numbers 4:39

### from thirty to fifty years old

“from 30 to 50 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

### everyone who would join the company

Here the word “would” does not mean that the men “chose” to join the company but rather that they were “assigned” to the company. Alternate translation: “everyone who was assigned to join the company” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### join the company to serve in the tent of meeting

The word “company” refers to the rest of the people working in the tent of meeting. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 4:3](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- feast, feasting
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### Translation Words - UST

- They
- counted...the men who were between thirty and fifty years old
- at the
- work

#### ULT

<sup>39</sup> from thirty to fifty years old, everyone who would join the company to serve in the tent of meeting.

#### UST

<sup>39</sup> [They counted](#) all [the men who were between thirty and fifty years old](#) who were able to [work at the](#) sacred tent.

## Numbers 4:40

### counted by their clans

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom Moses and Aaron counted by their clans” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### 2630

“two thousand six hundred and thirty.” This refers to 2,630 men. (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [clan](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [total](#)
- [men](#)
- [The](#)
- [men](#)

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> All the men, counted by their clans and their ancestor’s families, numbered 2,630.

### UST

<sup>40</sup> [The total](#) was 2,630 [men](#).



## Numbers 4:41

### they obeyed

The word “they” refers to Moses and Aaron.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [family, household](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [were](#)
- [counted them](#)
- [descendants of](#)
- [Yahweh had commanded](#)
- [and Moses](#)
- [the](#)
- [at the](#)

#### ULT

<sup>41</sup> Moses and Aaron counted the clans of the descendants of Gershon who would serve in the tent of meeting. In doing this, they obeyed what Yahweh had commanded them to do through Moses.

#### UST

<sup>41</sup> They [were the descendants of](#) Gershon who were able to work [at the](#) sacred tent. Aaron [and Moses counted them](#) as [Yahweh had commanded](#).

## Numbers 4:42

### The descendants of Merari were counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses and Aaron counted the descendants of Merari" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- appoint, appointed
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- clan
- family, household
- house

#### Translation Words - UST

- descendants of
- They also counted
- of their clans
- writing also the names
- the
- and family groups

#### ULT

<sup>42</sup> The descendants of Merari were counted in their clans by their ancestor's families,

#### UST

<sup>42</sup> [They also counted the descendants of](#) Merari, [writing also the names of their clans and family groups](#).

## Numbers 4:43

### from thirty to fifty years old

“from 30 to 50 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

### everyone who would join the company

Here the word “would” does not mean that the men “chose” to join the company but rather that they were “assigned” to the company. Alternate translation: “everyone who was assigned to join the company” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### join the company to serve in the tent of meeting

The word “company” refers to the rest of the people working in the tent of meeting. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 4:3](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- feast, feasting
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- They
- counted...the men who were between thirty and fifty years old
- at the
- work

#### ULT

<sup>43</sup> from thirty to fifty years old, everyone who would join the company to serve in the tent of meeting.

#### UST

<sup>43</sup> [They counted](#) all [the men who were between thirty and fifty years old](#) who were able to [work at the](#) sacred tent.

## Numbers 4:44

### counted by their clans

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom Moses and Aaron counted by their clans” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### numbered 3,200

“numbered three thousand two hundred” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [clan](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [total](#)
- [The](#)

#### ULT

<sup>44</sup> All the men, counted by their clans and their ancestor’s families, numbered 3,200.

#### UST

<sup>44</sup> [The total](#) was 3,200 men.

## Numbers 4:45

### they obeyed

The word “they” refers to Moses and Aaron.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)
- [family, household](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [were](#)
- [counted](#)
- [descendants of](#)
- [as Yahweh had commanded](#)
- [and Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [them](#)
- [the](#)

#### ULT

<sup>45</sup> Moses and Aaron counted all these men, the descendants of Merari. In doing this, they obeyed what Yahweh had commanded them to do through Moses.

#### UST

<sup>45</sup> They [were the descendants of](#) Merari who were able to work. Aaron [and Moses counted them as Yahweh had commanded Moses](#).

## Numbers 4:46

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [clan](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [counted](#)
- [the Israelite](#)
- [and Moses](#)
- [of Levi](#)
- [of their clans](#)
- [writing also the names](#)

### ULT

<sup>46</sup> So Moses, Aaron, and the leaders of Israel counted all the Levites by their clans in their ancestral families

### UST

<sup>46</sup> So Aaron [and Moses](#) and [the Israelite](#) leaders [counted](#) all the descendants [of Levi](#), [writing also the names of their clans](#) and family groups.

## Numbers 4:47

### from thirty to fifty

This refers to men. Alternate translation: “men from thirty to fifty” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### from thirty to fifty

“from 30 to 50” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- They
- counted...the men who were between thirty and fifty years old. They
- and everything that was connected with it
- at the

### ULT

<sup>47</sup> from thirty to fifty years old. They counted everyone who would do work in the tabernacle, and who would carry and care for the items in the tent of meeting.

### UST

<sup>47</sup> [They counted](#) all [the men who were between thirty and fifty years old](#). They were ones who were able to work [at the](#) sacred tent and who carried the tent [and everything that was connected with it](#).

## Numbers 4:48

### 8,580 men

“eight thousand five hundred and eighty men” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [The total](#)

#### ULT

<sup>48</sup> They counted 8,580 men.

#### UST

<sup>48</sup> [The total](#) was 8,580 men.



## Numbers 4:49

### At Yahweh's command

"As Yahweh commanded"

### keeping count of each by the type...He counted each man by the kind of responsibility he would bear

These two phrase have similar meaning and are used together to emphasize how Moses counted all the men.

### by the type of work he was assigned to do

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "by his type of work assignment" or "by the type of work he had assigned each man to do" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### he would bear

"he would have"

### they obeyed what Yahweh had commanded them

Here "they" and "them" refer to Moses and Aaron.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [descendants](#)
- [had commanded](#)
- [must carry](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [he](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [when they moved to a new location](#)
- [and what things](#)
- [And they told](#)

### ULT

<sup>49</sup> At Yahweh's command, Moses counted each man, keeping count of each by the type of work he was assigned to do. He counted each man by the kind of responsibility he would bear. In doing this, they obeyed what Yahweh had commanded them to do through Moses.

### UST

<sup>49</sup> They completed the counting of all the [descendants](#) of Levi, as [Yahweh had commanded Moses](#). [And they told](#) each man what work he was to do [and what things he must carry when they moved to a new location](#).

## Numbers 5

### Numbers 5 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Israel's camp

Israel's entire camp was to be a "clean" place. This meant that people who could not be made acceptable to God were not allowed inside the camp. (See: [clean](#), [wash](#))

#### Vengeance

There are several laws in this chapter regarding restitution. These laws were meant to limit the ways in which people who had been wronged could seek to be compensated. These laws were intended to make it difficult for such people to avenge a wrong when they were angry. (See: [avenge](#), [avenger](#), [revenge](#), [vengeance](#) and [jealous](#), [jealousy](#))

## Numbers 5:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said,

### UST

<sup>1</sup> [Yahweh](#) said [to Moses](#),

## Numbers 5:2

### infectious skin disease

This refers to leprosy, which is a sickness that affects the skin and easily spreads to other people.

### oozing sore

This refers to an open cut that is leaking fluids.

### whoever is unclean through touching a dead body

If a person touched a dead body they were considered unclean. A person who is not acceptable for God's purposes is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Tell](#)
- [from](#)
- [this to...Israelite people](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> "Command the people of Israel to send away from the camp everyone with an infectious skin disease, and everyone who has an oozing sore, and whoever is unclean through touching a dead body.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> "[Tell this to](#) the [Israelite people](#): 'You must send away from your camp where you have your tents any man or woman who has leprosy and anyone who has a discharge of some fluid [from](#) his body, and anyone who has become unacceptable to God because of having touched a corpse.

## Numbers 5:3

### you must send

Here “you” is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Whether male or female, you must send them out of the camp. They must not defile the camp, because I live in it.”

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> Send them away in order that they will not touch people in the camp area where I live among you and cause them to become unacceptable to me.”

## Numbers 5:4

### The people of Israel did so

This means that they sent the unclean people away. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "The people of Israel sent those who were unclean out of the camp" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses

#### Translation Words - UST

- Israelite
- people
- what Yahweh...Moses
- Israelite
- people
- what Yahweh...Moses

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> The people of Israel did so. They sent them out of the camp, as Yahweh commanded Moses. The people of Israel obeyed Yahweh.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> So the [Israelite people](#) obeyed [what Yahweh](#) commanded [Moses](#).

## Numbers 5:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Again Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said,

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> [Yahweh](#) also told [Moses](#),

## Numbers 5:6

### any sin such as people do to one another

“any sin that people usually commit against one another”

### is unfaithful to me

If someone sins against another person, it means that they have also sinned against Yahweh and Yahweh considers that person as unfaithful to him. Alternate translation: “they have also wronged me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- transgress, transgression

#### Translation Words - UST

- wrong
- the Israelite people
- to me
- the Israelite people
- commits a crime

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> “Speak to the people of Israel. When a man or woman commits any sin such as people do to one another, and is unfaithful to me, that person is guilty.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> “Tell this to [the Israelite people](#): ‘If someone [commits a crime](#) against another person, I consider that that person has done [wrong to me](#).



## Numbers 5:7

### the price of his guilt

Here the person's "sin" is referred to as his "guilt." Alternate translation: "what is considered a suitable amount of money for the wrong that he has done" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### add to the price one-fifth more

This means the person must pay an extra one-fifth of the price that he owes.

### one-fifth

This is one part out of five equal parts. (See: [Fractions](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [confess](#), [confession](#)
- [head](#)
- [return](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [wrong](#)
- [That person must confess that he or she is](#)
- [person](#)
- [to](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Then he must confess the sin that he has done. He must completely pay back the price of his guilt and add to the price one-fifth more. He must give this to the one he has wronged.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> [That person must confess that he or she is](#) guilty, and he or she must pay [to](#) the [person](#) to whom [wrong](#) was done what others consider to be a suitable payment for what he has done, and he must pay an extra 20 percent.

## Numbers 5:8

### But if the wronged person has no close relative to receive the payment

Usually the wronged person would receive the payment but if that person has died the payment goes to the closest relative. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "But if the wronged person has died and has no close relative to receive the payment" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### if the wronged person

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "if the person whom the guilty person has wronged" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### he must pay the price for his guilt to me through a priest

If a person made a payment to a priest to pay for his guilt it was the same as if the person had made the payment to Yahweh.

### to atone for himself

The atonement is made for the man's sin. Here Yahweh refers to the man's sin as the man who committed it. Alternate translation: "to atone for his sin" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [redeem, redeemer, redemption](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [relative](#)
- [me](#)
- [to whom the money](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [the one who did the wrong must give a male sheep to the priest to](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But if the wronged person has no close relative to receive the payment, he must pay the price for his guilt to me through a priest, along with a ram to atone for himself.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> If the person against whom the wrong was done has died and there is no [relative to whom the money](#) can be paid, then the money belongs to [me](#), and it must be paid to [the priest](#). In addition, [the one who did the wrong must give a male sheep to the priest to](#) sacrifice in order that that person's sin may be forgiven.

## Numbers 5:9

### the things that are set aside and brought to the priest by the people of Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the things that the people of Israel set aside and bring to the priest” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

#### Translation Words - UST

- them
- the sacred offerings
- the Israelites
- to the priest
- present to me

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Every offering of the people of Israel, the things that are set aside and brought to the priest by the people of Israel, will belong to him.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> All [the sacred offerings](#) that [the Israelites present to me](#) by bringing [them to the priest](#) will belong to the priest.

## Numbers 5:10

**The offerings of every person will be for the priest; if anyone gives anything to the priest, it will belong to him**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and may be combined to state that the offerings that someone gives belong to the priest to whom they have been given. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [priest](#), [priesthood](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [The...those gifts](#)
- [priest](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> The offerings of every person will be for the priest; if anyone gives anything to the priest, it will belong to him."

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> The [priest](#) can keep [those gifts](#)."

## Numbers 5:11

The words “Suppose that a man’s wife turns away” begin a long description of a hypothetical situation, something that has not happened but might happen. Yahweh tells Moses what to do if it does happen. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Again, Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said,

### UST

<sup>11</sup> [Yahweh](#) also said this [to Moses](#):

## Numbers 5:12

### a man's wife turns away

This means that she goes away from him and is unfaithful to him.  
Alternate translation: "a man's wife is unfaithful" (See: [Idiom](#))

### sins against her husband

This means that she is unfaithful to her husband and sins against him by sleeping with another man. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "sins against her husband by sleeping with another man" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [transgress, transgression](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the Israelite people](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)
- [wife has not always slept faithfully only with](#)

### ULT

**12** "Speak to the people of Israel. Say to them, 'Suppose that a man's wife turns away and sins against her husband.

### UST

**12** "Tell this to [the Israelite people](#):  
'Suppose a man thinks that his [wife has not always slept faithfully only with](#) him.

## Numbers 5:13

### Connecting Statement:

Moses continues to describe the hypothetical situation he began describing in [Numbers 5:12](#).

### If a man lies with her

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "If a man has sexual relations with her" (See: [Euphemism](#))

### her

the woman who turns away and sins against her husband ([Numbers 5:12](#))

### in the act

This refers to the act of adultery. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "in the act of adultery" or "sleeping with him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [seed, semen](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [she has slept with another](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> If a man lies with her and it is hidden from the eyes of her husband, and her impurity is undetected even though she defiled herself, and there no witness against her. since she was not caught in the act,

### UST

<sup>13</sup> Suppose he thinks that [she has slept with another](#) man, but he does not know if this is true or not, because he did not see her do it. She was not caught in the act and the fact that she broke her vow to her husband could not be proved because no one saw her doing that.

## Numbers 5:14

### his wife is defiled...his wife is not defiled

These phrases can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "his wife has defiled herself...his wife has not defiled herself" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### a spirit of jealousy might still inform the husband

Here the word "spirit" refers to a person's attitude and emotions. His "jealously" is spoken of as if it were a person who spoke to him. Alternate translation: "the husband might feel jealous and become suspicious" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Personification](#))

### a spirit of jealousy might falsely come on a man

Here the word "spirit" refers to a person's attitude and emotions. The idea of the spirit "coming on him" means that he began to have these jealous feelings. Alternate translation: "a man might feel jealous for no reason" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> nevertheless, a spirit of jealousy might still inform the husband that his wife is defiled. However, a spirit of jealousy might falsely come on a man when his wife is not defiled.

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> But if the woman's husband is [jealous](#), and [if he suspects](#) that [she](#) has [committed adultery](#), and he would want to know whether that is true or not, and so there is a test whether she had been impure.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [spirit, spiritual](#) (2)
- [zeal, zealous](#)
- [zeal, zealous](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [if he suspects](#)
- [she...committed adultery](#) (2)
- [jealous](#)
- [and he would want](#)
- [she...committed adultery](#)



## Numbers 5:15

### Connecting Statement:

Moses begins to describe what the people are to do if the hypothetical situation he began describing in [Numbers 5:12](#) ever happens.

### a tenth

This is one part out of ten equal parts. (See: [Fractions](#))

### a tenth of an ephah

This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: "a tenth of an ephah (which is about 2 liters)" or "2 liters" (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

### a grain offering of jealousy

"a grain offering for jealousy"

### a reminder of the iniquity

A "reminder" is something that shows evidence that something had occurred that required justice. In this case, he made the offering to determine whether his wife had committed adultery or not.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [iniquity](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [olive](#)
- [barley](#)
- [grain offering](#)
- [grain offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [if she is guilty](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [olive oil](#)
- [barley](#)
- [along as an offering two liters...flour...has brought because he is jealous](#)
- [an offering](#)

### ULT

**15** In such cases, the man must bring his wife to the priest. The husband must take an offering required on her behalf, a tenth of an ephah of barley flour. He must pour no oil on it and put no frankincense on it, because it is a grain offering of jealousy, a grain offering for remembering, as a reminder of the iniquity.

### UST

**15** To test whether she had committed adultery he should take his wife to [the priest](#). He must take [along as an offering two liters](#) of [barley flour](#). The priest must not pour [olive oil](#) or incense on it, because this is an offering that the man [has brought because he is jealous](#). It is [an offering](#) to find out [if she is guilty](#) or not.

## Numbers 5:16

### Connecting Statement:

Moses continues to describe what the people are to do if the hypothetical situation he began describing in [Numbers 5:12](#) ever happens.

### near and place her before Yahweh

“in the presence of Yahweh.” The priest would bring her near the altar. Alternate translation: “near the altar and place her in the presence of Yahweh” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [in my presence](#)
- [The priest must tell](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> The priest must bring her near and place her before Yahweh.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> [The priest must tell](#) the woman to stand in front of the altar [in my presence](#).

## Numbers 5:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood

### Translation Words - UST

- sacred
- He must put
- then he must

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> The priest must take a jar of holy water and take dust from the floor of the tabernacle. He must put the dust into the water.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> He must put some sacred water in a clay jar, and then he must put some dirt from the floor of the sacred tent into the water.

## Numbers 5:18

### Connecting Statement:

Moses continues to describe what the people are to do if the hypothetical situation he began describing in [Numbers 5:12](#) ever happens.

### before Yahweh

“in the presence of Yahweh”

### grain offering of suspicion

See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 5:15](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- hand
- hand
- head
- grain offering
- grain offering

### Translation Words - UST

- He...the woman's...in
- He...the woman's...in
- The priest must
- her hands
- hold the bowl
- hair...the woman
- the flour offering
- that...is offering

### ULT

**18** The priest will set the woman before Yahweh and he will untie the hair on the woman's head. He will put into her hands the grain offering of remembrance, which is the grain offering of suspicion. The priest will hold in his hand the bitter water that can bring a curse.

### UST

**18** [He](#) must untie [the woman's hair](#). Then he must put [in her hands the flour offering](#) that her jealous husband [is offering](#) to determine whether she has committed adultery or not. [The priest must hold the bowl](#) that contains bitter water that will cause [the woman](#) to be cursed if she is guilty.

## Numbers 5:19

### no other man has lain with you

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: “no other man has had sexual relations with you” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### if you have not gone astray

The words “gone astray” is an idiom that means “to be unfaithful.” Alternate translation: “if you have not been unfaithful to your husband” (See: [Idiom](#))

### and committed impurity

“by committing impurity.” This phrase refers to committing adultery.

### you will be free from this bitter water

The phrase to “be free” from something means to not be harmed by it. Alternate translation: “this bitter water will not harm you, though it is able to” (See: [Idiom](#))

### this bitter water that can bring a curse

Here the bitter water is described as being able to bring a curse. This means that when the woman drinks the water it cause her to be unable to bear children, if she is guilty. Alternate translation: “this bitter water can be a curse to you” (See: [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [The priest must require her to](#)
- [solemnly declare](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> The priest will put the woman under an oath and say to her, ‘If no other man has lain with you, and if you have not gone astray and committed impurity, then you will be free from this bitter water that can bring a curse.’

### UST

<sup>19</sup> [The priest must require her to solemnly declare](#) that she will tell the truth. He must say to her, “Has another man slept with you? Have you faithfully slept only with your husband or not? If you have not slept with another man, nothing bad will happen to you if you drink the water.”

## Numbers 5:20

### Connecting Statement:

Moses continues to describe what the people are to do if the hypothetical situation he began describing in [Numbers 5:12](#) ever happens.

### have gone astray

The words “gone astray” is an idiom that means “to be unfaithful.” Alternate translation: “have been unfaithful to your husband” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> But if you have gone astray, though you are under your husband's authority and you have defiled yourself, and some other man has had sexual relations with you,

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> But if you have slept with another man, Yahweh will curse you.

## Numbers 5:21

### that can bring down a curse on her

The phrase “bring down a curse” is an idiom meaning for a curse to come upon her. Alternate translation: “that can cause a curse to come upon her” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Yahweh will make you into a curse...your people to be such

Here the author speaks about the woman bearing the curse that Yahweh gives her, which causes other people to curse her. This is spoken of as if the woman herself becomes a curse. Alternate translation: “Because Yahweh curses you, other people will curse you as well, and Yahweh will show people that you are truly cursed” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### that will be shown to your people to be such

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that he will show to your people as a curse” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### your thigh to waste away and your abdomen to swell

Possible meanings are 1) that the woman will become unable to have children or 2) that the woman’s pregnancy will end too early and the baby will die.

### your thigh to waste away

Here the word “thigh” is a polite way of referring to the woman’s womb or her private parts. Alternate translation: “your womb to be useless” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

### ULT

**21** then, (the priest must cause the woman to swear an oath that can bring down a curse on her, and then he must continue speaking to the woman) ‘Yahweh will make you into a curse that will be shown to your people to be such. This will happen if Yahweh causes your thigh to waste away and your abdomen to swell.

### UST

**21-22** Your womb will shrivel up and your stomach will swell up. You will never be able to give birth to children, and as a result, everyone will curse you and avoid you. If you have committed adultery, when you drink this water, that is what will happen to you.” Then the woman must answer, “If I am guilty, I will not object if that happens.”

## Numbers 5:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- amen, truly
- amen, truly

### Translation Words - UST

- amen, truly
- amen, truly

### ULT

**22** This water that brings the curse will go into your stomach and make your abdomen swell and your thighs waste away.' The woman is to reply, 'Yes, let that happen if I am guilty.'

### UST

**21-22** Your womb will shrivel up and your stomach will swell up. You will never be able to give birth to children, and as a result, everyone will curse you and avoid you. If you have committed adultery, when you drink this water, that is what will happen to you." Then the woman must answer, "If I am guilty, I will not object if that happens."



## Numbers 5:23

### Connecting Statement:

Moses continues to describe what the people are to do if the hypothetical situation he began describing in [Numbers 5:12](#) ever happens.

### he must wash away the written curses

This means that he is to wash the ink off of the scroll.

### the written curses

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the curses he has written” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [priest, priesthood](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [priest](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> The priest must write these curses on a scroll, and then he must wash away the written curses into the bitter water.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> Then the [priest](#) must write with ink on a small scroll these curses and then wash the ink off into the bitter water.

## Numbers 5:24

### General Information:

Verse 24 explains in a general way what the priest must do and what is expected to happen when the woman drinks the water. Verse 25 and 26 explains in detail how the priest is to do this work. The priest gives the water to the woman and she drinks it only once.

### Connecting Statement:

Moses continues to describe what the people are to do if the hypothetical situation he began describing in [Numbers 5:12](#) ever happens.

### ULT

**24** The priest must make the woman drink the bitter water that brings the curse. The water that brings the curse will enter her and become bitter.

### UST

**24-25** The priest must take from her the offering of barley flour that she is holding; he must lift it up to dedicate it to me. Then he must put it on the altar

## Numbers 5:25

### grain offering of jealousy

"a grain offering for jealousy." See how you translated this in [Numbers 5:15](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- hand
- grain offering
- grain offering

#### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- hand
- grain offering
- grain offering

#### ULT

**25** The priest must take the grain offering of jealousy out of the woman's hand. He must hold up the grain offering before Yahweh and bring it to the altar.

#### UST

**24-25** The priest must take from her the offering of barley flour that she is holding; he must lift it up to dedicate it to me. Then he must put it on the altar

## Numbers 5:26

### a representative offering

The handful of the grain offering represents the whole grain offering. This means the whole offering belongs to Yahweh.

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- priest, priesthood
- grain offering

### Translation Words - UST

- and burn...as a sacrifice. Then the
- part of
- and burn...as a sacrifice. Then the

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> The priest must take a handful of the grain offering as a representative offering, and burn it on the altar. Then he must give the woman the bitter water to drink.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> and burn part of it as a sacrifice. Then the woman must drink the bitter water.

## Numbers 5:27

### Connecting Statement:

Moses continues to describe what the people are to do if the hypothetical situation he began describing in [Numbers 5:12](#) ever happens.

### if she is defiled because she has committed

This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: “if she has defined herself by committing” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### committed a sin

Here the “sin” refers specifically to committing adultery. The meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “committed adultery” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Her abdomen will swell and her thigh will waste away

Possible meanings are 1) that the woman will become unable to have children or 2) that the woman’s pregnancy will end too early and the baby will die. Here the word “thigh” is a polite way of referring to the woman’s womb or her private parts. (See: [Euphemism](#)) See how you translated these concepts in [Numbers 5:21](#).

### The woman will be cursed among her people

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Her people will curse her” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- transgress, transgression
- people, people group,
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### Translation Words - UST

- up
- And then her relatives
- will shrink

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> When he gives her the water to drink, if she is defiled because she has committed a sin against her husband, then the water that brings the curse will enter her and become bitter. Her abdomen will swell and her thigh will waste away. The woman will be cursed among her people.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> If the woman has committed adultery instead of faithfully sleeping only with her husband, the water will cause her to suffer greatly. Her stomach will swell [up](#) and her womb [will shrink](#), and she will be unable to give birth to children. [And then her relatives](#) will curse her.

## Numbers 5:28

### is not defiled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “has not defiled herself” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### if she is clean

Here “being innocent” is spoken of as “being clean.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### then she must be free

Possible meanings are 1) “then she will not be cursed” or 2) “then she is free from guilt.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### conceive children

“become pregnant”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [seed, semen](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [children](#)

#### ULT

**28** But if the woman is not defiled and if she is clean, then she must be free. She will be able to conceive children.

#### UST

**28** But if she is innocent, her body will not be harmed, and she will still be able to give birth to [children](#).

## Numbers 5:29

### Connecting Statement:

Moses continues to describe what the people are to do if the hypothetical situation he began describing in [Numbers 5:12](#) ever happens.

### the law of jealousy

“the law for dealing with jealousy”

### who strays away from her husband

The words “strays away” is an idiom that means “to be unfaithful.”  
Alternate translation: “who is unfaithful to her husband” (See: [Idiom](#))

### is defiled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “defiles herself” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the ritual that must be performed when a woman who is married has sinned](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> This is the law of jealousy. It is the law for a woman who strays away from her husband and is defiled.

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> That is [the ritual that must be performed when a woman who is married has sinned](#) by committing adultery,

## Numbers 5:30

### a spirit of jealousy

This phrase refers to the man's attitude and emotions of jealousy. See how you translated this in [Numbers 5:14](#). Alternate translation: "who is jealous" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### when he is jealous of his wife

This is an idiom that means that he suspects that his wife has been unfaithful to him by sleeping with another man. Alternate translation: "and suspects that his wife has been unfaithful to him" or "and suspects that his wife has slept with another man" (See: [Idiom](#))

### before Yahweh

"in the presence of Yahweh"

### Translation Words - ULT

- law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
- spirit, spiritual
- zeal, zealous
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood

### Translation Words - UST

- instructions
- suspects
- is jealous
- in my
- The priest must tell that

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> It is the law for a man with a spirit of jealousy when he is jealous of his wife. He must bring the woman before Yahweh, and the priest must do to her everything that this law of jealousy describes.

### UST

<sup>30</sup> or when a man [is jealous](#) and [suspects](#) that his wife has slept with another man. [The priest must tell that](#) woman to stand at the altar [in my](#) presence and obey these [instructions](#).



## Numbers 5:31

### Connecting Statement:

Moses continues to describe what the people are to do if the hypothetical situation he began describing in [Numbers 5:12](#) ever happens.

### will be free from guilt for bringing his wife to the priest

“will not be guilty of doing something wrong by bringing his wife to the priest”

### must bear

“must endure”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [iniquity](#)
- [iniquity](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [for doing something wrong](#)
- [she will suffer as a result](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> The man will be free from guilt for bringing his wife to the priest. The woman must bear any guilt she might have.”

### UST

<sup>31</sup> Even if the woman has not done what the husband suspected, he will not be punished [for doing something wrong](#) by bringing his wife to the priest. But if his wife is guilty, [she will suffer as a result.](#)”

## **Numbers 6**

### **Numbers 6 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Nazirite vow**

The Nazirite vow was a special type of vow between a person and Yahweh. This chapter gives the rules for people to be consecrated to God as Nazirites. (See: [vow](#) and [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#))

## Numbers 6:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said,

### UST

<sup>1</sup> [Yahweh](#) also said this [to Moses](#):

## Numbers 6:2

### separates himself

“To separate yourself to someone” means to “dedicate yourself” to that person. Alternate translation: “dedicates himself” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [miracle, wonder, sign](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [dedicate himself to belong](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)
- [to me in a special way](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> “Speak to the people of Israel. Say to them, ‘When a man or a woman separates himself to Yahweh with a special vow of a Nazirite,

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> “Tell this to [the Israelite people](#): If any of you wants to make a solemn promise to [dedicate himself to belong to me in a special way](#), after you obey these instructions, you will be called a Nazir, which means ‘a dedicated person.’

## Numbers 6:3

### he must keep himself from

This idiom means that he must not eat or drink them. Alternate translation: "he must not consume" (See: [Idiom](#))

### vinegar made from wine

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "vinegar that people make from wine" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### vinegar

a drink produced when wine and other strong drinks ferment too long and become sour

### or from strong drink

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: "or vinegar that people make from strong drink" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### raisins

dried grapes

### Translation Words - ULT

- [devour](#)
- [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#)
- [grape](#), [grapevine](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [or eat](#)
- [wine](#)
- [grape juice](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> he must keep himself from wine and strong drink. He must not drink vinegar made from wine or from strong drink. He must not drink any grape juice or eat fresh grapes or raisins.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> You must not drink any [wine](#) or other alcoholic drink. You must not drink [grape juice or eat](#) grapes or raisins.

## Numbers 6:4

### he is separate

“To separate yourself to someone” means to “dedicate yourself” to that person. Alternate translation: “he dedicates himself” (See: [Idiom](#))

### he is separate to me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he separates himself to me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### nothing that is made from grapes

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “nothing that people make from grapes” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### from the seeds to their skins

These two extremes are given to emphasize the entire grape may not be eaten. Alternate translation: “from any part of a grape” (See: [Merism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [devour](#)
- [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [not eat](#)
- [even the skins or seeds of grapes](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> In all the days that he is separate to me, he must eat nothing that is made from grapes, including everything made from the seeds to their skins.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> You must [not eat](#) anything that comes from grapevines, not [even the skins or seeds of grapes](#), during the time that you are a Nazir.

## Numbers 6:5

### vow of separation

This is an idiom. Here “separation” means “dedication” Alternate translation: “vow of dedication” (See: [Idiom](#))

### no razor is to be used on his head

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “no one is to use a razor on his head” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the days of his separation to Yahweh

The word “separation” is an abstract noun that can be expressed as a verb. Here “separation” is an idiom that means “dedication.”

Alternate translation: “the days that he has separated himself to Yahweh” or “the days that he has dedicated himself to Yahweh” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Idiom](#))

### to Yahweh are fulfilled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “to Yahweh are complete” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### He must be set apart to Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “He must set himself apart to Yahweh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [head](#)
- [head](#)
- [proud, pride, prideful](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [dedicated](#)
- [to me](#)
- [hair to grow long](#)
- [hair to grow long](#)
- [Even your hair will be](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> During all the time of his vow of separation, no razor is to be used on his head until the days of his separation to Yahweh are fulfilled. He must be set apart to Yahweh. He must let the hair grow long on his head.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> [Even your hair will be dedicated](#) to me during the time that you are a Nazir, so you must never allow anyone to cut your hair. Until the time that your solemn promise to dedicate yourself [to me](#) is ended, you must allow your [hair to grow long](#).

## Numbers 6:6

### separates

This is an idiom for dedication. Alternate translation: “dedicates”  
(See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh

#### Translation Words - UST

- that you
- are a Nazir

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> During all the time that he separates himself to Yahweh, he must not come near a dead body.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> And you must not go near a corpse during the time [that you are a Nazir](#).



## Numbers 6:7

### separated

This is an idiom for dedication. Alternate translation: “dedicated” (See: [Idiom](#))

### unclean

A person who is not acceptable for God’s purposes is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### he is separated

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he has separated himself” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- God
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head

### Translation Words - UST

- or your brother
- what you have solemnly promised and not cut your hair
- your father
- Even if the person

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> He must not make himself unclean even for his father, mother, brother, or sister, if they die. This is because he is separated to God, as everyone can see by his long hair.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> [Even if the person](#) who died is [your father](#) or your mother [or your brother](#) or your sister, you must not cause yourself to become unacceptable to me by coming close to the corpse. Your long hair shows that you belong to me in a special way, so you must do [what you have solemnly promised and not cut your hair](#).

## Numbers 6:8

### separation

This is an idiom for dedication. Alternate translation: “dedication”  
(See: [Idiom](#))

### of his separation

The abstract noun “separation” can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “that he has separated himself”

### reserved for Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he has reserved himself for Yahweh” or “set apart for Yahweh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [you are dedicated](#)
- [to me in this special way](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> During all the time of his separation he is holy, reserved for Yahweh.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> You are required to keep doing this all the time that [you are dedicated to me in this special way](#).

## Numbers 6:9

### defiles his consecrated head

Here “head” represents the Nazirite man’s hair, which symbolizes his vow. Alternate translation: “defiles his long hair which shows everyone he is separated to God” or “he becomes defiled” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the seventh day

“day 7” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)
- [head](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [seven days...shave it all](#)
- [seven days...shave it all](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> If someone very suddenly dies beside him and defiles his consecrated head, then he must shave his head on the day of his purification—on the seventh day he must shave it.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> If anyone dies very suddenly when he is near you, then your hair that you have dedicated to me is no longer sacred. So you must wait [seven days](#) and then [shave it all](#) off. Then you must perform a special ritual to cause yourself to become acceptable to me again.

## Numbers 6:10

### the eighth day

“day 8” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- priest, priesthood
- feast, feasting

#### Translation Words - UST

- pigeons
- the priest
- at the

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> On the eighth day he must bring two doves or two young pigeons to the priest at the entrance to the tent of meeting.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> The next day you must bring two doves or two [pigeons](#) to [the priest at the](#) entrance of the sacred tent.

## Numbers 6:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- set apart
- priest, priesthood
- head

### Translation Words - UST

- take away the guilt
- After the priests burns them on the altar
- The priest must kill the birds
- you for having come close to a corpse

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> The priest must offer one bird as a sin offering and the other as a burnt offering. These will atone for him because he sinned by being near the dead body. He must consecrate his head again on that day.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> The priest must kill the birds and offer them as sacrifices. One of them will be an offering to take away the guilt of your sin, and the other will be an offering that is burned completely to please me. After the priests burns them on the altar, I will forgive you for having come close to a corpse, and when your hair grows again it will be dedicated to me again.

## Numbers 6:12

### for the days of his consecration

“during the time he is being set apart again”

### He must bring a male lamb...as a guilt offering

The man is to bring the lamb to the priest so that it can be sacrificed. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “He must bring a male lamb one year old to the priest as a guilt offering” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### The days before he defiled himself must not be counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “He must not count the days before he defiled himself” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### his consecration was defiled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he defiled himself” or “he made himself unacceptable” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [old lamb](#)
- [old lamb](#)
- [So you must again make a solemn promise to dedicate yourself to me](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> He must set himself apart to Yahweh for the days of his consecration. He must bring a male lamb one year old as a guilt offering. The days before he defiled himself must not be counted, because his consecration was defiled.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> The amount of time that you were set apart for me the previous time does not count, because you had become unacceptable to me by coming close to a corpse during the time that you were a Nazir. [So you must again make a solemn promise to dedicate yourself to me](#) for the entire amount of time that you indicated the previous time. And you must also sacrifice a one year [old lamb](#) to take away your guilt.

## Numbers 6:13

### of his separation

Here “separation” means “dedication.” Also, this abstract noun can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “of his dedication” or “that he has dedicated himself” (See: [Idiom](#) or [Abstract Nouns](#))

### He must be brought

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Someone must bring him” or “He must go” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [the law](#)
- [feast](#), [feasting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [you promised](#)
- [of the sacred](#)

### ULT

**13** This is the law about the Nazirite for when the time of his separation is complete. He must be brought to the entrance of the tent of meeting.

### UST

**13** When the time that [you promised](#) to dedicate yourself to me is ended, go to the entrance [of the sacred](#) tent

## Numbers 6:14

### He must present his offering to Yahweh

He must bring his offering to the priest to be sacrificed to Yahweh. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "He must present his offering to Yahweh by bringing it to the priest to be sacrificed" or "He must present his offering to Yahweh by bringing it to the priest who will sacrifice it" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- Yahweh

#### Translation Words - UST

- ram
- Offer a one year old
- to me three animals

#### ULT

**14** He must present his offering to Yahweh. He must offer as a burnt offering a male lamb one year old and without blemish. He must bring as a sin offering a female lamb one year old and without blemish. He must bring a ram as a fellowship offering that is without blemish.

#### UST

**14** and offer as sacrifices [to me three animals](#) that have no defects. [Offer a one year old ram](#) that will be burned completely, a one year old female lamb as a sacrifice to take away the guilt of your sin, and one full-grown ram as a sacrifice to restore fellowship with me.



## Numbers 6:15

### bread made without yeast

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "bread he made without yeast" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "fine flour that he mixed with oil" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### wafers without yeast rubbed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "wafers without yeast which he rubbed with oil" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### wafers without yeast

small pieces of flat bread

### together with their grain offering and drink offerings

The word "their" refers to the other offerings that the Nazirite man was told to bring. Often grain offerings and drink offerings were required to accompany other types of sacrifices. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "together with the grain offering and drink offering that Yahweh required to accompany the other offerings" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- unleavened bread
- unleavened bread
- drink offering
- grain offering

### Translation Words - UST

- of bread that you have made with very good flour
- thin wafers
- When you bring those animals, you must also bring some wine to offer as a sacrifice
- and bring them to the priest

### ULT

**15** He must also bring a basket of bread made without yeast, loaves of fine flour mixed with oil, wafers without yeast rubbed with oil, together with their grain offering and drink offerings.

### UST

**15** When you bring those animals, you must also bring some wine to offer as a sacrifice. And you must also bring a basket of bread that you have made with very good flour and olive oil. But you must not put any yeast in the bread. Also brush some olive oil on some thin wafers and bring them to the priest.

## Numbers 6:16

### He must offer his sin offering

“He” refers to the priest and “his” refers to the man who took a vow.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- burnt offering, offering by fire

#### Translation Words - UST

- the young lamb and the young ram
- I will be pleased and will forgive you
- The priest will
- completely burn

#### ULT

**16** The priest must present them before Yahweh. He must offer his sin offering and burnt offering.

#### UST

**16** The priest will put the young lamb and the young ram on the altar and completely burn them, in order that I will be pleased and will forgive you.

## Numbers 6:17

### the fellowship offering

“as the fellowship offering”

### The priest must present also...drink offering

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: “The priest must present also...the drink offering to Yahweh” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- grain offering

#### Translation Words - UST

- and he will also burn
- the altar
- as an offering
- the flour

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> With the basket of unleavened bread, he must present the ram as a sacrifice, the fellowship offering to Yahweh. The priest must present also the grain offering and the drink offering.

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> Then he will kill the full-grown ram [as an offering](#) to restore fellowship with me, [and he will also burn](#) on [the altar](#) some of the bread and [the flour](#) and wine.

## Numbers 6:18

### indicating his separation

Here “separation” means “dedication.” Also, this abstract noun may be written as a verb. Alternate translation: “indicating his dedication” or “indicating how he has separated himself” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)
- [head](#) (2)
- [feast, feasting](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [put that hair](#)
- [shave off your hair](#) (2)
- [of the sacred](#)
- [in the fire](#)
- [has been sacrificed](#)

### ULT

**18** The Nazirite must shave his head indicating his separation to God at the entrance to the tent of meeting. He must take the hair from his head and put it on the fire that is under the sacrifice of fellowship offerings.

### UST

**18** After that, you must stand at the entrance [of the sacred](#) tent and [shave off your hair](#). Then you must [put that hair in the fire](#) that is under the animal that [has been sacrificed](#) on the altar to restore fellowship with me.

## Numbers 6:19

### the boiled shoulder of the ram

This means that he had boiled the ram's shoulder. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the shoulder of the ram that he boiled" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### indicating separation

Here "separation" means "dedication." Also, this abstract noun can be expressed with the verb "separated." Alternate translation: "indicating dedication" or "indicating that he has dedicated himself to Yahweh" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- unleavened bread
- unleavened bread
- priest, priesthood
- hand

### Translation Words - UST

- along with one of...which has been brushed with olive oil...in
- wafer
- the priest
- your hands

### ULT

**19** The priest must take the boiled shoulder of the ram, one loaf of bread without yeast out of the basket, and one wafer without yeast. He must place them into the hands of the Nazirite after he has shaved his head indicating separation.

### UST

**19** The meat from the ram's shoulder must be boiled. After it is cooked, [the priest](#) will take it [along with one of](#) the loaves of bread and one [wafer which has been brushed with olive oil](#), and he will put them [in your hands](#).

## Numbers 6:20

### The priest must wave them

After handing the items to the Nazirite, the priest takes them back to offer them to Yahweh. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Then the priest must take them back and wave them" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### together with

"as well as"

### that was waved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that the priest waved" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### that was presented

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that he presented" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- wine, wineskin, new wine

### Translation Words - UST

- and he is permitted to eat some of the meat from the ram's shoulder
- to me
- Then the priest will
- They now belong to the priest
- wine

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> The priest must wave them as an offering before Yahweh, a holy portion for the priest, together with the breast that was waved and the thigh that was presented for the priest. After that, the Nazirite may drink wine.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> [Then the priest will](#) take them back and lift them up high to dedicate them [to me](#). [They now belong to the priest, and he is permitted to eat some of the meat from the ram's shoulder](#) and from its ribs and from one of its thighs, because that meat is his share of the sacrifice. After that, you will no longer be a Nazir, and you will again be permitted to drink [wine](#).

## Numbers 6:21

### his separation

- Here “separation” means “dedication.” Also, this abstract noun may be written as a verb. Alternate translation: “his dedication” or “for having dedicated himself to Yahweh” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Whatever else he may give

This refers to the Nazirite deciding to give other offering beyond what he has been commanded to give. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “If he decides to give any additional offerings” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### he must keep the obligations of the vow he has taken

“he must still obey the requirements of the vow he has taken”

### he must keep the obligations...to keep the promise indicated by the law for the Nazirite

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined to emphasize that he must obey the obligations of his vow. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### the promise indicated by the law for the Nazirite

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the promise that the law for the Nazirite indicates” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh, the law
- law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh, the law
- Yahweh
- hand

### Translation Words - UST

- are the regulations about
- they dedicated themselves to me
- to bring to me to end their time
- And they must do everything

### ULT

**21** This is the law for the Nazirite who vows his offering to Yahweh for his separation. Whatever else he may give, he must keep the obligations of the vow he has taken, to keep the promise indicated by the law for the Nazirite.”

### UST

**21** Those [are the regulations about](#) the offerings that Nazir solemnly promise [to bring to me to end their time](#) of being dedicated to me. They must bring these offerings, but if they want to, they may bring additional offerings. [And they must do everything](#) that they solemnly promised to do when [they dedicated themselves to me.](#)”

## Numbers 6:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Again Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said,

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> [Yahweh](#) also said [to Moses](#),



## Numbers 6:23

### You must bless the people of Israel

“You” is plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Aaron](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [to bless](#)
- [his sons](#)
- [the people](#)
- [they](#)
- [Aaron](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> “Speak to Aaron and to his sons. Say, ‘You must bless the people of Israel in this way. You must say to them,

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> “Tell [Aaron](#) and [his sons](#) that when they ask me [to bless the people](#), [they](#) must say,

## Numbers 6:24

### May Yahweh bless you and keep you

Here “you” is singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### keep you

This is an idiom. Here “keep” means to “protect.” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bless you](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> “May Yahweh bless you and keep you.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> [Yahweh bless you](#) and protect you.

## Numbers 6:25

### make his face shine on you

This is an idiom which means to have kind intentions towards someone. It can also be expressed by smiling. Alternate translation: “smile at you” or “look at you with kindness” (See: [Idiom](#))

### on you...to you

Here “you” is singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [face, facial](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [May he](#)
- [you](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> May Yahweh make his face shine on you and be gracious to you.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> [May he](#) smile on [you](#) and act kindly toward you.

## Numbers 6:26

### look on you with favor

Here the phrase “look on” means to show a certain attitude towards that person. Alternate translation: “show you favor” (See: [Idiom](#))

### on you...give you

Here “you” is singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [face](#), [facial](#)
- [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [peacemakers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [be good](#)
- [May he](#)
- [to](#)
- [go well](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> May Yahweh look on you with favor and give you peace.”

### UST

<sup>26</sup> [May he be good](#) to you and cause things [to go well](#) for you.”

## Numbers 6:27

### they must give my name

Here Yahweh speaks about claiming the Israelites as his own by saying that he is giving them "his name." Alternate translation: "they must let the people of Israel know that they are mine" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [son](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [will bless them](#)
- [his sons ask](#)
- [will bless them](#)
- [Then Yahweh said...If Aaron and](#)
- [bless the Israelite people](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> It is in this way that they must give my name to the people of Israel. Then I will bless them."

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> [Then Yahweh said, "If Aaron and his sons ask](#) me to [bless the Israelite people](#), truly I [will bless them.](#)"

## **Numbers 7**

### **Numbers 7 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

#### **Consecrating the altar**

When the tabernacle was completed, they consecrated the altar. Each tribe brought an offering to consecrate the altar. (See: [tabernacle](#) and [consecrate](#), [consecrated](#), [consecration](#))

## Numbers 7:1

### Moses completed the tabernacle

"Moses finished setting up the tabernacle"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- set apart
- set apart
- Moses
- confirm, confirmation, legal
- consume, devour

#### Translation Words - UST

- He also dedicated the things that are inside the sacred tent, and the altar for burning sacrifices
- set it apart for the honor of Yahweh
- he poured oil on it, and
- Moses...finished setting up
- Moses...finished setting up
- Moses...finished setting up

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> On the day that Moses completed the tabernacle, he anointed it and set it apart to Yahweh, together with all of its furnishings. He did the same for the altar and all its utensils. He anointed them and set them apart to Yahweh.

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> When [Moses](#) had [finished setting up](#) the sacred tent, [he poured oil on it, and set it apart for the honor of Yahweh. He also dedicated the things that are inside the sacred tent, and the altar for burning sacrifices,](#) and all the things that would be used at the altar.

## Numbers 7:2

### the leaders of Israel...the heads of their ancestor's families

These two phrases describe the same group of people two different ways. Alternate translation: "the leaders of Israel who are also the heads of their ancestors families" (See: [Parallelism](#))

### the heads of their ancestor's families

Here the leaders of the families are referred to as "heads." Alternate translation: "the leaders of their ancestor's families" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### had overseen the counting of the men

The abstract noun "counting" can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "had helped Aaron and Moses to count the men" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to minister, ministry
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- could fight
- of the twelve Israelite
- the
- of the twelve Israelite
- same men

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> On that day, the leaders of Israel, the heads of their ancestor's families, offered sacrifices. These men were leading the tribes. They had overseen the counting of the men in the census.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Then the leaders [of the twelve Israelite](#) tribes, [the same men](#) who had helped Aaron and Moses to count the men who [could fight](#) in battles,



## Numbers 7:3

### They brought their offerings before Yahweh...They presented these things in front of the tabernacle

This means that they gave their offerings to Yahweh and brought them to the tabernacle. These phrases may be combined to add clarity. Alternate translation: "They brought their offerings to Yahweh and presented them to him in front of the tabernacle" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### six covered carts and twelve oxen

"6 covered carts and 12 oxen" (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [cow](#), [bull](#), [calf](#), [cattle](#), [heifer](#), [ox](#)
- [prince](#), [princess](#), [governors](#), [provincial governors](#), [officials](#), [noblemen](#), [nobility](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [oxen](#)
- [leaders](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> They brought their offerings before Yahweh. They brought six covered carts and twelve oxen. They brought one cart for every two leaders, and each leader brought one ox. They presented these things in front of the tabernacle.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> came to the sacred tent, bringing gifts to [Yahweh](#). They brought six sturdy carts and twelve [oxen](#), one ox from each of the [leaders](#) and a cart from each of the two leaders.

## Numbers 7:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said,

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> Then [Yahweh](#) said [to Moses](#),

## Numbers 7:5

### to each one as his work needs them

"to each man as he needs them for his work"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)
- [feast](#), [feasting](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [the descendants of Levi](#)
- [at the](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> "Accept the offerings from them and use the offerings for the work in the tent of meeting. Give the offerings to the Levites, to each one as his work needs them."

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> "Accept these gifts, in order that [the descendants of Levi](#) can use them for carrying the sacred items that are here [at the](#) sacred tent."

## Numbers 7:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [So Moses](#)
- [descendants of Levi](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Moses took the carts and the oxen,  
and he gave them to the Levites.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> [So Moses](#) took the carts and oxen and  
gave them to the [descendants of Levi](#).

## Numbers 7:7

### Gershon

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 3:17](#).

### because of what their work needed

"because it was what they needed to do their work"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to the descendants of](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> He gave two carts and four oxen to the descendants of Gershon, because of what their work needed.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> He gave two carts and four oxen [to the descendants of](#) Gershon for their work,

## Numbers 7:8

### Merari

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 3:17](#).

### in the care of Ithamar son of Aaron the priest

"under the supervision of Ithamar son of Aaron the priest" or  
"Ithamar son of Aaron the priest oversaw their work"

### Ithamar

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:2](#).

### He did this because

The word "he" refers to Moses.

### because of what their work required

"because it was what they needed to do their work"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [descendants of](#)
- [son](#)
- [was the](#)
- [Aaron's](#)
- [supervisor of all their work](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> He gave four carts and eight oxen to the descendants of Merari, in the care of Ithamar son of Aaron the priest. He did this because of what their work required.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> and he gave four carts and eight oxen to the [descendants of](#) Merari for their work. [Aaron's son](#) Ithamar [was the supervisor of all their work](#).

## Numbers 7:9

### none of those things

This refers to the carts and oxen.

### Kohath

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 3:17](#).

### theirs would be the work

"their work would be"

### the things that belong to Yahweh

You can make explicit the implicit meaning of what belongs to Yahweh. Alternate translation: "the things that Yahweh reserved for the tabernacle" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [descendants of](#)
- [sacred items that were to be](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But he gave none of those things to the descendants of Kohath, because theirs would be the work related to the things that belong to Yahweh that they would carry on their own shoulders.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> But he did not give any carts or oxen to the [descendants of](#) Kohath, because they took care of the [sacred items that were to be](#) carried on their shoulders, not on carts.

## Numbers 7:10

### offered their goods

"offered gifts"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar
- dedicate, dedication, established, devoted
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

#### Translation Words - UST

- On the day that the altar was dedicated
- of the altar
- On the day that the altar was dedicated
- the twelve
- leaders

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> The leaders offered their goods for the dedication of the altar on the day that Moses anointed the altar. The leaders offered their sacrifices in front of the altar.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> On the day that the altar was dedicated, the twelve leaders brought other gifts to be dedicated and put them in front of the altar.



## Numbers 7:11

### Each leader must offer on his own day his sacrifice

"Each day, one leader must offer his sacrifice"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh
- Moses

#### Translation Words - UST

- of the altar
- Yahweh
- Moses

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, "Each leader must offer on his own day his sacrifice for the dedication of the altar."

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> [Yahweh](#) said to [Moses](#), "On each of the next twelve days one leader should bring his gifts for the dedication [of the altar](#)."

## Numbers 7:12

### the first day

“day 1” or “day number 1” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Nahshon son of Amminadab

These are the names of men. See how you translated these names in [Numbers 1:7](#)

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### ULT

**12** On the first day, Nahshon son of Amminadab, of the tribe of Judah, offered his sacrifice.

#### UST

**12-13** On the first day, Nahshon son of Amminadab, from the tribe of Judah brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

## Numbers 7:13

### weighing 130 shekels

“weighing one hundred and thirty shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “weighing nearly one and a half kilograms” or “weighing one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

### one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

“one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “one silver bowl weighing 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. If you are converting the weights to modern measures, here is another way to translate this phrase. Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

### ULT

**13** His sacrifice was one silver platter weighing 130 shekels and one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. Both of these objects were full of fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering.

### UST

**12-13** On the first day, Nahshon son of Amminadab, from the tribe of Judah brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

## Numbers 7:14

### one gold dish that weighed ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “one gold dish that weighed one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish that weighed 110 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [a...dish](#)
- [and...small gold](#)

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> He gave one gold dish that weighed ten shekels and was full of incense.

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> and a [small gold dish](#) that weighed 113 grams and was filled with incense.

## Numbers 7:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son (2)
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Translation Words - UST

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son (2)
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### ULT

**15** He gave as a burnt offering one young bull, one ram, and a one-year-old male lamb.

### UST

**15-17** They also brought the gifts of a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people's guilt for their sins,

and two bulls, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people's fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

**16** He gave one male goat as a sin offering.

**UST**

## Numbers 7:17

### that were a year old

“that were each one year old”

### This was the sacrifice of Nahshon son of Amminadab

“This was what Nahshon son of Amminadab presented”

### Nahshon son of Amminadab

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:7](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

#### ULT

**17** He gave two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were a year old, as the sacrifice for a fellowship offering. This was the sacrifice of Nahshon son of Amminadab.

#### UST

**15-17** They also brought the gifts of a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people’s guilt for their sins,

and two bulls, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people’s fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:18

### the second day

“day 2” or “day number 2” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Nethanel son of Zuar

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:8](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

### ULT

**18** On the second day, Nethanel son of Zuar, leader of Issachar, offered his sacrifice.

### UST

**18-19** On the second day, Nethanel son of Zuar, the leader of Issachar, brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. Both of these were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They were both weighed using the standard scales,

a small gold dish that weighed 110 grams, filled with incense.



## Numbers 7:19

### one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#).

Alternate translation: “one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms” or “one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

“one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “one silver bowl weighing 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

### ULT

**19** He offered as his sacrifice one silver platter weighing 130 shekels and one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. Both of these objects were full of fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering.

### UST

**18-19** On the second day, Nethanel son of Zuar, the leader of Issachar, brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram. Both of these were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They were both weighed using the standard scales,

a small gold dish that weighed 110 grams, filled with incense.

## Numbers 7:20

### one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:14](#). Alternate translation: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### ULT

**20** He also gave one gold dish weighing ten shekels, full of incense.

#### UST

**20-23** Nethanel also brought the gifts of a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people's guilt for their sins,

and two bulls, five rams, five male goats, and five lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people's fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son (2)
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Translation Words - UST

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son (2)
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> He gave as a burnt offering one young bull, one ram, and a one-year-old male lamb.

### UST

## Numbers 7:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

**22** He gave one male goat as a sin offering.

**UST**

## Numbers 7:23

### that were a year old

“that were each one year old”

### This was the sacrifice of Nethanel son of Zuar

“This was what Nethanel son of Zuar presented”

### Nethanel son of Zuar

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:8](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

#### ULT

**23** He gave two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were a year old, as the sacrifice for a fellowship offering. This was the sacrifice of Nethanel son of Zuar.

#### UST

**20-23** Nethanel also brought the gifts of a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people’s guilt for their sins,

and two bulls, five rams, five male goats, and five lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people’s fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:24

### the third day

“day 3” or “day number 3” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Eliab son of Helon

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:9](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### ULT

**24** On the third day, Eliab son of Helon, leader of the descendants of Zebulun, offered his sacrifice.

### UST

**24-26** On the third day, Eliab son of Helon, leader of the tribe of Zebulun brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offering. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

a small gold dish that weighed 110 grams, filled with incense.

## Numbers 7:25

### one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#).

Alternate translation: “one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms” or “one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

“one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “one silver bowl weighing 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> His sacrifice was one silver platter weighing 130 shekels, and one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. Both of these objects were full of fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering.

#### UST

## Numbers 7:26

### one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:14](#). Alternate translation: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### ULT

**26** He also gave one gold dish weighing ten shekels, full of incense.

#### UST

**24-26** On the third day, Eliab son of Helon, leader of the tribe of Zebulun brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offering. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

a small gold dish that weighed 110 grams, filled with incense.



## Numbers 7:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son (2)
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Translation Words - UST

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son (2)
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> He gave as a burnt offering one young bull, one ram, and a one-year-old male lamb.

### UST

<sup>27-29</sup> Eliab also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people's guilt for their sins,

and two bulls, five rams, five male goats, and five lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people's fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

<sup>28</sup> He gave one male goat as a sin offering.

**UST**

## Numbers 7:29

### that were a year old

“that were each one year old”

### This was the sacrifice of Eliab son of Helon

“This was what Eliab son of Helon gave as a sacrifice”

### Eliab son of Helon

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:9](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

### ULT

**29** He gave two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were a year old, as the sacrifice for a fellowship offering. This was the sacrifice of Eliab son of Helon.

### UST

**27-29** Eliab also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people’s guilt for their sins,

and two bulls, five rams, five male goats, and five lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people’s fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:30

### the fourth day

“day 4” or “day number 4” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Elizur son of Shedeur

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:5](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Reuben](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Reuben](#)

#### ULT

**30** On the fourth day, Elizur son of Shedeur, leader of the descendants of Reuben, offered his sacrifice.

#### UST

**30-32** On the fourth day, Elizur son of Shedeur, leader of the tribe of Reuben brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

a small gold dish that weighed 110 grams, filled with incense.

## Numbers 7:31

### one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms” or “one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

“one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “one silver bowl weighing 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

### ULT

**31** His sacrifice was one silver platter weighing 130 shekels and one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. Both of these objects were full of fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering.

### UST

## Numbers 7:32

### one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:14](#). Alternate translation: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### ULT

**32** He also gave one gold dish weighing ten shekels, full of incense.

#### UST

**30-32** On the fourth day, Elizur son of Shedeur, leader of the tribe of Reuben brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

a small gold dish that weighed 110 grams, filled with incense.

## Numbers 7:33

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son (2)
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Translation Words - UST

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son (2)
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> He gave as a burnt offering one young bull, one ram, and a one-year-old male lamb.

### UST

<sup>33-35</sup> Elizur also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people's guilt for their sins,

and two bulls, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people's fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:34

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

<sup>34</sup> He gave one male goat as a sin offering.

**UST**



## Numbers 7:35

### that were a year old

“that were each one year old”

### This was the sacrifice of Elizur son of Shedeur

“This was what Elizur son of Shedeur gave as a sacrifice”

### Elizur son of Shedeur

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:5](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

### ULT

**35** He gave two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were a year old, as the sacrifice for a fellowship offering. This was the sacrifice of Elizur son of Shedeur.

### UST

**33-35** Elizur also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people’s guilt for their sins,

and two bulls, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people’s fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:36

### the fifth day

“day 5” or “day number 5” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:6](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

#### ULT

**36** On the fifth day, Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai, leader of the descendants of Simeon, offered his sacrifice.

#### UST

**36-38** On the fifth day, Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai, leader of the tribe of Simeon brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings; they both were weighed using the standard scales,

a small gold dish that weighed 110 grams, filled with incense.

## Numbers 7:37

### one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements.

See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#).

Alternate translation: “one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms” or “one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

“one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#).

Alternate translation: “one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “one silver bowl weighing 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent.

See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

#### ULT

**37** His sacrifice was one silver platter weighing 130 shekels and one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. Both of these objects were full of fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering.

#### UST

## Numbers 7:38

### one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:14](#). Alternate translation: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### ULT

**38** He also gave one gold dish weighing ten shekels, full of incense.

#### UST

**36-38** On the fifth day, Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai, leader of the tribe of Simeon brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings; they both were weighed using the standard scales,

a small gold dish that weighed 110 grams, filled with incense.

## Numbers 7:39

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son (2)
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Translation Words - UST

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son (2)
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> He gave as a burnt offering one young bull, one ram, and a one-year-old male lamb.

### UST

<sup>39-41</sup> Shelumiel also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people's guilt for their sins,

and two bulls, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people's fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:40

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

<sup>40</sup> He gave one male goat as a sin offering.

**UST**

## Numbers 7:41

### that were a year old

“that were each one year old”

### This was the sacrifice of Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai

“This was what Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai gave as a sacrifice.”  
 “Shelumiel” and “Zurishaddai” are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:6](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

### ULT

**41** He gave two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were a year old, as the sacrifice for a fellowship offering. This was the sacrifice of Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai.

### UST

**39-41** Shelumiel also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people’s guilt for their sins,

and two bulls, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people’s fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:42

### the sixth day

“day 6” or “day number 6” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Eliasaph son of Deuel

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:14](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Gad](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Gad](#)

#### ULT

**42** On the sixth day, Eliasaph son of Deuel, leader of the descendants of Gad, offered his sacrifice.

#### UST

**42-44** On the sixth day, Eliasaph son of Deuel, leader of the tribe of Gad brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

a small gold dish that weighed about 110 grams, filled with incense.



## Numbers 7:43

### one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#).

Alternate translation: “one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms” or “one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

“one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “one silver bowl weighing 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

### ULT

**43** His sacrifice was one silver platter weighing 130 shekels and one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. Both of these objects were full of fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering.

### UST

## Numbers 7:44

### one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:14](#). Alternate translation: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### ULT

**44** He also gave one gold dish weighing ten shekels, full of incense.

#### UST

**42-44** On the sixth day, Eliasaph son of Deuel, leader of the tribe of Gad brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

a small gold dish that weighed about 110 grams, filled with incense.

## Numbers 7:45

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son (2)
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Translation Words - UST

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son (2)
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### ULT

<sup>45</sup> He gave as a burnt offering one young bull, one ram, and a one-year-old male lamb.

### UST

<sup>45-47</sup> Eliasaph also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people's guilt for their sins,

and two bulls, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people's fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:46

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

<sup>46</sup> He gave one male goat as a sin offering.

**UST**

## Numbers 7:47

### that were a year old

“that were each one year old”

### This was the sacrifice of Eliasaph son of Deuel

“This was what Eliasaph son of Deuel gave as a sacrifice”

### Eliasaph son of Deuel

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:14](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

### ULT

<sup>47</sup> He gave two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were a year old, as the sacrifice for a fellowship offering. This was the sacrifice of Eliasaph son of Deuel.

### UST

<sup>45-47</sup> Eliasaph also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people’s guilt for their sins,

and two bulls, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people’s fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:48

### the seventh day

“day 7” or “day number 7” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Elishama son of Ammihud

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:10](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)

#### ULT

**48** On the seventh day, Elishama son of Ammihud, leader of the descendants of Ephraim, offered his sacrifice.

#### UST

**48-50** On the seventh day, Elishama son of Ammihud, leader of the tribe of Ephraim brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

a small gold dish that weighed 110 grams, filled with incense.

## Numbers 7:49

### one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements.

See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#).

Alternate translation: “one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms” or “one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

“one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “one silver bowl weighing 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

#### ULT

**49** His sacrifice was one silver platter weighing 130 shekels and one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. Both of these objects were full of fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering.

#### UST

## Numbers 7:50

### one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:14](#). Alternate translation: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### ULT

**50** He also gave one gold dish weighing ten shekels, full of incense.

#### UST

**48-50** On the seventh day, Elishama son of Ammihud, leader of the tribe of Ephraim brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

a small gold dish that weighed 110 grams, filled with incense.



## Numbers 7:51

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son (2)
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Translation Words - UST

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son (2)
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### ULT

<sup>51</sup> He gave as a burnt offering one young bull, one ram, and a one-year-old male lamb.

### UST

<sup>51-53</sup> Elishama also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people's guilt for their sins,

and two bulls, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people's fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:52

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

**52** He gave one male goat as a sin offering.

**UST**

## Numbers 7:53

### that were a year old

“that were each one year old”

### This was the sacrifice of Elishama son of Ammihud

“This was what Elishama son of Ammihud presented”

### Elishama son of Ammihud

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:10](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

#### ULT

**53** He gave two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were a year old, as the sacrifice for a fellowship offering. This was the sacrifice of Elishama son of Ammihud.

#### UST

**51-53** Elishama also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people’s guilt for their sins,

and two bulls, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people’s fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:54

### the eighth day

“day 8” or “day number 8” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Gamaliel son of Pedahzur

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:10](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### ULT

**54** On the eighth day, Gamaliel son of Pedahzur, leader of the descendants of Manasseh, offered his sacrifice.

### UST

**54-56** On the eighth day, Gamaliel son of Pedahzur, leader of the tribe of Manasseh brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

a small gold dish that weighed 110 grams, filled with incense.

## Numbers 7:55

### one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements.

See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#).

Alternate translation: “one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms” or “one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

“one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#).

Alternate translation: “one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “one silver bowl weighing 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent.

See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

#### ULT

**55** His sacrifice was one silver platter weighing 130 shekels and one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. Both of these objects were full of fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering.

#### UST

## Numbers 7:56

### one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:14](#). Alternate translation: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### ULT

**56** He also gave one gold dish weighing ten shekels, full of incense.

#### UST

**54-56** On the eighth day, Gamaliel son of Pedahzur, leader of the tribe of Manasseh brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

a small gold dish that weighed 110 grams, filled with incense.

## Numbers 7:57

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son (2)
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Translation Words - UST

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son (2)
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### ULT

<sup>57</sup> He gave as a burnt offering one young bull, one ram, and a one-year-old male lamb.

### UST

<sup>57-59</sup> Gamaliel also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people's guilt for their sins,

and two bulls, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people's fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:58

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

**58** He gave one male goat as a sin offering.

**UST**



## Numbers 7:59

### that were a year old

“that were each one year old”

### This was the sacrifice of Gamaliel son of Pedahzur

“This was what Gamaliel son of Pedahzur gave as a sacrifice”

### Gamaliel son of Pedahzur

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:10](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

### ULT

**59** He gave two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were a year old, as the sacrifice for a fellowship offering. This was the sacrifice of Gamaliel son of Pedahzur.

### UST

**57-59** Gamaliel also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people’s guilt for their sins,

and two bulls, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people’s fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:60

### the ninth day

“day 9” or “day number 9” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Abidan son of Gideoni

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:11](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)

#### ULT

**60** On the ninth day, Abidan son of Gideoni, leader of the descendants of Benjamin, offered his sacrifice.

#### UST

**60-62** On the ninth day, Abidan son of Gideoni, leader of the tribe of Benjamin brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

a small gold dish that weighed 110 grams, filled with incense.

## Numbers 7:61

### one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#).

Alternate translation: “one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms” or “one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

“one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “one silver bowl weighing 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### fine flour mingled with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

#### ULT

**61** His sacrifice was one silver platter weighing 130 shekels and one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. Both of these objects were full of fine flour mingled with oil for a grain offering.

#### UST

## Numbers 7:62

### one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:14](#). Alternate translation: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### ULT

**62** He also gave one gold dish weighing ten shekels, full of incense.

#### UST

**60-62** On the ninth day, Abidan son of Gideon, leader of the tribe of Benjamin brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

a small gold dish that weighed 110 grams, filled with incense.

## Numbers 7:63

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son (2)
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Translation Words - UST

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son (2)
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### ULT

<sup>63</sup> He gave as a burnt offering one young bull, one ram, and a one-year-old male lamb.

### UST

<sup>63-65</sup> Adiban also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people's guilt for their sins,

and two bulls, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people's fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:64

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

**64** He gave one male goat as a sin offering.

**UST**

## Numbers 7:65

### that were a year old

“that were each one year old”

### This was the sacrifice of Abidan son of Gideoni

“This was what Abidan son of Gideoni gave as a sacrifice”

### Abidan son of Gideoni

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:11](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

### ULT

**65** He gave two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were a year old, as the sacrifice for a fellowship offering. This was the sacrifice of Abidan son of Gideoni.

### UST

**63-65** Adiban also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people’s guilt for their sins,

and two bulls, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people’s fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:66

### the tenth day

“day 10” or “day number 10” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:12](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### ULT

**66** On the tenth day, Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai, leader of the descendants of Dan, offered his sacrifice.

### UST

**66-68** On the tenth day, Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai, leader of the tribe of Dan brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

a small gold dish that weighed 110 grams, filled with incense.



## Numbers 7:67

### one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#).

Alternate translation: “one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms” or “one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

“one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “one silver bowl weighing 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

#### ULT

**67** His sacrifice was one silver platter weighing 130 shekels and one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. Both of these objects were full of fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering.

#### UST

## Numbers 7:68

### one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:14](#). Alternate translation: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### ULT

**68** He also gave one gold dish weighing ten shekels, full of incense.

#### UST

**66-68** On the tenth day, Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai, leader of the tribe of Dan brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

a small gold dish that weighed 110 grams, filled with incense.

## Numbers 7:69

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son (2)
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Translation Words - UST

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son (2)
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### ULT

<sup>69</sup> He gave as a burnt offering one young bull, one ram, and a one-year-old male lamb..

### UST

<sup>69-71</sup> Ahiezer also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people's guilt for their sins,

and two bulls, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people's fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:70

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

<sup>70</sup> He gave one male goat as a sin offering.

**UST**

## Numbers 7:71

### that were a year old

“that were each one year old”

### This was the sacrifice of Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai

“This was what Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai gave as a sacrifice”

### Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:12](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

#### ULT

**71** He gave two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were a year old, as the sacrifice for a fellowship offering. This was the sacrifice of Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai.

#### UST

**69-71** Ahiezer also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people’s guilt for their sins,

and two bulls, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people’s fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:72

### the eleventh day

“day 11” or “day number 11” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Pagiel son of Okran

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:13](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

#### ULT

**72** On the eleventh day, Pagiel son of Okran, leader of the descendants of Asher, offered his sacrifice.

#### UST

**72-74** On the eleventh day, Pagiel son of Okran, leader of the tribe of Asher brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

a small gold dish that weighed 110 grams, filled with incense.

## Numbers 7:73

### one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements.

See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#).

Alternate translation: “one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms” or “one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

“one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “one silver bowl weighing 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### fine flour mingled with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

#### ULT

**73** His sacrifice was one silver platter weighing 130 shekels and one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. Both of these objects were full of fine flour mingled with oil for a grain offering.

#### UST

## Numbers 7:74

### one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:14](#). Alternate translation: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### ULT

**74** He also gave one gold dish weighing ten shekels, full of incense.

#### UST

**72-74** On the eleventh day, Pagiel son of Okran, leader of the tribe of Asher brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

a small gold dish that weighed 110 grams, filled with incense.



## Numbers 7:75

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son (2)
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Translation Words - UST

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son (2)
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### ULT

<sup>75</sup> He gave as a burnt offering one young bull, one ram, and a one-year-old male lamb.

### UST

<sup>75-77</sup> Pagiel also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people's guilt for their sins,

and two bulls, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people's fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:76

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

**76** He gave one male goat as a sin offering.

**UST**

## Numbers 7:77

### that were a year old

“that were each one year old”

### This was the sacrifice of Pagiel son of Okran

“This was what Pagiel son of Okran gave as a sacrifice.” “Pagiel” and “Okran” were names of men. See how you translated their names in [Numbers 1:13](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

#### ULT

**77** He gave two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were a year old, as the sacrifice for a fellowship offering. This was the sacrifice of Pagiel son of Okran.

#### UST

**75-77** Pagiel also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people's guilt for their sins,

and two bulls, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people's fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:78

### the twelfth day

“day 12” or “day number 12) (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Ahira son of Enan

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:15](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### ULT

**78** On the twelfth day, Ahira son of Enan, leader of the descendants of Naphtali, offered his sacrifice.

### UST

**78-80** On the twelveth day, Ahira son of Enan, leader of the tribe of Naphtali brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

a small gold dish that weighed 110 grams, filled with incense.

## Numbers 7:79

### one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms” or “one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

“one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “one silver bowl weighing 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

### ULT

**79** His sacrifice was one silver platter weighing 130 shekels and one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. Both of these objects were full of fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering.

### UST

## Numbers 7:80

### one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:14](#). Alternate translation: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### ULT

**80** He also gave one gold dish weighing ten shekels, full of incense.

#### UST

**78-80** On the twelveth day, Ahira son of Enan, leader of the tribe of Naphtali brought his gifts:

a silver dish that weighed one and one-half kilograms and a silver bowl that weighed four-fifths of a kilogram, both of which were full of good flour and mixed with olive oil to be flour offerings. They both were weighed using the standard scales,

a small gold dish that weighed 110 grams, filled with incense.

## Numbers 7:81

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son (2)
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Translation Words - UST

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son (2)
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### ULT

<sup>81</sup> He gave as a burnt offering one young bull, one ram, and a one-year-old male lamb.

### UST

<sup>81-83</sup> Ahira also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people's guilt for their sins,

and two bulls, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people's fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:82

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

**82** He gave one male goat as a sin offering.

**UST**



## Numbers 7:83

### that were a year old

“that were each one year old”

### This was the sacrifice of Ahira son of Enan

“This was what Ahira son of Enan gave as a sacrifice”

### Ahira son of Enan

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:15](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

### ULT

**83** He gave two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were a year old, as the sacrifice for a fellowship offering. This was the sacrifice of Ahira son of Enan.

### UST

**81-83** Ahira also brought a young bull, a ram, and a one-year-old male lamb, to be sacrificed completely by being burned on the altar,

a goat to be sacrificed to remove people’s guilt for their sins,

and two bulls, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people’s fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:84

### set all these apart

The phrase “set apart” means to be dedicated to a specific purpose. In this case, the offerings were dedicated to Yahweh. (See: [Idiom](#))

### on the day that Moses anointed the altar

Here the word “day” refers to a general period of time. The leaders of Israel dedicated these things over the course of 12 days. Alternate translation: “when Moses anointed the altar”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- silver
- silver
- dedicate, dedication, established, devoted
- gold, golden

#### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- silver
- silver
- dedicate, dedication, established, devoted
- gold, golden

#### ULT

**84** The leaders of Israel set all these apart on the day that Moses anointed the altar. They set apart the twelve silver platters, twelve silver bowls, and twelve gold dishes.

#### UST

**84-86** When the altar was dedicated to Yahweh, those twelve leaders brought these gifts:

twelve silver plates and twelve silver bowls, weighing a total of twenty-six and one-half kilograms, each of them weighed on the scales kept in the sacred tent,

and twelve gold dishes filled with incense, weighing a total of one and two-fifths kilograms, each weighed on those same scales.

## Numbers 7:85

### Each silver platter weighed 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated this same weight in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “each silver platter weighed nearly one and a half kilograms” or “each silver platter weighed one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### each bowl weighed seventy shekels

“each bowl weighed 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weight can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated this same weight in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “each bowl weighed nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “each bowl weighed 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### 2,400 shekels

“two thousand four hundred shekels” or “twenty-four hundred shekels” (See: [Numbers](#))

### by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### All the silver vessels weighed

“All the silver vessels together weighed”

### the silver vessels

This refers to all of the offerings that were made of silver, both the platters and the bowls.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)

#### ULT

**85** Each silver platter weighed 130 shekels and each bowl weighed seventy shekels. All the silver vessels weighed 2,400 shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel.

#### UST

## Numbers 7:86

### All the gold dishes weighed

"All the gold dishes together weighed"

### Each of the twelve gold dishes...weighed ten shekels

"Each of the 12 gold dishes...weighed 10 shekels." If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:14](#). Alternate translation: "Each of the 12 gold dishes...weighed one tenth of a kilogram" or "Each of the 12 gold dishes...weighed 110 grams" (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

### 120 shekels

"one hundred and twenty shekels" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [hand](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### ULT

**86** Each of the twelve gold dishes, full of incense, weighed ten shekels by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel. All the gold dishes weighed 120 shekels.

### UST

**84-86** When the altar was dedicated to Yahweh, those twelve leaders brought these gifts:

twelve silver plates and twelve silver bowls, weighing a total of twenty-six and one-half kilograms, each of them weighed on the scales kept in the sacred tent,

and twelve gold dishes filled with incense, weighing a total of one and two-fifths kilograms, each weighed on those same scales.

## Numbers 7:87

### twelve

"12." This number may be written with a numeral instead of with a word. (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow](#), [bull](#), [calf](#), [cattle](#), [heifer](#), [ox](#)
- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)
- [grain offering](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow](#), [bull](#), [calf](#), [cattle](#), [heifer](#), [ox](#)
- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)
- [grain offering](#)

#### ULT

**87** They set apart all the animals for the burnt offerings, twelve bulls, twelve rams, and twelve year-old male lambs. They gave their grain offering. They gave twelve male goats as a sin offering.

#### UST

**87-88** The twelve leaders also brought twelve bulls, twelve rams, and twelve one-year-old male lambs to be sacrificed completely by being burned along with the flour offerings,

twelve goats to be sacrificed to take away the guilt of the people's sins,

and twenty-four bulls, sixty rams, sixty goats, and sixty male lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people's fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:88

### twenty-four...sixty

"24...60." These numbers may be written with numerals instead of with words. (See: [Numbers](#))

### a year old

"that were one year old"

### after it was anointed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "after Moses had anointed it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- dedicate, dedication, established, devoted
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- dedicate, dedication, established, devoted
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### ULT

**88** From all their cattle, they gave twenty-four bulls, sixty rams, sixty male goats, and sixty male lambs a year old, as the sacrifice for the fellowship offering. This was for the dedication of the altar after it was anointed.

### UST

**87-88** The twelve leaders also brought twelve bulls, twelve rams, and twelve one-year-old male lambs to be sacrificed completely by being burned along with the flour offerings,

twelve goats to be sacrificed to take away the guilt of the people's sins,

and twenty-four bulls, sixty rams, sixty goats, and sixty male lambs that were one year old, to be sacrifices to restore the people's fellowship with Yahweh.

## Numbers 7:89

### he heard his voice speaking to him

Here “his voice” refers to Yahweh. Alternate translation: “he heard Yahweh speaking to him” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### from above the atonement lid...from between the two cherubim

These two phrases describe the same location. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### ark of the testimony

See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 4:5](#).

### He spoke to him

“Yahweh spoke to Moses”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Whenever Moses](#)
- [with Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>89</sup> When Moses went into the tent of meeting to speak with Yahweh, he heard his voice speaking to him. Yahweh spoke to him from above the atonement lid on the ark of the testimony, from between the two cherubim. He spoke to him.

### UST

<sup>89</sup> [Whenever Moses](#) entered the sacred tent to talk [with Yahweh](#), he heard Yahweh's voice speaking between the two images of creatures with wings that were above the lid of the sacred chest.

## Numbers 8

### Numbers 8 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

The consecration of the tabernacle continues in this chapter. The people obeyed Yahweh's exact instructions. (See: [consecrate](#), [consecrated](#), [consecration](#) and [tabernacle](#))



## Numbers 8:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said,

### UST

<sup>1</sup> [Yahweh](#) said [to Moses](#),

## Numbers 8:2

### must give light in front

“must shine towards the front”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Aaron
- face, facial

#### Translation Words - UST

- Aaron
- front of

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> “Speak to Aaron. Say to him, ‘The seven lamps must give light in front of the lampstand when you light them.’”

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> “Tell [Aaron](#) to put the seven lamps on the lampstand and place them in such a way that they shine toward the [front of](#) the lampstand.”

## Numbers 8:3

### to give light

“to shine”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [face, facial](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [what...said](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses told](#)
- [him](#)
- [he](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Aaron did this. He lit the lamps on the lampstand to give light toward the front of it, as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> So [Moses told him what Yahweh said](#), and [he](#) did that.

## Numbers 8:4

### The lampstand was made

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They had made the lampstand" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### with hammered cups like blossoms

They were commanded to form the hammered cups so that they resembled flower blossoms. Alternate translation: "with hammered cups that resemble flower blossoms" (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh had told
- Moses that
- of gold

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> The lampstand was made in this way and Yahweh showed Moses the pattern for it. It was to be hammered gold from its base to its top, with hammered cups like blossoms.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> The lampstand had been made from gold that had been hammered from one large lump [of gold](#), from its base to the decorations at the top that resembled flowers. The lampstand was made exactly as [Yahweh had told Moses that](#) it should be made.

## Numbers 8:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Again, Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said,

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> [Yahweh](#) also said [to Moses](#),

## Numbers 8:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- pure, purify, purification
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

### Translation Words - UST

- from
- You must cause
- Israelite people
- the descendants of Levi

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> "Take the Levites from among the people of Israel and purify them.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> "[You must cause the descendants of Levi](#) to be acceptable to me by setting them apart [from](#) the other [Israelite people](#).

## Numbers 8:7

### to purify them

Here “them” refers to the Levites.

### Sprinkle the water of atonement on them

Moses sprinkling water on them was symbolic of their atonement. Alternate translation: “Sprinkle on their the water that symbolizes atonement” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### wash their clothes

The Levites are supposed to wash their own clothes. You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: “then make them wash their clothes” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#)
- [preach](#), [preaching](#), [preacher](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [their sins](#)
- [their bodies](#)
- [which will symbolize](#)
- [from the guilt](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Do this to them to purify them: Sprinkle the water of atonement on them. Make them shave their entire body, wash their clothes, and in this way purify themselves.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Do that by sprinkling them with water [which will symbolize](#) their being freed [from the guilt](#) of [their sins](#). Then they must shave off all the hair of [their bodies](#) and wash their clothes.

## Numbers 8:8

### a young bull and its grain offering

When offering a young bull, a grain offering was usually required to accompany it.

### of fine flour mingled with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "of fine flour that they have mingled with oil" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- grain offering

#### Translation Words - UST

- Then they...bull
- They must also bring another bull
- Then they...bull
- Then they...bull
- They must also bring another bull
- and some

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then have them take a young bull and its grain offering of fine flour mingled with oil. Let them take another young bull as a sin offering.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> [Then they](#) must bring one [bull and some](#) flour mixed with olive oil. Those things will be burned as sacrifices. [They must also bring another bull](#) that will be sacrificed to take away the guilt of their sins.



## Numbers 8:9

### assemble the whole community

"gather the whole community"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- feast, feasting

#### Translation Words - UST

- descendants of
- Israelite people
- Levi
- of the sacred

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> You will bring the Levites in front of the tent of meeting and assemble the whole community of the people of Israel.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> Then you must summon all the [Israelite people](#) to come together in front [of the sacred](#) tent, to gather around the [descendants of Levi](#).

## Numbers 8:10

### before Yahweh

Here Yahweh refers to himself by his own name.

### the people of Israel must lay their hands on the Levites

The action “laying on hands” on someone was often done to dedicate them to Yahweh’s work or service. Alternate translation: “The people Israel must lay their hands on the Levites, dedicating them to me”  
(See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- hand

### Translation Words - UST

- descendants of Levi
- people
- Then the Israelite
- people
- descendants of Levi
- their hands

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> When you bring the Levites before Yahweh, the people of Israel must lay their hands on the Levites.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> [Then the Israelite people](#) must lay [their hands](#) on the [descendants of Levi](#).

## Numbers 8:11

### as a wave offering

Aaron was to present the Levites to Yahweh with the same amount of dedication as if they were a sacrifice given to him. Alternate translation: "if they were a wave offering" (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Aaron
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

### Translation Words - UST

- from
- me to be a gift
- sacred tent
- Israelite people, as if
- Aaron
- must then present them to

### ULT

**11** Aaron must offer the Levites before Yahweh, as a wave offering from the people of Israel so that they may do the service of Yahweh.

### UST

**11** [Aaron must then present them to me to be a gift from the Israelite people, as if](#) he had lifted them up to me, in order that they can work for me at the [sacred tent](#).

## Numbers 8:12

### The Levites must place their hands on the heads of the bulls

This is a symbolic action that identifies the Levites with the animals being offered. In this way the person is offering himself through the animal to Yahweh. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- atonement, atone, atoned
- Yahweh
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- hand
- head
- burnt offering, offering by fire

#### Translation Words - UST

- their sins
- to please
- me
- After that, the descendants of Levi
- One will be an offering
- hands
- the heads
- will be completely burned

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> The Levites must place their hands on the heads of the bulls. You must offer one bull for a sin offering and the other bull for a burnt offering to me, to atone for the Levites.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> [After that, the descendants of Levi](#) must place their [hands](#) on [the heads](#) of the two bulls. Then the bulls will be killed and burned on the altar. [One will be an offering](#) to take away the guilt of [their sins](#), and the other [will be completely burned to please me](#).

## Numbers 8:13

### lift them up as a wave offering to me

Aaron was to present the Levites to Yahweh as if he were lifting up an offering to Yahweh. Alternate translation: “dedicate them to me, as if you were lifting them up a wave offering to me” (See: [Simile](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Aaron
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

#### Translation Words - UST

- and his sons
- to me
- Aaron
- The descendants of Levi

#### ULT

**13** Present the Levites before Aaron and before his sons, and lift them up as a wave offering to me.

#### UST

**13** [The descendants of Levi](#) must stand at the altar in front of [Aaron and his sons](#), and you must then dedicate them [to me](#), as if you had lifted them up to me.

## Numbers 8:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- set apart
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

### Translation Words - UST

- descendants of...other Israelites and
- are set apart from the
- descendants of...other Israelites and
- Levi
- that they

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> In this way you must separate the Levites from among the people of Israel. The Levites will belong to me.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> This ritual will show that the descendants of Levi are set apart from the other Israelites and that they belong to me.

## Numbers 8:15

### You must purify them. You must offer them as a wave offering

Yahweh repeats these things to emphasize their importance. This must happen before the Levites go to serve at the tent of meeting. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "But first, you must purify them. You must offer them as a wave offering" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### You must offer them as a wave offering

Aaron was to present the Levites to Yahweh as if they were a wave offering to him. Alternate translation: "You must dedicate them to me, as if you were presenting a wave offering to me" (See: [Simile](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- pure, purify, purification
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- feast, feasting

#### Translation Words - UST

- they may start to work
- the descendants of Levi
- at the

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> After that, the Levites must go in to serve in the tent of meeting. You must purify them. You must offer them as a wave offering.

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> After [the descendants of Levi](#) have been made acceptable to me, and presented to me like a special offering as if they had been lifted up to me, [they may start to work at the](#) sacred tent.

## Numbers 8:16

### each male child who opens the womb, the firstborn

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasize the firstborn sons. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### male child who opens the womb

This is an idiom. "To open the womb" means to give birth for the first time. Here this refers to the first male child to which a mother gives birth. Alternate translation: "child who is the firstborn son of his mother" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [firstborn](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [males](#)
- [of](#)
- [They](#)
- [Israelites](#)
- [firstborn](#)

### ULT

**16** Do this, because they are entirely mine from among the people of Israel. They will take the place of each male child who opens the womb, the firstborn of all the descendants of Israel. I have taken the Levites for myself.

### UST

**16** [They](#) will belong to me. They will work for me as substitutes for the [firstborn males of](#) all the [Israelites](#), who also belong to me.



## Numbers 8:17

### I took the lives

This is a polite way of referring to when a person kills someone.  
Alternate translation: "I killed" (See: [Euphemism](#))

### I set them apart

Here "them" refers to "the firstborn from among the people of Israel."

### Translation Words - ULT

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- livestock, animals
- firstborn
- firstborn (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- I set them apart for myself
- of
- the firstborn males in Israel
- of Egypt to die
- both the people and the animals, are mine
- the firstborn sons
- But I spared the firstborn (2)

### ULT

**17** All the firstborn from among the people of Israel are mine, both of people and of animals. On the day that I took the lives of all the firstborn in the land of Egypt, I set them apart for myself.

### UST

**17** All [the firstborn males in Israel](#), [both the people and the animals, are mine](#). When I caused all [the firstborn sons of the people of Egypt to die](#), [I set them apart for myself](#). [But I spared the firstborn](#) of all males of the Israelites, of people and animals, because they are mine.

## Numbers 8:18

### I have taken the Levites...instead of all the firstborn

The idea of “taking” is understood from the first part of the sentence and can be repeated in the second. Alternate translation: “I have taken the Levites...instead taking all of the firstborn” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- firstborn

#### Translation Words - UST

- of the other
- Israelites
- descendants of Levi
- firstborn

#### ULT

**18** I have taken the Levites from among the people of Israel instead of all the firstborn.

#### UST

**18** But now I have chosen the [descendants of Levi](#) to take the places of the [firstborn](#) male sons [of the other Israelites](#).

## Numbers 8:19

### I have given the Levites as a gift to Aaron and his sons

Yahweh appointing the Levites to help Aaron and his sons is spoken of as if they were a gift that Yahweh were giving to Aaron and his sons. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I have taken them...I have given them

Here "them" refers to the Levites.

### when they come near

Here "they" refers to the people of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- son (2)
- son
- son (2)
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites (2)
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- his sons
- the descendants of
- the Israelites...with the result that...would cause many
- of the Israelite people's sins (2)
- from
- as Aaron and his sons (2)
- sacred
- away the guilt
- the Israelites...with the result that...would cause many
- of the Israelite people's sins
- the Israelites...with the result that...would cause many (2)
- as Aaron and his sons
- Levi
- at the

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> I have given the Levites as a gift to Aaron and his sons. I have taken them from among the people of Israel to do the work of the people of Israel in the tent of meeting. I have given them to atone for the people of Israel so that no plague will harm the people when they come near to the holy place."

### UST

<sup>19</sup> I have appointed [the descendants of Levi](#) to help Aaron and [his sons at the sacred](#) tent, [as Aaron and his sons](#) offer the sacrifices to take [away the guilt of the Israelite people's sins](#), and to prevent [the Israelites from](#) coming close to the tent [with the result that](#) a plague [would cause many](#) of them to become sick and die."

## Numbers 8:20

### Moses, Aaron, and the whole community of the people of Israel...The people of Israel did this with them

Here there are three parallel sentences that give the same information. It is repeated to emphasize that the people did to the Levites as Yahweh had commanded. Alternate translation: "Moses, Aaron, and the whole community of the people of Israel did with the Levites everything that Yahweh had commanded Moses concerning the Levites" (See: [Parallelism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Moses
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

#### Translation Words - UST

- helped the...Levi to do...that Yahweh had commanded
- descendants of
- helped the...Levi to do...that Yahweh had commanded
- helped the...Levi to do...that Yahweh had commanded
- Israelites
- helped the...Levi to do...that Yahweh had commanded
- and Moses
- helped the...Levi to do...that Yahweh had commanded
- Israelites
- helped the...Levi to do...that Yahweh had commanded

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Moses, Aaron, and the whole community of the people of Israel did this with the Levites. They did everything that Yahweh had commanded Moses concerning the Levites. The people of Israel did this with them.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> Aaron [and Moses](#) and the other [Israelites helped the descendants of Levi to do](#) everything [that Yahweh had commanded](#).

## Numbers 8:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- Aaron
- Aaron
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

### Translation Words - UST

- of their sins
- to present them to Yahweh
- Then Aaron brought them
- he offered sacrifices to take away the guilt
- The descendants of Levi sprinkled themselves with water to symbolize that they had been freed from the guilt

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> The Levites purified themselves and washed their clothing, and Aaron presented them as a wave offering to Yahweh and he made atonement for them to cleanse them.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> The descendants of Levi sprinkled themselves with water to symbolize that they had been freed from the guilt of their sins, and they washed their clothes. Then Aaron brought them to the altar to present them to Yahweh, just as if he had lifted them up to him, and he offered sacrifices to take away the guilt of their sins and cause them to become acceptable to Yahweh.

## Numbers 8:22

### to do their service

The word “service,” an abstract noun, can be expressed as a verb.  
Alternate translation: “to serve” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### before Aaron and before Aaron’s sons

“in the presence of Aaron and his sons”

### This was

“What they did was”

### They treated all the Levites in this way

“They did to the Levites what Yahweh commanded.” The word “They” refers to the people of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [had commanded](#)
- [and his sons](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [assist Aaron](#)
- [Levi](#)
- [They did that just](#)
- [at](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> After that, the Levites went in to do their service in the tent of meeting before Aaron and before Aaron's sons. This was as Yahweh had commanded Moses about the Levites. They treated all the Levites in this way.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> After that, the descendants of [Levi](#) started to work [at](#) the sacred tent to [assist Aaron and his sons](#). [They did that just](#) as [Yahweh had commanded Moses](#).

## Numbers 8:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Yahweh spoke again to Moses. He said,

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> [Yahweh](#) also said this [to Moses](#):

## Numbers 8:24

### All of this is for the Levites

"All of these commandments are for the Levites"

### twenty-five years old

"25 years old" (See: [Numbers](#))

### must join the company to serve in the tent of meeting

The word "company" refers to the rest of the people working in the tent of meeting. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 4:3](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- descendants of
- Levi
- at the

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> "All of this is for the Levites who are twenty-five years old and more. They must join the company to serve in the tent of meeting.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> "The [descendants of Levi](#) who are between twenty-five years and fifty years old will work [at the](#) sacred tent.



## Numbers 8:25

### at the age of fifty years

“at 50 years old” or “when they become 50 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [restore](#), [restoration](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [they](#)
- [But after...become...old](#), [they must retire](#)
- [But after...become...old](#), [they must retire](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> They must stop serving in this way at the age of fifty years. At that age they must not serve any longer.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> [But after they become](#) fifty years [old](#), [they must retire](#).

## Numbers 8:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- feast, feasting
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- They
- descendants of Levi
- at the
- work

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> They may help their brothers who continue to work at the tent of meeting, but they must serve no more. You must direct the Levites in all these matters."

### UST

<sup>26</sup> They may help their fellow descendants of Levi do their work at the sacred tent, but they must not do the work themselves. That is what you must tell them about the work they will do."

## Numbers 9

### Numbers 9 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

==Passover ==

This chapter records the celebration of the Passover for the first time since it began. The people kept the Passover as directed by the Lord. (See: [Passover](#))

## Numbers 9:1

### in the first month of the second year after they came out from the land of Egypt

This means that they had come out of Egypt a year earlier. They were beginning their second year in the wilderness. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### in the first month

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### after they came out from the land of Egypt

Here “they” refers to the people of Israel. The phrase “came out” means to leave. Alternate translation: “after they left the land of Egypt” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- desert, wilderness

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt
- while they were in the wilderness

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses in the wilderness of Sinai, in the first month of the second year after they came out from the land of Egypt. He said,

### UST

<sup>1</sup> One year after the Israelites left [Egypt](#), on the first month of the second year, [while they were in the wilderness](#) of Sinai, [Yahweh](#) said to [Moses](#),

## Numbers 9:2

### Let the people...at its fixed time of year

The word “fixed” means “previously set.” This means that this is when the observe it every year. Alternate translation: “Let the people...at the time of year they currently observe it” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Passover](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [that they](#)
- [Passover festival again](#)
- [Tell the Israelite people](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> “Let the people of Israel keep the Passover at its fixed time of year.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> “[Tell the Israelite people that they](#) must celebrate the [Passover festival again](#).

## Numbers 9:3

### On the fourteenth day...at its fixed time of year

This is the set time of year that they celebrate the Passover. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "On the fourteenth day...and observe it, for this is the time you do celebrate it every year" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the fourteenth day

"day 14" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### follow all the regulations, and obey all the decrees

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined to emphasize that they needed to obey the commands. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### You must keep it

Here the phrase "keep it" is an idiom which means to observe it. Alternate translation: "You must observe it" or "You must celebrate it" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [judge, judgment](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [previously](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> On the fourteenth day of this month, at evening, you must keep the Passover at its fixed time of year. You must keep it, follow all the regulations, and obey all the decrees that are related to it."

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> They must do it on the fourteenth day of this month, early in the evening, and they must obey all the instructions about it that I gave you [previously](#)."

## Numbers 9:4

### keep the Festival of the Passover

Here the word "keep" means to observe. Alternate translation: "observe the Festival of the Passover" or "celebrate the Festival of the Passover" (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Passover](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [told the people](#)
- [celebrating the Passover](#)
- [So](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> So, Moses told the people of Israel that they should keep the Festival of the Passover.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> [So Moses told the people](#) what Yahweh had said about [celebrating the Passover](#).

## Numbers 9:5

### in the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month

“on day 14 of the first month.” This refers to time in the Jewish calendar. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Passover](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [had commanded](#)
- [of the](#)
- [The...celebrated...fourteenth day of the month](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [people](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> So they kept the Passover in the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month, at evening, in the wilderness of Sinai. The people of Israel obeyed everything that Yahweh commanded Moses to do.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> The [people celebrated](#) it there [in the wilderness](#) of Sinai, in the evening [of the fourteenth day of the month](#), just as [Yahweh had commanded Moses](#).



## Numbers 9:6

### became unclean by the body of a dead man

This implies that they touched the dead man, which made them unclean. You can make clear the full meaning of this statement. Alternate translation: “became unclean because they touched the body of a dead man” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### unclean

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### keep the Passover

Here the word “keep” means to observe. Alternate translation: “observe the Passover” or “celebrate the Passover” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Passover](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [asked](#)
- [Aaron and Moses](#)
- [Aaron and Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> There were certain men who became unclean by the body of a dead man. They could not keep the Passover on that day. They went before Moses and Aaron on that same day.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> But some of the Israelite people had touched a corpse, and as a result they had become unfit to celebrate the Passover. So they [asked Aaron and Moses,](#)

## Numbers 9:7

### because of the dead body of a man

This means that they had touched a dead man's body. You can make the full meaning of this statement clear. Alternate translation: "because we have touched the body of a dead man" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Why do you keep us from offering the sacrifice...among the people of Israel?

The men ask this question in order to complain that they are not allowed to participate in celebrating the Passover. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is not fair that you keep us away from offering the sacrifice...among the people of Israel." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### fixed

set or predetermined

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [from celebrating the Passover festival](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [from celebrating the Passover festival](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Those men said to Moses, "We are unclean because of the dead body of a man. Why do you keep us from offering the sacrifice to Yahweh at the fixed time of year among the people of Israel?"

### UST

<sup>7</sup> "It is true that we have touched a corpse. But why should that prevent us [from celebrating the Passover festival](#) and offering sacrifices to [Yahweh](#) like everyone else?"

## Numbers 9:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [says about it](#)
- [here until I go](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Moses said to them, "Wait for me to hear what Yahweh will instruct about you."

### UST

<sup>8</sup> [Moses](#) replied, "Wait [here until I go](#) into the sacred tent and find out what [Yahweh says about it](#)."

## Numbers 9:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and this is what Yahweh](#)
- [So Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said,

### UST

<sup>9</sup> [So Moses](#) went into the tent and asked Yahweh what he should tell the people, [and this is what Yahweh](#) said:

## Numbers 9:10

### unclean

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### because of a dead body

This refers to someone touching a dead body. Alternate translation: "because you have touched a dead body" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### keep the Passover

Here the word "keep" means to observe. Alternate translation: "observe the Passover" or "celebrate the Passover" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [generation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the Israelite people](#)
- [Passover](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)
- [away from home on a long trip at the time](#)

### ULT

**10** "Speak to the people of Israel. Say, 'If any of you or your descendants are unclean because of a dead body, or are on a long journey, he may still keep the Passover to Yahweh.'

### UST

**10** "Tell this to [the Israelite people](#): 'If any of you or your descendants touch a corpse and as a result become unacceptable to me, or if you are [away from home on a long trip at the time](#) to celebrate the [Passover](#), you will still be permitted to celebrate it.'

## Numbers 9:11

### eat the Passover

Here the word "eat" means to observe. Alternate translation: "observe the Passover" or "celebrate the Passover" (See: [Idiom](#))

### the second month on the fourteenth day

"day 14 of month 2." This refers to time in the Jewish calendar. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### at evening

"at sunset"

### with bread that is made without yeast

"with bread that contains no yeast"

### bitter herbs

These are small plants that have a strong and usually bad taste.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [unleavened bread](#)
- [devour](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [with bread that is baked without yeast](#)
- [and eat](#)

### ULT

**11** In the second month on the fourteenth day at evening, they will eat the Passover meal. They must eat the Passover lamb with bread that is made without yeast and with bitter herbs.

### UST

**11** But you must celebrate it exactly one month later, early in the evening of the fourteenth day of that month. Eat the meat of the lamb for the Passover festival [with bread that is baked without yeast, and eat](#) bitter herbs.

## Numbers 9:12

### or break any of its bones

“and they must not break any of its bones”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Passover](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [celebrating the Passover](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> They must not leave any of it until the morning, or break any of its bones. They must follow all the regulations for the Passover.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> Do not leave any of it until the next morning. And do not break any of the lamb's bones. Obey all the regulations about [celebrating the Passover](#).

## Numbers 9:13

### any person who is clean

A person who God considers spiritually acceptable is spoken of as if the person were physically clean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### keep the Passover

Here the word “keep” means to observe. Alternate translation: “observe the Passover” or “celebrate the Passover” (See: [Idiom](#))

### that person must be cut off

Here the phrase “cut off” means to be disowned and sent away. Alternate translation: “that person must be sent away” or “you must send that person away” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### fixed

set or predetermined

### That man must carry his sin

Here the concept of the man having to bear the consequences of his sin is spoken of as if his sin were a heavy object that he had to carry. Alternate translation: “That man must bear the punishment for his sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [clean, wash](#)
- [Passover](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [cut off](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [has not...would make you unfit...and you](#)
- [to celebrate the Passover festival](#)
- [do not sacrifice to me](#)
- [you will no longer](#)

### ULT

**13** But any person who is clean and is not on a journey, but who fails to keep the Passover, that person must be cut off from his people because he did not offer the sacrifice that Yahweh requires at the fixed time of year. That man must carry his sin.

### UST

**13** But if any of you [has not](#) done anything that [would make you unfit to celebrate the Passover festival, and you](#) are not away from home on a long trip, and you [do not sacrifice to me](#) at the proper time, [you will no longer](#) belong to my people. You will be punished.



## Numbers 9:14

### lives among you

Here “you” is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### he must keep it according to the statute of the Passover and according to its rule

“that stranger must keep it and do all that Yahweh has commanded concerning the Passover.” The words “statute” and “rule” mean basically the same thing and are used together to emphasize that the stranger must obey all of the rules about the Passover. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### in the land

“in the land of Israel”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Passover](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Passover festival](#)
- [Passover festival](#)
- [you must also celebrate...and obey all my commands concerning it](#)

### ULT

**14** If a stranger lives among you and keeps the Passover to Yahweh, he must keep it according to the statute of the Passover and according to its rule. You must have one statute both for the foreigner and for the one who was born in the land.”

### UST

**14** Settled foreigners who live among [you must also celebrate](#) the [Passover festival and obey all my commands concerning it.](#)”

## Numbers 9:15

### the tabernacle was set up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the Levites set up the tabernacle” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the tent of the covenant decrees

This is another name for the tabernacle. See how you translated the phrase “the tabernacle of the covenant decrees” in [Numbers 1:50](#).

### It appeared like fire until morning

This refers to the cloud's appearance during the night. Here the cloud is compared to looking like a fire. Alternate translation: “During the night the cloud looked like a huge fire until morning” (See: [Simile](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [fire](#), [firebrands](#), [firepans](#), [fireplace](#), [firepot](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [fire](#), [firebrands](#), [firepans](#), [fireplace](#), [firepot](#)

#### ULT

**15** On the day that the tabernacle was set up, the cloud covered the tabernacle, the tent of the covenant decrees. At evening the cloud was over the tabernacle. It appeared like fire until morning.

#### UST

**15-16** On the day that the sacred tent was set up, a cloud covered it. But from the time that the sun set until the time that the sun rose the next day, the cloud resembled a huge fire. And that is what happened every day that the Israelites were in the wilderness.

## Numbers 9:16

### It continued that way

It may be helpful to explain that this refers to the cloud being over the tabernacle. Alternate translation: “The cloud remained this way over the tabernacle” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### appeared like fire at night

The cloud’s appearance is compared to a huge fire. Alternate translation: “it looked like a huge fire at night” (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

### Translation Words - UST

- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

### ULT

**16** It continued that way. The cloud covered the tabernacle and appeared like fire at night.

### UST

**15-16** On the day that the sacred tent was set up, a cloud covered it. But from the time that the sun set until the time that the sun rose the next day, the cloud resembled a huge fire. And that is what happened every day that the Israelites were in the wilderness.

## Numbers 9:17

### the cloud was taken up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “moved” or “Yahweh took up the cloud” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the cloud stopped

“the cloud stopped moving”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the Israelites](#)
- [the Israelites](#)
- [the Israelites](#)
- [the Israelites](#)

### ULT

**17** Whenever the cloud was taken up from over the tent, the people of Israel would set out on their journey. Wherever the cloud stopped, the people would camp.

### UST

**17** When the cloud rose up and started to move to a new location, [the Israelites](#) followed it. When the cloud stopped, [the Israelites](#) stopped there and set up their tents.

## Numbers 9:18

### At Yahweh's command

The word "command" can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: "When Yahweh commanded" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites

### Translation Words - UST

- them
- when Yahweh
- when Yahweh
- The Israelites

### ULT

**18** At Yahweh's command, the people of Israel would travel, and at his command, they would camp. While the cloud stopped over the tabernacle, they would stay in their camp.

### UST

**18** [The Israelites](#) moved [when Yahweh](#) told [them](#) to move and stopped [when Yahweh](#) told them to stop by causing the cloud to move or stop. When the cloud stayed over the sacred tent, the Israelites stayed at that place.

## Numbers 9:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites

### Translation Words - UST

- so when that happened, the Israelites
- so when that happened, the Israelites
- so when that happened, the Israelites

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> When the cloud remained on the tabernacle for many days, then the people of Israel would obey Yahweh's instructions and not travel.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> Sometimes the cloud stayed over the sacred tent for a long time, so when that happened, the Israelites did not move.

## Numbers 9:20

### on the tabernacle

“over the tabernacle”

### make camp

Here the word “make” means to “set up.” Alternate translation: “set up their camp” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [when Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Sometimes the cloud remained a few days on the tabernacle. In that case, they would obey Yahweh's command—they would make camp and then travel on again at his command.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> Sometimes the cloud remained over the sacred tent for only a few days. The people stopped and set up their tents as [Yahweh](#) commanded them, and they moved to a new location [when Yahweh](#) commanded them to do that.

## Numbers 9:21

### from evening until morning

This means that the cloud only stayed over the tabernacle for one night. You make clear the full meaning of this statement. Alternate translation: “only from evening until morning” or “over the tabernacle for only one night” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### If it continued

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. “If the cloud stayed over the tabernacle” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### only when the cloud lifted would they journey on

“then after the cloud moved they would travel”

### ULT

**21** Sometimes the cloud was present in camp from evening until morning. When the cloud lifted in the morning, they journeyed. If it continued for a day and for a night, only when the cloud lifted would they journey on.

### UST

**21** Sometimes the cloud stayed in one place for only one day. When that happened, when the cloud rose up into the sky the next morning, then the people moved. Whenever the cloud moved, during the day or during the night, the people moved.



## Numbers 9:22

### the cloud was taken up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the cloud rose up” or “Yahweh took up the cloud” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [the people...they were...rose up into the sky, they...move](#)
- [the people...they were...rose up into the sky, they...move](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Whether the cloud stayed on the tabernacle for two days, a month, or a year, for as long as it stayed there, the people of Israel would stay in their camp and not travel. But whenever the cloud was taken up, they would set out on their journey.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> If the cloud stayed over the sacred tent for two days, or for a month, or for a year, during that time [the people](#) stayed where [they were](#). But when the cloud [rose up into the sky, they](#) started to [move](#).

## Numbers 9:23

### at Yahweh's command

The word "command" can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: "what Yahweh commanded" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Yahweh's command given through Moses

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the command that Yahweh had given through Moses" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#) (2)
- [Yahweh](#) (2)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)
- [watch](#), [watchman](#), [watchful](#), [guard](#), [take heed](#), [beware](#), [watch out](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [When Yahweh](#)
- [When he told them](#)
- [to move...They did whatever Yahweh told](#) (2)
- [to move...They did whatever Yahweh told](#) (2)
- [Moses they should do](#)
- [to move...They did whatever Yahweh told](#)
- [to move...They did whatever Yahweh told](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> They would camp at Yahweh's command, and they would travel at his command. They obeyed Yahweh's command given through Moses.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> [When Yahweh](#) commanded them to stop and set up their tents, they did that. [When he told them to move](#), they moved. [They did whatever Yahweh told Moses they should do](#).

## **Numbers 10**

### **Numbers 10 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Trumpets**

In the ancient Near East, trumpets were used for many purposes. They were used to call people together. They were also used to lead people into battle.

#### **Israel starts to move**

Each tribe had its place in line as did the tabernacle. Their movements through the desert were very deliberate and ordered. (See: [tabernacle](#))

## Numbers 10:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said,

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> [Yahweh](#) also told [Moses](#),

## Numbers 10:2

### Make two silver trumpets

This means that Yahweh commanded Moses to have someone make the trumpet. He did not make them himself. Alternate translation: "Tell someone to make two silver trumpets" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### You must use the trumpets

Moses will not blow the trumpets himself, but he will command the priests to blow them. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of silver](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> "Make two silver trumpets. Hammer the silver to make them. You must use the trumpets to call the community together and to call the community to move their camps.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> "Tell someone to make two trumpets by hammering each one from one lump [of silver](#). Blow the trumpets to summon the people to come together and also to signal that they must move their tents to a new location.

## Numbers 10:3

### in front of you

“while you are present.” This means that Moses was to be there with the priest when he blew the trumpets.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- feast, feasting

#### Translation Words - UST

- at the

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> The priests must blow the trumpets to call all the community together in front of you at the entrance to the tent of meeting.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> If both trumpets are blown, it means that everyone must gather together [at the](#) entrance of the sacred tent.

## Numbers 10:4

### the leaders, the heads of the clans of Israel

These two phrases refer to the same group of people. Here the second phrase is used to describe the first phrase. Alternate translation: "the leaders, who are the heads of the clans of Israel" (See: [Parallelism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- head
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

#### Translation Words - UST

- the twelve leaders of the tribes
- the twelve leaders of the tribes
- the twelve leaders of the tribes

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> If the priests blow only one trumpet, then the leaders, the heads of the clans of Israel, must gather to you.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> If only one trumpet is blown, it means that only [the twelve leaders of the tribes](#) must gather together.

## Numbers 10:5

### When you blow a loud signal

Here the word “you” is plural. Yahweh is speaking to Moses, but he is referring to the priests. The priests will blow the trumpets, Moses will not. Alternate translation: “When they blow a loud signal” (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Metonymy](#))

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> When you blow a loud signal, the camps on the east side must begin their journey.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> If the trumpets are blown loudly, the tribes that are to the east of the sacred tent should start to move.



## Numbers 10:6

### When you blow a loud signal

Here the word “you” is plural. Yahweh is speaking to Moses, but he is referring to the priests. The priests will blow the trumpets, Moses will not. Alternate translation: “When they blow a loud signal” (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### the second time

“time number 2” or “again” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### They must blow a loud signal for their journeys

“They” refers to the priests and the word “their” refers to the people of Israel.

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> When you blow a loud signal the second time, the camps on the south side must begin their journey. They must blow a loud signal for their journeys.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> When the trumpets are blown loudly the second time, the tribes that are to the south should start to move. The loud blasts on the trumpet will signal that they should start to move.

## Numbers 10:7

### When the community gathers together

“To gather the community together”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [congregation](#), [meeting](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [people](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> When the community gathers together, blow the trumpets, but not loudly.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> When you want only to gather the [people](#) together, blow the trumpets, but do not blow them as loudly.

## Numbers 10:8

### be a regulation for you

“be a rule for you.” Here “you” is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- priest, priesthood
- Aaron
- trumpet, trumpeters
- generation

#### Translation Words - UST

- descended from
- The priests
- Aaron
- the trumpets
- that will never be changed

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> The sons of Aaron, the priests, must blow the trumpets. This will always be a regulation for you throughout your people's generations.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> [The priests](#) who are [descended from Aaron](#) are the ones who should blow [the trumpets](#). That is a regulation [that will never be changed](#).

## Numbers 10:9

### When you go to war...oppresses you

Yahweh is speaking to Moses and uses the word “you,” but he is actually referring the people of Israel going to war. Alternate translation: “When the people of Israel to war...oppresses Israel” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### then you must sound an alarm with the trumpets

Here Yahweh again speaks to Moses using the word “you” but actually wants Moses to have the priests blow the trumpets. Alternate translation: “then you must command the priests to sound an alarm with the trumpets” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### call you to mind

This phrase “call to mind” means to remember. Alternate translation: “remember you” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [alarm, alarmed](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [trumpet, trumpeters](#)
- [deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [your God](#)
- [I, Yahweh](#)
- [blow...loudly](#)
- [against enemies](#)
- [your enemies](#)
- [the trumpets](#)
- [I will rescue you from](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> When you go to war in your land against an adversary who oppresses you, then you must sound an alarm with the trumpets. I, Yahweh your God, will call you to mind and save you from your enemies.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> When you fight [against enemies](#) who attack you in your own land, tell the priests to [blow the trumpets loudly](#). [I, Yahweh, your God](#), will hear that, and [I will rescue you from your enemies](#).

## Numbers 10:10

### of celebration

The noun “celebration” can be expressed with the verb “celebrate.” Alternate translation: “when you celebrate” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### you must blow the trumpets

Here Yahweh again speaks to Moses using the word “you,” but actually wants him to have the priests blow the trumpets. Alternate translation: “you must command the priests to blow the trumpets” (See: [Metonymy](#)),

### at the beginnings of the months

There are 12 months on the Hebrew calendar. The beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light marked the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar. (See: [Hebrew Months](#))

### your burnt offerings...your fellowship offerings...you to me

In these phrases the words “your” and “you” are plural and refer to the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### over the sacrifices

“in honor of the sacrifices”

### will act as a reminder of you to me

“will act as a memorial for you of me.” The word “reminder” can be expressed with the verb “remind.” Alternate translation: “will always remind you of me” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### These will act

The word “these” refers to the trumpets and the sacrifices.

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Yahweh
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- trumpet, trumpeters
- burnt offering, offering by fire

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- I am Yahweh your
- I am Yahweh your

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Also, at the times of celebration, both your regular festivals and at the beginnings of the months, you must blow the trumpets over your burnt offerings and over the sacrifices for your fellowship offerings. These will act as a reminder of you to me, your God. I am Yahweh your God.”

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Also tell the priests to blow the trumpets when the people are happy, and at the festivals each year, and at the times when they celebrate the new moon each month. Tell them to blow the trumpets when the people bring offerings that will be completely burned, and when they bring offerings to restore fellowship with me. If they do that, it will help you to think about me. You must do that, because I am Yahweh your God.”

- when the people are happy
- If they do that, it will help you
- Also tell...to blow the trumpets
- when the people bring offerings that...completely burned

## Numbers 10:11

### In the second year

“In year 2.” This refers to the second year after Yahweh brought the Israelites out of Egypt. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### in the second month, on the twentieth day of the month

“on day 20 of month 2.” This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### the cloud was lifted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the cloud rose up” or “Yahweh lifted the cloud” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the tabernacle of the covenant decrees

The tabernacle was also called by this longer name because the ark with the law of God was placed inside it. See how you translated this in [Numbers 1:50](#).

#### ULT

**11** In the second year, in the second month, on the twentieth day of the month, the cloud was lifted from the tabernacle of the covenant decrees.

#### UST

**11** In the second year after the Israelites left Egypt, on the twentieth day of the second month, the cloud rose up from above the sacred tent.

## Numbers 10:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [So the Israelites](#)
- [So the Israelites](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> The people of Israel then went on their journey from the wilderness of Sinai. The cloud stopped in the wilderness of Paran.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> [So the Israelites](#) moved from the wilderness of Sinai, and they continued traveling north until the cloud stopped [in the wilderness](#) of Paran.



## Numbers 10:13

### Yahweh's command given through Moses

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the commands that Yahweh had given through Moses" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [that Yahweh had given](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [to tell them](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> They made their first journey, following Yahweh's command given through Moses.

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> That was the first time they moved, obeying the instructions [that Yahweh had given](#) to [Moses to tell them](#).

## Numbers 10:14

### The camp under the banner of Judah's descendants

This camp includes the three tribes under the division of Judah: Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun.

#### went out first

They packed up their camp and they left that place before all the others left. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Nahshon son of Amminadab

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:7](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Judea](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [from](#)
- [son of](#)
- [of Judah](#)

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> The camp under the banner of Judah's descendants went out first, moving out their individual armies. Nahshon son of Amminadab led Judah's army.

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> The group that went first, carrying their flag, was the group [from](#) the tribe [of Judah](#). Nahshon [son of](#) Amminadab, was their leader.

## Numbers 10:15

### Nethanel son of Zuar

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:8](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [The...from](#)
- [son of](#)

#### ULT

**15** Nethanel son of Zuar led the army of the tribe of Issachar's descendants.

#### UST

**15** The group [from](#) the tribe of Issachar followed them. Nethanel [son of](#) Zuar, was their leader.

## Numbers 10:16

### Eliab son of Helon

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:9](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [from](#)
- [son of](#)

#### ULT

**16** Eliab son of Helon led the army of the tribe of Zebulun's descendants.

#### UST

**16** The group [from](#) the tribe of Zebulun went next. Eliab [son of](#) Helon, was their leader.

## Numbers 10:17

### Gershon...Merari

See how you translated these men's names in [Numbers 3:17](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [and the descendants of](#)
- [and they](#)

#### ULT

**17** The descendants of Gershon and of Merari, who cared for the tabernacle, took down the tabernacle and then set out on their journey.

#### UST

**17** Then they dismantled the sacred tent, [and the descendants of](#) Gershon and Merari carried it, [and they](#) went next.

## Numbers 10:18

### the armies under the banner of Reuben's camp

This refers to the armies of the tribes under the division of Reuben: Reuben, Simeon, and Gad.

### Elizur son of Shedeur

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:5](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Reuben](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son of](#)
- [Reuben](#)

### ULT

**18** Next, the armies under the banner of Reuben's camp set out on their journey. Elizur son of Shedeur led Reuben's army.

### UST

**18** The group from the tribe of [Reuben](#) went next, carrying their flag. Elizur [son of](#) Shedeur was their leader.

## Numbers 10:19

### Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai

See how you translated this man's name [Numbers 1:6](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [from](#)
- [son of](#)

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai led the army of the tribe of Simeon's descendants.

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> The group [from](#) the tribe of Simeon was next. Shelumiel [son of](#) Zurishaddai was their leader.

## Numbers 10:20

### Eliasaph son of Deuel

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:14](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Gad](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [from](#)
- [son of](#)
- [of Gad was next](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Eliasaph son of Deuel led the army of the tribe of Gad's descendants.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> The group [from](#) the tribe [of Gad was next](#). Eliasaph [son of](#) Deuel was their leader.



## Numbers 10:21

### Kohathites

This refers to the descendants of Kohath. See how you translated this in [Numbers 3:27](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sanctuary](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the sacred items from the sacred tent](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> The Kohathites set out. They carried the sanctuary's holy equipment. Others would set up the tabernacle before the Kohathites arrived at the next camp.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> The group descended from Kohath was next. They carried [the sacred items from the sacred tent](#). The sacred tent was set up at the new location before they arrived there.

## Numbers 10:22

### The armies under the banner of Ephraim's descendants

This refers to the armies of the tribes under the division of Ephraim: Ephraim, Manasseh, and Benjamin.

### Elishama son of Ammihud

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:10](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [the tribe of Ephraim](#)
- [son of](#)
- [the tribe of Ephraim](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> The armies under the banner of Ephraim's descendants set out next. Elishama son of Ammihud led Ephraim's army.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> The group from [the tribe of Ephraim](#) was next, carrying their flag. Elishama [son of](#) Ammihud, was their leader.

## Numbers 10:23

### Gamaliel son of Pedahzur

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:10](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [from](#)
- [son of](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Gamaliel son of Pedahzur led the army of the tribe of Manasseh's descendants.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> The group [from](#) the tribe of Manasseh went next. Gamaliel [son of](#) Pedahzur, was their leader.

## Numbers 10:24

### Abidan son of Gideoni

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:11](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [from](#)
- [son of](#)
- [Benjamin was next](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Abidan son of Gideoni led the army of the tribe of Benjamin's descendants.

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> The group [from](#) the tribe of [Benjamin was next](#). Abidan [son of](#) Gideoni, was their leader.

## Numbers 10:25

### The armies that camped under the banner of Dan's descendants

This refers to the armies of the tribes under the division of Dan: Dan, Asher, and Naphtali.

### Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:12](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [The ones who...from...of Dan, carrying their](#)
- [son of](#)
- [The ones who...from...of Dan, carrying their](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> The armies that camped under the banner of Dan's descendants set out last. Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai led Dan's army.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> [The ones who](#) went last were the groups from the tribe [of Dan, carrying their](#) flag. Ahiezer [son of](#) Ammishaddai, was their leader.

## Numbers 10:26

### Pagiel son of Okran

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:13](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [from](#)
- [son of](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Pagiel son of Okran led the army of the tribe of Asher's descendants.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> The group [from](#) the tribe of Asher went next. Pagiel [son of](#) Ocran, was their leader.

## Numbers 10:27

### Ahira son of Enan

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:15](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [from](#)
- [son of](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Ahira son of Enan led the army of the tribe of Naphtali's descendants.

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> The group [from](#) the tribe of Naphtali went last. Ahira [son of](#) Enan, was their leader.

## Numbers 10:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of](#)
- [Israelite tribes](#)

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> This is the way that the armies of the people of Israel set out on their journey.

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> That was the order in which the groups [of Israelite tribes](#) traveled.



## Numbers 10:29

### Hobab son of Reuel

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### that Yahweh described

“that Yahweh described to us”

### we will do you good

“we will treat you well”

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- Moses
- Moses
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- son of
- One day Moses said to...We are...the way to the place that Yahweh...we will
- Yahweh
- on...has promised to do good things for us Israelite people
- on...has promised to do good things for us Israelite people
- One day Moses said to...We are...the way to the place that Yahweh...we will
- on...has promised to do good things for us Israelite people
- Come

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Moses spoke to Hobab son of Reuel the Midianite. Reuel was the father of Moses' wife. Moses spoke to Hobab and said, “We are traveling to a place that Yahweh described. Yahweh said, ‘I will give it to you.’ Come with us and we will do you good. Yahweh has promised to do good for Israel.”

### UST

<sup>29</sup> [One day Moses said to](#) his brother-in-law Hobab [son of](#) Reuel from the Midian people group, “[We are](#) on [the way to the place that Yahweh](#) promised to give to us. [Come](#) with us, and [we will](#) take good care of you, because [Yahweh has promised to do good things for us Israelite people](#).”

## Numbers 10:30

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- walk, walked
- walk, walked
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- go with you
- my own family
- land

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> But Hobab said to Moses, "I will not go with you. I will go to my own land and my own people."

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> But Hobab replied, "No, I will not [go with you](#). I want to return to my own [land](#) and to [my own family](#)."

## Numbers 10:31

### You must watch out for us

The phrase “watch out” means to guide and to take care of. Alternate translation: “You can guide us and show us how to live in the desert” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- forsake, forsaken, leave
- desert, wilderness
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- leave us
- this desert
- You know

### ULT

**31** Then Moses replied, “Please do not leave us. You know how to camp in the wilderness. You must watch out for us.

### UST

**31** But Moses said, “Please do not [leave us](#). [You know](#) the places where we can set up our tents in [this desert](#), and you can guide us.

## Numbers 10:32

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Yahweh
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- share
- Yahweh
- Come with us

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> If you go with us, we will do for you the same good that Yahweh does to us."

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> Come with us. We will share with you all the good things that Yahweh gives to us."

## Numbers 10:33

### They journeyed

"They" refers to the people of Israel.

### the mountain of Yahweh

This refers to Mount Sinai. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "Mount Sinai, the mountain of Yahweh" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### The ark of the covenant of Yahweh went before them

The group of Levites carrying the ark of the covenant went before the people of Israel as they traveled. Alternate translation: "Men carried the ark of the covenant of Yahweh before them as they traveled" (See: [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [rest, rested, restless](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the sacred chest](#)
- [they walked for](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [for a place to set up their tents](#)

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> They journeyed from the mountain of Yahweh for three days. The ark of the covenant of Yahweh went before them for three days to find a place for them to rest.

### UST

<sup>33</sup> So Hobab agreed to go with them. The Israelites left Mount Sinai, which they called the Mountain of [Yahweh](#), and [they walked for](#) three days. The men carrying [the sacred chest](#) went in front of the other people for those three days, and they kept looking [for a place to set up their tents](#).

## Numbers 10:34

### by daylight

“every day” or “during the day”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> Yahweh's cloud was over them by daylight as they journeyed.

#### UST

<sup>34</sup> The cloud sent by [Yahweh](#) was over them every day.

## Numbers 10:35

### Whenever the ark set out

Here the ark is spoken of as if were a person traveling. The ark was really being carried by men. Alternate translation: "Whenever the people carrying the ark set out" (See: [Personification](#))

### Rise up, Yahweh

Here the phrase "rise up" is a request for Yahweh to act, in this case Moses is asking him to scatter their enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Make those who hate you run from you

Here Moses speaks about Yahweh causing their enemies to flee from the people of Israel as if they were fleeing from Yahweh himself.

Alternate translation: "Make those who hate you run away from your ark and your people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Whenever the ark set out, Moses would say, "Rise up, Yahweh. Scatter your enemies. Make those who hate you run from you."

#### UST

<sup>35</sup> Each morning when the men who were carrying the sacred chest started to walk, [Moses](#) said, "[Yahweh](#), arise! Scatter [your enemies](#)! Cause those who hate you to run away from you!"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [your enemies](#)

## Numbers 10:36

### Whenever the ark stopped

Here the ark is spoken of as if were a person traveling. The ark was really being carried by men. Alternate translation: “Whenever the people carrying the ark stopped” (See: [Personification](#))

### many tens of thousands

This refers to people. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “many tens of thousands of people” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [And each time the men stopped to](#)
- [of us Israelites](#)

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Whenever the ark stopped, Moses would say, “Return, Yahweh, to Israel’s many tens of thousands.”

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> [And each time the men stopped to](#) set down the sacred chest, Moses said, “[Yahweh](#), stay close to the multiplied thousands [of us Israelites!](#)”



## Numbers 11

### Numbers 11 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Complaining

Moses complained about having too much responsibility. Therefore, God gave seventy men the spirit of prophecy to help Moses. The people complained about food, even though Yahweh was miraculously providing them with their food. The people complained because they did not have meat or fish to eat. God sent them quail. He punished some of the people, but it does not say why God did this. (See: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#) and [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

## Numbers 11:1

### Fire from Yahweh burned

"Yahweh sent fire that burned"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- people, people group,
- devour
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- When Yahweh
- So he sent a
- about their troubles
- One day the people
- which burned
- fire

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now the people complained about their troubles as Yahweh listened. Yahweh heard the people and became angry. Fire from Yahweh burned among them and consumed some of the camp on its edges.

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> One day the people complained to Yahweh about their troubles. When Yahweh heard what they were saying, he became angry. So he sent a fire which burned among the people at the edge of their camp.

## Numbers 11:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- Moses
- Moses
- people, people group,
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses, and he prayed
- Moses, and he prayed
- Moses, and he prayed
- Then the people
- Then the fire

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Then people called out to Moses, so Moses prayed to Yahweh, and the fire stopped.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Then the people cried out to Moses, and he prayed to Yahweh. Then the fire stopped burning.

## Numbers 11:3

### That place was named

This can be stated in the active form. Alternate translation: "They named that place" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- name
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- declare, proclaim, announce

### Translation Words - UST

- from Yahweh
- called
- the fire
- called

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> That place was named Taberah, because Yahweh's fire burned among them.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> So they [called](#) that place Taberah, which means 'Burning,' because [the fire from Yahweh](#) had burned among them.

## Numbers 11:4

### Who will give us meat to eat?

The Israelites ask this question in order to complain and to express their desire for something other than manna to eat. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: “We wish that we had meat to eat.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [devour](#)
- [return](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [the Israelite people](#)
- [meat](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)
- [to eat](#)
- [began to](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Some foreign people began to camp with Israel's descendants. They wanted better food to eat. Then the people of Israel began to weep and say, “Who will give us meat to eat?”

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> Then some troublemakers from other people groups who were traveling with the Israelites [began to](#) want better food. And when they started complaining [the Israelite people](#) also started to complain. They said, “We wish we had some [meat to eat](#)!”

## Numbers 11:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [devour](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [while we were in Egypt](#)
- [we could eat](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> We remember the fish that we ate freely in Egypt, the cucumbers, the melons, the leeks, the onions, and the garlic.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> We remember the fish that we ate [while we were in Egypt](#), fish that was given to us without cost. And we had all the cucumbers, melons, leeks, onions, and garlic [we could eat](#).

## Numbers 11:6

### our appetite is gone

“we do not want to eat” or “we cannot eat”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- manna

#### Translation Words - UST

- appetite
- is this manna

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Now our appetite is gone, because all we can see is this manna.”

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> But now we have lost our [appetite](#), because all we have to eat [is this manna!](#)”

## Numbers 11:7

### coriander seed

Coriander is also known as cilantro. This seed serves as a spice when dried.

### resin

This is a sticky substance with a pale yellow color.

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Manna was like coriander seed. It looked like resin.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> The manna resembled small white seeds.



## Numbers 11:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [glean](#), [gleanings](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Each morning the people](#)
- [and gather some from the surface of the ground](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> The people walked around and gathered it. They ground it in mills, beat it in mortars, boiled it in pots, and made it into cakes. It tasted like fresh olive oil.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> [Each morning the people](#) would go out [and gather some from the surface of the ground](#). Then they made flour by grinding it or pounding it with stones. Then they added water and boiled it in a pot, or they made flat cakes with it and baked them. The cakes tasted like bread that was baked with olive oil.

## Numbers 11:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [manna](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the manna](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> When the dew fell on the camp in the night, the manna also fell.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> Each night [the manna](#) came down on the ground where their tents were, like dew from the sky.

## Numbers 11:10

### in Moses' eyes

he eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: "in Moses' opinion" or "in Moses' judgement" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Moses
- clan
- people, people group,
- afflict, affliction, distress

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses
- and Moses
- standing in the
- Israelite people
- perturbed

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Moses heard the people weeping in their families, and every man was at the entrance to his tent. Yahweh was very angry, and in Moses' eyes their complaining was wrong.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> [Moses](#) heard all the [Israelite people](#) complaining as they were [standing in the](#) entrances of their tents. [Yahweh](#) became very angry, [and Moses](#) was also very [perturbed](#).

## Numbers 11:11

### General Information:

Moses complains to Yahweh using several rhetorical questions. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Why have you treated your servant so badly? Why are you not pleased with me?

Moses used these questions to complain about the way God was treating him. They can be expressed as statements. Moses speaks of himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "You should not treat me, your servant, so badly. You should not be angry with me!" or "I, your servant, have done nothing wrong for you to treat me so badly!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### You make me carry the load of all these people

Moses complains and speaks of leading the people and providing for them as if he were carrying a heavy load. Alternate translation: "You make me responsible for all these people, but it's too hard for me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

**11** Moses said to Yahweh, "Why have you treated your servant so badly? Why are you not pleased with me? You make me carry the load of all these people."

### UST

**11** [He went into the sacred tent](#) and asked [Yahweh](#), "Why have you brought this [trouble](#) on me, [your servant](#)? [Act mercifully](#) to me! What wrong have I done, with the result that you have appointed me [to take care of](#) all [of these people](#)?"

### Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Yahweh
- Moses
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- people, people group,
- afflict, affliction, distress
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- Act mercifully
- Yahweh
- He went into the sacred tent
- to take care of
- of these people
- trouble
- your servant

## Numbers 11:12

### Did I conceive all these people?

Moses used this question to remind God that Moses was not their father. Alternate translation: "I am not the father of all these people." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Have I given them birth so that you should say to me, 'Carry...baby?'

Moses wants God to remember that God told him to take care of the Israelites even though Moses was not their father. Alternate translation: "I have not given them birth, so you have no right to say to me, 'Carry...baby!'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Carry them closely to your chest

To take care of the Israelites is spoken of as if it were to carry a helpless newborn baby. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Should I carry them...to give them?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not expect me to carry them...to give them!" or "I am not able to carry them...to give them!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- people, people group,
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

### Translation Words - UST

- I
- ancestors
- them
- you promised to give to

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Did I conceive all these people? Have I given them birth so that you should say to me, 'Carry them closely to your chest as a father carries a baby?' Should I carry them to the land that you swore to their ancestors to give them?

### UST

<sup>12</sup> I am not their father. Why have you told me to take care of [them](#) like a woman carries around her baby and nurses it? How can I take them to the land that [you promised to give to](#) our [ancestors](#)?

## Numbers 11:13

### Where can I find meat to give to all this people?

Moses used this question to complain that it was impossible for him to give meat to all the people. Alternate translation: "I cannot possibly find enough meat to give to all these people." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [devour](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [meat](#)
- [some meat](#)
- [people](#)
- [to eat](#)

#### ULT

**13** Where can I find meat to give to all this people? They are weeping in front of me and are saying, 'Give us meat to eat.'

#### UST

**13** Where can I get [meat](#) to feed to all these [people](#)? They keep complaining to me, saying, 'Give us [some meat to eat!](#)'

## Numbers 11:14

### I cannot bear all these people alone

Moses speaks of leading and providing for the people as if he were carrying them. Alternate translation: "I cannot provide for all these people alone" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### They are too much for me

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "This responsibility is too difficult for me" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [pray](#), [prayer](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),

### Translation Words - UST

- [I](#)
- [people's](#)

### ULT

**14** I cannot bear all these people alone. They are too much for me.

### UST

**14** [I](#) cannot carry all these [people's](#) burdens by myself! They are like a heavy load to me, and I cannot carry this very heavy load anymore.

## Numbers 11:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### Translation Words - UST

- be kind to me
- of trying to take care of them
- kill me
- and kill me

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Since you are treating me this way, kill me now—if I find favor in your eyes—do not let me see my misery.”

### UST

<sup>15</sup> If you intend to act like this toward me, [kill me](#) now. If you are really concerned about me, [be kind to me and kill me](#) to end my misery [of trying to take care of them!](#)”



## Numbers 11:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- people, people group,
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- elder, older, old
- feast, feasting
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh...to Moses, "Summon
- the Israelite
- Yahweh...to Moses...Summon
- people...you
- Yahweh...to Moses...Summon
- Yahweh...to Moses...Summon
- Tell them
- of the sacred
- know

### ULT

**16** Yahweh said to Moses, "Bring to me seventy of Israel's elders. Be sure that they are elders and officers of the people. Bring them to the tent of meeting to stand there with you.

### UST

**16** Then [Yahweh](#) said [to Moses](#), "[Summon](#) seventy men whom you [know](#) are leaders among [the Israelite people](#). [Tell them](#) to stand with [you](#) in front [of the sacred](#) tent.

## Numbers 11:17

### some of the Spirit that is on you

The “Spirit” here represents the power that God’s Spirit had given to Moses so that Moses could do what God told him to do. Alternate translation: “some of the power that the Spirit has given you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### They will bear the burden of the people with you

God speaks of the responsibility of leading and providing for the people as if it were a burden that Moses and the leaders would carry. Alternate translation: “They will help you care for the people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### You will not have to bear it alone

God speaks of the responsibility of leading and providing for the people as if it were a burden that Moses and the leaders would carry. Alternate translation: “You will not care for them alone” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),

### Translation Words - UST

- [will put](#)
- [the people are concerned about](#)

### ULT

**17** I will come down and talk with you there. I will take some of the Spirit that is on you and put it on them. They will bear the burden of the people with you. You will not have to bear it alone.

### UST

**17** I will come down and talk with you there. Then I will take some of the power of my Spirit that you have, and I [will put](#) that power on them also. They will help you to take care of some of the things that [the people are concerned about](#), in order that you will not need to do it alone.

## Numbers 11:18

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### Who will give us meat to eat?

The Israelites had asked this question in order to complain and to express their desire for something other than manna to eat. It can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "We wish that we had meat to eat." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- flesh
- flesh
- flesh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- devour
- devour
- devour

### Translation Words - UST

- Make yourselves acceptable to me
- you will have meat
- meat
- some meat, and
- and Yahweh heard you
- Now Yahweh
- in Egypt
- the people
- eat
- you
- you will eat it

### ULT

**18** Say to the people, 'Consecrate yourselves, for tomorrow you will indeed eat meat, for you have wept and Yahweh has heard. You said, "Who will give us meat to eat? It was good for us in Egypt." Therefore Yahweh will give you meat, and you will eat it.

### UST

**18** Furthermore, say to [the people](#), ' [Make yourselves acceptable to me](#), and tomorrow [you will have meat](#) to [eat](#). You were complaining, [and Yahweh heard you](#) when [you](#) were saying, "We want some [meat](#) to eat. We had better food [in Egypt](#)!" [Now Yahweh](#) will give you [some meat, and you will eat it](#).

## Numbers 11:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- devour

### Translation Words - UST

- You will eat meat

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> You will not eat meat for only one day, two days, five days, ten days, or twenty days,

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> You will eat meat not only for one or two days, or only for five or ten or twenty days.

## Numbers 11:20

### until it comes out of your nostrils

Possible meanings are 1) God speaks of vomiting as if the food would come out through their nostrils. Alternate translation: “until you are sick and vomit” or 2) they would eat so much meat that it would be as if it would come out of their nostrils. Alternate translation: “until it feels like it would have to come out of your nostrils” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Why did we leave Egypt?

The people had used this question to express regret and to complain. Alternate translation: “We never should have left Egypt.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [want to vomit](#)
- [left](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> but you will eat meat for a whole month until it comes out of your nostrils. It will disgust you because you have rejected Yahweh, who is among you. You have wept before him. You said, “Why did we leave Egypt?””

### UST

<sup>20</sup> You will eat meat every day for one month, and then you will loathe it, and it will cause you to [want to vomit](#). This will happen because you have rejected [Yahweh](#) who is here among you, and you have wailed in his presence, saying “We would have had better food to eat if we had not [left Egypt](#).””

## Numbers 11:21

### 600,000 people

“six hundred thousand people” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [devour](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [will give them plenty of meat](#)
- [I](#)
- [But Moses](#)
- [There are...men plus women and children here with me](#)
- [will give them plenty of meat](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Then Moses said, “I am with 600,000 people, and you have said, ‘I will give them meat to eat for a whole month.’

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> [But Moses](#) replied to Yahweh, “[There are](#) six hundred thousand [men plus women and children here with me](#), so why do you say ‘[I will give them plenty of meat](#) every day for a month!’?”

## Numbers 11:22

### Should we kill flocks and herds to satisfy them? Should we catch all the fish in the sea to satisfy them?

Moses uses these questions to express his doubt that there could be enough meat to feed all of the people. Alternate translation: "We would have to kill entire flocks and herds and catch all the fish in the sea to satisfy them!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### flocks and herds

These two words mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize a great number of animals. (See: [Doublet](#))

### all the fish in the sea

The word "all" is an exaggeration to show how impossible it was to provide food for all the people of Israel. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### to satisfy them

"to satisfy their hunger"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to provide](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Should we kill flocks and herds to satisfy them? Should we catch all the fish in the sea to satisfy them?"

### UST

<sup>22</sup> Even if we killed all the sheep and cattle, that would not be enough [to provide](#) meat for all of them! Even if we caught all the fish in the sea and gave it to them, that would not be enough!"

## Numbers 11:23

### Is my hand short?

Here the word “hand” represents God’s power. God uses this question to rebuke Moses for thinking that God did not have the power to provide enough meat for the people. Alternate translation: “Do you think that I am not powerful enough to do this?” or “You should know I am more than strong enough to do this.” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [But Yahweh](#)
- [Do you think that I have](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, “Is my hand short? Now you will see whether or not my word is true.”

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> [But Yahweh](#) said to [Moses](#), “[Do you think that I have](#) no power? You will now see if I can do what I say I will do.”



## Numbers 11:24

### Yahweh's words

"what Yahweh had said"

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,
- people, people group, (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- went out from the sacred tent
- what Yahweh
- So Moses
- the people
- them (2)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Moses went out and told the people Yahweh's words. He gathered seventy of the people's elders and positioned them around the tent.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> So Moses went out from the sacred tent and told the people what Yahweh had said. Then he gathered together the seventy leaders and told them to stand around the sacred tent.

## Numbers 11:25

### some of the Spirit that was on Moses

The “Spirit” here represents the power that God’s Spirit had given to Moses. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Numbers 11:17](#). Alternate translation: “some of the power that the Spirit had given to Moses” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### put it on the seventy elders

Giving power to the elders is spoken of as putting the Spirit on them. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Numbers 11:17](#). Alternate translation: “gave it to the seventy elders” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### When the Spirit rested on them

Having power from the Spirit is spoken of as if the Spirit rested on them. Alternate translation: “When they had power from the Spirit” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- elder, older, old

### Translation Words - UST

- they prophesied
- Then Yahweh
- leaders

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Yahweh came down in the cloud and spoke to Moses. Yahweh took some of the Spirit that was on Moses and put it on the seventy elders. When the Spirit rested on them, they prophesied, but only on that occasion and not again.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> [Then Yahweh](#) came down in the cloud that was above the tent and spoke to Moses. He took some of the power of the Spirit that he had given to Moses and gave it to the seventy [leaders](#). By means of the power of the Spirit within them, [they prophesied](#), but they did that only once.

## Numbers 11:26

### The Spirit also rested on them

The Spirit giving them power is spoken of as if the Spirit rested on them. Alternate translation: "The Spirit also gave them power" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Their names were written on the list

This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses had written their names on the list" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- name
- rest, rested, restless
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- started to prophesy
- Eldad and Medad, were not there when the rest of them...But Yahweh's Spirit came on them also
- Eldad and Medad, were not there when the rest of them...But Yahweh's Spirit came on them also
- left

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Two men remained in the camp, named Eldad and Medad. The Spirit also rested on them. Their names were written on the list, but they had not gone out to the tent. Nevertheless, they prophesied in the camp.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> Two of the leaders whom Moses appointed, Eldad and Medad, were not there when the rest of them gathered together. They had not left their tents to go and stand around the sacred tent. But Yahweh's Spirit came on them also, and they started to prophesy.

## Numbers 11:27

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [So a young man](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> A young man in the camp ran and told Moses, "Eldad and Medad are prophesying in the camp."

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> [So a young man](#) ran and told Moses, "Eldad and Medad are prophesying where all their tents are!"

## Numbers 11:28

### stop them

"tell them to stop prophesying"

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Moses
- Moses
- Joshua
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- Sir
- young
- who had helped Moses since he was a...man
- Sir
- Joshua
- who had helped Moses since he was a...man

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Joshua son of Nun, Moses' assistant, one of his chosen men, said to Moses, "My master Moses, stop them."

### UST

<sup>28</sup> Joshua, who had helped Moses since he was a young man, said, "Sir, tell them to stop doing that!"

## Numbers 11:29

### Are you jealous for my sake?

Moses uses this question to rebuke Joshua. It can be translated as a statement, if necessary. Alternate translation: "You should not be jealous for my sake." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Are you jealous for my sake?

What Joshua might have been jealous about can be stated clearly if needed. Alternate translation: "Are you concerned that they might be taking away something that belongs to me?" or "Are you concerned that people will not respect my authority?" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### that he would put his Spirit on them all

Moses speaks of God's Spirit giving people power as if God were to put his Spirit on them. Alternate translation: "that God's Spirit would give them all power" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- could prophesy
- Spirit
- Yahweh
- Yahweh's
- But Moses...Are you worried that they might injure my reputation? I wish that
- people

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Moses said to him, "Are you jealous for my sake? I wish that all of Yahweh's people were prophets and that he would put his Spirit on them all!"

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> [But Moses](#) replied, "[Are you worried that they might injure my reputation? I wish that](#) all [Yahweh's people could prophesy](#). I wish that [Yahweh](#) would give the power of his [Spirit](#) to all of them!"

## Numbers 11:30

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the leaders](#)
- [Then Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Then Moses and the elders of Israel went back to the camp.

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> [Then Moses](#) and all [the leaders](#) went back to their tents.

## Numbers 11:31

### quail

a small bird (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### about a day's journey on one side and a day's journey on the other side

"in each direction for as far as a person could walk in one day"

### about two cubits

A cubit is a unit of measurement equal to about 46 centimeters.  
Alternate translation: "about 92 centimeters" or "about 1 meter"  
(See: [Biblical Distance](#) and [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [wind](#)
- [Then Yahweh](#)
- [to fall](#)
- [the ground](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Then a wind came from Yahweh and brought quail from the sea. They fell near the camp, about a day's journey on one side and a day's journey on the other side. The quail surrounded the camp about two cubits above the ground.

### UST

<sup>31</sup> [Then Yahweh](#) sent a strong [wind](#) from the sea. It blew quail into the area all around the camp, and caused the quail [to fall](#) onto the ground. They were piled up on [the ground](#) a meter high!



## Numbers 11:32

### No one gathered less than ten homers of quail

This is a double negative which can be expressed as a positive statement. Alternate translation: "Everyone gathered at least ten homers of quail" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### ten homers

A homer is a unit of volume equal to about 220 liters. Alternate translation: "2,200 liters" (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [congregation](#), [meeting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [So the people](#)
- [It seemed as though each person gathered](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> The people were busy gathering quail all that day, all the night, and all the next day. No one gathered less than ten homers of quail. They shared the quail all through the camp.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> [So the people](#) went out and gathered up the quail all that day, and all that night, and all of the following day. [It seemed as though each person gathered](#) two cubic meters! They spread the quail out on the ground all around the camp, so that the quail would lose their moisture.

## Numbers 11:33

### While the meat was still between their teeth, while they were chewing it

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize that God punished them immediately, even while they were eating the meat. Alternate translation: "While they were still eating the meat" (See: [Parallelism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- wrath, fury
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- cut off

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh...angry with them
- He (2)
- Yahweh...angry with them
- But while they
- people
- Then they cooked them

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> While the meat was still between their teeth, while they were chewing it, Yahweh became angry at them. He attacked the people with a very great disease.

#### UST

<sup>33</sup> [Then they cooked them](#) and started to eat them. [But while they](#) were still eating the meat, [Yahweh](#) showed that he was very [angry with them](#). [He](#) sent a severe plague on them, and many [people](#) died.

## Numbers 11:34

### That place was named Kibroth Hattaavah

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They named that place Kibroth Hattaavah" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [bury](#), [buried](#), [burial](#)
- [declare](#), [proclaim](#), [announce](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [called](#)
- [those](#)
- [were buried were](#)
- [people who died and](#)

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> That place was named Kibroth Hattaavah, because there they buried the people who had craved meat.

#### UST

<sup>34</sup> The [people who died and were buried were](#) the ones who had said they wanted to eat meat like they had formerly eaten in Egypt. So they [called](#) that place Kibroth Hattaavah, which means 'graves of [those](#) who craved.'

## Numbers 11:35

### Hazeroth

This is the name of a place in the desert. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),

#### Translation Words - UST

- [From there, the Israelites continued walking east until](#)

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> From Kibroth Hattaavah the people traveled to Hazeroth, where they stayed.

#### UST

<sup>35</sup> [From there, the Israelites continued walking east until](#) they arrived at Hazeroth, where they stopped and stayed for a long time.

## Numbers 12

### Numbers 12 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 12:6-8.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Idiom

God used the idiom “mouth to mouth” meaning “speaking directly with both people present.” This indicated that Moses was more than just a prophet and greater than other prophets. (See: [Idiom](#) and [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#))

## Numbers 12:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then Miriam and Aaron spoke against Moses because of the Cushite woman whom he had married.

### UST

<sup>1-2</sup> Moses' older sister Miriam and his older brother Aaron were jealous of Moses and said, "Is Moses the only one to whom Yahweh has spoken messages to tell to us? Does Yahweh not speak messages through us two also?" They also criticized Moses because he had married a woman who was a descendant of the Cush people group. And Yahweh heard Miriam and Aaron complaining about Moses.

## Numbers 12:2

### Has Yahweh spoken only with Moses? Has he not spoken also with us?

Miriam and Aaron use these questions to complain that Moses had so much authority and they did not. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has not spoken only with Moses. He has also spoken with us." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Now Yahweh heard

The word "Now" here draws attention to the important point that follows.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> They said, "Has Yahweh spoken only with Moses? Has he not spoken also with us?" Now Yahweh heard what they said.

#### UST

<sup>1-2</sup> Moses' older sister Miriam and his older brother Aaron were jealous of Moses and said, "Is Moses the only one to whom Yahweh has spoken messages to tell to us? Does Yahweh not speak messages through us two also?" They also criticized Moses because he had married a woman who was a descendant of the Cush people group. And Yahweh heard Miriam and Aaron complaining about Moses.

## Numbers 12:3

### Now the man Moses

“Now” is used to mark a break in the main story line. The narrator tells background information about Moses’ character. (See:

[Background Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [face](#), [facial](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses was a](#)
- [the](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Now the man Moses was very humble, humbler than anyone else on earth.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> The truth was that [Moses was a](#) very humble person. He was more humble than anyone else on [the](#) earth.



## Numbers 12:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [feast](#), [feasting](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [did that](#)
- [So...Yahweh spoke](#)
- [Moses and](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [and stand at the](#)
- [must go](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Right away Yahweh spoke to Moses, Aaron, and Miriam: "Come out, you three, to the tent of meeting." So the three of them went out.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> [So](#) immediately [Yahweh spoke](#) to [Moses and](#) to [Aaron](#) and Miriam. He said, "All three of you [must go and stand at the](#) sacred tent." So they [did that](#).

## Numbers 12:5

### a pillar of cloud

The shape of the cloud is spoken of as if it were a pillar. Alternate translation: “a cloud shaped like a pillar” or “a tall cloud” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [to step forward, so they did](#)
- [Then Yahweh](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [He told](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then Yahweh came down in a pillar of cloud. He stood at the entrance to the tent and called Aaron and Miriam. They both came forward.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> [Then Yahweh](#) descended to the entrance of the tent in a cloud that resembled a huge white pillar. [He told Aaron](#) and Miriam [to step forward, so they did](#).

## Numbers 12:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- a prophet
- to me
- in dreams

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Yahweh said, "Now listen to my words. When a prophet of mine is with you, I will reveal myself to him in visions and speak to him in dreams.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Then he said to them, "Listen [to me](#)! When [a prophet](#) is among you, I usually reveal myself to him by allowing him to see visions, and I speak to him [in dreams](#).

## Numbers 12:7

### My servant Moses is not like that

"I do not speak to Moses like that"

### He is faithful in all my house

Here "my house" represents the nation of Israel. Being faithful in God's house represents being faithful in leading Israel. Alternate translation: "Moses leads my people faithfully" or "Moses is the one whom I trust to lead my people Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- Moses
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- I trust that
- Moses
- I speak to my servant
- my people well

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> My servant Moses is not like that. He is faithful in all my house.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> But that is not the way [I speak to my servant Moses](#). [I trust that](#) he will lead [my people well](#).

## Numbers 12:8

### So why are you unafraid to speak against my servant, against Moses?

Yahweh asks this question to rebuke Miriam and Aaron. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “You should be afraid to speak against my servant, against Moses.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### against my servant, against Moses

The phrase “against Moses” clarifies that he is the “servant” of whom Yahweh speaks. Alternate translation: “against my servant, Moses” (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- Yahweh

### Translation Words - UST

- be afraid
- So you should

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> I speak to Moses directly, not with visions or riddles. He sees my form. So why are you unafraid to speak against my servant, against Moses?”

### UST

<sup>8</sup> So I talk to him face to face. I speak to him clearly, not using parables. He has even seen what I look like. [So you should be afraid](#) to criticize my servant Moses!”

## Numbers 12:9

### Yahweh's anger burned against them

Yahweh's anger is spoken of as if it were a fire. Alternate translation: "Yahweh became very angry with them" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Yahweh's anger burned against them, and then he left them.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> [Yahweh](#) was very angry with Miriam and Aaron, and he left.

## Numbers 12:10

### was as white as snow

Leprosy turned Miriam's skin white. Alternate translation: "became very white" (See: [Simile](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Aaron](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Aaron](#)

#### ULT

**10** The cloud rose from over the tent, and Miriam was suddenly leprous—she was as white as snow. When Aaron turned toward Miriam, he saw that she had leprosy.

#### UST

**10** When the cloud rose up from the sacred tent, [Aaron](#) looked at Miriam, and he saw that her skin was as white as snow, because she now had leprosy.

## Numbers 12:11

### do not hold this sin against us

To hold people's sin against them is to say that they are guilty for their sin. Here it represents punishing them for their sin. (See:

[Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Moses
- Aaron

#### Translation Words - UST

- My master
- this sin
- committed
- Moses
- Aaron

#### ULT

**11** Aaron said to Moses, "Oh, my master, please do not hold this sin against us. We have spoken foolishly, and we have sinned.

#### UST

**11** [Aaron](#) said to [Moses](#), "[My master](#), please do not punish us for [this sin](#) that we have foolishly [committed](#).



## Numbers 12:12

### Please do not let her be like a dead newborn whose flesh is half consumed

Miriam's leprosy would cause her body to decay until she died. The flesh being decayed is spoken of as if it were eaten. Alternate translation: "Please do not let her be like a dead newborn baby whose flesh is half decayed" (See: [Simile](#) and [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [devour](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [whose flesh](#)
- [is already...decayed](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Please do not let her be like a dead newborn whose flesh is half consumed when it emerges from its mother's womb."

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> Do not allow Miriam to be like a baby that is already dead when it is born, [whose flesh is already](#) half [decayed](#)!"

## Numbers 12:13

### Please heal her, God, please

Here “please” is repeated for emphasis.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [So Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> So Moses called out to Yahweh. He said, “Please heal her, God, please.”

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> [So Moses](#) cried out to [Yahweh](#), saying, “God, I plead with you to heal her!”

## Numbers 12:14

### If her father had spit in her face

This describes something that could have happened but did not. Spitting in someone's face was a terrible insult. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#) and [Symbolic Action](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

#### Translation Words - UST

- But Yahweh replied...to
- But Yahweh replied...to
- If her father had rebuked her
- ashamed
- have leprosy anymore, and she may return

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, "If her father had spit in her face, she would be disgraced for seven days. Shut her outside the camp for seven days. After that bring her in again."

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> [But Yahweh replied](#), "[If her father had rebuked her](#) for doing something wrong by spitting in her face, she would have been [ashamed](#) for seven days. She should be ashamed because of what she has done. So send her outside the camp for seven days. Then she will not [have leprosy anymore, and she may return to](#) the camp."

## Numbers 12:15

### Miriam was shut outside the camp

Being sent out of the camp and not being allowed to go back in is spoken of as if there were a door that was closed behind her.  
Alternate translation: "Miriam was sent outside the camp" or "Miriam was kept outside the camp" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Miriam was shut outside the camp

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses shut Miriam outside the camp" or "Moses sent Miriam outside the camp" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [congregation](#), [meeting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [The people](#)
- [to another location](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> So Miriam was shut outside the camp for seven days. The people did not journey until she had returned to the camp.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> So they sent her outside the camp for seven days. [The people](#) did not move [to another location](#) until she returned.

## Numbers 12:16

### Hazeroth

This is the name of a place in the desert. See how you translated it in [Numbers 11:35](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [north in the Paran Desert and set up](#)
- [they](#)

#### ULT

**16** After that, the people journeyed from Hazeroth and camped in the wilderness of Paran.

#### UST

**16** But after she returned, [they](#) left Hazeroth and moved [north in the Paran Desert and set up](#) their tents there.

## Numbers 13

### Numbers 13 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Spies

Leaders from each of the tribes went to spy on the Promised Land in Canaan. Yahweh was not concerned with how many people were there, because he could defeat them. It appears that he is testing the faith of the people. The people were supposed to be excited to enter this wonderful land, instead they were afraid. (See: [Promised Land](#) and [test, tested, testing, testing in the fire](#) and [faith](#))

## Numbers 13:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said,

### UST

<sup>1</sup> [Yahweh](#) said [to Moses](#),

## Numbers 13:2

### which I have given

God had decided that the land of Canaan would belong to the people of Israel, but they had not yet moved into it. Alternate translation: “which I have decided to give” or “which I will soon give” (See: [Predictive Past](#))

### Each man must be a leader among them

“Each man whom you send must be a leader among his tribe”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Canaan, Canaanite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

#### Translation Words - UST

- to you Israelites
- to you Israelites
- to Canaan
- Send...leaders in their tribes
- land that
- Send...leaders in their tribes

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> “Send some men to examine the land of Canaan, which I have given to the people of Israel. Send a man from every tribe of their ancestors. Each man must be a leader among them.”

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> “Send some men [to Canaan](#) to explore it. That is the [land that](#) I will give [to you Israelites](#). [Send](#) men who are [leaders in their tribes](#).”



## Numbers 13:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- head

### Translation Words - UST

- Israelite men...leaders...He sent them from
- did what Yahweh commanded
- Israelite men...leaders...He sent them from
- Moses
- Israelite men...leaders...He sent them from

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Moses sent them from the wilderness of Paran, so that they might obey Yahweh's command. All of them were leaders among the people of Israel.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> So Moses did what Yahweh commanded him. He sent out twelve Israelite men who were all leaders of their tribes. He sent them from their camp at Paran in the desert.

## Numbers 13:4

### Shammua son of Zaccur

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- name
- Reuben
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

#### Translation Words - UST

- son of
- the names of the men
- from the tribe of Reuben
- and the tribes they belonged to

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> These were their names: from the tribe of Reuben, Shammua son of Zaccur;

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> These are [the names of the men and the tribes they belonged to](#): Shammua [son of](#) Zaccur, [from the tribe of Reuben](#);

## Numbers 13:5

### Shaphat...Hori

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

#### Translation Words - UST

- son of
- from the tribe

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> from the tribe of Simeon, Shaphat son of Hori;

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> Shaphat [son of](#) Hori, [from the tribe](#) of Simeon;

## Numbers 13:6

### Jephunneh

A man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Judea
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

#### Translation Words - UST

- son of
- of Judah
- from the tribe

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> from the tribe of Judah, Caleb son of Jephunneh;

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> Caleb [son of](#) Jephunneh, [from the tribe of Judah](#);

## Numbers 13:7

### Igal

A man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Joseph (OT)
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

#### Translation Words - UST

- son of
- Joseph
- from the tribe

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> from the tribe of Issachar, Igal son of Joseph;

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Igal [son of Joseph](#), [from the tribe](#) of Issachar;

## Numbers 13:8

### Nun

A man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

#### Translation Words - UST

- the son
- of Ephraim
- from the tribe

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> from the tribe of Ephraim, Hoshea son of Nun;

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Hoshea [the son](#) of Nun, [from the tribe of Ephraim](#);

## Numbers 13:9

### Palti...Raphu

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

#### Translation Words - UST

- son of
- from the tribe of Benjamin
- from the tribe of Benjamin

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> from the tribe of Benjamin, Palti son of Raphu;

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> Palti [son of](#) Raphu, [from the tribe of Benjamin](#);

## Numbers 13:10

### Gaddiel...Sodi

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [tribe](#), [tribal](#), [tribesmen](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son of](#)
- [from the tribe](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> from the tribe of Zebulun, Gaddiel  
son of Sodi;

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> Gaddiel [son of](#) Sodi, [from the tribe](#) of  
Zebulun;



## Numbers 13:11

### Gaddi...Susi

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### from the tribe of Joseph (that is to say, from the tribe Manasseh)

The relationship between Joseph and Manasseh can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "from the tribe of Joseph's son Manasseh" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Joseph (OT)
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### Translation Words - UST

- son of
- from the tribe of Joseph's descendent
- from the tribe of Joseph's descendent
- from the tribe of Joseph's descendent

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> from the tribe of Joseph (that is to say, from the tribe Manasseh), Gaddi son of Susi;

### UST

<sup>11</sup> Gaddi [son of](#) Susi, [from the tribe of Joseph's descendent](#) Manasseh;

## Numbers 13:12

### Ammiel...Gemalli

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

#### Translation Words - UST

- the son of
- from the tribe

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> from the tribe of Dan, Ammiel son of Gemalli;

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> Ammiel [the son of](#) Gemalli, [from the tribe](#) of Dan;

## Numbers 13:13

### Sethur...Michael

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

#### Translation Words - UST

- son of
- from the tribe

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> from the tribe of Asher, Sethur son of Michael;

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> Sethur [son of](#) Michael, [from the tribe](#) of Asher;

## Numbers 13:14

### Nahbi...Vophsi

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

#### Translation Words - UST

- son of
- from the

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> from the tribe of Naphtali, Nahbi son of Vophsi;

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> Nahbi [son of](#) Vophsi, [from the](#) tribe of Naphtali;

## Numbers 13:15

### Geuel...Maki

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Gad
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

#### Translation Words - UST

- son of
- of Gad
- from the tribe

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> from the tribe of Gad, Geuel son of Maki.

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> and Geuel [son of](#) Maki, [from the tribe of Gad](#).

## Numbers 13:16

### Hoshea son of Nun

See how you translated these men's names in [Numbers 13:8](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Joshua](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Before they left](#)
- [of](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Joshua](#)
- [the](#)
- [gave...a new name](#)

#### ULT

**16** These were the names of the men whom Moses sent to examine the land. Moses called Hoshea son of Nun by the name of Joshua.

#### UST

**16** Those are the names [of](#) the men whom [Moses](#) sent out to explore Canaan. [Before they left, Moses gave](#) Hoshea [a new name, Joshua](#), which means 'Yahweh is [the](#) one who saves.'

## Numbers 13:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Before Moses](#)
- [to explore Canaan...the](#)
- [to explore Canaan...the](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Moses sent them to examine the land of Canaan. He said to them, "Approach from the Negev and go up into the hill country.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> [Before Moses](#) sent them [to explore Canaan](#), he said to them, "Go through [the](#) southern Judean wilderness, and then go north into the hill country.

## Numbers 13:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- might, mighty, mighty works
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- strong
- See if the people
- the land

### ULT

**18** Examine the land to see what it is like. Observe the people who live there, whether they are strong or weak, and whether they are few or many.

### UST

**18** See what [the land](#) is like. [See if the people](#) who live there are [strong](#) or weak. See if there are many people or only a few people.



## Numbers 13:19

### Is it good or bad? What cities are there? Are they like camps, or are they fortified cities?

Moses asks these questions to explain the kind of information that the men were to report back to him. These can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "See if the land is good or bad, what kind of cities are there, and whether those cities are only camps, or whether they have defensive walls around them." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Are they like camps, or are they fortified cities

Fortified cities had strong walls around them to protect them from enemy armies. Camps did not have these walls.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### Translation Words - UST

- bad
- of land

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> See what the land is like where they live. Is it good or bad? What cities are there? Are they like camps, or are they fortified cities?

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> Find out what kind [of land](#) they live in. Is it good or [bad](#)? Find out about the towns in which they live. Do they have walls around them or not?

## Numbers 13:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- firstfruits
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- grape, grapevine

### Translation Words - UST

- He said that because it was...beginning of...to harvest
- the
- land
- grapes

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> See what the land is like, whether it is good for growing crops or not, and whether there are trees there or not. Be brave and bring back samples of the land's produce." Now the time was the season for the first ripe grapes.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> Find out about the soil. Is it fertile or not? Find out if there are trees there. Try to bring back some of the fruit that grows in that land." He said that because it was the beginning of the time to harvest grapes.

## Numbers 13:21

### Zin...Rehob

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the wilderness of Zin

The word "Zin" here is the Hebrew name of the wilderness. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [entire land](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> So the men went up and examined the land from the wilderness of Zin to Rehob, near Lebo Hamath.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> So those men went to Canaan. They went through the [entire land](#), from the wilderness of Zin in the south all the way to the city of Rehob near Lebo Hamath in the north.

## Numbers 13:22

### Zoan

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Hebron had been built seven years before Zoan in Egypt

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the Canaanites had built Hebron 7 years before the Egyptians built Zoan” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Numbers](#))

### Ahiman...Sheshai...Talmai

These are names of clans that were named after their ancestors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Anak

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [in Egypt](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> They went up from the Negev and arrived at Hebron. Ahiman, Sheshai, and Talmai, clans descended from Anak, were there. Now Hebron had been built seven years before Zoan in Egypt.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> In the southern Judean wilderness, they went to Hebron, where Ahiman, Sheshai, and Talmai, huge men descended from Anak, lived. Hebron was a city that was built seven years before the city of Zoan was built [in Egypt](#).

## Numbers 13:23

### Eshkol

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### between two of their group

“between two men of their group”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [cut off](#)
- [grape, grapevine](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [they cut](#)
- [grapes](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> When they reached the Valley of Eshkol, they cut down a branch with a cluster of grapes. They carried it on a staff between two of their group. They also brought pomegranates and figs.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> In one valley, [they cut](#) from a grapevine one cluster of [grapes](#). Because it was very large, they needed two men to carry it on a pole. They also picked some pomegranates and some figs to carry back to their camp.

## Numbers 13:24

### That place was named

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They named that place" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- cut off

#### Translation Words - UST

- called
- they
- they
- had cut

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> That place was named the Valley of Eshkol, because of the grape cluster that the people of Israel cut down there.

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> They [called](#) that place Eshcol which means 'cluster' because [they had cut](#) that huge cluster of grapes there.

## Numbers 13:25

### After forty days

“After 40 days” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)
- [return](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [the land](#)
- [they returned to their camp](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> After forty days, they returned from examining the land.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> After they explored [the land](#) for forty days, [they returned to their camp](#).

## Numbers 13:26

### They brought back word

Here “word” refers to a report. Alternate translation: “They brought back their report” or “They reported what they had seen” (See:

[Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [fruit, fruitful, unfruitful](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [return](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the Israelite people](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [fruit](#)
- [of](#)
- [what they](#)

### ULT

**26** They came back to Moses, Aaron, and all the community of the people of Israel in the wilderness of Paran, at Kadesh. They brought back word to them and to all the community, and showed them the produce from the land.

### UST

**26** They came to [Aaron](#) and [Moses](#) and the rest [of the Israelite people](#) in the wilderness at Paran. They reported to everyone [what they](#) had seen. They also showed them the [fruit](#) that they had brought back.



## Numbers 13:27

### It certainly flows with milk and honey

“Milk and honey certainly flow there.” They spoke of the land being good for animals and plants as if the milk and honey from those animals and plants were flowing through the land. Alternate translation: “It is certainly excellent for raising livestock and growing crops” or “It is certainly very fertile land” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

#### milk

Since milk comes from cows and goats, it represents livestock and the food produced from the livestock. Alternate translation: “food from livestock” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### honey

Since honey is produced from flowers, it represents crops and the food produced from the crops. Alternate translation: “food from crops” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [unfruitful](#)
- [honey](#), [honeycomb](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of the fruit](#)
- [a very fertile land](#)
- [the land](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> They told Moses, “We reached the land to which you sent us. It certainly flows with milk and honey. Here is some produce from it.

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> But this is what they reported to Moses: “We arrived in [the land](#) that you sent us to explore. It is truly a beautiful land. It is [a very fertile land](#). Here is some [of the fruit](#).

## Numbers 13:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [But the people who live](#)
- [But the people who live](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> However, the people who make their homes there are strong. The cities are fortified and very large. We also saw descendants of Anak there.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> [But the people who live](#) there are very strong. Their cities are large and are surrounded by walls. We even saw some of the huge descendants of Anak there.

## Numbers 13:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
- [Amorite](#)
- [Negev](#)
- [Jebus, Jebusite](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and along the Jordan River](#)
- [and Amor](#)
- [the southern part](#)
- [Jebus](#)
- [and along the Jordan River](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> The Amalekites live in the Negev. The Hittites, Jebusites, and Amorites have their homes in the hill country. The Canaanites live by the sea and along the Jordan River.”

### UST

<sup>29</sup> The descendants of Amalek live in [the southern part](#) of the land, and the descendants of Heth, [Jebus, and Amor](#) live in the hill country to the north. The descendants of Canaan live along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea [and along the Jordan River.](#)”

## Numbers 13:30

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- Moses
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- and...because we are certainly
- Moses
- the people who were standing near

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Then Caleb silenced the people who were before Moses and said, "Let us go up and take possession of the land, for we are certainly able to conquer it."

### UST

<sup>30</sup> Caleb told the people who were standing near Moses to be quiet. Then he said, "We should go there and take the land, because we are certainly able to conquer it!"

## Numbers 13:31

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- strength, strengthen, strong

### Translation Words - UST

- those people
- are much stronger

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> But the other men who had gone with him said, "We are not able to attack the people because they are stronger than we are."

### UST

<sup>31</sup> But the men who had gone with him said, "No, we cannot attack and defeat those people. They are much stronger than we are!"

## Numbers 13:32

### they spread around...They said

Here “they” refers to all of the men who examined the land except for Caleb and Joshua.

### the land that they had examined

Here “they” refers to all of the men who examined the land including Caleb and Joshua.

### a land that eats up its inhabitants

The men speak of the land, or the people of the land, being very dangerous as if the land ate up people. Alternate translation: “a very dangerous land” or “a land where the people will kill us” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [devour](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bad report about](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)
- [people](#)
- [The land...there are](#)
- [the land](#)
- [destroys the life](#)
- [The land...there are](#)

### ULT

**32** So they spread around a discouraging report to the people of Israel about the land that they had examined. They said, “The land that we looked at is a land that eats up its inhabitants. All the people whom we saw there are people of great height.

### UST

**32** So those men gave to [the Israelite people](#) a [bad report about the land](#) that they had explored. They said, “[The land](#) that we explored [destroys the life](#) those who try to attack it. And all the [people](#) living [there are](#) very tall.

## Numbers 13:33

### Anak

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### In our own sight...in their sight

Here sight represents evaluation and judgement. Alternate translation: "In our own opinion...in their opinion" or "In our own judgement...in their judgement" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### we were like grasshoppers in comparison with them

The men speak of grasshoppers to show how very small they thought themselves to be compared to the people of the land. Alternate translation: "we are as small as grasshoppers in comparison with them" (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [descendants of](#)

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> There we saw giants, descendants of Anak, people who came from giants. In our own sight we were like grasshoppers in comparison with them, and this is what we were in their sight, too."

### UST

<sup>33</sup> We also saw giants there. They are the [descendants of](#) Anak (who come from the Nephilim, those giant people). When we saw these giants we felt as small as grasshoppers and they thought that we looked like grasshoppers too."

## **Numbers 14**

### **Numbers 14 General Notes**

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Rhetorical Questions**

The author uses several rhetorical questions in this chapter. These questions indicate that people did not have faith in Yahweh. Yahweh also uses rhetorical questions to show the people's lack of faith. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [faith](#))



## Numbers 14:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israelite people](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> That night all the community wept loudly.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> That night, all the [Israelite people](#) cried loudly.

## Numbers 14:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Aaron
- desert, wilderness

### Translation Words - UST

- men
- men
- Moses
- in Egypt
- Aaron
- wilderness

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> All the people of Israel criticized Moses and Aaron. The whole community said to them, "We wish we had died in the land of Egypt, or here in this wilderness!"

### UST

<sup>2</sup> The next day they all complained against [Aaron](#) and [Moses](#). All the [men](#) said, "We wish that we had died [in Egypt](#), or in this [wilderness](#)!"

## Numbers 14:3

### Why did Yahweh bring us to this land to die by the sword?

The people use this question in order to complain and accuse Yahweh of treating them unfairly. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Yahweh should not have brought us to this land only to die by the sword." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### to die by the sword

Here "the sword" represents either being killed by the sword or being killed in battle. Alternate translation: "to die when people attack us with swords" or "to die in battle" or (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Is it not better for us to return to Egypt?

The people use this question to encourage people to agree with them that it would be better to return to Egypt. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "It would be better for us to return to Egypt than to try to conquer Canaan." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [restore](#), [restoration](#)
- [good](#), [right](#), [pleasant](#), [pleasing](#), [better](#), [best](#)
- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)
- [sword](#), [swordsmen](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to return](#)
- [better](#)
- [to Egypt](#)
- [with swords](#)
- [land](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Why did Yahweh bring us to this land to die by the sword? Our wives and our little ones will become victims. Is it not better for us to return to Egypt?"

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Why is [Yahweh](#) bringing us to this [land](#), where we men will be killed [with swords](#)? And they will take away our wives and children to be their slaves. Instead of going to Canaan, it would be [better](#) for us [to return to Egypt](#)!"

## Numbers 14:4

### They said to each another

This refers to the people of Israel.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Egypt, Egyptian
- head
- return

#### Translation Words - UST

- to each other
- to Egypt
- We should choose a leader who
- back

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> They said to each another, "Let us choose another leader, and let us return to Egypt."

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> Then some of them said [to each other](#), "[We should choose a leader who](#) will take us [back to Egypt](#)!"

## Numbers 14:5

### lay facedown

“lay down with their faces touching the ground.” Moses and Aaron did this to show that they were humbling themselves before God. They feared that God might punish the people for rebelling against him. Alternate translation: “lay facedown in humility to God” or “lay facedown to pray to God” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- face, facial
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite
- the Israelite
- and Moses
- people who had gathered there
- in front
- bowed down

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then Moses and Aaron lay facedown before all the assembly of the community of the people of Israel.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> Then Aaron [and Moses bowed down](#) to pray [in front](#) of all [the Israelite people who had gathered there](#).

## Numbers 14:6

### Nun...Jephunneh

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### who were some of those sent

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "who were some of those whom Moses sent" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### tore their clothes

Tearing one's clothes was a gesture indicating the person is very troubled and is mourning. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- Joshua...two of the
- Caleb...because they were very dismayed
- land

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Joshua son of Nun and Caleb son of Jephunneh, who were some of those sent to examine the land, tore their clothes.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Joshua and Caleb, two of the men who had explored the land, tore their clothes because they were very dismayed.

## Numbers 14:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- They said to the Israelite
- They said to the Israelite
- people...The land that...explored...good
- people, "The land that...explored...good
- people...The land that...explored...good

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> They spoke to all the community of the people of Israel. They said, "The land that we passed through and examined is a very good land.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> They said to the Israelite people, "The land that we explored is very good.

## Numbers 14:8

### The land flows with milk and honey

They spoke of the land being good for animals and plants as if the milk and honey from those animals and plants flowed through it. See how you translated this in [Numbers 13:27](#). Alternate translation: “It is excellent for raising livestock and growing crops” or “It is very fertile land” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- honey, honeycomb
- delight
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- very fertile
- is pleased with
- land
- he will give...us

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> If Yahweh is pleased with us, then he will take us into this land and give it to us. The land flows with milk and honey.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> If [Yahweh is pleased with](#) us, he will lead us into that [very fertile land](#), and [he will give](#) it to [us](#).



## Numbers 14:9

### Connecting Statement:

Joshua and Caleb continue speaking to the people of Israel.

### for they are bread to us

Joshua and Caleb speak of destroying their enemies as easily as if they were eating bread. Alternate translation: "We will destroy them as easily as we can eat food" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Simile](#))

### Their protection will be removed from them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will remove their protection from them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Their protection

The abstract noun "protection" can be stated as "protect." Alternate translation: "Anyone that might protect them" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- fear, afraid, dread
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- bread
- people, people group,
- rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- be afraid of
- be afraid
- Yahweh! And
- but Yahweh will be with
- We will gobble them up
- people
- rebel against
- land

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But do not rebel against Yahweh, and do not fear the people in the land, for they are bread to us. Their protection will be removed from them, because Yahweh is with us. Do not fear them."

### UST

<sup>9</sup> So do not [rebel against Yahweh! And](#) do not [be afraid of](#) the [people](#) in that [land! We will gobble them up!](#) They do not have anyone who will protect them, [but Yahweh will be with](#) us and help us. So do not [be afraid](#) of them!"

## Numbers 14:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- them
- But suddenly Yahweh's
- Israelite people
- at the

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Then all the congregation said to stone them with stones. But the glory of Yahweh appeared at the tent of meeting to all the people of Israel.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Then all the [Israelite people](#) talked about killing Caleb and Joshua by throwing stones at them. [But suddenly Yahweh's](#) glory appeared to [them at the](#) sacred tent.

## Numbers 14:11

### How long must this people despise me? How long must they fail to trust me, despite all the signs...them?

Yahweh uses these questions to show that he was angry and had lost patience with the people. They can be translated as statements. Alternate translation: "This people has despised me for too long. They have failed to trust me for too long, despite all the signs...them." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- Moses
- people, people group,

#### Translation Words - UST

- Then Yahweh
- not believing in
- Moses
- these people

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, "How long must this people despise me? How long must they fail to trust me, despite all the signs of my power that I have done among them?"

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> [Then Yahweh](#) said to [Moses](#), "How long will [these people](#) reject me? I am tired of them [not believing in](#) what I can do, in spite of all the miracles I have performed among them."

## Numbers 14:12

### disinherit them

“reject them from being my people.” This may imply that he would destroy them, and some versions translate it that way.

### make from your own clan

Here “your” is singular and refers to Moses. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- nation

### Translation Words - UST

- and get rid of them. But I will cause your descendants
- people are

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> I will attack them with plague, disinherit them, and make from your own clan a nation that will be greater and mightier than they are.”

### UST

<sup>12</sup> So I will send a plague among them [and get rid of them. But I will cause your descendants](#) to become a great nation. They will be a nation that is much greater and stronger than these [people are.](#)”

## Numbers 14:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,
- strength, strengthen, strong

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh, "Please do not do that
- But Moses
- Israelite people
- from Egypt by your great power

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Moses said to Yahweh, "If you do this, then the Egyptians will hear about it, because you rescued this people from them by your power.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> But Moses replied to Yahweh, "Please do not do that, because the people of Egypt will hear about it! You brought these Israelite people from Egypt by your great power,

## Numbers 14:14

### you are seen face to face

Possible meanings are 1) Moses speaks of God showing himself to his people as if God had allowed them to actually see his face. Alternate translation: “they have seen you” or 2) Moses speaks of the intimate relationship between him and God as if Moses could see God’s face when God spoke to him. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you speak directly to me” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- walk, walked
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- with
- Yahweh
- you
- these people
- becomes like a fire
- lead
- land

### ULT

**14** They will tell it to this land’s inhabitants. They have heard that you, Yahweh, are present with this people, because you are seen face to face. Your cloud stands over our people. You go before them in a pillar of cloud by day and in a pillar of fire by night.

### UST

**14** and the people of Egypt will tell that to the descendants of Canaan who live in this [land](#). [Yahweh](#), they have already heard about you. They know that you have been [with these people](#) and that they have seen [you](#) face to face. They have heard that your cloud is like a huge pillar that stays over them, and by that cloud you [lead](#) them during the day, and that the cloud [becomes like a fire](#) at night to give them light.

## Numbers 14:15

### as one man

Killing them all at the same time is spoken of as killing them as one person. Alternate translation: “all at one time” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- nation

### Translation Words - UST

- these people
- If you kill
- people groups

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Now if you kill this people as one man, then the nations that have heard of your fame will speak and say,

### UST

<sup>15</sup> [If you kill these people](#) all at one time, the [people groups](#) who have heard about your power will say,

## Numbers 14:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- desert, wilderness
- people, people group,
- slaughter, slaughtered
- earth, earthen, earthly
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- the wilderness
- them
- killed
- land
- he promised

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> 'Because Yahweh could not take this people into the land that he swore to give them, he has killed them in the wilderness.'

### UST

<sup>16</sup> 'Yahweh was not able to bring them into the land that he promised to give to them, so he killed them in the wilderness.'



## Numbers 14:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- strength, strengthen, strong
- proud, pride, prideful

### Translation Words - UST

- So Yahweh
- you are very powerful
- you are very powerful

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Now, I beg you, use your great power. For you have said,

### UST

<sup>17</sup> [So Yahweh](#), now show that [you are very powerful](#). You said,

## Numbers 14:18

### abundant in covenant faithfulness

The abstract noun “faithfulness” can be stated as “faithful” or “faithfully.” Alternate translation: “always faithful to his covenant” or “always faithfully loves his people” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### He will by no means clear the guilty

“he will certainly not clear guilty people.” Clearing away people’s sin is a metaphor for refusing to punish them. God would not clear away the sin of guilty people. Alternate translation: “He will always punish the guilty” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### when he brings the punishment of the ancestors’ sin on their descendants

Punishing people is spoken of as if punishment were an object that could be brought and put on people. Alternate translation: “when he punishes the guilty people’s descendants for the guilty people’s sins” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- son
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- iniquity
- iniquity
- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### Translation Words - UST

- punish people who are guilty
- but I will also punish their children
- Instead, I love people greatly
- having sinned
- doing what is wrong
- for
- When parents sin

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> ‘Yahweh is slow to anger and abundant in covenant faithfulness. He forgives iniquity and transgression. He will by no means clear the guilty when he brings the punishment of the ancestors’ sin on their descendants, to the third and fourth generation.’

### UST

<sup>18</sup> ‘I do not quickly become angry. [Instead, I love people greatly](#), and I forgive people [for having sinned](#) and having disobeyed my laws. But I will always [punish people who are guilty of doing what is wrong](#). [When parents sin](#), I will punish them, [but I will also punish their children](#) and their grandchildren and their great-grandchildren and their great-great-grandchildren.’

## Numbers 14:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- with a great covenant loyalty
- Egypt
- these people for the sins
- they left

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Pardon, I plead with you, this people's sin because of the greatness of your covenant faithfulness, just as you have always forgiven this people from the time they were in Egypt until now."

### UST

<sup>19</sup> So, because you love your people with a great covenant loyalty, forgive these people for the sins that they have committed, just like you have continued to forgive them ever since they left Egypt."

## Numbers 14:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Then Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Yahweh said, “I have pardoned them in keeping with your request,

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> [Then Yahweh](#) replied, “I have forgiven them, as you requested me to.

## Numbers 14:21

### all the earth will be filled with my glory

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "my glory will fill all the earth" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- glory, glorious, glorify
- Yahweh
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### Translation Words - UST

- live and that people
- glory, I solemnly declare that
- my
- world

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> but truly, as I live, and as all the earth will be filled with my glory,

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> But, just as certainly as I [live and that people](#) all over the [world](#) can see [my glory, I solemnly declare that](#)

## Numbers 14:22

### they have still tempted me

“they have continued to test me”

### these ten times

Here the number 10 represents too many times. Alternate translation: “too many times” (See: [Idiom](#))

### have not listened to my voice

Here “listened” represents obedience, and God’s voice represents what he said. Alternate translation: “have not obeyed what I have said” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [sign](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#)
- [glory](#), [glorious](#), [glorify](#)
- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)
- [voice](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [miracles](#)
- [glory](#)
- [in Egypt and](#)
- [my punishing them](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> all those people who saw my [glory](#) and the signs of power that I did in Egypt and in the wilderness—they have still tempted me these ten times and have not listened to my voice.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> all these people saw my [glory](#) and all the [miracles](#) that I performed [in Egypt and](#) in the wilderness, but they disobeyed me, and many times they tested whether they could continue to do evil things without [my punishing them](#).

## Numbers 14:23

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

### Translation Words - UST

- ancestors that I would give to them
- that land
- I promised

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> So I say that they will certainly not see the land about which I made an oath to their ancestors. Not one of them who despised me will see it,

### UST

<sup>23</sup> Because of that, not one of them will see the land that I promised their ancestors that I would give to them. No one who rejected me will see that land.

## Numbers 14:24

### because he had another spirit

Here “spirit” represents his attitude. Caleb was willing to obey God. What his attitude was can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “because he had a different attitude” or “because he was willing to obey God” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- spirit, spiritual
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- is different
- that land
- me well

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> except for my servant Caleb, because he had another spirit. He has followed me fully; I will bring him into the land which he went to examine. His descendants will possess it.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> But Caleb, who serves [me well](#), [is different](#) from the others. He obeys me completely. So I will bring him into [that land](#) that he has already seen, and his descendants will inherit some of it.



## Numbers 14:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> (Now the Amalekites and Canaanites lived in the valley.) Tomorrow turn and go to the wilderness by the way of the Sea of Reeds.”

### UST

<sup>25</sup> So, since the descendants of Amalek and Canaan who are living in the valleys in Canaan are very strong, when you leave here tomorrow, instead of traveling toward Canaan, go back along the road through the wilderness toward the Sea of Reeds.”

## Numbers 14:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses and to Aaron. He said,

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> Then [Yahweh](#) said to [Aaron](#) and [Moses](#),

## Numbers 14:27

### How long must I tolerate this evil community that criticizes me?

Yahweh asks this question because he has lost patience with the people. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I have tolerated this evil community who has criticized me long enough." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### I have heard the complaining of the people of Israel

The word "complaining," an abstract noun, can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: "I have heard the people of Israel complain" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [the...nation...that they have grumbled](#)
- [the...nation...that they have grumbled](#)
- [wicked](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> "How long must I tolerate this evil community that criticizes me? I have heard the complaining of the people of Israel against me.

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> "How long will the [wicked](#) people of this [nation](#) keep complaining about me? I have heard everything [that they have grumbled](#) against me.

## Numbers 14:28

### as you have spoken in my hearing

“as I have heard you say”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh

#### Translation Words - UST

- live
- Yahweh

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Say to them, ‘As I live,’ says Yahweh, ‘as you have spoken in my hearing, I will do this to you:

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> So now tell them this: ‘Just as certainly as I, [Yahweh](#), [live](#), I will do exactly what you said would happen.

## Numbers 14:29

### Your dead bodies will fall

Their dead bodies falling represents them dying. Alternate translation: "You will die" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### you who were counted in the census

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you whom Moses counted in the census" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### from twenty years old and upward

"twenty years old and older"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [desert](#), [wilderness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [counted](#)
- [none of](#)
- [wilderness](#)

### ULT

**29** Your dead bodies will fall in this wilderness, all you who complained against me, you who were counted in the census, the whole number of the people from twenty years old and upward.

### UST

**29** I will cause all of you to die here in this [wilderness](#)! Because you grumbled against me, [none of](#) you who are more than twenty years old and who were [counted](#) when Moses counted everyone

## Numbers 14:30

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- hand
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- Caleb
- Joshua
- to...Only...will enter...land
- the land

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> You will certainly not go into the land that I promised to make your home, except Caleb son of Jephunneh and Joshua son of Nun.

### UST

<sup>30</sup> will enter [the land](#) that I solemnly promised to give to you. [Only Caleb](#) and [Joshua will enter](#) that [land](#).

## Numbers 14:31

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- land
- will enjoy living in

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> But your little ones who you said would be victims, I will take them into the land. They will experience the land that you have rejected!

### UST

<sup>31</sup> You said that your children would be taken from you to become slaves, but I will take them into the land, and they will enjoy living in the land that you rejected.

## Numbers 14:32

### your dead bodies will fall

Their dead bodies falling represents them dying. Alternate translation: "you will die" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [desert](#), [wilderness](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [wilderness](#)

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> As for you, your dead bodies will fall in this wilderness.

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> But as for you adults, you will die here in this [wilderness](#).



## Numbers 14:33

### Your children will be shepherds in the wilderness

Some modern versions choose to translate, “Your children will wander in the wilderness.” This is because in ancient times, shepherds usually wandered from place to place so their flocks and herds could find pasture.

### They must bear the consequences of your acts

“They must suffer the consequences of your acts” or “They must suffer because of your acts”

### until the end of your corpses

A corpse is a dead body. The end of their corpses represents the last of the them dying. Alternate translation: “until the last one of you dies” or “until all of you die” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Your children](#)
- [in this wilderness](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)

### ULT

**33** Your children will be shepherds in the wilderness for forty years. They must bear the consequences of your acts of rebellion until the end of your corpses in the wilderness.

### UST

**33** [Your children](#) will wander around [in this wilderness](#) as shepherds for forty years. Because you adults were not loyal to me, your children will suffer until you all die [in the wilderness](#).

## Numbers 14:34

### bear the consequences of your sins

“suffer the consequences of your sins” or “suffer because of your sins”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- iniquity
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- suffer for your sins
- land
- And I will be like an enemy to you

#### ULT

**34** Just as the number of the days during which you examined the land—forty days, you must likewise bear the consequences of your sins for forty years—one year for every day, and you must know what it is like for me to oppose you.

#### UST

**34** You will suffer for your sins for forty years. That will be one year for each of the forty days that the twelve men explored Canaan land. And I will be like an enemy to you.

## Numbers 14:35

### They will be completely cut off

This probably means that they will no longer exist. Alternate translation: “they will come to an end” or “they will all be destroyed” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [things](#)
- [wilderness](#)

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> I, Yahweh, have spoken. I will certainly do this to all this evil community that is gathered together against me. They will be completely cut off, and here they will die.”

#### UST

<sup>35</sup> This will certainly happen because I, [Yahweh](#), have said it! I will do these [things](#) to every one in this group that has plotted against me. They will all die right here in this [wilderness!](#)”

## Numbers 14:36

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- return

### Translation Words - UST

- Moses
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- return

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> So the men Moses sent to spy out the land, who returned and made the entire community grumble against Moses by spreading a bad report about the land

—

### UST

<sup>36-37</sup> Then Yahweh attacked the ten men who had discouraged the people, so that they died. These were the men who had explored Canaan and then told the people that they would not be able to take over the land. It was because of the men that the people spoke against Moses.

## Numbers 14:37

**these men who had brought out a bad report about the land were struck down, and they died of a plague before Yahweh**

The phrase “plague before Yahweh” shows that Yahweh struck them down. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh struck down these men who had brought out a bad report about the land, and they died” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> these men who had brought out a bad report about the land were struck down, and they died of a plague before Yahweh.

### UST

<sup>36-37</sup> Then Yahweh attacked the ten men who had discouraged the people, so that they died. These were the men who had explored Canaan and then told the people that they would not be able to take over the land. It was because of the men that the people spoke against Moses.

## Numbers 14:38

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- son
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- remained alive
- Of...Joshua
- Caleb
- the twelve

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> Of those men who had gone to spy out the land, only Joshua son of Nun and Caleb son of Jephunneh remained alive.

### UST

<sup>38</sup> Of [the twelve](#) men who had explored Canaan, only [Joshua](#) and [Caleb](#) [remained alive](#).

## Numbers 14:39

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- people, people group,
- mourn, mourner, weeping

### Translation Words - UST

- of
- Israelite people
- When Moses
- them
- were...sad

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> When Moses reported these words to all the people of Israel, they mourned very deeply.

### UST

<sup>39</sup> When Moses reported to the Israelite people what Yahweh had said, many of them were very sad.

## Numbers 14:40

### Look, we are here

They use these words to emphasize that they have changed their minds and now want to do what they should have done the day before. Your language may have a different way of showing this.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [head](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [we have sinned](#)
- [Yahweh promised](#)
- [to give to us](#)

#### ULT

<sup>40</sup> They rose up early in the morning and went to the top of the mountain and said, "Look, we are here, and we will go to the place that Yahweh has promised, for we have sinned."

#### UST

<sup>40</sup> So the people got up early the next morning and started to go toward the hill country in Canaan. They said, "We know that [we have sinned](#), but now we are ready to enter the land that [Yahweh promised to give to us](#)."



## Numbers 14:41

### Why are you now violating Yahweh's command?

Moses asks this question to rebuke the people of Israel. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not be violating Yahweh's command again." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [prosper](#), [prosperity](#), [prosperous](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh commanded](#)
- [But Moses](#)
- [succeed](#)

#### ULT

<sup>41</sup> But Moses said, "Why are you now violating Yahweh's command? You will not succeed.

#### UST

<sup>41</sup> [But Moses](#) said, "[Yahweh commanded](#) you to return to the desert, so why are you now disobeying him? It will not [succeed](#).

## Numbers 14:42

### Yahweh is not with you

Helping them is spoken of as being with them. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will not help you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### to prevent you from being defeated by your enemies

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "to prevent your enemies from defeating you" or "to give you victory over your enemies" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [your enemies](#)

#### ULT

<sup>42</sup> Do not go, because Yahweh is not with you to prevent you from being defeated by your enemies.

#### UST

<sup>42</sup> Do not try to enter the land now! If you try, [your enemies](#) will defeat you, because [Yahweh](#) will not be with you.

## Numbers 14:43

### you will die by the sword

Here “the sword” refers to battle. Alternate translation: “you will die in battle” or “they will kill you when you fight against them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### you turned back from following Yahweh

Obedying Yahweh is spoken of as following him, and stopping doing that is spoken of as turning away from him. Alternate translation: “you stopped obeying Yahweh” or “you have decided not to obey Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### he will not be with you

Helping them is spoken of as being with them. Alternate translation: “he will not help you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [restore](#), [restoration](#)
- [sword](#), [swordsman](#)
- [bow](#), [bow down](#), [knelt](#), [bend](#), [bend the knee](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [him](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [will abandon you](#)
- [they will slaughter you](#)
- [they will slaughter you](#)

### ULT

<sup>43</sup> The Amalekites and Canaanites are there, and you will die by the sword because you turned back from following Yahweh. So he will not be with you.”

### UST

<sup>43</sup> When you begin to fight the descendants of Amalek and Canaan, [they will slaughter you!](#) [Yahweh will abandon you](#), because you have abandoned [him](#).”

## Numbers 14:44

### they presumed to go up into the hill country

“they dared to go up into the hill country even though God did not approve”

### into the hill country

Much of the land of Israel is elevated. When the Israelites crossed the Jordan River valley to attack the Canaanites, there were hills that they had to climb in order to go farther into the land of Canaan.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [head](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [that contained the Ten Commandments](#)
- [that contained the Ten Commandments](#)
- [the people began](#)

### ULT

**44** But they presumed to go up into the hill country; however, neither Moses nor the ark of the covenant of Yahweh left the camp.

### UST

**44** But even though Moses did not leave the camp, and the sacred chest [that contained the Ten Commandments](#) was not taken from the camp, [the people began](#) to go toward the hill country in Canaan.

## Numbers 14:45

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>45</sup> Then the Amalekites came down, and also the Canaanites who lived on those hills. They attacked the Israelites and defeated them all the way to Hormah.

### UST

<sup>45</sup> Then the descendants of Amalek and Canaan who lived in those hills came down and attacked them; they chased them as far south as Hormah.

## Numbers 15

### Numbers 15 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Purifying the people

As the people travel through the wilderness, Yahweh is purifying them. He is doing this so that they are able to enter into the Promised Land. (See: [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#) and [Promised Land](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Prostitution

The imagery of prostitution is commonly used in Scripture to indicate that Yahweh alone is to be worshiped. The people are compared to the prostitute because a husband is to only have a sexual relationship with his wife. Both the prostitute and the worship of other gods are violations of this exclusive relationship. Many cultures will struggle with this imagery because of a desire to use euphemisms. (See: [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#) and [Euphemism](#))

## Numbers 15:1

### General Information:

Numbers 15:1-32 tells what God told Moses to tell the people of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said,

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then [Yahweh](#) told [Moses](#),

## Numbers 15:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite people
- the Israelite people
- the land that

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> "Speak to the people of Israel and say to them, 'When you go into the land where you will live, which Yahweh will give to you,

### UST

<sup>2</sup> "Tell this to [the Israelite people](#), 'When you arrive in [the land that](#) I am giving to you,



## Numbers 15:3

### to produce a pleasing aroma for Yahweh from the herd or the flock

“to produce from the herd or flock a smell that pleases Yahweh.” The Lord’s pleasure with the aroma represents his pleasure with the person who burns the offering. Alternate translation: “to please Yahweh by burning a sacrifice from the herd or the flock” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- burnt offering, offering by fire

#### Translation Words - UST

- to me
- when the priest burns them...to me
- sacrifices which
- your flocks of sheep and goats
- on the altar

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> you are to prepare an offering by fire to Yahweh, either a burnt offering or a sacrifice to fulfill a vow or a freewill offering, or an offering at your feasts, to produce a pleasing aroma for Yahweh from the herd or the flock.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> you must offer to me special [sacrifices which](#) will be pleasing [to me when the priest burns them on the altar](#). Some of them may be offerings that will be completely burned on the altar. Some of them may be to indicate that you have made a solemn promise [to me](#). Some of them may be offerings that you yourselves have decided to make. Some of them may be offerings at one of the festivals that you celebrate each year. These offerings may be taken from your herds of cattle or from [your flocks of sheep and goats](#).

## Numbers 15:4

### a burnt offering

This refers to the offerings spoken of in [Numbers 15:3](#).

### a tenth of an ephah

An ephah is a unit of volume equal to about 22 liters. Alternate translation: “about 2 liters” or “two liters” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

### one-fourth of a hin

A hin is a unit of volume equal to about 3.7 liters. Alternate translation: “about 1 liter” or “one liter” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [olive](#)
- [grain offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to me](#)
- [of olive oil](#)
- [a flour offering](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> You must offer to Yahweh a burnt offering as well as a grain offering of a tenth of an ephah of fine flour mixed with one-fourth of a hin of oil.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> When you give these offerings, you must also bring [to me a flour offering](#) of about two liters of nice flour mixed with about a liter [of olive oil](#).

## Numbers 15:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- wine, wineskin, new wine

### Translation Words - UST

- you should prepare...of wine

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> You must also offer with the burnt offering, or for the sacrifice, one-fourth of a hin of wine for the drink offering for each lamb.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> When you offer a young ram or goat for the sacrifice that will be completely burned up, or when you offer as a sacrifice of every young lamb, you should prepare a liter of wine to be used as a drink offering.

## Numbers 15:6

### two-tenths of an ephah

An ephah is a unit of volume equal to about 22 liters. Alternate translation: "4 liters" or "four and a half liters" (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

### a third of a hin

A hin is a unit of volume equal to about 3.7 liters. Alternate translation: "one liter" (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [grain offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [an offering](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> If you are offering a ram, you must prepare as a grain offering two-tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with a third of a hin of oil.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> When you offer a ram to be a sacrifice, you must also bring [an offering](#) of about three and four-fifths liters of finely ground flour mixed with about one and one-quarter liters of olive oil.

## Numbers 15:7

### It will produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh

"It will produce a smell that pleases Yahweh." The Lord's pleasure with the aroma represents his pleasure with the person who burns the offering. Alternate translation: "You will please Yahweh by offering it" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [to me](#)
- [of wine](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> For the drink offering, you must offer a third of a hin of wine. It will produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> And also pour on the altar about one and one-fifth liters [of wine](#). While they are being burned, the smell of it will be very pleasing [to me](#).

## Numbers 15:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- burnt offering, offering by fire

### Translation Words - UST

- Sometimes you will offer a young
- to me
- bull
- Sometimes you will offer a sacrifice
- on the altar

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> When you prepare a bull as a burnt offering or as a sacrifice to fulfill a vow, or as a fellowship offering to Yahweh,

### UST

<sup>8</sup> [Sometimes you will offer a young bull](#) to be completely burned [on the altar](#). [Sometimes you will offer a sacrifice](#) to indicate that you have made a solemn promise [to me](#). Sometimes you will offer a sacrifice to restore fellowship with me.

## Numbers 15:9

### three-tenths of an ephah

You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: "six and one half liters" (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

### half a hin

You may convert this to a modern measure Alternate translation: "two liters" (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [grain offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [When you offer these sacrifices, you must...of...with](#)
- [also offer a flour offering](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of three-tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> [When you offer these sacrifices, you must also offer a flour offering](#) of about six and one-half liters of finely ground flour mixed [with](#) about two liters of olive oil.

## Numbers 15:10

### made by fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that you burn on the altar” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh

“to produce a smell that pleases Yahweh.” The Lord being pleased with the sincere worshiper who offers the sacrifice is spoken of as if God were pleased with the aroma of the sacrifice. Alternate translation: “to please Yahweh by offering it” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to me](#)
- [of wine](#)

### ULT

**10** You must offer as the drink offering half a hin of wine, as an offering made by fire, to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh.

### UST

**10** Also pour on the altar two quarts [of wine](#) to be an offering. While those special gifts are being burned, the smell from it will be very pleasing [to me](#).



## Numbers 15:11

### It must be done

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You must do it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

**11** It must be done this way for each bull, for each ram, and for each of the male lambs or young goats.

#### UST

**11** Each time someone offers a bull or a ram or a male lamb or young goat to be a sacrifice, it must be done that way.

## Numbers 15:12

### must be done as described

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must do as I have described” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Every sacrifice that you prepare and offer must be done as described here.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> You must obey these instructions for each animal that you bring to me for an offering.

## Numbers 15:13

### made by fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that they burn on the altar" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### to produce an aroma that is pleasing to Yahweh

"to produce a smell that pleases Yahweh." Yahweh being pleased with the sincere worshiper who offers the sacrifice is spoken of as if Yahweh were pleased with the aroma of the sacrifice. Alternate translation: "to please Yahweh by offering it" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to me](#)

### ULT

**13** All who are native-born Israelites must do these things in this way, when anyone brings an offering made by fire, to produce an aroma that is pleasing to Yahweh.

### UST

**13** All of you people who have been Israelites all of your lives must obey these regulations when you offer sacrifices that will be pleasing [to me](#) when they are burned on the altar.

## Numbers 15:14

### he must make an offering made by fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he must burn an offering on the altar" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh

"to produce a smell that pleases Yahweh." The Lord being pleased with the sincere worshiper who offers the sacrifice is spoken of as if God were pleased with the aroma of the sacrifice. Alternate translation: "to please Yahweh by offering it" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [generation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to me](#)
- [live among you](#)

### ULT

**14** If a foreigner is staying with you, or whoever may live among you throughout your people's generations, he must make an offering made by fire, to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh. He must act as you act.

### UST

**14** If any foreigners visit you or [live among you](#), if they also want to bring a sacrifice that will be pleasing [to me](#) when it is burned on the altar, they must obey these same instructions.

## Numbers 15:15

### As you are, so also must be the traveler

Possible meanings are 1) "You and the traveler staying with you are alike before Yahweh" or 2) "The same law applies to both you and the traveler"

### He must act as you act before Yahweh

"He must act as you act in Yahweh's presence." Because it says that they must act as the Israelites in Yahweh's presence, it is implied that they must obey all of Yahweh's commands. Alternate translation: "he must act as you act and obey all of Yahweh's commands" (See:

[Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)
- [generation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I consider that those who](#)
- [and so they](#)
- [All of your descendants must also continue](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> There must be the same law for the community and for the foreigner who stays with you, a permanent law throughout your people's generations. As you are, so also must be the traveler staying with you. He must act as you act before Yahweh.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> [I consider that those who](#) have always been Israelites and those who are foreigners are equal, [and so they](#) must all obey the same instructions. [All of your descendants must also continue](#) to obey these instructions of mine.

## Numbers 15:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
- statute

### Translation Words - UST

- instructions
- must all obey

### ULT

**16** The same law and decree must apply to you and to the foreigner who is staying with you."

### UST

**16** You Israelites and the foreigners who live among you must all obey the same instructions."

## Numbers 15:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Again Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said,

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> [Yahweh](#) also said [to Moses](#),

## Numbers 15:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite people
- the Israelite people
- the land

#### ULT

**18** "Speak to the people of Israel and say to them, 'When you come into the land where I will take you,

#### UST

**18** "Tell these instructions to [the Israelite people](#), 'When you arrive in [the land](#) to which I am taking you,



## Numbers 15:19

### the food produced in the land

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the food that the land produces” or “the food that you produce in the land” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### Translation Words - UST

- to me
- and present them
- you must set some of them

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> when you eat the food produced in the land, you must offer an offering and present it to me.

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> and you eat the crops that are growing there, [you must set some of them](#) aside to be a sacred offering to me, [and present them to me](#).

## Numbers 15:20

### the first of your dough

Possible meanings are that this refers to 1) the first grain that they would gather during the harvest or 2) the dough that they would make from the first of their grain. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### a loaf

Calling it a loaf implies that they would cooked the dough first.

### to raise it up as a raised offering

This idiom “raise it up” refers to offering it as a gift. Alternate translation: “to offer it as a gift” (See: [Idiom](#))

### a raised offering from the threshing floor

The offering is spoken of as being from the threshing floor because this is where they would separate the grain from the other parts of the plant.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [firstfruits](#)
- [thresh](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Each year set aside some of the first grain](#)
- [after you have threshed it](#)
- [from the first flour that you grind](#)

### ULT

**20** From the first of your dough you must offer a loaf to raise it up as a raised offering from the threshing floor. You must raise it up in this way.

### UST

**20** [Each year set aside some of the first grain](#) that you gather [after you have threshed it](#). Bake a loaf of bread [from the first flour that you grind](#) and present it before me as a sacred offering.

## Numbers 15:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- generation

### Translation Words - UST

- and present to me
- a loaf of bread baked with flour from the first part of the grain
- you harvest

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> You must give to me a raised offering throughout your people's generations from the first of your dough.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> Every year, you and your descendants must continue to make and present to me a loaf of bread baked with flour from the first part of the grain that you harvest.

## Numbers 15:22

### General Information:

The word “you” here refers to Israelite people.

### Connecting Statement:

God continues telling Moses what he must tell the people.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [disobey them](#)
- [I](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> You will sometimes sin without intending to do so, when you do not obey all these commands that I have spoken to Moses—

### UST

<sup>22</sup> There may be times when you Israelites do not obey all these instructions that [I](#) have given to [Moses](#) to tell you, but not because you intended to [disobey them](#).

## Numbers 15:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#) (2)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#) (2)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)
- [generation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [do not obey](#)
- [to tell](#) (2)
- [these instructions...to you](#)
- [I](#) (2)
- [have given to Moses](#)
- [these instructions...to you](#)
- [descendants](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> everything that I have commanded you through Moses from the day that I began to give you commands and onward throughout your people's generations.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> There may be times when some of your [descendants do not obey](#) all [these instructions](#) that [I have given to Moses to tell to you](#).

## Numbers 15:24

### to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh

"to produce a smell that pleases Yahweh." The Lord being pleased with the sincere worshipers who offer the sacrifice is spoken of as if God were pleased with the aroma of the sacrifice. Alternate translation: "to please Yahweh by burning it" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### must be made a grain offering and drink offering

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you must make a grain offering and drink offering" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### as commanded by the decree

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as the decree commands" or "as I commanded when I made the decree" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- drink offering
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs
- grain offering

### Translation Words - UST

- and...young bull
- They must also bring to me
- and...young bull
- and...young bull
- and an offering of wine
- and an offering of wine
- a flour offering

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> In the case of unintentional sin without the community's knowledge, then all the community must offer one young bull as a burnt offering to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh. Along with this must be made a grain offering and drink offering, as commanded by the decree, and one male goat as a sin offering.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> If you or they sin by forgetting to obey these instructions and none of the Israelite people realize that they were doing that, one [young bull](#) as an offering for all the people must be brought to the priest. That will be pleasing to me when it is burned on the altar. [They must also bring to me a flour offering and an offering of wine](#), and a male goat, to be sacrificed to remove the guilt of their sin.

## Numbers 15:25

### They will be forgiven

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will forgive them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### made by fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that they made by fire" or "that they burned on the altar" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood

### Translation Words - UST

- By offering these sacrifices
- Then, as a result of
- will make atonement for
- to me
- you Israelite people
- the priest

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> The priest must make atonement for all the community of the people of Israel. They will be forgiven because the sin was an error. They have brought their sacrifice, an offering made by fire to me. They have brought their sin offering before me for their error.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> [By offering these sacrifices, the priest will make atonement for](#) all of [you Israelite people](#). [Then, as a result of](#) their bringing [to me](#) an offering to be burned on the altar, you will be forgiven, because you sinned without realizing that you were sinning.

## Numbers 15:26

### all the community of the people of Israel will be forgiven

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will forgive all the community of the people of Israel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,

#### Translation Words - UST

- You Israelite
- You Israelite
- people, and

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Then all the community of the people of Israel will be forgiven, and also the foreigners who are staying with them, because all the people committed the sin unintentionally.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> [You Israelite people, and](#) the foreigners who are living among you, will all be forgiven.



## Numbers 15:27

### a female goat a year old

“a 1-year-old female goat”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

#### Translation Words - UST

- person
- commits a sin

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> If a person sins unintentionally, then he must offer a female goat a year old as a sin offering.

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> If one [person commits a sin](#) without realizing that he was sinning, that person must bring to me a female goat to be an offering to take away that person's guilt for that sin.

## Numbers 15:28

### That person will be forgiven when atonement has been made

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will forgive that person when the priest has made atonement" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- atonement, atone, atoned
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood

#### Translation Words - UST

- to be...forgiven
- to remove the guilt
- The priest

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> The priest must make atonement before Yahweh for the person who sins unintentionally. That person will be forgiven when atonement has been made.

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> [The priest](#) will offer it [to be](#) a sacrifice [to remove the guilt](#) of that person's sin, and that person will be [forgiven](#).

## Numbers 15:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
- Israel, Israelites

### Translation Words - UST

- You Israelites
- instructions
- You Israelites

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> You must have the same law for the one who does anything unintentionally, the same law for the one who is native born among the people of Israel and for the foreigners who are staying among them.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> [You Israelites](#) and all the foreigners who live among you must obey these same [instructions](#).

## Numbers 15:30

### That person must be cut off from among his people

The metaphor “cut off” has at least three possible meanings. They can be expressed in active form: 1) “his people must send him away” or 2) “I will no longer consider him to be one of the people of Israel” or 3) “his people must kill him.” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [cut off](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [against me](#)
- [by](#)
- [But those](#)
- [must be expelled](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> But the person who does anything in defiance, whether he is native born or a foreigner, blasphemes me. That person must be cut off from among his people.

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> [But those](#) who disobey my commands deliberately, both Israelites and the foreigners who live among you, have sinned [against me by](#) doing that. So they [must be expelled](#) from your camp.

## Numbers 15:31

### has broken my commandment

Not obeying a commandment is spoken of as breaking it. Alternate translation: "has disobeyed my commandment" or "has not obeyed what I commanded" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### His sin will be on him

Here "sin" represents either 1) punishment for that sin or 2) guilt of that sin. Sin being on him is a metaphor for either 1) being punished or 2) being guilty. Alternate translation: 1) "I will punish him because of his sin" or 2) "I will consider him guilty" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [iniquity](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [cut off](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [commands and deliberately disobeyed](#)
- [to live among...again](#)
- [for](#)
- [by never being allowed](#)
- [by never being allowed](#)

### ULT

**31** Because he has despised my word and has broken my commandment, that person must be cut off completely. His sin will be on him."

### UST

**31** They have despised my [commands and deliberately disobeyed](#) them, so they must be punished [for](#) their sin [by never being allowed to live among](#) you [again](#)."

## Numbers 15:32

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Sabbath
- desert, wilderness

### Translation Words - UST

- some of them
- One day, while the Israelites
- the Sabbath
- in the wilderness

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> While the people of Israel were in the wilderness, they found a man gathering wood on the Sabbath day.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> One day, while the Israelites were in the wilderness, some of them saw a man who was gathering firewood on the Sabbath day.

## Numbers 15:33

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> Those who found him brought him to Moses, Aaron, and all the community.

#### UST

<sup>33</sup> Those who saw him doing that brought him to [Aaron](#) and [Moses](#) and the rest of the Israelite people.

## Numbers 15:34

### it had not been declared what should be done with him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh had not declared what they should do with him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> They kept him in custody because it had not been declared what should be done with him.

#### UST

<sup>34</sup> They guarded him carefully, because they did not know what to do to punish him.



## Numbers 15:35

### The man must surely be put to death

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You must surely put the man to death" or "The man must surely die" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Then Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses, "The man must surely be put to death. All the community must stone him with stones outside the camp."

#### UST

<sup>35</sup> [Then Yahweh](#) said to [Moses](#), "The man must be executed. All of you must kill him by throwing stones at him outside the camp."

## Numbers 15:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#),

### Translation Words - UST

- [took](#)
- [had commanded](#)
- [as Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [and killed](#)

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> So all the community brought him outside the camp and stoned him to death as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

### UST

<sup>36</sup> So they all [took](#) the man outside the camp [and killed](#) him by throwing stones at him, [as Yahweh had commanded Moses](#) that they should do.

## Numbers 15:37

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>37</sup> Again Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said,

#### UST

<sup>37</sup> [Yahweh](#) also said [to Moses](#),

## Numbers 15:38

### the descendants of Israel

“the people of Israel”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- generation

#### Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite people
- the Israelite people
- all your descendants

#### ULT

**38** “Speak to the descendants of Israel and command them to make for themselves tassels to hang from the borders of their garments, to hang them from each border by a blue cord. They must do this throughout their people’s generations.

#### UST

**38** “Tell this to [the Israelite people](#): ‘You and [all your descendants](#) must twist threads together to make tassels, and then attach them with blue cords to the bottom edges of your clothes.

## Numbers 15:39

### to carry them out

“to obey them”

### so that you do not look to your own heart and your own eyes

“Look to” here is a metaphor for think about. The heart represents what a person wants, and the eyes represent what a person sees and wants. Alternate translation: “so that you do not think about whatever you want” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### prostitute yourselves to them

Being unfaithful to God by choosing to do whatever they want is spoken of as if they were women who were unfaithful to their husband by choosing to have sinful relationships with other men. It can be stated clearly that this was a shameful thing to do. Alternate translation: “be shamefully unfaithful to me” or “do those things instead of obeying me” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whored](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to do](#)
- [I gave to you](#)
- [to me](#)
- [like an unfaithful prostitute](#)

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> It will be a special reminder to you, when you may look at it, of all my commandments, to carry them out so that you do not look to your own heart and your own eyes and prostitute yourselves to them.

### UST

<sup>39</sup> When you look at the tassels, you will remember all the instructions that [I gave to you](#), and you will obey them. In that way, you will not be unfaithful [to me](#). You will not be [like an unfaithful prostitute](#) who does the shameful things that she looks at and desires [to do](#).

## Numbers 15:40

### Connecting Statement:

God continues telling Moses what to tell the people of Israel. The word “you” refers to the people.

### call to mind

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “remember” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [commands](#) and
- [my holy people](#)
- [that you must](#)

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> Do this so that you may call to mind and obey all my commandments, and so that you may be holy, reserved for me, your God.

### UST

<sup>40</sup> Seeing those tassels will help you to remember that you must obey all my [commands and that you must](#) be [my holy people](#).

## Numbers 15:41

### I am Yahweh your God

This clause is repeated for emphasis.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- to me
- your God
- I am Yahweh, your God
- Yahweh
- I am Yahweh, your God
- of Egypt
- one who brought you out

#### ULT

<sup>41</sup> I am Yahweh your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, to become your God. I am Yahweh your God."

#### UST

<sup>41</sup> Do not forget that I am Yahweh, your God. I am the one who brought you out of Egypt in order that you might belong to me. I am Yahweh, your God."

## Numbers 16

### Numbers 16 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Rebellion and punishment

A certain Levite and a few men from the tribe of Reuben claimed that they were just as good as Moses and Aaron, and they also could do the work of sacrificing animals at the sacred tent. So Moses told them to come to the sacred tent and burn incense to Yahweh. God then made the earth open and swallow up these leaders and their families. He also sent fire to destroy 250 other men who had joined with those leaders. These actions showed that only the Levites, those whom Yahweh appointed, could be priests. Also, it taught the people that to rebel against Yahweh's anointed was to rebel against Yahweh. (See: [appoint](#), [appointed](#) and [priest](#), [priesthood](#) and [anoint](#), [anointed](#), [anointing](#))



## Numbers 16:1

### Kohath

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 3:17](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (4)
- [son](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [One day](#) [Korah](#) [son of](#)
- [and a descendant of](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [who were the sons of](#)
- [son of](#) (4)
- [They were all from](#)
- [the tribe of Reuben](#)
- [Levi's](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now Korah son of Izhar son of Kohath son of Levi, along with Dathan and Abiram sons of Eliab, and On son of Peleth, descendants of Reuben, gathered some men.

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> [One day](#) [Korah](#) [son of](#) Izhar [and a descendant of Levi's son](#) Kohath, conspired with Dathan and Abiram, [who were the sons of](#) Eliab, and On [son of](#) Peleth. [They were all from the tribe of Reuben](#).

## Numbers 16:2

### rose up against Moses

Rebelling or criticizing someone in authority is spoken of as if they were standing up to fight. Alternate translation: “rebelled against Moses” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### two hundred and fifty

“250” (See: [Numbers](#))

### well-known members in the community

“famous members of the community” or “important men in the community”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [other](#)
- [incited...people...join them](#)
- [among the Israelite](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [incited...people...join them](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> They rose up against Moses, along with other men from the people of Israel, two hundred and fifty leaders of the community who were well-known members in the community.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Those four men [incited](#) 250 [other people](#) who were leaders [among the Israelite](#) people to [join them](#) in rebelling against [Moses](#).

## Numbers 16:3

### You have gone too far

This represents doing more than one should. Alternate translation: “You have done more than you should” or “You assume to have more authority than you should” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Why do you lift up yourselves above the rest of Yahweh’s community?

The men ask this question to rebuke Moses and Aaron. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “You are wrong to lift up yourselves above the rest of Yahweh’s community.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### lift up yourselves above the rest

Considering someone to be important is spoken of as lifting it up. Alternate translation: “consider yourselves more important than the rest” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

### Translation Words - UST

- and he is with all of us
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- and Moses
- to criticize Aaron
- people

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> They assembled themselves together to confront Moses and Aaron. They said to them, “You have gone too far! All the community is set apart, every one of them, and Yahweh is among them. Why do you lift up yourselves above the rest of Yahweh’s community?”

### UST

<sup>3</sup> They came together [to criticize Aaron and Moses](#). They said to them, “You two are using more authority than you should! [Yahweh](#) has set apart all of us Israelite people, [and he is with all of us](#). So why do you act as though you were more important than the rest of us [people](#) who belong to [Yahweh](#)?”

## Numbers 16:4

### he lay facedown

This indicates that Moses was humbling himself before God. He was afraid that God would punish the people for rebelling against God and his chosen leaders. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [face](#), [facial](#)
- [bow](#), [bow down](#), [knelt](#), [bend](#), [bend the knee](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [When Moses](#)
- [the ground](#)
- [he prostrated himself](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> When Moses heard that, he lay facedown.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> [When Moses](#) heard what they were saying, [he prostrated himself](#) on [the ground](#).

## Numbers 16:5

### who is set apart to him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom Yahweh has set apart for himself” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh will show to us](#)
- [Yahweh will show to us](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> He spoke to Korah and to all those with him, “In the morning Yahweh will make known who belongs to him and who is set apart to him. He will bring that person near to him. The one he chooses he will bring near to himself.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> Then he said to Korah and those who were with Korah, “Tomorrow morning [Yahweh will show to us](#) whom he has chosen to be his priest, and who is holy and allowed to come near to him. Yahweh will permit only those whom he chooses to come into his presence.

## Numbers 16:6

### Connecting Statement:

Moses continues speaking to Korah and the men who were with Korah.

### censers

containers in which to burn incense

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Do this, Korah and all your group.  
Take censers

### UST

<sup>6</sup> So Korah, tomorrow you and those  
who are with you must prepare your  
pans to burn incense.

## Numbers 16:7

### before Yahweh

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “in Yahweh’s presence” (See: [Idiom](#))

### that man will be set apart to Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will set apart that man for himself” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### You have gone too far

This represents doing more than one should. Alternate translation: “You have done more than you should” or “You assume to have more authority than you should” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

### Translation Words - UST

- who are descendants
- light a fire
- Yahweh
- Yahweh has
- of Levi who are trying to use
- light a fire

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> tomorrow and put fire and incense in them before Yahweh. The one whom Yahweh chooses, that man will be set apart to Yahweh. You have gone too far, you descendants of Levi.”

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Then you must [light a fire](#) in them and burn the incense in the presence of [Yahweh](#). Then we will see which one of us [Yahweh has](#) chosen to be his holy servant. It is you men [who are descendants of Levi who are trying to use](#) more authority than you should!”

## Numbers 16:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [who are descendants](#)
- [Then Moses](#)
- [of Levi](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Again, Moses said to Korah, “Now listen, you descendants of Levi:

### UST

<sup>8</sup> [Then Moses](#) spoke again to Korah. He said, “You men [who are descendants of Levi](#), listen to me!



## Numbers 16:9

### is it a small thing for you...to serve them?

Moses uses this question to rebuke Korah and the men with him. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “You behave as though it is a small thing for you...to serve them!” or “You should not consider it a small thing...to serve them!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### a small thing for you

“not enough for you” or “unimportant to you”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the God of](#)
- [You know that Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> is it a small thing for you that the God of Israel has separated you from the community of Israel, to bring you near to himself, to do work in Yahweh's tabernacle, and to stand before the community to serve them?

### UST

<sup>9</sup> [You know that Yahweh, the God of Israel](#) has chosen you Levites from the community of [Israel](#) so you can work for him at his sacred tent and serve the people. Does that seem to you like a small thing for you to do?

## Numbers 16:10

### you are seeking the priesthood also

Wanting to have the priesthood is spoken of as if they were looking for it. Alternate translation: “you want to have the priesthood too” or “you want to be priests also” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [fellow](#)
- [descendants of](#)
- [Levi](#)
- [demanding to become](#)

#### ULT

**10** He has brought you near, and all your kinfolk, the descendants of Levi, with you, yet you are seeking the priesthood also!

#### UST

**10** Yahweh has brought you, Korah, and your [fellow descendants of Levi](#), near to himself. Now are you [demanding to become](#) priests also?

## Numbers 16:11

### Who is Aaron that you grumble against him?

Moses uses this question to show them that when they complain about what Aaron does, they are really complaining against Yahweh, because Aaron was doing what Yahweh told him to do. Alternate translation: "You are not really complaining about Aaron, but about Yahweh, whom Aaron obeys!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [really Yahweh against whom](#)

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Therefore you and all your company have assembled against Yahweh. Who is Aaron that you grumble against him?"

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> It is [really Yahweh against whom](#) you and your fellow descendants of Levi are rebelling. Aaron is not the one about whom you are really complaining."

## Numbers 16:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and Abiram, but they refused to come. They](#)
- [Then Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Then Moses called for Dathan and Abiram, the sons of Eliab, but they said, "We will not come up.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> [Then Moses](#) summoned Dathan [and Abiram, but they refused to come. They](#) sent a message saying, "We will not come to you!"

## Numbers 16:13

### Is it a small thing that you have brought us...to kill us in the wilderness?

Dathan and Abiram use this question to rebuke Moses. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “You behave as though it was a small thing for you to bring us...and kill us in the wilderness.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### a small thing

“not enough” or “unimportant”

#### a land flowing with milk and honey

They spoke of the land being good for animals and plants as if the milk and honey from those animals and plants were flowing through the land. See how you translated this in [Numbers 14:8](#). Alternate translation: “that is excellent for raising livestock and growing crops” or “a very fertile land” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

#### to kill us

The people exaggerate because they will hold Moses responsible if any of them die. Alternate translation: “to have us die” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- desert, wilderness
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- honey, honeycomb

#### Translation Words - UST

- and that is worse
- are also trying to boss us
- in this desert
- in order to cause us to die here
- which was a very fertile

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Is it a small thing that you have brought us up out of a land flowing with milk and honey, to kill us in the wilderness? Now you want to make yourself ruler over us!

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> You brought us out of Egypt, [which was a very fertile](#) land, [in order to cause us to die here in this desert](#). That was bad. But now you [are also trying to boss us, and that is worse](#).

## Numbers 16:14

### as an inheritance

They spoke of what God would give them to be theirs forever as if it were an inheritance. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Now do you want to blind us with empty promises?

The people used this question to accuse Moses. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Now you want to blind us with empty promises." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### to blind us

Deceiving people is spoken of as making them blind. Alternate translation: "to deceive us" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### with empty promises

They speak of promises that are not kept as if they are empty containers. Alternate translation: "with promises that you do not keep" or "by promising to do things that you do not do" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#)
- [honey](#), [honeycomb](#)
- [vineyard](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [us a new land...that has good fields and vineyards...to](#)
- [us a new land...that has good fields and vineyards...to](#)
- [us a new land...that has good fields and vineyards...to](#)
- [a land](#)

### ULT

**14** In addition, you have not brought us into a land flowing with milk and honey, or given us the fields and vineyards as an inheritance. Now do you want to blind us with empty promises? We will not come to you."

### UST

**14** You have not given [us a new land](#) to live in, [a land that has good fields and vineyards](#). You are only trying [to](#) blind these people. So we will not come to you."

## Numbers 16:15

### I have not taken one donkey from them

One donkey here represents anything that a person may take from someone else. Alternate translation: "I have not taken anything from them, not even one donkey" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- donkey, mule
- afflict, affliction, distress
- grain offering

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- donkey
- became
- the grain offerings

#### ULT

**15** Moses was very angry and said to Yahweh, "Do not respect their offering. I have not taken one donkey from them, and I have not harmed any of them."

#### UST

**15** Then Moses [became](#) very angry. He said to [Yahweh](#), "Do not accept [the grain offerings](#) that they have brought. I have not taken anything from them, not even one [donkey](#), and I have never done anything wrong to them, so they have no reason to complain against me."

## Numbers 16:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Then Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> Then Moses said to Korah,  
“Tomorrow you and all your company  
must go before Yahweh—you and they,  
and Aaron.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> [Then Moses](#) said to Korah, “You and  
all those who are with you must come  
here tomorrow and stand in front of  
[Yahweh](#). Aaron will also be here.



## Numbers 16:17

### censer

a container in which to burn incense

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**17** Each of you must take his censer and put incense in it. Then each man must bring before Yahweh his censer, two hundred and fifty censers. You and Aaron, also, must each bring your censer."

### UST

**17** You and all the 250 men who are with you must each take a pan in which to burn incense, and put incense in it, to burn it to be an offering [to Yahweh](#). Aaron will do the same thing."

## Numbers 16:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- feast, feasting
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

### Translation Words - UST

- They put
- of the sacred
- hot coals to light it

### ULT

**18** So every man took his censer, put fire in it, laid incense in it, and stood at the entrance to the tent of meeting with Moses and Aaron.

### UST

**18** So each of those men got a pan to burn incense. [They put](#) in it incense and [hot coals to light it](#), and then they all stood at the entrance [of the sacred](#) tent with Aaron and Moses.

## Numbers 16:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- glory, glorious, glorify
- Yahweh
- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- Then the glory
- Then the glory
- at the

### ULT

**19** Korah assembled all the community against Moses and Aaron at the entrance to the tent of meeting, and Yahweh's glory appeared to all the community.

### UST

**19** Then Korah summoned all the people who supported him and who were against Moses, and they also gathered at the entrance of the tent. Then the glory of Yahweh appeared to all of them.

## Numbers 16:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and to Aaron:

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> [Yahweh](#) said to [Aaron](#) and [Moses](#),

## Numbers 16:21

### that I may consume them

Destroying them is spoken of as if God were to eat them. Alternate translation: "that I may destroy them" or "and I will destroy them" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

**21** "Separate yourselves from among this community that I may consume them immediately."

#### UST

**21** "Get away from all these people, in order that I can get rid of them immediately!"

## Numbers 16:22

### lay facedown

This shows that Moses and Aaron were humbling themselves before God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### the God of the spirits of all humanity

Here “spirits” represents the ability to live. Alternate translation: “the God who gives life to all humanity” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### if one man sins, must you be angry with all the community?

Moses and Aaron use this question to plead with God for the people. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “please do not be angry with all the community because one man sins” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [God](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [has sinned](#)
- [God...to live](#)
- [you are the one who caused all these people](#)
- [They pleaded with Yahweh](#)
- [But Aaron and Moses prostrated](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Moses and Aaron lay facedown and said, “God, the God of the spirits of all humanity, if one man sins, must you be angry with all the community?”

### UST

<sup>22</sup> [But Aaron and Moses prostrated](#) themselves on the ground. [They pleaded with Yahweh](#), saying, “[God, you are the one who caused all these people to live](#). Only one of these men [has sinned](#). So, is it right for you to be angry with all the people?”

## Numbers 16:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Yahweh replied to Moses. He said,

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> [Yahweh](#) said [to Moses](#),

## Numbers 16:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> "Speak to the community. Say, 'Get away from the tents of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram.'"

### UST

<sup>24</sup> "Okay, but tell all the people to get away from the tents of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram."



## Numbers 16:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [The Israelite](#)
- [So Moses](#)
- [leaders](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Then Moses rose up and went to Dathan and Abiram; the elders of Israel followed him.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> [So Moses](#) stood up and went to the tents of Dathan and Abiram. [The Israelite leaders](#) followed him.

## Numbers 16:26

### you will be consumed

Being destroyed is spoken of as if they would be eaten. Alternate translation: "you will be destroyed" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### you will be consumed by all their sins

Being destroyed because of their sins is spoken of as if the sins would destroy them. Alternate translation: "you will be destroyed because of all their sins" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### you will be consumed by all their sins

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "all their sins will destroy you" or "Yahweh will destroy you because of all their sins" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [their sins](#)

### ULT

**26** He spoke to the community and said, "Now leave the tents of these wicked men and touch nothing of theirs, or you will be consumed by all their sins."

### UST

**26** He told the people, "Get away from the tents of these wicked men, and do not touch anything that belongs to them! If you touch anything, you will die because of [their sins](#)!"

## Numbers 16:27

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [children](#)
- [came out of their tents](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> So the community on every side of the tents of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram left them. Dathan and Abiram came out and stood at the entrance to their tents, with their wives, sons, and their little ones.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> So all the people moved away from the tents of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram. Dathan and Abiram [came out of their tents](#) with their wives and [children](#) and babies, and stood at the entrance of their tents.

## Numbers 16:28

### By this you will know

Here “this” refers to what Moses will say next.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [I was](#)
- [It was Yahweh who chose me](#)
- [Then Moses](#)
- [one who decided](#)

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Then Moses said, “By this you will know that Yahweh has sent me to do all these works, for I have not done them of my own accord.

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> [Then Moses](#) said, “[I was](#) not the [one who decided](#) to do all these things that I have done. [It was Yahweh who chose me](#) and sent me to do them. And now he will prove that to you.

## Numbers 16:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [in a normal way](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> If these men die a natural death such as normally happens, then Yahweh has not sent me.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> If these men die [in a normal way](#), then it will be clear that [Yahweh](#) did not choose me.

## Numbers 16:30

### the earth opens its mouth and swallows them

Moses speaks as if the earth were alive and the opening in the ground into which these people would fall were a large mouth that would eat them. Alternate translation: “and they fall into it and are buried underneath the ground” (See: [Simile](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- is
- But if Yahweh
- Yahweh
- then you will know that

#### ULT

**30** But if Yahweh creates something new, and the earth opens its mouth and swallows them, with everything that they possess, and they go down alive into Sheol, then you must understand that these men have despised Yahweh.”

#### UST

**30** [But if Yahweh](#) does something that has never happened before, if he causes the ground that [is](#) under their feet to open up and swallow these men and their families and all their possessions, and they fall into the opening and are buried while they are still alive, [then you will know that](#) these men have insulted [Yahweh](#).”

## Numbers 16:31

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> As soon as Moses finished speaking all these words, the ground opened under those men.

### UST

<sup>31</sup> As soon as Moses said this, the ground split open beneath those men.

## Numbers 16:32

### The earth opened its mouth and swallowed them

Moses speaks of the earth as if it were alive, and the hole that the people fell into as if it were the earth's mouth. Alternate translation: "The earth opened up like a large mouth, and they fell into it and were buried in it" or "There was a giant hole in the ground, and they fell into it and were buried in it" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)
- [house](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [were standing there](#)
- [families](#)

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> The earth opened its mouth and swallowed them, their families, and all the people who belonged to Korah, as well as all their possessions.

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> It swallowed those men and their [families](#) and all those who [were standing there](#) with Korah and all of their possessions.



## Numbers 16:33

### went down alive into Sheol

A similar phrase occurs in [Numbers 16:30](#). See how you translated it there.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### Translation Words - UST

- while...were still alive
- They
- disappeared, and
- the ground

#### ULT

**33** So they and all that they possessed went down alive into Sheol. The earth closed over them, and they perished from among the community.

#### UST

**33** They fell into the opening in the ground [while](#) they [were still alive](#), and all their possessions fell into the opening also. [They disappeared, and the ground](#) closed back up again.

## Numbers 16:34

### They exclaimed

"They" refers to "All Israel."

### The earth may swallow us up also

The people speak of the earth as if it were alive. Alternate translation: "The earth might open up and we too will fall into it" or "If the earth opens up again, we too will fall into it and be buried" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [people](#)
- [We do not want the ground](#)

### ULT

**34** All Israel around them fled from their cries. They exclaimed, "The earth may swallow us up also!"

### UST

**34** They screamed as they fell, and all the [people](#) who were standing nearby heard them scream. The people were terrified and cried out as they ran away, saying, "[We do not want the ground](#) to swallow us, also!"

## Numbers 16:35

### fire flashed out from Yahweh and devoured the 250 men

Being destroyed by fire is spoken of as if they were eaten by the fire. Alternate translation: "fire flashed out from Yahweh and destroyed the 250 men" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### 250 men

"two hundred and fifty men" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [devour](#)
- [fire](#), [firebrands](#), [firepans](#), [fireplace](#), [firepot](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [burned up](#)
- [then a fire from](#)
- [came down from the sky](#)

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Then fire flashed out from Yahweh and devoured the 250 men who had offered incense.

### UST

<sup>35</sup> And [then a fire from Yahweh came down from the sky](#) and [burned up](#) the 250 men who were burning the incense!

## Numbers 16:36

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Again Yahweh spoke to Moses and said,

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> Then [Yahweh](#) said [to Moses](#),

## Numbers 16:37

### out of the flames

This refers to the flames that burned the 250 men.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- son
- exalt, exalted, exaltation
- priest, priesthood
- Aaron
- winnow, sift
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

#### Translation Words - UST

- are holy...they...incense to me in them
- son
- take
- the fire
- Aaron's
- to scatter
- the burning coals

#### ULT

**37** "Speak to Eleazar son of Aaron the priest and let him take up the censers out of the flames, for the censers are set apart to me. Then let him scatter the burning coals at a distance.

#### UST

**37** "Tell [Aaron's son](#) Eleazar to [take](#) the pans that had incense in them away from [the fire](#) and [to scatter the burning coals](#). The pans that those men were carrying [are holy](#) because [they](#) burned [incense to me in them](#).

## Numbers 16:38

### those who lost their lives

Losing their lives represents dying. Alternate translation: “those who died” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Let them be made

Here “them” refers to the censers. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Let Eleazar make them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### they are set apart...They will be a sign

Here “they” and “They” refer to the censers.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [heart](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [What happened to those pans will now...the Israelite people](#)
- [men](#)
- [holy](#)
- [to me, so they are](#)
- [What happened to those pans will now...the Israelite people](#)

### ULT

**38** Take the censers of those who lost their lives because of their sin. Let them be made into hammered plates as a covering over the altar. Those men did offer them before me, so they are set apart to me. They will be a sign of my presence to the people of Israel.”

### UST

**38** Those [men](#) have now died because of their sin. So Eleazar must take their pans and hammer the metal to make it become very thin. He must make a covering for the altar with that metal. Those pans were used to offer incense [to me, so they are holy. What happened to those pans will now](#) warn [the Israelite people](#).”

## Numbers 16:39

### that had been used by the men who were burned up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that the men whom the fire had burned up had used” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [bronze](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [bronze](#)

#### ULT

**39** Eleazar the priest took the bronze censers that had been used by the men who were burned up, and they were hammered out into a covering for the altar,

#### UST

**39-40** So Eleazar the priest collected the 250 pans for burning incense that had been used by the men who died in the fire. He hammered the pans very thin to make a covering for the altar, as Yahweh told Moses should be done. That warned the Israelites that only those who were descendants of Aaron were permitted to burn incense as an offering to Yahweh. If anyone else did that, the same thing would happen to him as happened to Korah and those with him.

## Numbers 16:40

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Aaron
- hand
- descend, descendant

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Aaron
- hand
- descend, descendant

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> to be a reminder to the people of Israel, so that no outsider who was not descended from Aaron should come up to burn incense before Yahweh, so they might not become like Korah and his group—just as Yahweh had commanded through Moses.

### UST

<sup>39-40</sup> So Eleazar the priest collected the 250 pans for burning incense that had been used by the men who died in the fire. He hammered the pans very thin to make a covering for the altar, as Yahweh told Moses should be done. That warned the Israelites that only those who were descendants of Aaron were permitted to burn incense as an offering to Yahweh. If anyone else did that, the same thing would happen to him as happened to Korah and those with him.



## Numbers 16:41

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Aaron
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite people
- Yahweh
- the Israelite people
- Moses
- Aaron
- people who belonged to

### ULT

**41** But the next morning all the community of the people of Israel complained against Moses and Aaron. They said, "You have killed Yahweh's people."

### UST

**41** But the following morning, all [the Israelite people](#) started to complain against [Aaron](#) and [Moses](#) saying "You have killed many [people who belonged to Yahweh!](#)"

## Numbers 16:42

### Then it happened

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### had assembled against Moses and Aaron

“had assembled to complain against Moses and Aaron”

### behold, the cloud

“suddenly, the cloud.” Here “behold” shows that the people were surprised by what they saw.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [glory, glorious, glorify](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and the glory](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [and Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [at the](#)

### ULT

<sup>42</sup> Then it happened, when the community had assembled against Moses and Aaron, that they looked toward the tent of meeting and, behold, the cloud was covering it. Yahweh's glory appeared,

### UST

<sup>42</sup> When all the people gathered together to protest about what [Aaron and Moses](#) had done, they looked [at the](#) sacred tent and saw that the sacred cloud had covered it, [and the glory](#) of [Yahweh](#) had appeared.

## Numbers 16:43

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)
- [face, facial](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and Moses](#)
- [of the sacred](#)
- [stood in front](#)

### ULT

<sup>43</sup> and Moses and Aaron came to the front of the tent of meeting.

### UST

<sup>43</sup> Aaron [and Moses](#) went and [stood in front of the sacred](#) tent.

## Numbers 16:44

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>44</sup> Then Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said,

#### UST

<sup>44</sup> Then [Yahweh](#) said [to Moses](#),

## Numbers 16:45

### so that I may consume them

God speaks of destroying them as if he would eat them. Alternate translation: "so that I may destroy them" or "and I will destroy them" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### lay down with their faces to the ground

This indicates that Moses and Aaron are humbling themselves before God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [face](#), [facial](#)
- [bow](#), [bow down](#), [knelt](#), [bend](#), [bend the knee](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [without injuring you two](#)
- [prostrated](#)

#### ULT

**45** "Go away from in front of this community so that I may consume them immediately." Then Moses and Aaron lay down with their faces to the ground.

#### UST

**45** "Get away from these people, in order that I can get rid of them immediately [without injuring you two!](#)" But Aaron and Moses [prostrated](#) themselves on the ground and prayed.

## Numbers 16:46

### anger is coming from Yahweh

Anger coming from God represents God showing his anger.

Alternate translation: "Yahweh is showing us his anger" or "Yahweh is very angry and is acting according to his anger" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- the altar
- put
- Yahweh
- Moses
- to Aaron
- some burning coals
- already

#### ULT

<sup>46</sup> Moses said to Aaron, "Take the censer, put fire in it from off the altar, put incense in it, carry it quickly to the community, and make atonement for them, because anger is coming from Yahweh. The plague has begun."

#### UST

<sup>46</sup> [Moses](#) said [to Aaron](#), "Quickly take another pan and [put](#) in it [some burning coals](#) from [the altar](#). Put incense in the pan, and carry it out among the people to atone for the sins of the people. [Yahweh](#) is very angry with them, and I know that a severe plague has [already](#) started among them."

## Numbers 16:47

### he put in the incense

Putting the incense in the censer here represents burning it.  
Alternate translation: "he burned the incense" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [So Aaron did](#)
- [the people](#)
- [the people](#)
- [the people](#)

#### ULT

<sup>47</sup> So Aaron did as Moses directed. He ran into the middle of the community. The plague had quickly started to spread among the people, so he put in the incense and made atonement for the people.

#### UST

<sup>47</sup> [So Aaron did](#) what [Moses](#) told him. He took the burning incense out among [the people](#). The plague had already started to strike [the people](#), but Aaron continued to burn the incense to make atonement for the sins of [the people](#).

## Numbers 16:48

### the plague was stopped

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the plague stopped spreading” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- die, dead, deadly, death,

#### Translation Words - UST

- those who were still alive
- the people who had already died

#### ULT

<sup>48</sup> Aaron stood between the dead and the living; in this way the plague was stopped.

#### UST

<sup>48</sup> He stood between [the people who had already died](#) and [those who were still alive](#), and then the plague stopped.



## Numbers 16:49

### 14,700 in number

“fourteen thousand seven hundred in number” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- die, dead, deadly, death,

#### Translation Words - UST

- already died
- died

#### ULT

<sup>49</sup> Those who died by the plague were 14,700 in number, besides those who had died in the matter of Korah.

#### UST

<sup>49</sup> But 14,700 people had [already died](#) from that plague, in addition to the people who [died](#) with Korah.

## Numbers 16:50

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)
- [return](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [of the sacred](#)
- [returned](#)

#### ULT

<sup>50</sup> Aaron returned to Moses at the entrance to the tent of meeting, and the plague ended.

#### UST

<sup>50</sup> Then after the plague had ended, [Aaron and Moses returned](#) to the entrance [of the sacred](#) tent.

## Numbers 17

### Numbers 17 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Which tribe should be special workers for God?

God told Moses that each tribe should bring one wooden staff and leave it overnight at the temple. The next day Aaron's staff representing the tribe of Levi bloomed and produced ripe almond nuts. This showed that the tribe of Levi was still the tribe chosen to be Yahweh's priests. (See: [chosen](#), [choose](#), [chosen people](#), [Chosen One](#), [elect](#) and [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

## Numbers 17:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses. He said,

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then [Yahweh](#) said [to Moses](#),

## Numbers 17:2

### twelve

"12" (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house
- house

#### Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite people
- name
- the Israelite people
- twelve
- each leader's
- twelve
- leaders of

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> "Speak to the people of Israel and get staffs from them, one for each ancestral tribe, twelve staffs. Write each man's name on his staff.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> "Tell [the Israelite people](#) to bring to you [twelve](#) walking sticks. They should bring one from each of the [leaders of](#) the twelve tribes. You should carve [each leader's name](#) on his stick.

## Numbers 17:3

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### Levi's staff

The name Levi here refers to the tribe of Levi.

### for each leader from his ancestors' tribe

Here "his" refers to "each leader."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [Aaron's](#)
- [of Levi](#)
- [for the leader](#)
- [for the leader](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> You must write Aaron's name on Levi's staff. There must be one staff for each leader from his ancestors' tribe.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> There must be one stick [for the leader](#) of each tribe, so you must carve [Aaron's name](#) on the stick for the tribe [of Levi](#).

## Numbers 17:4

### the covenant decrees

The phrase “the covenant decrees” refers to the box that held the tablets that the covenant decrees were written on. Alternate translation: “the ark of the covenant” or “the box that holds the covenant decrees” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [feast, feasting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of the sacred](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> You must place the staffs in the tent of meeting in front of the covenant decrees, where I meet with you.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Put those walking sticks inside the sacred tent, in front [of the sacred](#) chest that has in it the tablets on which the Ten Commandments are written. That is the place where I always talk with you.

## Numbers 17:5

### the staff of the man whom I choose will bud

“buds will start to grow on the staff of the man whom I choose”

### cause the complaints from the people of Israel to stop, which they are speaking against you

Here “complaints” is an abstract noun that can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “make the people of Israel stop complaining against you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [people see that](#)
- [people see that](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> It will happen that the staff of the man whom I choose will bud. I will cause the complaints from the people of Israel to stop, which they are speaking against you.”

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> Buds will sprout on the stick of the man whom I have chosen to be the priest. When the [people see that](#), they will stop their constantly complaining about you because they will realize that he is the one whom I have chosen.”



## Numbers 17:6

### selected from each of the ancestral tribes

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom Moses selected from each of the ancestor’s tribes” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Aaron
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house

#### Translation Words - UST

- told the people
- Israelite
- Moses
- each...twelve...including Aaron, brought his walking stick...Moses
- each...twelve...including Aaron, brought his walking stick...Moses
- each...twelve...including Aaron, brought his walking stick...Moses

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> So Moses spoke to the people of Israel. All the tribal leaders gave him staffs, one staff from each leader, selected from each of the ancestral tribes, twelve staffs in all. Aaron’s staff was among them.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> So [Moses told the people](#) what Yahweh had said. Then [each](#) of the [twelve Israelite](#) leaders, [including Aaron, brought his walking stick](#) to [Moses](#).

## Numbers 17:7

### the tent of the covenant decrees

The phrase “the covenant decrees” refers to the box that held the tablets that the covenant decrees were written on. Alternate translation: “the tent of the covenant box” or “the tent that the covenant decrees are in” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sacred](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Then Moses deposited the staffs before Yahweh in the tent of the covenant decrees.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> [Moses](#) placed the sticks inside the [sacred](#) tent in front of the sacred chest.

## Numbers 17:8

### behold

The word “behold” here shows that something especially important has happened. You might have a similar word in your language.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [produced](#)
- [he](#)
- [Aaron's stick, which represented](#)
- [Levi, had sprouted](#)
- [It](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> The next day Moses went into the tent of the covenant decrees and, behold, Aaron's staff for the tribe of Levi had budded. It grew buds and produced blossoms and ripe almonds!

### UST

<sup>8</sup> The following morning, when [he](#) went into the tent, he saw that [Aaron's stick, which represented](#) the tribe of [Levi, had sprouted](#). [It](#) had [produced](#) leaves and blossoms, and it had also produced almonds that were ripe!

## Numbers 17:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [brought](#)
- [Each of the twelve leaders](#)
- [sacred tent](#)
- [people](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Moses brought out all the staffs from before Yahweh to all the people of Israel, and each man took his staff.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> [Moses brought](#) all the sticks out of the [sacred tent](#) and showed them to the [people](#). [Each of the twelve leaders](#) took back his own stick.

## Numbers 17:10

### the covenant decrees

The phrase “the covenant decrees” refers to the box that held the tablets that the covenant decrees were written on. Alternate translation: “the ark of the covenant” or “the box that holds the covenant decrees” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### so that you may end complaints against me

The word “complaints” is an abstract noun that can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “so that you may stop them from complaining against me” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### or they will die

This is what would happen if the people were to continue complaining. God wanted to prevent this. Alternate translation: “so that they will not die”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [restore](#), [restoration](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [people](#)
- [Then Yahweh](#)
- [to](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Put Aaron's](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, “Put Aaron’s staff in front of the covenant decrees. Keep it as a sign of guilt against the people who rebelled so that you may end complaints against me, or they will die.”

### UST

<sup>10</sup> [Then Yahweh](#) said to [Moses](#), “[Put Aaron's](#) stick in front of the sacred chest, and let it stay there permanently. That will be a warning [to people](#) who want to rebel against me. Then no more people will die because of complaining against me.”

## Numbers 17:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [commanded](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Moses did just as Yahweh had commanded him.

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> So [Moses](#) did what [Yahweh](#) had [commanded](#).

## Numbers 17:12

### We will die here. We will all perish!

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [perish](#)
- [perish](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [All of us are surely going to die](#)
- [All of us are surely going to die](#)
- [Then the Israelite people](#)
- [Then the Israelite people](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> The people of Israel spoke to Moses and said, "We will die here. We will all perish!"

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> [Then the Israelite people](#) said to [Moses](#), "We are going to die! [All of us are surely going to die!](#)"

## Numbers 17:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh's](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Everyone who comes up, who approaches Yahweh's tabernacle, will die. Must we all perish?"

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> Everyone who comes close to [Yahweh's](#) sacred tent dies. Are the rest of us going to die, also?"



## **Numbers 18**

### **Numbers 18 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Tithes and offerings**

The tribes of Israel were required to bring a tithe to the Levites in order to free them to serve Yahweh as priests. There is a detailed description of what belonged to Yahweh in this chapter. (See: [priest, priesthood](#))

## Numbers 18:1

### all sins committed against the sanctuary

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "all sins that anyone commits against the sanctuary" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### all sins committed by anyone in the priesthood

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "all sins that anyone in the priesthood commits" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### anyone in the priesthood

"any priest"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- iniquity
- iniquity
- sanctuary
- Yahweh
- Aaron
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house

#### Translation Words - UST

- your sons
- sons will be punished
- if anything bad happens to the things inside the
- And...does something bad
- sacred tent
- Yahweh
- Aaron
- and the other members of...father's
- family are the ones who will be punished

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh said to Aaron, "You, your sons, and your ancestor's clan will be responsible for all sins committed against the sanctuary. But only you and your sons with you will be responsible for all sins committed by anyone in the priesthood."

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> [Yahweh](#) said to [Aaron](#), "You and [your sons and the other members of your father's family are the ones who will be punished if anything bad happens to the things inside the sacred tent](#). And you and your [sons will be punished](#) if any priest [does something bad](#)."

## Numbers 18:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### Translation Words - UST

- belong to
- sons
- Levi, must assist
- the
- tribe

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> As for your fellow members of the tribe of Levi, your ancestors' tribe, you must bring them with you so they may join you and help you when you and your sons serve in front of the tent of the covenant decrees.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Require that those who [belong to](#) your tribe, the [tribe](#) of [Levi](#), [must assist](#) you and your [sons](#) while you perform your work at [the](#) sacred tent.

## Numbers 18:3

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues speaking to Aaron.

### They must serve you

“They” refers to members of the tribe of Levi; the word “you” is singular and refers to Aaron. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### or they and also you will die

Here “they” refers to any member of the tribe of Levi who comes “near to anything in the sanctuary;” the word “you” is plural and refers to both Aaron and the rest of the Levites who are serving in approved roles. (See: [Pronouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

### Translation Words - UST

- the altar
- sacred

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> They must serve you and the whole tent. However, they must not come near to anything in the holy place or connected with the altar, or they and also you will die.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> But while they do that work, they must not go near the [sacred](#) items inside the tent or near [the altar](#). If they do that, they will die, and you will die, too!

## Numbers 18:4

### They must join you

“They” refers to members of the tribe of Levi; the word “you” is singular and refers to Aaron. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### not come near you

Here “you” is plural and refers to both Aaron and the rest of the Levites. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [feast, feasting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of the sacred](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> They must join you and take care of the tent of meeting, for all the work connected with the tent. A foreigner must not come near you.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> They may assist you in doing all the work to take care [of the sacred](#) tent, but no one else is permitted to come near the place where you are working.

## Numbers 18:5

### You must take responsibility

Here “you” is plural and refers to both Aaron and the rest of the Levites. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### so that my anger does not come on the people of Israel again

Possible meanings are 1) this represents God being extremely angry with his people. Alternate translation: “so that I do not become very angry with the people of Israel again” or 2) this represents God punishing them because of his anger. Alternate translation: “so that I do not punish the people of Israel again” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Israel, Israelites

### Translation Words - UST

- at the altar
- the Israelite people
- You are the ones who will do the sacred work
- the Israelite people

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> You must take responsibility for the holy place and for the altar so that my anger does not come on the people of Israel again.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> [You are the ones who will do the sacred work](#) inside the sacred tent and [at the altar](#). If you obey these instructions, I will not become very angry with [the Israelite people](#) again.

## Numbers 18:6

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues speaking to Aaron.

### They are a gift to you

Yahweh appointing the Levites to help Aaron is spoken of as if they were a gift that Yahweh were giving to Aaron. Alternate translation: "They are like a gift to you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### given to me

Here "given" to God represents being set apart to serve God. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "which I have set apart for myself" or "and I have set them apart for myself" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- in order that they may be your special helpers
- the descendants of
- sacred
- Israelites
- Levi
- at the

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Look, I myself have chosen your fellow members of the Levites from among the descendants of Israel. They are a gift to you, given to me to do the work connected to the tent of meeting.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> I myself have chosen [the descendants of Levi](#) from the other [Israelites in order that they may be your special helpers](#). They are like a gift that I have given you to work [at the sacred](#) tent.

## Numbers 18:7

### only you and your sons

Here “you” and “your” are singular and refer to Aaron. Other occurrences of “you” and “your” are plural and refer to Aaron and his sons. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### exercise the priesthood

“do the work of priests”

### everything inside the curtain

Being inside the curtain represents being inside the room behind the curtain. Alternate translation: “everything in the room behind the curtain” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Any foreigner who approaches must be put to death

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Any foreigner who approaches must die” or “You must put to death any foreigner who approaches” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### who approaches

What they should not approach can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “who approaches the sacred things” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- son
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

### Translation Words - UST

- the altar
- sons
- who must perform

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> But only you and your sons may exercise the priesthood regarding everything connected with the altar and everything inside the curtain. You yourselves must fulfill those responsibilities. I am giving you the priesthood as a gift. Any foreigner who approaches must be put to death.”

### UST

<sup>7</sup> But it is you and your [sons](#), who are the priests, [who must perform](#) all the details I have commanded concerning [the altar](#) and with what happens inside the Very Holy Place. I am giving to you this work of serving as priests. So anyone else who tries to do that work must be executed.”



## Numbers 18:8

### the offerings raised up to me

Here “raised up to me” represents giving or offering something to God. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the offerings that people give to me” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### I have given these offerings to you

God speaks as if he had already done this because it is a decision that he had already made. Alternate translation: “I give these offerings to you”

### as your ongoing share

A share is a portion of something that someone receives. Alternate translation: “as the portion that you will continually receive”

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Aaron
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### Translation Words - UST

- and to your sons
- You and your descendants
- these sacred offerings
- Yahweh
- Israelite people
- Aaron
- offerings

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then Yahweh said to Aaron, “Look, I have given you the duty of handling the offerings raised up to me, and all the holy offerings that the people of Israel give to me. I have given these offerings to you and your sons as your ongoing share.”

### UST

<sup>8</sup> [Yahweh](#) also said to [Aaron](#), “I myself have appointed you to take care of all the sacred [offerings](#) that the [Israelite people](#) bring to me. I have given all [these sacred offerings](#) to you [and to your sons](#). [You and your descendants](#) will get a share of these offerings permanently.”

## Numbers 18:9

### kept from the fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that you do not completely burn on the altar” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [son](#)
- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [restore](#), [restoration](#)
- [fire](#), [firebrands](#), [firepans](#), [fireplace](#), [firepot](#)
- [grain offering](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [for sins](#)
- [and...your sons](#)
- [the sacred offerings](#)
- [the](#)
- [The parts](#)
- [to](#)
- [burned](#)
- [including the flour offerings](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> This will belong to you from the most holy things that is kept from the fire. From every offering of theirs—every grain offering, every sin offering, and every guilt offering—they are set apart to you and to your sons.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> [The parts](#) of the offerings that are not completely [burned](#) on the altar belong to you. Those parts of [the sacred offerings, including the flour offerings](#), the offerings to make atonement [for sins](#) and to remove [the](#) guilt of sins, I require that they be set apart. I require that they be given to you and [to your sons](#).

## Numbers 18:10

### Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Aaron.

### Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- devour
- devour

### Translation Words - UST

- holy offering
- for those offerings because they are holy
- You are to eat it
- may eat it

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> These offerings are very holy; every male must eat it, for they are holy to you.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> You are to eat it as a most holy offering. Every male in your clan may eat it. But you must have respect for those offerings because they are holy to you.

## Numbers 18:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [clean, wash](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [temple](#)
- [devour](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and your sons](#)
- [in front of the altar](#)
- [who have performed the rituals to cause them to be acceptable to me](#)
- [that the Israelites](#)
- [your family](#)
- [are permitted to eat from these offerings](#)
- [present to me](#)

### ULT

**11** These are the offerings that will belong to you, set apart out of all their gifts of the wave offerings of the people of Israel. I have given them to you, your sons, and your daughters, as your portion forever. Everyone who is ceremonially clean in your family may eat any of these offerings.

### UST

**11** The priests lift up high the sacred offerings while they are standing [in front of the altar](#). All of those offerings [that the Israelites present to me](#) belong to you [and your sons](#) and daughters. They will always be your share. All the members of [your family who have performed the rituals to cause them to be acceptable to me are permitted to eat from these offerings](#).

## Numbers 18:12

### Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Aaron.

### the firstfruits

This refers to the first of the best oil, wine, and grain that they harvest.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- firstfruits
- oil
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- grain, grainfields

### Translation Words - UST

- to me
- first food
- best olive oil
- new wine
- and grain

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> All the best of the oil, all the best of the new wine and grain, the firstfruits that the people give to me—all these things I have given to you.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> I am also giving to you the [first food](#) that people harvest each year and bring [to me](#)—the [best olive oil](#) and [new wine and grain](#).

## Numbers 18:13

### Everyone who is clean in your family

Being acceptable to God is spoken of as if they were clean. Alternate translation: "Everyone in your family who is acceptable to me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- clean, wash
- Yahweh
- temple
- firstfruits
- devour

#### Translation Words - UST

- performed the ritual to become acceptable to me
- to me
- Anyone in your family
- All...the first crops
- to eat that food

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> The first ripe produce of all that is in their land, which they bring to me, will be yours. Everyone who is clean in your family may eat these things.

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> [All](#) of [the first crops](#) that people harvest and bring [to me](#) belong to you. [Anyone in your family](#) who has [performed the ritual to become acceptable to me](#) is permitted [to eat that food](#).

## Numbers 18:14

### Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Aaron.

### Translation Words - ULT

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- Israel, Israelites

### Translation Words - UST

- that is devoted to me
- in Israel

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Every devoted thing in Israel will be yours.

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> Everything [in Israel that is devoted to me](#), will be yours.

## Numbers 18:15

### Everything that opens the womb, all the firstborn

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: "Every firstborn male" (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Everything that opens the womb

The idiom "opens the womb" means to be the first male that a mother gives birth to. (See: [Idiom](#))

### the people must certainly buy back every firstborn son

Instead of sacrificing their firstborn sons, people had to pay the priests for their sons.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- flesh
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- Yahweh
- livestock, animals
- firstborn
- firstborn

#### Translation Words - UST

- both humans
- and...firstborn
- that may...be used for sacrifices
- that may...be used for sacrifices
- to me
- domestic animals
- and...firstborn
- their firstborn

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Everything that opens the womb, all the firstborn which the people offer to Yahweh, both of man and animal, will be yours. Nevertheless, the people must certainly buy back every firstborn son, and they must buy back the firstborn male of unclean animals.

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> The firstborn males, [both humans](#) and [domestic animals](#), that are offered [to me](#), will be yours. But people must buy back [their firstborn](#) sons and the [firstborn](#) animals [that may](#) not [be used for sacrifices](#).



## Numbers 18:16

### Those that are to be bought back by the people must be bought back after becoming one month old

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The people must buy them back when they become one month old” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Those that are to be bought back

Most likely this refers only to firstborn humans that must be bought back and not to firstborn unclean animals.

### five shekels...which equals twenty gerahs

If it is necessary to use modern weight units, here are two ways of doing it. Alternate translation: “five pieces of silver...each of which equals ten grams” or “fifty grams of silver, using the standard weights that are used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### five shekels

A shekel is a unit of weight. What was weighed can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “five shekels of silver” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. It weighed twenty gerahs, which was about 11 grams. (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- silver

### Translation Words - UST

- that they
- sacred tent
- They must...when they are one month old
- The price

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> Those that are to be bought back by the people must be bought back after becoming one month old. Then the people may buy them back, for the price of five shekels, by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel, which equals twenty gerahs.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> [They must](#) buy them back [when they are one month old](#). [The price that they](#) must pay for each one is five pieces of silver. They must weigh the silver on the scales that are in the [sacred tent](#).

## Numbers 18:17

### Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Aaron.

### You must sprinkle their blood

That he must kill the animals first can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "You must kill them and sprinkle their blood" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### made by fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that you make by fire" or "that you burn with fire on the altar" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### an aroma pleasing to Yahweh

The Lord's pleasure with the aroma represents his pleasure with the person who burns the offering. Alternate translation: "and Yahweh will be pleased with you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- blood
- Yahweh
- firstborn
- firstborn
- firstborn

### Translation Words - UST

- the altar to be
- They are holy and I require you to set them apart for me
- permit you to buy back
- blood on the altar
- to me
- cattle
- the firstborn
- or

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> But the firstborn of a cow, or the firstborn of a sheep, or the firstborn of a goat—you must not buy back these animals; they are set apart to me. You must sprinkle their blood on the altar and burn their fat as an offering made by fire, an aroma pleasing to Yahweh.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> I do not [permit you to buy back the firstborn cattle](#) or sheep [or](#) goats. [They are holy and I require you to set them apart for me.](#) Slaughter them and sprinkle their [blood on the altar](#). Then completely burn the fat of those animals on [the altar to be](#) an offering to me. The smell as they burn will be very pleasing [to me](#).

## Numbers 18:18

### the raised breast and the right thigh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the breast and the right thigh that you lift up as a gift to me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

**18** Their meat will be yours. Like the raised breast and the right thigh, their meat will be yours.

#### UST

**18** The meat from those offerings will be yours, just like the breast and right thigh of animals that are presented to me to restore fellowship with me, as the priest lifts them up high in front of the altar, are yours.

## Numbers 18:19

### Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Aaron.

### I have given to you

God speaks as if he had already done this because it is a decision that he had already made. Alternate translation: "I give to you"

### as a continual share

A share is a portion of something that someone receives. Alternate translation: "as the portion that you will continually receive"

### an everlasting covenant of salt...a binding covenant forever

The two phrases refer to the same thing. Together they emphasize that the covenant will endure forever. Alternate translation: "an agreement forever" (See: [Parallelism](#))

### an everlasting covenant of salt

"a covenant made with salt." Salt represented permanence and was used in offerings and covenant meals. Alternate translation: "a permanent covenant" or "an everlasting covenant" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- covenant
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### Translation Words - UST

- your sons
- daughters to eat
- holy
- an agreement
- They are for
- I am also making this agreement
- the Israelite people
- present to me

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> All the holy offerings that the people of Israel present to Yahweh, I have given to you, and to your sons and to your daughters with you, as a continual share. It is an everlasting covenant of salt, a binding covenant forever, before Yahweh for both you and your descendants with you."

### UST

<sup>19</sup> Anything that [the Israelite people present to me](#) as [holy](#) gifts, I am giving to you. [They are for](#) you and [your sons](#) and [daughters to eat](#). They will always be your share. This is an agreement that I am making with you, [an agreement](#) that will last forever. [I am also making this agreement](#) with your descendants."

## Numbers 18:20

### You will have no inheritance in the people's land

God speaks of the land that the other people will possess as if they will inherit it. Alternate translation: "You will not possess any of the people's land" or "You will not receive any of the land that the Israelites will possess" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I am your share and inheritance

God speaks of the great honor that Aaron and his descendants will have by serving him as priests as if God were something that they will inherit. Alternate translation: "Instead, I am what you will have" or "Instead, I will allow you to serve me and I will provide for you through that service" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Aaron

### Translation Words - UST

- receive
- am what
- the other
- Yahweh
- Israelite people
- to Aaron, "You priests

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Yahweh said to Aaron, "You will have no inheritance in the people's land, nor will you have any share of property among the people. I am your share and inheritance among the people of Israel.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> [Yahweh](#) also said [to Aaron](#), "[You priests](#) will not [receive](#) any of the land or the property like [the other Israelite people](#) will receive. I [am what](#) you will receive.

## Numbers 18:21

### Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Aaron.

### look, I have given

The word “look” here adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: “indeed, I have given”

### as their inheritance

God speaks of what Aaron and his descendants will receive as if they will inherit it. Alternate translation: “as their portion of what I give to all Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- feast, feasting
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- to you descendants
- When the Israelite
- of Levi
- at the
- people

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> To the descendants of Levi, look, I have given all the tithes in Israel as their inheritance in return for the service that they provide in working at the tent of meeting.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> [When the Israelite people](#) bring to me a tenth of all the crops and of their newborn animals, I will give that [to you descendants of Levi](#). That will be your payment for the work you do [at the](#) sacred tent.

## Numbers 18:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- feast, feasting
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### Translation Words - UST

- The other Israelites
- The other Israelites
- If they go near it, I will consider that their doing that is a sin
- they will die

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> From now on the people of Israel must not come near the tent of meeting, or they will be responsible for this sin and die.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> The other Israelites must not go near that tent. If they go near it, I will consider that their doing that is a sin, and they will die for committing that sin.

## Numbers 18:23

### Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Aaron.

### Among the people of Israel they must have no inheritance

God speaks of the land that the other people of Israel will possess as if they will inherit it. The Levites would not receive any of the land. Alternate translation: "they must not have any of the land that the other people of Israel receive" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- iniquity
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- feast, feasting
- generation

### Translation Words - UST

- receive
- any land to own
- You descendants of Levi
- if anything bad
- all the other Israelite people
- Only the descendants of Levi
- at the
- that will never be changed

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> The Levites must do the work connected to the tent of meeting. They will be responsible for any sin regarding it. This will be a permanent law throughout your people's generations. Among the people of Israel they must have no inheritance.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> [Only the descendants of Levi](#) are permitted to work [at the](#) sacred tent, and they will be punished [if anything bad](#) happens to it. That is a law [that will never be changed](#). [You descendants of Levi](#) will not [receive any land to own](#) among [all the other Israelite people](#).



## Numbers 18:24

### as their inheritance

God speaks of what Aaron and his descendants will receive as if they will inherit it. Alternate translation: “as their portion of what I give to all Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### Translation Words - UST

- any land to own
- any land to own
- of all their crops
- the descendants of Levi
- to me
- The Israelites must present
- the descendants of Levi
- Levi
- I give to the descendants

### ULT

**24** For the tithes of the people of Israel, which they offer as a contribution to me—it is these that I have given to the Levites as their inheritance. That is why I said to them, ‘They must have no inheritance among the people of Israel.’”

### UST

**24** [The Israelites must present](#) one tenth [of all their crops](#) and animals as offerings [to me](#), and that is what [I give to the descendants](#) of [Levi](#) so they can provide for themselves. This is why I said that I will not give [the descendants of Levi any land to own](#).

## Numbers 18:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses and said,

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> [Yahweh](#) said [to Moses](#),

## Numbers 18:26

### When you receive from the people of Israel the tenth that I have given to you from them

The people of Israel would offer Yahweh a tenth of their crops and animals, and Yahweh would give that to the Levites.

### for your inheritance

God speaks of what Aaron and his descendants will receive as if they will inherit it. Alternate translation: "as your portion of what I give to all Israel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- exalt, exalted, exaltation
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### Translation Words - UST

- of all...a sacred offering
- the descendants of
- to me
- the Israelite people
- of all...a sacred offering
- Levi
- of all...a sacred offering

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> "You must speak to the Levites and say to them, 'When you receive from the people of Israel the tenth that I have given to you from them for your inheritance, you will present a contribution from it to Yahweh, a tenth of the tithe.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> "Tell this to [the descendants of Levi](#), 'When you receive one tenth of all the crops and animals from [the Israelite people](#), you must present one tenth [of all](#) that [to me](#) to be [a sacred offering](#),

## Numbers 18:27

### Your contribution must be considered by you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You must consider your contribution" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- thresh
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

#### Translation Words - UST

- and...that they produce
- present one tenth

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Your contribution must be considered by you as if it were a tenth of the grain from the threshing floor or of the production from the winepress.

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> just like the other Israelites [present one tenth](#) of the grain and wine [that they produce](#).

## Numbers 18:28

### Connecting Statement:

God continues tell Moses what he must tell the Levites.

### you must give his contribution to Aaron the priest

Here "his" refers to Yahweh. It was Yahweh's contribution in the sense that they had to give it to Yahweh. Alternate translation: "you must give Aaron the priest the contribution that you owe Yahweh"

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- from the Israelite people...will be your...must present
- sacred offering
- to me (2)
- from the Israelite people...will be your...must present
- it to Aaron
- must present to me...You
- to me (2)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> So you also must make a contribution to Yahweh from all the tithes that you receive from the people of Israel. From them you must give his contribution to Aaron the priest.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> You [must present to me](#) one tenth of all that you receive [from the Israelite people](#). That [will be your sacred offering to me](#). [You must present it to Aaron](#).

## Numbers 18:29

### that have been given to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that the people of Israel give to you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [best parts...the...you to present them to me](#)
- [best parts...the...you to present them to me](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Out of all the gifts you receive, you must make every contribution to Yahweh. You must do this from all the best and the holiest things that have been given to you.’

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> Select the [best parts](#) of the things that are given to [you to present them to me](#).’

## Numbers 18:30

### Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Moses.

### the best of it

“the best of what you have received from the people of Israel”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [thresh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [descendants of Levi](#)
- [of grain and wine as your offering to me](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Therefore you must say to them, ‘When you present the best of it, then it must be credited to the Levites as the product from the threshing floor and the winepress.

### UST

<sup>30</sup> Also, tell this to the [descendants of Levi](#), ‘When you present those best portions [of grain and wine as your offering to me](#), I will consider that those gifts are as though they came from your own grain and wine.

## Numbers 18:31

### the rest of your gifts

The “gifts” are the offerings that the Israelites give to God and that the Levites receive from them.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- devour
- feast, feasting
- house

#### Translation Words - UST

- are permitted to eat
- at the
- families

#### ULT

**31** You may eat the rest of your gifts in any place, you and your families, because it is your pay in return for your work in the tent of meeting.

#### UST

**31** You descendants of Levi and your families are permitted to eat the rest of that food, and you may eat it wherever you want to, because it is your payment for the work that you do at the sacred tent.



## Numbers 18:32

### You will not incur any guilt by eating and drinking it

"You will not be guilty when you eat and drink it"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Israel, Israelites

#### Translation Words - UST

- of the
- But you must consider those gifts to be sacred
- people bring to me

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> You will not incur any guilt by eating and drinking it, if you have presented to Yahweh the best of what you have received. But you must not profane the holy offerings of the people of Israel, or you will die."

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> If you give to the priests the best portions of what you receive, you will not be punished by me for accepting one tenth of the gifts that the people bring to me. But you must consider those gifts to be sacred. If you sin by eating those things in ways that are contrary to these regulations that I have given to you, you will be executed."

## **Numbers 19**

### **Numbers 19 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Ritually clean**

This chapter talks about being clean. Some of these rituals were required to make a priest clean in order to set them apart to serve Yahweh. Other rituals were required because they prevented people from getting sick. (See: [clean, wash](#))

## Numbers 19:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [to Aaron](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses and Aaron.  
He said,

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> [Yahweh](#) said [to Aaron](#) and [Moses](#),

## Numbers 19:2

### a statute, a law

These two words share similar meanings. Alternate translation: “a statute of the law” or “a legal statute” (See: [Doublet](#))

### bring to you

Here “you” is singular and refers to Moses.

### flaw or blemish

These two words mean basically the same thing and emphasize that this animal is to have no imperfections. (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [regulation...that](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)
- [regulation...that](#)
- [I am now giving](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)

### ULT

2 “This is a statute, a law which I am commanding you: Say to the people of Israel that they must bring to you a red heifer without flaw or blemish, and which has never carried a yoke.

### UST

2 “[I am now giving](#) to you another [regulation](#). Tell [the Israelite people](#) to bring to you one reddish brown cow [that](#) has no defects. It must be an animal that has never been used for plowing ground.

## Numbers 19:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [slaughter, slaughtered](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [someone will slaughter it](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Give the heifer to Eleazar the priest. He must bring it outside the camp, and someone must kill it in front of him.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Give it to Eleazar [the priest](#). He must take it outside the camp [and someone will slaughter it](#).

## Numbers 19:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- priest, priesthood
- feast, feasting
- face, facial

### Translation Words - UST

- the
- the sacred tent
- on the ground

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Eleazar the priest must take some of its blood with his finger and sprinkle it seven times toward the front of the tent of meeting.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> And Eleazar must dip one of his fingers in [the](#) blood and sprinkle some of it seven times [on the ground](#) near [the sacred tent](#).

## Numbers 19:5

### in his sight

“in his view” or “so he could see it”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [blood](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [its meat](#)
- [its blood](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Another priest must burn the heifer in his sight. He must burn its hide, flesh, and its blood with its dung.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> Then, while Eleazar watches, the cow must be burned completely—its hide, [its meat](#), the rest of [its blood](#), and even its dung.

## Numbers 19:6

### priest must take cedarwood

"The priest" refers to Eleazar.

### scarlet wool

"red wool"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [priest](#), [priesthood](#)
- [cedar](#), [cedarwood](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the fire](#)
- [a stick of cedar](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> The priest must take cedarwood, hyssop, and scarlet wool, and throw it all into the middle of the burning heifer.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Eliezer then must take [a stick of cedar](#) wood, a stalk of a plant named hyssop, and some scarlet yarn, and throw them into [the fire](#) where the cow is burning.



## Numbers 19:7

### Then he must wash his clothes

Here “he” refers to Eleazar the priest.

### he will remain unclean

Being unacceptable to God or unfit to do any sacred work is spoken of as not being clean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [clean, wash](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and bathe](#)
- [and bathe](#)
- [Then the priest](#)
- [he](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Then he must wash his clothes and bathe in water. Then he may come into the camp, where he will remain unclean until the evening.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> [Then the priest](#) must wash his clothes [and bathe](#). After doing that, he may return to the camp. But [he](#) will be unfit for doing any sacred work until that evening.

## Numbers 19:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [clean, wash](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bathe](#)
- [bathe](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> The one who has burned the heifer must wash his clothes in water and bathe in water. He will remain unclean until the evening.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> The man who burns the cow must also wash his clothes and [bathe](#), and he will also be unacceptable to me until that evening.

## Numbers 19:9

### Someone who is clean

Being acceptable to God and fit to do sacred work is spoken of as being clean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### These ashes must be kept

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You must keep these ashes" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### in a clean place

Being acceptable to God is spoken of as being clean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [son](#)
- [clean](#), [wash](#)
- [clean](#), [wash](#)
- [clean](#), [wash](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sin](#)
- [of the](#)
- [who has not become unacceptable to me](#)
- [in a sacred](#)
- [sin](#)
- [of Israel to use](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Someone who is clean must gather up the heifer's ashes and put them outside the camp in a clean place. These ashes must be kept for the community of the people of Israel. They will mix the ashes with water for purification from sin, since the ashes were from a sin offering.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Then someone [who has not become unacceptable to me](#) must gather up the ashes [of the](#) cow and put them [in a sacred](#) place outside the camp. The ashes must be kept there for the people [of Israel to use](#) when they mix it with water for the ritual to remove the guilt of [sin](#).

## Numbers 19:10

### He will remain unclean

Being unacceptable to God or unfit to do any sacred work is spoken of as not being clean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of](#)
- [It must be obeyed by you Israelite people](#)

### ULT

**10** The one who gathered the heifer's ashes must wash his clothes. He will remain unclean until the evening. This will be a permanent law for the people of Israel and the foreigners who stay with them.

### UST

**10** The man who gathers up the ashes [of](#) the cow must also wash his clothes, and he also will be unfit to do anymore sacred work until that evening. That is a regulation that will never be changed. [It must be obeyed by you Israelite people](#) and by any foreigners who live among you.

## Numbers 19:11

### General Information:

The ideas of “clean” and “purify” represent being acceptable to God. The ideas of “unclean,” “defile,” “impurity,” and “uncleanness” represent not being acceptable to God. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### the dead body of any man

“the dead body of any person”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [those who](#)

### ULT

**11** Whoever touches the dead body of any man will be unclean for seven days.

### UST

**11** All [those who](#) touch a corpse will be unacceptable to me for seven days.

## Numbers 19:12

### purify himself

The person would ask someone who is clean to purify him by sprinkling on him some water mixed with the cows ashes. Asking someone to purify him is spoken of as if he were to purify himself. Alternate translation: “ask someone to purify him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### if he does not purify himself the third day, then he will not be clean on the seventh day

This can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: “he will be clean on the seventh day only if he purifies himself the third day” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- pure, purify, purification
- pure, purify, purification

#### Translation Words - UST

- of that water for removing the guilt of...sin
- of that water for removing the guilt of...sin
- in order to become acceptable to me again
- in order to become acceptable to me again

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Such a person must purify himself on the third day and on the seventh day. Then he will be clean. But if he does not purify himself the third day, then he will not be clean on the seventh day.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> On the third day and on the seventh day after touching a corpse, [in order to become acceptable to me again](#), they must sprinkle on themselves some [of that water for removing the guilt of](#) their [sin](#). If they do not do that on both of those days, they will continue to be unacceptable to me.

## Numbers 19:13

### That person must be cut off

Here the phrase “be cut off” means to be disowned and sent away. See how you translated this in [Numbers 9:13](#). Alternate translation: “That person must be sent away” or “you must send that person away” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### the water for impurity was not sprinkled on him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “no one sprinkled the water for impurity on him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the water for impurity

“the water that is sprinkled on impure things to make them pure” or “the water for making things pure”

### He will remain unclean; his uncleanness will remain on him

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- heart
- clean, wash
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- cut off

### Translation Words - UST

- of sin
- those who...a corpse
- longer...was not...continue...unacceptable to me
- Yahweh's
- among the Israelite people
- They will no...be permitted to

### ULT

**13** Whoever touches a dead person, the body of a man who has died, and does not purify himself—this person defiles Yahweh's tabernacle. That person must be cut off from Israel because the water for impurity was not sprinkled on him. He will remain unclean; his uncleanness will remain on him.

### UST

**13** All [those who](#) touch [a corpse](#), and do not perform in the correct way the ritual to become acceptable to me again, defile [Yahweh's](#) sacred tent. [They will no longer be permitted to](#) live [among the Israelite people](#). The water to remove the guilt [of sin was not](#) sprinkled on them, so they [continue](#) to be [unacceptable to me](#).

## Numbers 19:14

### General Information:

The idea of “unclean” represents not being acceptable to God or fit for use. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh, the law

### Translation Words - UST

- practice that must be performed

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> This is the law for when someone dies in a tent. Everyone who goes into the tent and everyone who is already in the tent will be unclean for seven days.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> There is another [practice that must be performed](#) when someone dies inside a tent. All those who were inside that tent when that person died or who enter that tent will be unacceptable to me for seven days.



## Numbers 19:15

### Every open container with no cover becomes unclean

This can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "Open containers will remain clean only if they have covers" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

#### ULT

**15** Every open container with no cover becomes unclean.

#### UST

**15** Any jars that are inside that tent that are not covered are not permitted to be used.

## Numbers 19:16

### someone who has been killed with a sword

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone whom someone else has killed with a sword” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- sword, swordsmen
- face, facial

#### Translation Words - UST

- murdered, or who
- the

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> Similarly, anyone outside a tent who touches someone who has been killed with a sword, any other dead body, a human bone, or a grave—that person will be unclean for seven days.

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> If someone who is out in a field touches [the](#) corpse of someone who was [murdered, or who](#) died from natural causes, or if someone touches a bone from some human or touches a grave, that person will be unacceptable to me for seven days.

## Numbers 19:17

### General Information:

The idea of “unclean” represents not being acceptable to God or fit for use. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### General Information:

The ideas of “clean” and “purify” here represent being acceptable to God. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Then some fresh water](#)

### ULT

**17** Do this for the unclean person: Take some ashes from the burnt sin offering and mix them in a jar with fresh water.

### UST

**17** For someone like that to become acceptable to me again, some of the ashes from the cow that was burned must be taken and put in a jar. [Then some fresh water](#) must be poured over the ashes.

## Numbers 19:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [clean, wash](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Then that person must sprinkle](#)

#### ULT

**18** Someone who is clean must then take hyssop, dip it in the water, and sprinkle it on the tent, on all the containers inside the tent, on the persons who were there, and on anyone who touched the bone, the one who was killed, the one who died, or the grave.

#### UST

**18** Then someone who has not become unacceptable to me must take a stalk of a plant named hyssop and dip it into the water. [Then that person must sprinkle](#) some of the water on the tent where that person died, on the things that are in the tent, and on the people who were in the tent. He must also sprinkle some of that water on any person who touched a human bone or who touched a person who had been killed, or who touched a person who died of natural causes, or who touched a grave.

## Numbers 19:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- clean, wash
- pure, purify, purification

### Translation Words - UST

- day after that, the person who is acceptable to me
- and bathe
- have become

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> On the third day and on the seventh day, the clean person must sprinkle the unclean person. On the seventh day the unclean person must purify himself. He must wash his clothes and bathe in water. At evening he will become clean.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> On the third day and on the seventh day after that, the person who is acceptable to me must sprinkle some of that water on those who have become unacceptable to me. On the seventh day, the people who are performing that ritual to become acceptable to me again must wash their clothes and bathe. If they do that, on that evening they will become acceptable to me again.

## Numbers 19:20

### General Information:

The ideas of “clean” and “purify” represent being acceptable to God and making something acceptable to God. The ideas of “unclean,” “defile,” and “impurity,” represent not being acceptable to God, making something unacceptable to God, and the state of being unacceptable to God. (See: [Metaphor](#)) (See: [Metaphor](#))

### that person will be cut off

Here the phrase “be cut off” means to be disowned and sent away. See how you translated this in [Numbers 9:13](#). Alternate translation: “That person must be sent away” or “you must send that person away” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### The water for impurity has not been sprinkled on him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “No one has sprinkled the water for impurity on him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [clean](#), [wash](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [congregation](#), [meeting](#)
- [cut off](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of their sins](#)
- [They did not sprinkle](#)
- [become acceptable to me again by doing this](#)
- [people](#)
- [they will no longer](#)

### ULT

**20** But anyone who remains unclean, who refuses to purify himself—that person will be cut off from the community, because he has defiled Yahweh’s sanctuary. The water for impurity has not been sprinkled on him; he remains unclean.

### UST

**20** If those who have become unacceptable to me do not [become acceptable to me again by doing this](#), [they will no longer](#) be permitted to live among to the Israelite [people](#), because they have defiled my sacred tent. [They did not sprinkle](#) on themselves the water that removes the guilt [of their sins](#), so they remain unacceptable to me.

## Numbers 19:21

### the water for impurity

“the water that is sprinkled on impure things to make them pure” or “the water for making things pure.” See how you translated this in [Numbers 19:13](#)

#### ULT

**21** This will be an ongoing law concerning these situations. The one who sprinkles the water for impurity must wash his clothes. The one who touches the water for impurity will become unclean until evening.

#### UST

**21** That is a law for the Israelite people that will never be changed. Those who sprinkle that water on themselves must then wash their clothes. And anyone who touches that water which removes guilt for sins will remain unacceptable to God until that evening.

## Numbers 19:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**22** Whatever the unclean person touches will become unclean. The person who touches it will become unclean until evening."

### UST

**22** Anything and any person that someone who has become unacceptable to me has touched will remain unacceptable to me until that evening."



## Numbers 20

### Numbers 20 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Moses' sin

God told Moses to command water to come out of a rock for the people who were complaining that they had no water. Moses became angry with the people and hit the rock twice. God told him that he and Aaron would not be allowed to go into Canaan because he disobeyed by hitting the rock instead of just speaking to it. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

**“It would have been better if we had died when our fellow Israelites died in front of Yahweh”**

It is possible that this statement should be taken as hyperbole, but it does not have to be taken this way. The translator should probably avoid treating this as hyperbole. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Wilderness of Sin

Sin is the name of a place in this chapter. It is not a place that is known for its sin. The name is not related to the meaning of the word “sin.” (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

## Numbers 20:1

### the wilderness of Zin

The word “Zin” here is the Hebrew name of the wilderness. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

### the first month

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God rescued the Israelites from the Egyptians. The first month is during the last part of March and the first part of April on the Western calendar. (See: [Hebrew Months](#))

### was buried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they buried her” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### Translation Words - UST

- of the next year
- Israelite people traveled
- While they
- died and

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> So the people of Israel, the whole community, went into the wilderness of Zin in the first month; they stayed at Kadesh. There Miriam died and was buried.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> In the first month [of the next year](#), the [Israelite people traveled](#) to the wilderness of Zin and camped near Kadesh. [While they](#) were there, Moses' sister Miriam [died and](#) was buried there.

## Numbers 20:2

### they assembled

Here “they” refers to the community.

### assembled together

“came as a mob”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> There was no water for the community, so they assembled together against Moses and Aaron.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> There was no water for the people to drink there, so they came to [Aaron and Moses](#).

## Numbers 20:3

### in front of Yahweh

This represents being in front of Yahweh's tent. (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [rebuke](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [when our fellow Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh's sacred tent](#)
- [They complained](#)
- [They complained](#)
- [They complained](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> The people complained against Moses. They said, "It would have been better if we had died when our fellow Israelites died in front of Yahweh!"

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> [They complained](#) and said, "We wish that we had died in front of [Yahweh's sacred tent when our fellow Israelites](#) died!"

## Numbers 20:4

### Connecting Statement:

The people of Israel continue to complain to Moses and Aaron.

### Why have you brought Yahweh's community into this wilderness to die here, we and our animals?

The people use this question in order to complain against Moses and Aaron. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not have brought Yahweh's community into this wilderness to die here, we and our animals." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh's
- people
- die

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Why have you brought Yahweh's community into this wilderness to die here, we and our animals?

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Did you bring us, who are [Yahweh's people](#), into this desert to [die](#) along with our livestock?

## Numbers 20:5

### Why did you make us come up out of Egypt to bring us to this horrible place?

The people use this question in order to complain against Moses and Aaron. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not have made us leave Egypt to bring us to this horrible place." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Egypt, Egyptian
- vine
- seed, semen
- fig

#### Translation Words - UST

- miserable
- from Egypt
- grapes
- no...and no...here
- figs

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Why did you make us come up out of Egypt to bring us to this horrible place? Here there is no seed, figs, vines, or pomegranates, and there is no water to drink."

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> Why did you bring us [from Egypt](#) to this [miserable](#) place? There is no grain, there are no [figs](#), [no grapes](#), [and no](#) pomegranates [here](#). And there is no water for us to drink!"

## Numbers 20:6

### lay facedown

This indicates that Moses and Aaron are humbling themselves before God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- glory, glorious, glorify
- Yahweh
- Moses
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- feast, feasting
- face, facial
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

#### Translation Words - UST

- his bright glory
- Just then Yahweh
- Moses
- the people and
- of the sacred
- with
- and prostrated

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> So Moses and Aaron went away from in front of the assembly. They went to the entrance of the tent of meeting and lay facedown. There Yahweh's brilliant glory appeared to them.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> [Moses](#) and Aaron turned away from [the people and](#) went to the entrance [of the sacred](#) tent [and prostrated](#) themselves on the ground. [Just then](#) [Yahweh](#) appeared to them [with his bright glory](#).

## Numbers 20:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [When Yahweh](#)
- [he](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses and said,

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> [When Yahweh](#) appeared in glory, [he](#) said,



## Numbers 20:8

### before their eyes

Here the people are represented by their “eyes” to emphasize what they see. Alternate translation: “while they watch you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [brother](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [out](#)
- [While the people are watching](#)

### ULT

**8** “Take the staff and assemble the community, you, and Aaron your brother. Speak to the rock before their eyes, and command it to flow with water. You will produce water for them out of that rock, and you must give it to the community and their cattle to drink.”

### UST

**8** “You and Aaron must take Aaron’s walking stick with you and gather all the people together. [While the people are watching](#), command that large rock over there to pour [out](#) water. Water for the people will flow from it. All they and all their livestock will have enough water to drink.”

## Numbers 20:9

### from before Yahweh

This represents Yahweh's tent. Alternate translation: "from Yahweh's tent" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [told him to do](#)
- [what Yahweh](#)
- [So Moses did](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Moses took the staff from before Yahweh, as Yahweh had commanded him to do.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> [So Moses did what Yahweh told him to do](#). He took Aaron's walking stick from the place in the sacred tent where it was kept.

## Numbers 20:10

### Must we bring water out of this rock for you?

Moses asks this question out of frustration to rebuke the people for complaining. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You complain that there is no water. Well, we will make water come out of this rock." or "You would not be happy even if we caused water to come out of this rock. But I will do it anyway." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Must we bring

Here "we" refers to Moses and Aaron and may include Yahweh, but does not include the people. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Then Moses](#)
- [all the people](#)
- [at the rock](#)
- [bring to you](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Then Moses and Aaron gathered the assembly together before the rock. Moses said to them, "Listen now, you rebels. Must we bring water out of this rock for you?"

### UST

<sup>10</sup> [Then Moses](#) and Aaron summoned [all the people](#) to gather [at the rock](#). Then Moses shouted to them, "All you rebellious people, listen! Is it necessary for us to [bring to you](#) water from this rock?"

## Numbers 20:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [exalt](#), [exalted](#), [exaltation](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [And water gushed out](#)
- [raised](#)
- [Then Moses](#)
- [his hand](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Then Moses raised his hand and struck the rock twice with his staff, and much water came out. The community drank, and their cattle drank.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> [Then Moses raised his hand](#) and instead of speaking to the rock, he struck the rock two times with the walking stick. [And water gushed out](#). So all the people and their livestock drank all the water that they wanted.

## Numbers 20:12

### Because you did not trust me or honor me as holy in the eyes of the people of Israel

How Moses showed that he did not trust and honor God can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Because you did not trust me or honor me as holy in the eyes of the people of Israel, but struck the rock instead of speaking to it as I told you" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### in the eyes of the people of Israel

Here the people are represented by their "eyes" to emphasize what they see. Alternate translation: "while the people of Israel were watching you" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- set apart
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- Moses
- Aaron
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- people of
- or honor me
- But Yahweh
- Israel
- You did not trust me
- Moses
- Aaron
- and...not lead them
- into the land

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron, "Because you did not trust me or honor me as holy in the eyes of the people of Israel, you will not bring this assembly into the land I have given them."

### UST

<sup>12</sup> [But Yahweh](#) said to [Aaron](#) and [Moses](#), "[You did not trust me or honor me](#) before the [people of Israel](#), and so you will [not lead them into the land](#) I have given to them!"

## Numbers 20:13

### This place was called

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People called this place" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [means...people](#)
- [holiness](#)
- [argued against Yahweh, and there he showed his honor](#)
- [because there the Israelite](#)

#### ULT

**13** This place was called the waters of Meribah because the people of Israel had quarreled with Yahweh there, and he showed himself to them as holy.

#### UST

**13** Later this place was called the Meribah, which [means](#) 'arguing', [because there the Israelite people argued against Yahweh, and there he showed his honor](#) and [holiness](#) to them by giving them water.

## Numbers 20:14

### Your brother Israel

Moses uses this phrase to emphasize that the Israelites and the Edomites are related because their ancestors, Jacob and Esau, were brothers.

### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- messenger
- trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- Your relatives
- the Israelite people
- While the people were at...Moses
- messengers
- troubles
- the king of
- to tell him...You know the

### ULT

**14** Moses sent messengers from Kadesh to the king of Edom: Your brother Israel says this: "You know all the difficulties that have happened to us.

### UST

**14** While the people were at Kadesh, Moses sent messengers to the king of Edom to tell him this, "Your relatives, the Israelite people, are sending you this message. You know the many troubles that have happened to us.

## Numbers 20:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to Egypt](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [You know that our ancestors](#)
- [They suffered because the rulers](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> You know that our ancestors went down to Egypt and lived in Egypt a long time. The Egyptians treated us harshly and also our ancestors.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> [You know that our ancestors](#) went down [to Egypt](#). You know that they stayed there for many years. [They suffered because the rulers of Egypt](#) caused them to become their slaves and to work very hard.



## Numbers 20:16

### When we called out to Yahweh

“When we prayed to Yahweh begging him to help us”

### he heard our voice

Here “voice” represents their crying or what they said to him.  
Alternate translation: “he heard our cry” or “he heard what we asked for” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Look

The word “look” here shows that they have stopped speaking about the past and are now speaking about their present situation.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [messenger](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [who brought them](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [out of Egypt](#)
- [an angel](#)

### ULT

**16** When we called out to Yahweh, he heard our voice and sent an angel and brought us out of Egypt. Look, we are in Kadesh, a city on the border of your land.

### UST

**16** But when they called out to [Yahweh](#), he heard them and sent [an angel who brought them out of Egypt](#). Now we have set up our tents here at Kadesh, a town on the border of your land.

## Numbers 20:17

### Connecting Statement:

The messengers continue speaking to the king of Edom.

### We will not turn aside to the right hand or to the left

Here “turn aside” represents leaving the road. Alternate translation: “We will not leave the road in any direction” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the king's highway

This is the main road that connects Damascus in the north to the Gulf of Aqabah in the south.

### Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- As we travel, we will stay on the king's
- to travel

### ULT

**17** I am asking you to let us pass through your land. We will not pass through field or vineyard, nor will we drink the water in your wells. We will go along the king's highway. We will not turn aside to the right hand or to the left until we have passed your border.”

### UST

**17** Please allow us [to travel](#) through your country. We will be careful to not walk through your fields and your vineyards. We will not even drink water from your wells. [As we travel, we will stay on the king's](#) highway, the main road that goes from the south to the north, and we will not leave that road until we have crossed the border of your country in the north.”

## Numbers 20:18

### You may not pass...to attack you

Here “you” is singular and refers to Moses, who represents the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “Your people may not pass...to attack them” (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

### I will come with the sword

Here the sword represents the king's army. Alternate translation: “I will send my army” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [sword](#), [swordsmen](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [I...to attack you](#)
- [Stay out of my country](#)

#### ULT

**18** But the king of Edom replied to him, “You may not pass through here. If you do, I will come with the sword to attack you.”

#### UST

**18** But the king of Edom refused. He replied, “[Stay out of my country!](#) If you try to enter it, I will send my army [to attack you!](#)”

## Numbers 20:19

### the people of Israel

This phrase refers to the Israelite messengers.

### walk through on foot

This idiom means that they would simply travel through the area by walking. They would not come in chariots to attack the people of Edom. (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [we and any of our](#)
- [The Israelite messengers](#)

### ULT

**19** Then the people of Israel said to him, "We will go along the highway. If we or our livestock drink your water, we will pay for it. Just let us walk through on foot, without doing anything else."

### UST

**19** [The Israelite messengers](#) replied, "If we travel through your country, we will stay on the main road. If [we and any of our](#) livestock drink any of your water, we will pay for it. We want only to travel through your country. We do not want anything else."

## Numbers 20:20

### the king of Edom came against Israel with a strong hand with many soldiers

Here the hand represents the king's powerful army. Alternate translation: "the king of Edom sent a strong army of many soldiers to attack Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- hand
- people, people group,
- strength, strengthen, strong

#### Translation Words - UST

- No! Stay out of our country
- from entering his country
- his army to prevent the Israelites
- from entering his country

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> But the king of Edom replied, "You may not pass through." So the king of Edom came against Israel with a strong hand with many soldiers.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> But the king replied, "[No! Stay out of our country!](#) We will not allow you to travel through our land!" Then he sent the strongest soldiers in [his army to prevent the Israelites from entering his country.](#)

## Numbers 20:21

### cross over their border

Here “their” refers to the Edomites.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites

### Translation Words - UST

- the Israelites to travel
- the Israelites turned and traveled

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> The king of Edom refused to allow Israel to cross over their border. Because of this, Israel turned away from the land of Edom.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> So, because the king of Edom refused to allow [the Israelites to travel](#) through his country, [the Israelites turned and traveled](#) a different way.

## Numbers 20:22

### The people of Israel, the whole community

The phrase “the whole community” emphasizes that every person who was a part of “the people of Israel” was present, without exception. (See: [Doublet](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [The Israelite people](#)
- [The Israelite people](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> So the people journeyed from Kadesh. The people of Israel, the whole community, came to Mount Hor.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> [The Israelite people](#) left Kadesh. They went to Mount Hor,

## Numbers 20:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Edom](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses and Aaron at Mount Hor, on Edom's border. He said,

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> which is at the border of [Edom](#). While they were there, [Yahweh](#) said to [Aaron](#) and [Moses](#),



## Numbers 20:24

### Aaron must be gathered to his people

This is a gentle way to say that Aaron must die. It means that it is time for Aaron to die and for his spirit to go to the place where his ancestors are. Alternate translation: "Aaron must die" (See: [Euphemism](#))

### rebelled against my word

"refused to do what I said"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Aaron
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### Translation Words - UST

- to you Israelites
- to you Israelites
- It is time for Aaron
- die
- disobeyed
- the land that

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> "Aaron must be gathered to his people, for he will not enter the land that I have given to the people of Israel. This is because you both rebelled against my word at the waters of Meribah.

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> "It is time for Aaron to die. He will not enter the land that I am giving to you Israelites, because the two of you disobeyed me when I told you to speak to the rock to cause the water to flow at Meribah.

## Numbers 20:25

### Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Moses.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Aaron

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Aaron

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Take Aaron and Eleazar his son, and bring them up to Mount Hor.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> Now you, Moses, take [Aaron](#) and his [son](#) Eleazar up on Mount Hor.

## Numbers 20:26

### must die and be gathered to his people

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. They mean that it is time for Aaron to die and for his spirit to go to the place where his ancestors are. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Euphemism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [his son](#)
- [Aaron's](#)
- [will die](#)
- [will die](#)

#### ULT

**26** Take Aaron's priestly garments off him and put them on Eleazar his son. Aaron must die and be gathered to his people there."

#### UST

**26** There you must remove [Aaron's](#) clothes that he wears when he does the works of a priest, and put them on [his son](#), Eleazar. Aaron [will die](#) up there."

## Numbers 20:27

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [commanded](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [So Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Moses did as Yahweh commanded. They went up Mount Hor in the sight of all the community.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> [So Moses](#) did what [Yahweh](#) [commanded](#). The three of them climbed up Mount Hor, while all the Israelite people watched.

## Numbers 20:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Moses
- Moses
- Aaron
- Aaron
- head
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### Translation Words - UST

- put them on
- Moses took
- and Moses went back
- that Aaron wore
- Then Aaron
- on the top
- died

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Moses took Aaron's priestly garments off him and put them on Eleazar his son. Aaron died there on the top of the mountain. Then Moses and Eleazar came down.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> At the top of the mountain, [Moses took](#) off the clothes [that Aaron wore](#) while he did the work of a priest and [put them on](#) Eleazar. [Then Aaron died](#) there [on the top](#) of the mountain, and Eleazar [and Moses went back](#) down.

## Numbers 20:29

### thirty days

"30 days" (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [house](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Israelite](#)
- [Aaron had](#)
- [for him](#)
- [they](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> When all the community saw that Aaron was dead, the entire nation wept for Aaron for thirty days.

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> When the [Israelite](#) people realized that [Aaron had](#) died, [they](#) all mourned [for him](#) for thirty days.

## Numbers 21

### Numbers 21 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 21:14-15, 17-18, 27-30.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Ungrateful

The Israelites said, "Why have you brought us up out of Egypt to die in the wilderness? There is no bread, no water, and we hate this miserable food." After all Yahweh had done, they were very ungrateful. This showed their lack of faith and trust in Yahweh. (See: [faith](#) and [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

## Numbers 21:1

### he fought against Israel

Here “he fought” means that his army fought. Alternate translation: “his army fought against Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [Negev](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [that the Israelites were approaching](#)
- [the Israelites and](#)
- [the Canaanites](#)
- [southern Judean wilderness...So his army attacked](#)
- [The king of the](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> When the Canaanite king of Arad, who lived in the Negev, heard that Israel was traveling by the road to Atharim, he fought against Israel and took some of them captive.

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> [The king of the](#) city of Arad lived in the area where [the Canaanites](#) lived, in the [southern Judean wilderness](#). He heard a report [that the Israelites were approaching](#) on the road to Atharim village. [So his army attacked the Israelites and](#) captured some of them.



## Numbers 21:2

### Israel vowed

This refers to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "The people of Israel vowed" or "The Israelites made a vow" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [destroy, destruction, annihilate](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israelites](#)
- [will help us](#)
- [these people](#)
- [completely destroy](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Israel vowed to Yahweh and said, "If you give us victory over these people, then we will completely destroy their cities."

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Then the [Israelites](#) declared this solemnly, "[Yahweh](#), if you [will help us](#) to defeat [these people](#), we will [completely destroy](#) all their towns."

## Numbers 21:3

### listened to Israel's voice

Here "listen" means that Yahweh did as they asked. Alternate translation: "did what Israel asked" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Israel's voice

Here "voice" is a metonym that refers to their request. Alternate translation: "what Israel asked" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### They completely destroyed them and their cities

"The people of Israel completely destroyed the Canaanite army and their cities"

### That place was called Hormah

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They called that place Hormah" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [voice](#)
- [destroy, destruction, annihilate](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [has been called](#)
- [The Israelite soldiers](#)
- [Canaan people group](#)
- [what they requested](#)
- [and destroyed](#)
- [has been called](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Yahweh listened to Israel's voice and he gave them victory over the Canaanites. They completely destroyed them and their cities. That place was called Hormah.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> [Yahweh](#) heard [what they requested](#), and he enabled them to defeat the army of this [Canaan people group](#). [The Israelite soldiers](#) killed all the people [and destroyed](#) their towns. Ever since that time, that place [has been called](#) Hormah which means "destruction."

## Numbers 21:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- the people became
- the people became
- in order to go around the land

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> They traveled from Mount Hor by the road to the Sea of Reeds to go around the land of Edom. The people became very discouraged on the way.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Then the Israelites left Mount Hor and traveled on the road toward the Sea of Reeds, in order to go around the land of Edom. But the people became impatient along the way,

## Numbers 21:5

### Why have you brought us up out of Egypt to die in the wilderness?

The people used this question in order to rebuke Moses. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “You should not made us leave Egypt to die in the wilderness!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Egypt, Egyptian
- desert, wilderness
- bread
- people, people group,
- die, dead, deadly, death,

#### Translation Words - UST

- began to grumble against God
- Egypt
- in this desert
- food
- and they
- to die here

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> The people spoke against God and Moses: “Why have you brought us up out of Egypt to die in the wilderness? There is no bread, no water, and we hate this miserable food.”

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> [and they began to grumble against God](#) and against Moses. They said, “Why have you brought us out of [Egypt to die here in this desert](#)? There is nothing to eat here, and nothing to drink. And we detest this lousy manna [food](#)!”

## Numbers 21:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- So
- among them
- the people...died
- the people...died
- the people...died

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Then Yahweh sent poisonous snakes among the people. The snakes bit the people; many people died.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> So Yahweh sent poisonous snakes among them. Many of the people were bitten by the snakes and died.

## Numbers 21:7

### we have spoken against Yahweh and you

"we have said bad things about Yahweh and you"

### we have spoken...from us

The words "we" and "us" here refer to the people but not to Moses.  
(See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- Moses
- Moses
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

#### Translation Words - UST

- We now know that we have sinned
- against Yahweh and
- Yahweh, asking
- So Moses prayed for the people
- Moses
- So Moses prayed for the people
- people
- So Moses prayed for the people

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> The people came to Moses and said, "We have sinned because we have spoken against Yahweh and you. Pray to Yahweh for him to take the snakes away from us." So Moses prayed for the people.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Then the [people](#) came to [Moses](#) and cried out, saying, "[We now know that we have sinned against Yahweh and](#) against you. Pray to [Yahweh, asking](#) that he will take away the snakes!" [So Moses prayed for the people.](#)

## Numbers 21:8

### Make a snake

Since it is impossible for Moses to make a real snake, it is implied that he was to make a model of a snake. This implied information can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Make a model of a snake" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### everyone who is bitten

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "everyone whom a snake bites" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and attach it](#)
- [Then Yahweh](#)
- [him](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, "Make a snake and attach it to a pole. It will happen that everyone who is bitten will survive, if he looks at it."

### UST

<sup>8</sup> [Then Yahweh](#) told [him](#), "Make a model of a poisonous snake, [and attach it](#) to the top of a pole. If those who are bitten by the snakes look at that model, they will recover."

## Numbers 21:9

### a bronze snake

"a snake out of bronze"

### if he looked at the bronze snake, he survived

Here "he" refers to "any person" who was bitten by a snake.

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Moses
- bronze
- bronze

### Translation Words - UST

- attached it
- So Moses
- from bronze
- to...looked at the bronze snake, they recovered

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> So Moses made a bronze snake and attached it to a pole. When a snake bit any person, if he looked at the bronze snake, he survived.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> So Moses made a snake from bronze and attached it to the top of a pole. Then, when those who had been bitten by a snake looked at the bronze snake, they recovered!



## Numbers 21:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Then](#)
- [the Israelites](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Then the people of Israel traveled on and camped at Oboth.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> [Then the Israelites](#) traveled to Oboth and camped there.

## Numbers 21:11

### that faces Moab

Here “faces” is an idiom that means “is across from” or “is next to.”  
Alternate translation: “that is next to Moab” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moab](#), [Moabite](#)
- [desert](#), [wilderness](#)
- [face](#), [facial](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of Moab](#)
- [the wilderness](#)
- [in](#)

### ULT

**11** They traveled from Oboth and camped at Iye Abarim in the wilderness that faces Moab toward the east.

### UST

**11** Then they left Oboth and went to Iye Abarim [in the wilderness](#) on the eastern border [of Moab](#).

## Numbers 21:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> From there they traveled on and camped in the Valley of Zered.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> From there they traveled to the valley where the Zered riverbed is, and camped there.

## Numbers 21:13

### forms the border of Moab, between Moab and the Amorites

This means that the two peoples lived on different sides of the river, which was a boundary between them. The Moabite people lived south of the river and the Amorites lived on the north.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Moab, Moabite
- Moab, Moabite
- Amorite
- Amorite
- desert, wilderness

#### Translation Words - UST

- Moab and where
- Moab and where
- the Amorites live
- the Amorites live
- in the wilderness

#### ULT

**13** From there they traveled on and camped on the other side of the Arnon River, which is in the wilderness that extends from the border of the Amorites. The Arnon River forms the border of Moab, between Moab and the Amorites.

#### UST

**13** Then they traveled to the north side of the Arnon River. That area is [in the wilderness](#) next to the land where [the Amorites live](#). The Arnon River is the boundary between [Moab and where the Amorites live](#).

## Numbers 21:14

### Waheb in Suphah

These are both names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> That is why it says in the scroll of the Wars of Yahweh, "...Waheb in Suphah, and the valleys of the Arnon,

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> That is why it is written down in the book of the wars [of Yahweh](#), "Waheb in Suphah, and the ravines there, and the Arnon River

## Numbers 21:15

**the slope of the valleys that lead toward the town of Ar and lie along the border of Moab**

“the valleys that go downhill to the town of Ar and lie along the border of Moab”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moab](#), [Moabite](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of Moab](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> the slope of the valleys that lead toward the town of Ar and lie along the border of Moab.”

### UST

<sup>15</sup> and the ravines there, which extend as far as Ar village on the border [of Moab](#).”

## Numbers 21:16

### to Beer, the well

This can be stated as two sentences. Alternate translation: "to Beer. There was a well there"

### where Yahweh said to Moses, "Gather the people together for me to give them water."

This can be stated as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "where Yahweh told Moses to gather the people together for him to give them water" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Gather the people
- together

### ULT

**16** From there they traveled to Beer, the well where Yahweh said to Moses, "Gather the people together for me to give them water."

### UST

**16** From there the Israelites traveled to Beer. There was a well there where [Yahweh](#) previously had said to Moses, "[Gather the people together](#), and I will give them water."

## Numbers 21:17

### Spring up, well

Here “well” represents the water in the well. The Israelites are speaking to the water as if it were a person who could hear them, and they are asking for it to fill the well. Alternate translation: “Water, fill up the well” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Personification](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [There the Israelites](#)

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Then Israel sang this song: “Spring up, well! Sing about it,

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> [There the Israelites](#) sang this song: “O well, give us water! Sing about this well!



## Numbers 21:18

### the well that our leaders dug, the well the nobles of the people dug

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize the role of the leaders in digging the well. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### with the scepter and their staffs

A scepter was carried by those with authority, and the staff was carried by everyone. Neither of these are digging tools. These two items emphasize that they were not too proud to use any means available. Alternate translation: “using even their scepter and staffs” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

### Translation Words - UST

- with their...scepters...Israelites
- which our leaders

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> about the well that our leaders dug, the well the nobles of the people dug, with the scepter and their staffs.” Then from the wilderness they traveled to Mattanah.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> Sing about this well [which our leaders](#) dug; they dug out the dirt [with their](#) royal [scepters](#) and their walking sticks.” Then the [Israelites](#) left that wilderness and went through Mattanah.

## Numbers 21:19

### Nahaliel...Bamoth

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### ULT

**19** From Mattanah they traveled to Nahaliel, and from Nahaliel to Bamoth,

#### UST

**19** The Israelites also went through Nahaliel, and Bamoth village.

## Numbers 21:20

### Mount Pisgah

This is the name of a mountain. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### looks down on the wilderness

This is an idiom. It is a way of saying that the mountain is high, and speaks of the mountain as if it were a person who looks down to see the wilderness below him. Alternate translation: “rises above the wilderness” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moab](#), [Moabite](#)
- [head](#)
- [face](#), [facial](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [in Moab where](#)
- [Mount Pisgah rises](#)
- [the](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> and from Bamoth to a valley in the land of Moab. That is where the top of Mount Pisgah looks down on the wilderness.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> Then they went to the valley [in Moab where Mount Pisgah rises](#) above [the](#) wilderness.

## Numbers 21:21

### Then Israel

Here "Israel" refers to the people of Israel, and especially to their leaders. Alternate translation: "Then the Israelites" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Amorite
- messenger
- king, kingdom, kingship

### Translation Words - UST

- Then the Israelites
- Amor people group
- messengers
- the king of the

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Then Israel sent messengers to Sihon king of the Amorites saying,

### UST

<sup>21</sup> [Then the Israelites](#) sent [messengers](#) to Sihon, [the king of the Amor people group](#). This was the message that they gave him,

## Numbers 21:22

### We will not turn into any field or vineyard

"We will not go into any of your fields or vineyards"

### the king's highway

This is the main road that connects Damascus in the north to the Gulf of Aqabah in the south. See how you translated this in [Numbers 20:17](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

#### Translation Words - UST

- [We will stay on the king's highway](#)
- [Allow us to travel](#)

#### ULT

**22** "Let us pass through your land. We will not turn into any field or vineyard. We will not drink the water from your wells. We will travel by the king's highway until we have crossed your border."

#### UST

**22** "[Allow us to travel](#) through your country. [We will stay on the king's highway](#), the main road that goes from the south to the north, until we have finished traveling through your land. We will not walk through any field or vineyard, or drink water from your wells."

## Numbers 21:23

### to pass through their border

“to cross over their border.” Here “their” refers to the Amorites.

### Jahaz

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### he fought against Israel

Here “he” refers to King Sihon who represents himself and his army.  
Alternate translation: “they fought against the Israelites” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- to attack
- But King
- the Israelites
- the Israelites
- army

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> But King Sihon would not allow Israel to pass through their border. Instead, Sihon gathered all his army together and attacked Israel in the wilderness. He came to Jahaz, where he fought against Israel.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> [But King](#) Sihon refused. He would not allow them to walk through his land. Instead, he sent his whole [army to attack the Israelites](#) in the desert. They attacked [the Israelites](#) at Jahaz village.

## Numbers 21:24

### Israel attacked

Here "Israel" refers to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "The Israelites attacked" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### with the edge of the sword

"with the sharp part of the sword." The "edge of the sword" is associated with death and complete destruction. Alternate translation: "and completely defeated them" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### took their land

"conquered the land of the Amorites." Here the word "their" refers to the Amorites.

### was fortified

"was strongly defended." The Israelites did not attack the Ammonites.

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- might, mighty, mighty works
- sword, swordsmen
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- occupied
- of the land
- the...army was defending
- But the Israelites
- strongly
- completely
- their land

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Israel attacked the army of Sihon with the edge of the sword and took their land from the Arnon to the Jabbok river, as far as the land of the people of Ammon. Now the border of the people of Ammon was fortified.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> [But the Israelites completely](#) defeated them and [occupied their land](#), from the Arnon River in the south to the Jabbok River in the north. They stopped at the border [of the land](#) where the Ammon people group lived, because the Ammon [army was defending](#) the border [strongly](#).

## Numbers 21:25

### Heshbon and all of its villages

Here “its” is possessive to show that a relationship existed between the city of Heshbon and these nearby villages. Alternate translation: “Heshbon and the nearby villages that it controlled”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Amorite](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [So the Israelites](#)
- [some of the Israelites](#)
- [the Amorites lived, and](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Israel took all the Amorite cities and lived in all of them, including Heshbon and all of its villages.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> [So the Israelites](#) occupied all the cities and towns where [the Amorites lived, and some of the Israelites](#) began to live in them. They occupied the city of Heshbon and the nearby villages.



## Numbers 21:26

### Sihon had taken all his land

Here “his” refers to the king of Moab.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Moab, Moabite
- Amorite
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### Translation Words - UST

- King...of Moab
- the army of the king
- ruled
- the army of the king
- King...of Moab
- the land of Moab

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Heshbon was the city of Sihon king of the Amorites, who had fought against the former king of Moab. Sihon had taken all his land from his territory to the Arnon River.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> Heshbon was the capital of the country. It was the city where [King](#) Sihon [ruled](#). His army had previously defeated [the army of the king of Moab](#), and then his people had begun to live in all of [the land of Moab](#) as far as the Arnon River in the south.

## Numbers 21:27

### Heshbon...city of Sihon

These are two names that refer to the same city. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Let the city of Sihon be rebuilt and established again

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Let someone rebuild and establish again the city of Sihon" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### rebuilt and established

These two terms are very similar and emphasize that the city will be fully rebuilt. Alternate translation: "completely rebuilt" (See: [Doublet](#))

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> That is why those who speak in proverbs say, "Come to Heshbon. Let the city of Sihon be rebuilt and established again."

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> For that reason, one of the poets wrote long ago, "Come to Heshbon, the city where King Sihon ruled. We want the city to be restored."

## Numbers 21:28

### A fire blazed from Heshbon, a flame from the city of Sihon

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that destruction will begin at Heshbon. The fire refers to a destroying army. Alternate translation: "King Sihon led a strong army from the city of Heshbon" (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### devoured Ar of Moab

The army of Sihon is spoken of as if it was an animal that ate up the city of Ar. Alternate translation: "destroyed the town of Ar in the land of Moab" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- bind, bond, bound
- Moab, Moabite
- devour
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- on the hills
- in Moab
- It destroyed everything
- A fire
- blazed from Heshbon

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> A fire blazed from Heshbon, a flame from the city of Sihon that devoured Ar of Moab, and the owners of the high places of Arnon.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> [A fire blazed from Heshbon](#). It burned down the city of Ar [in Moab](#). [It destroyed everything on the hills](#) along the Arnon River.

## Numbers 21:29

### Moab...people of Chemosh

These two phrases refer to the same people. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### people of Chemosh

“Chemosh” was the name of the false god whom the Moabites worshiped. Alternate translation: “the people who worship Chemosh”

### He has made his sons

“He” and “his” refer to Chemosh.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [perish](#)
- [son](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [have been annihilated](#)
- [of the](#)
- [You people of Moab](#)
- [have been captured by the army](#)
- [You people who worship your god Chemosh](#)
- [the king](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Woe to you, Moab! You have perished, people of Chemosh. He has made his sons to be fugitives and his daughters to be prisoners of Sihon king of the Amorites.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> [You people of Moab](#), terrible things have happened to you! [You people who worship your god Chemosh have been annihilated!](#) The men who worshiped Chemosh have run away and are now refugees, and the women who worshiped him [have been captured by the army](#) of Sihon, [the king of the](#) Amor people group.

## Numbers 21:30

### we have conquered

Here “we” refers to the Israelites who defeated Sihon.

### Heshbon is devastated

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “We have devastated Heshbon” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Heshbon...all the way to Dibon...all the way to Nophah...to Medeba

These are all places in Sihon’s kingdom. This means the Israelites destroyed Sihon’s entire nation. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Merism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [perish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [But we have defeated those descendants of Amor...all the way from Heshbon](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> But we have conquered Sihon. Heshbon is devastated all the way to Dibon. We have defeated them all the way to Nophah, which reaches to Medeba.”

### UST

<sup>30</sup> [But we have defeated those descendants of Amor, all the way from Heshbon](#) in the north to the city of Dibon in the south. We have completely obliterated them as far as the cities of Nophah and Medeba.”

## Numbers 21:31

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Amorite](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [So the Israelite people](#)
- [the Amorites lived](#)

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> So Israel began to live in the Amorites' land.

#### UST

<sup>31</sup> [So the Israelite people](#) began to live in the land where [the Amorites lived](#).

## Numbers 21:32

### drove out

“chased away”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- Moses
- Amorite

#### Translation Words - UST

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- After Moses
- Amor people group

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Then Moses sent men to look at Jazer. They took its villages and drove out the Amorites who were there.

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> [After Moses](#) sent some men to explore the area near the city of Jazer, Israelite people began to live in all the towns in that region and expelled the [Amor people group](#) who lived there.

## Numbers 21:33

### went out against them

“attacked them”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Bashan
- Bashan
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### Translation Words - UST

- Then they...toward the region of Bashan
- Then they...toward the region of Bashan
- of Bashan
- his army
- King

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> Then they turned and went up by the road of Bashan. Og king of Bashan went out against them, he and all his army, to fight them at Edrei.

#### UST

<sup>33</sup> Then they turned north toward the region of Bashan, but King Og of Bashan and all his army attacked them at the city of Edrei.



## Numbers 21:34

### Do to him as you did to Sihon king of the Amorites

The Israelites had completely destroyed Sihon. Alternate translation: "Destroy him like you destroyed Sihon king of the Amorites"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Amorite
- hand
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### Translation Words - UST

- be afraid of Og
- Yahweh
- to Moses
- the Amor people group
- him
- and to take possession of all
- the king of
- land

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Do not fear him, because I have given you victory over him, all his army, and his land. Do to him as you did to Sihon king of the Amorites, who lived at Heshbon."

#### UST

<sup>34</sup> [Yahweh](#) said [to Moses](#), "Do not [be afraid of Og](#), because I am going to enable your men to defeat [him](#) and his army, [and to take possession of all](#) his [land](#). You will do to him what you did to Sihon, [the king of the Amor people group](#), who ruled in Heshbon."

## Numbers 21:35

### So they killed him

"So the army of Israel killed Og"

### none of his people were left alive

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "all of his people were dead" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### they took over his land

"they took control of his land"

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- And then the Israelites...live in their land
- and his sons
- his people
- And then the Israelites...live in their land

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> So they killed him, his sons, and all his army, until none of his people were left alive. Then they took over his land.

### UST

<sup>35</sup> And that is what happened. The Israelites defeated Og's army, and killed King Og [and his sons](#) and all [his people](#). Not a person survived! [And then the Israelites](#) began to [live in their land](#).

## Numbers 22

### Numbers 22 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

The chapter begins a section on Balaam. The king of Moab wanted the prophet Balaam to come and curse Israel. God told him not to go but he wanted to go; so God told him to say only what God wanted him to say. Yahweh was able to use Balaam, even though he was not a prophet of Yahweh. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [curse](#), [cursed](#), [cursing](#))

## Numbers 22:1

### on the other side of the Jordan River from the city

The Israelites were camped on the east side of the Jordan River. Jericho was on the west side of the river.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Moab, Moabite
- Jericho

#### Translation Words - UST

- that was in the Valley of the
- Then the Israelites
- of Moab
- from Jericho

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> The people of Israel traveled on until they camped in the plains of Moab near Jericho, on the other side of the Jordan River from the city.

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> [Then the Israelites](#) traveled west to the plain [of Moab that was in the Valley of the](#) Jordan River, across the river [from Jericho](#).

## Numbers 22:2

### Balak son of Zippor

Balak was king of Moab. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Zippor

Zippor is the father of Balak. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [But King](#)
- [the Israelites](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Balak son of Zippor saw all that Israel had done to the Amorites.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> [But King](#) Balak son of Zippor, who ruled Moab, found out what [the Israelites](#) had done to the Amor people group.

## Numbers 22:3

### Moab was very afraid of the people...Moab was in terror of the people of Israel

These two phrases mean the same thing, and emphasize how afraid Moab was. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Moab was very afraid

Here “Moab” refers to the people of Moab. Alternate translation: “All of the Moabites were very afraid” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### because they were many

“because there were many of them”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israelites](#)
- [Israelites](#)
- [he saw](#)
- [he...became terrified](#)
- [and his people](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Moab was very afraid of the people because they were many, and Moab was in terror of the people of Israel.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> When [he saw](#) that the [Israelites](#) were very numerous, [he and his people became terrified](#).

## Numbers 22:4

### The king of Moab said to the elders of Midian

The Moabites and the Midianites were two different groups of people, but the Midianites were living in the land of Moab at that time.

### This multitude will eat up all that is around us as an ox eats up the grass in a field

The way the Israelites will destroy their enemies is spoken of as if they were an ox eating up the grass in a field. (See: [Simile](#))

### Now Balak son of Zippor was king of Moab at that time

This changes from the main story to background information about Balak. (See: [Background Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Moab](#), [Moabite](#)
- [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [congregation](#), [meeting](#)
- [elder](#), [older](#), [old](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [them](#)
- [the king of Moab](#)
- [people group](#)
- [the leaders of](#)
- [the king of Moab](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> The king of Moab said to the elders of Midian, "This multitude will eat up all that is around us as an ox eats up the grass in a field." Now Balak son of Zippor was king of Moab at that time.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> So [the king of Moab](#) went to [the leaders of](#) the Midian [people group](#) and said to them, "This huge group of Israelites will wipe out everything around [them](#), like an ox devours grass!" Balak was [the king of Moab](#).

## Numbers 22:5

### He sent messengers

"Balak sent messengers"

### Beor

This is the name of Balaam's father. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Pethor

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### of his nation and his people

"of Balaam's nation and people"

### He called him

"Balak called Balaam." Balak did not speak to Balaam directly, but did so through the messengers he sent.

### They cover the face of the earth

This is an exaggeration to emphasize how many of them there were.  
Alternate translation: "They are extremely numerous" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### the face of the earth

This refers to the surface of the earth. (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Balaam](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Balaam](#)
- [has arrived here from](#)
- [Balaam](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [who](#)
- [they are](#)
- [messengers to](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> He sent messengers to Balaam son of Beor, at Pethor which is by the Euphrates River, in the land of his nation and his people. He called him and said, "Look, a nation has come here from Egypt. They cover the face of the earth and they are right now next to me.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> He sent [messengers to](#) a prophet named [Balaam, who was living in his own area](#), in Pethor, near the Euphrates River. He sent this message to request that Balaam would come to help him, "A huge group of people [has arrived here from Egypt](#). It looks like [they are](#) covering the [entire land](#)! And they have begun to live close to us.



- living in his own area
- entire land
- was

## Numbers 22:6

### drive them

“chase them”

### I know that whomever you bless will be blessed, and whomever you curse will be cursed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I know you have the power to bless or to curse people” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- curse, cursed, cursing
- curse, cursed, cursing
- curse, cursed, cursing
- people, people group,
- walk, walked
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- you bless
- you bless
- curse them
- you curse
- you curse
- people
- come
- the land where
- I know that

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> So please come now and curse this nation for me, because they are too strong for me. Perhaps then I can manage to attack them and drive them out of the land. I know that whomever you bless will be blessed, and whomever you curse will be cursed.”

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> Because they are very powerful, we are afraid of them. So please [come](#) and [curse them](#) for me. Then my army may be able to defeat them and expel them from [the land where](#) they are now living. [I know that](#) good things will happen to the [people](#) whom [you bless](#), and disasters will happen to the people whom [you curse](#).”

## Numbers 22:7

### payment for divination

The abstract noun “divination” can be stated as an action. Alternate translation: “money to pay Balaam to curse Israel” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### They came to Balaam

You may prefer to say “They went to Balaam” (See: [Go and Come](#))

### spoke to him Balak’s words

“told him the message from Balak”

### Balak

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Numbers 22:2](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [hand](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Balaam](#)
- [Moab](#)
- [and curse the Israelites](#)
- [Balak’s messengers, who were](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> So the elders of Moab and the elders of Midian left, taking payment for divination. They came to Balaam and spoke to him Balak’s words.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> [Balak’s messengers, who were](#) leaders of both the [Moab](#) and Midian people groups, took money with them to pay Balaam in order that he would come [and curse the Israelites](#). They went to [Balaam](#) and told him what Balak had said.

## Numbers 22:8

### I will bring you

Balaam's report is spoken of as if it were something that he would carry to the messengers. Alternate translation: "I will tell you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Balaam](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [return](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [whatever Yahweh tells](#)
- [Balaam](#)
- [from Moab](#)
- [here tonight](#)
- [leaders](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Balaam said to them, "Stay here tonight. I will bring you what Yahweh says to me." So the leaders of Moab stayed with Balaam that night.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> [Balaam](#) said, "Stay [here tonight](#). Tomorrow morning I will tell you [whatever Yahweh tells](#) me that I should say to you." So the [leaders from Moab](#) stayed there that night.

## Numbers 22:9

### God came to Balaam

"God appeared to Balaam"

### Who are these men who came to you?

Yahweh uses a question to introduce a new topic of conversation. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Tell me about these men who came to you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Balaam](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [During the night, God](#)
- [Balaam](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> God came to Balaam and said, "Who are these men who came to you?"

### UST

<sup>9</sup> [During the night, God](#) appeared to [Balaam](#) and asked him, "Who are these men who are staying with you?"

## Numbers 22:10

### Balak...Zippor

These are the names of men. See how you translated these in [Numbers 22:2](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- Balaam
- Moab, Moabite
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### Translation Words - UST

- Balak
- Balaam replied...to tell...this message
- Balaam replied...to tell...this message
- of Moab
- the king

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Balaam answered God, "Balak son of Zippor, king of Moab, has sent them to me. He said,

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> [Balaam replied](#), "[Balak, the king of Moab](#), sent these men [to tell](#) me [this message](#),

## Numbers 22:11

### Look...drive them out

Balaam restates the message that Balak sent to him. See how you translated these phrases in [Numbers 22:5-6](#).

### drive them out

"chase them away"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [walk](#), [walked](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Egypt](#)
- [A huge group of people](#)
- [come immediately](#)
- [area](#)

### ULT

11 'Look, the people who have come from Egypt cover the surface of my land. Now come and curse them for me. Perhaps I will manage to fight them and drive them out.'

### UST

11 'A huge group of people has come from Egypt, and they have spread all over this area. Please come immediately to curse them. Then I may be able to defeat them and expel them from this area.'

## Numbers 22:12

### because they have been blessed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “because I have blessed them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- God
- curse, cursed, cursing
- Balaam
- people, people group,
- walk, walked

#### Translation Words - UST

- have blessed those people
- God
- so you...curse them
- Balaam
- have blessed those people
- go

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> God replied to Balaam, “You must not go with those men. You must not curse the people of Israel because they have been blessed.”

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> [God](#) replied to [Balaam](#), “Do not [go](#) with them! I [have blessed those people](#), [so you](#) must not [curse them](#)!”



## Numbers 22:13

### Balak

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Numbers 22:2](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Balaam](#)
- [walk](#), [walked](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)
- [prince](#), [princess](#), [governors](#), [provincial governors](#), [officials](#), [noblemen](#), [nobility](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Balaam](#)
- [Go back](#)
- [home](#)
- [But go by yourselves](#)

#### ULT

**13** Balaam rose up in the morning and said to Balak's leaders, "Go back to your land because Yahweh refuses to allow me to go with you."

#### UST

**13** The next morning, [Balaam](#) got up and told Balak's men, "[Go back home](#). [But go by yourselves](#), because [Yahweh](#) is not allowing me to go with you."

## Numbers 22:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Balaam
- Moab, Moabite
- walk, walked
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

### Translation Words - UST

- Balaam
- So the men from Moab returned
- to come
- So the men from Moab returned

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> So the leaders of Moab left and went back to Balak. They said, "Balaam refused to come with us."

### UST

<sup>14</sup> [So the men from Moab returned](#) to King Balak and they reported to him, "[Balaam](#) refused [to come](#) with us."

## Numbers 22:15

### Balak

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Numbers 22:2](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

#### Translation Words - UST

- of leaders to Balaam

#### ULT

**15** Balak sent again more leaders who were even more honored than the first group.

#### UST

**15** But Balak sent another group [of leaders to Balaam](#). It was a group that was larger and they were more important than the men in the first group.

## Numbers 22:16

### They came to Balaam

You may prefer to say "They went to Balaam" (See: [Go and Come](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Balaam](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [King Balak...from...here](#)
- [Balaam](#)

#### ULT

**16** They came to Balaam and said to him, "Balak son of Zippor says this, 'Please let nothing stop you from coming to me,

#### UST

**16** They went to [Balaam](#) and told him this, "This is what [King Balak](#) says, 'Please do not allow anything to hinder you from coming [here](#)."

## Numbers 22:17

### this people

The singular noun refers to the Israelites as a group. Alternate translation: "this group of people"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- people, people group,

#### Translation Words - UST

- I will pay you a lot of money if you come, and
- I will pay you a lot of money if you come, and
- Israelite people

#### ULT

**17** because I will pay you extremely well and give you great honor, and I will do whatever you tell me to do. So please come and curse this people for me."

#### UST

**17** I will pay you a lot of money if you come, and I will do anything that you ask me to do. Just come and curse these Israelite people for me!"

## Numbers 22:18

### Balak

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Numbers 22:2](#).

### Even if Balak would give me his palace full of silver and gold

Balaam is describing something that would never happen. He is emphasizing that there is nothing that could make him disobey Yahweh. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

### I cannot go beyond the word of Yahweh...and do less or more than what he tells me

This means Balaam cannot disobey Yahweh in any way.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Balaam](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [with...would not do anything...disobey Yahweh, my God](#)
- [with...would not do anything...disobey Yahweh, my God](#)
- [But Balaam answered them](#)
- [silver and](#)
- [gold](#)
- [I](#)
- [a palace filled](#)

### ULT

**18** Balaam answered and said to Balak's men, "Even if Balak would give me his palace full of silver and gold, I cannot go beyond the word of Yahweh, my God, and do less or more than what he tells me.

### UST

**18** [But Balaam answered them](#), "Even if Balak would give me [a palace filled](#) with [silver and gold](#), [I would not do anything](#) to [disobey Yahweh, my God](#).

## Numbers 22:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- if Yahweh has
- find out

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Now then, please wait here tonight too, so that I may learn anything further that Yahweh says to me."

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> But stay here one more night, like the other messengers did, and I will [find out if Yahweh has](#) anything more to say to me."

## Numbers 22:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Balaam](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Balaam again](#)
- [you go back with them](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> God came to Balaam at night and said to him, "Since these men have come to summon you, get up and go with them. But only do what I tell you to do."

### UST

<sup>20</sup> That night [God](#) appeared to [Balaam again](#) and said to him, "These men have come to request that [you go back with them](#), so you may go with them, but do only what I tell you to do!"



## Numbers 22:21

### saddled his donkey

A saddle is a seat put on the back of an animal in order to ride it.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Balaam
- Moab, Moabite
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

#### Translation Words - UST

- Balaam
- Moab
- the men from

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Balaam got up in the morning, saddled his donkey, and went with the leaders of Moab.

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> So the next morning, [Balaam](#) put a saddle on his donkey and he departed with two of his servants along with [the men from Moab](#).

## Numbers 22:22

### God's anger was kindled

The increase in God's anger is spoken of as if it was a fire starting to burn. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God became very angry" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### as someone hostile to Balaam

"as an enemy to Balaam" or "in order to stop Balaam"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [one of his](#)
- [angels to Balaam](#)
- [permission to go](#)
- [servants](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> But because he went, God's anger was kindled. The angel of Yahweh placed himself in the road as someone hostile to Balaam, who was riding on his donkey. Balaam's two servants were also with him.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> Even though [God](#) had given Balaam [permission to go](#), he was still angry. So he sent [one of his angels to Balaam](#). This angel stood in the road to block Balaam's path. As Balaam and the two [servants](#) were riding on their donkeys,

## Numbers 22:23

### with his drawn sword

A sword is drawn from its sheath in order to be ready to use.  
Alternate translation: "with his sword ready to attack" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### The donkey turned off the road and went into a field

The donkey did this to avoid the angel of Yahweh.

### to turn her back

Sometimes animals are referred to as "her" or "she." Alternate translation: "to turn it back"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Balaam](#)
- [hand](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [in his](#)
- [So Balaam](#)
- [hand, but](#)
- [the angel...and](#)
- [a sword](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> The donkey saw the angel of Yahweh standing in the road with his drawn sword in his hand. The donkey turned off the road and went into a field. Balaam struck the donkey to turn her back to the road.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> Balaam's donkey saw [the angel](#). The angel was standing in the road [and](#) was holding [a sword in his hand, but](#) Balaam did not see him. Balaam's donkey turned off the road into a field. [So Balaam](#) struck the donkey and forced it to go back onto the road.

## Numbers 22:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [messenger](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Then the angel](#)
- [Then the angel](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Then the angel of Yahweh stood in a narrow part of the road between some vineyards, with a wall on his right side and another wall on his left side.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> [Then the angel](#) stood in a place where the road was very narrow, between two vineyards, with walls on each side of the road.

## Numbers 22:25

### She went against the wall

This was an attempt to escape from the angel of Yahweh in the road.

### She went

Sometimes animals are referred to as "her" or "she." Alternate translation: "It went"

### pinned Balaam's foot against it

"pushed Balaam's foot against it" or "hurt Balaam's foot against it"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Balaam](#)
- [messenger](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [angel standing there](#)
- [As a result, it bashed Balaam's](#)
- [angel standing there](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> The donkey saw the angel of Yahweh again. She went against the wall and pinned Balaam's foot against it. Balaam struck her again.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> When the donkey saw the [angel standing there](#), it walked very close to the wall to try to get past the angel. [As a result, it bashed Balaam's](#) foot against the wall. So Balaam struck the donkey again.

## Numbers 22:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [messenger](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Then the angel](#)
- [Then the angel](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> The angel of Yahweh went further and stood in another narrow place where there was no way to turn to either side.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> [Then the angel](#) went further along the road and stood at a place that was extremely narrow, with the result that the donkey could not get past at all.

## Numbers 22:27

### Balaam's anger was kindled

The increase in Balaam's anger is spoken of as if it was a fire starting to burn. This can be stated in active form. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Numbers 22:22](#). Alternate translation: "Balaam became very angry" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Balaam](#)
- [Balaam](#)
- [messenger](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [with his](#)
- [with Balaam sitting on top of it](#)
- [Balaam](#)
- [angel](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> The donkey saw the angel of Yahweh, and she lay down under Balaam. Balaam's anger was kindled, and he struck the donkey with his staff.

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> This time, when the donkey saw the [angel](#), it lay down on the ground [with Balaam sitting on top of it](#). [Balaam](#) became extremely angry, and he struck the donkey again [with his](#) walking stick.

## Numbers 22:28

### Then Yahweh opened the donkey's mouth so she could talk

Opening the mouth is associated with the ability to speak. Alternate translation: "Then Yahweh gave the donkey the ability to speak like a human would speak" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### She said to Balaam

"The donkey said to Balaam"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Then Yahweh enabled](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Then Yahweh opened the donkey's mouth so she could talk. She said to Balaam, "What have I done to you that induced you to strike me these three times?"

### UST

<sup>28</sup> [Then Yahweh enabled](#) the donkey to speak! It said to Balaam, "What bad thing have I done to you that caused you to strike me three times?"



## Numbers 22:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Balaam
- hand
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- sword, swordsmen

### Translation Words - UST

- Balaam
- with me
- I would kill you
- a sword

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Balaam replied to the donkey, "It was because you acted so stupidly with me. I wish there were a sword in my hand. If there were, by now I would have killed you."

### UST

<sup>29</sup> [Balaam](#) shouted, "I struck you because you have caused me to appear to be foolish! If I had [a sword with me](#), [I would kill you!](#)"

## Numbers 22:30

### Am not I your donkey on which you have ridden all your life long to this present day?

This rhetorical question was used to convict Balaam that his judgment of the donkey was unfair. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am your donkey on which you have ridden all your life, right up to the present moment." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Have I ever been in the habit of doing such things to you before?

This rhetorical question was used to further convict Balaam that his judgment of the donkey was unfair. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I have never been in the habit of doing such things to you!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer
- Balaam

#### Translation Words - UST

- I
- you have always ridden...Balaam

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> The donkey said to Balaam, "Am not I your donkey on which you have ridden all your life long to this present day? Have I ever been in the habit of doing such things to you before?" Balaam said, "No."

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> But the donkey answered, "[I](#) am your own donkey, the one that [you have always ridden](#)! Have I ever done anything like this previously?" [Balaam](#) said, "No."

## Numbers 22:31

### Then Yahweh opened Balaam's eyes, and he saw the angel of Yahweh

To "open one's eyes" is associated with being able to see. Alternate translation: "Then Yahweh gave Balaam the ability to see the angel of Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### with his drawn sword

A sword is drawn from its sheath in order to be ready to use. See how you translated this in [Numbers 22:23](#). Alternate translation: "with his sword ready to attack" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Balaam lowered his head and lay facedown

This indicates that Balaam is humbling himself before the angel. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- prostrate, worship
- Balaam
- hand
- messenger
- sword, swordsmen
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### Translation Words - UST

- Then Yahweh
- in his
- prostrated himself on the ground
- Balaam
- hand
- an angel
- a sword
- prostrated himself on the ground

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Then Yahweh opened Balaam's eyes, and he saw the angel of Yahweh standing in the road with his drawn sword in his hand. Balaam lowered his head and lay facedown.

### UST

<sup>31</sup> [Then Yahweh](#) enabled [Balaam](#) to see the angel standing on the road, holding [a sword in his hand](#). Balaam realized that it was [an angel](#) and [prostrated himself on the ground](#) in front of the angel.

## Numbers 22:32

### Why have you struck your donkey these three times?

This rhetorical question is used to accuse Balaam of doing wrong. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “You should not have struck your donkey these three times.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### as someone hostile to you

“as an enemy to you” or “to oppose you”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- messenger
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- you
- I
- The angel
- planning

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> The angel of Yahweh said to him, “Why have you struck your donkey these three times? Look, I have come as someone hostile to you because your actions before me have been wicked.”

### UST

<sup>32</sup> [The angel](#) asked him, “Why did you strike your donkey three times? [I](#) have come to block your path because what [you](#) are [planning](#) to do is wrong.”

## Numbers 22:33

### If she had not turned...killed you and spared her life

This hypothetical statement indicated what could have happened, but it did not because the donkey's actions saved Balaam. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- die, dead, deadly, death,

#### Translation Words - UST

- to live
- have killed you already

#### ULT

**33** The donkey saw me and turned away from me these three times. If she had not turned away from me, I would certainly have killed you and spared her life."

#### UST

**33** Three times your donkey saw me and turned away from me. If it had not done that, I would certainly [have killed you already](#), but I would have allowed the donkey [to live](#)."

## Numbers 22:34

### So now, if it is displeasing to you

"So if you do not want me to continue going"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- Balaam
- messenger
- afflict, affliction, distress
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- I have sinned
- me to
- will return home
- Then Balaam
- the angel
- do not want
- realize

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> Balaam said to the angel of Yahweh, "I have sinned. I did not know that you stood against me in the road. So now, if it is displeasing to you, I will turn back."

#### UST

<sup>34</sup> Then Balaam said to the angel, "I have sinned. But I did not realize that you were standing there, trying to block my path. So if you do not want me to continue going, I will return home."

## Numbers 22:35

### with the leaders of Balak

“with the leaders whom Balak had sent.” See how you translated “Balak” in [Numbers 22:2](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Balaam
- Balaam
- messenger
- walk, walked
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

### Translation Words - UST

- I
- will allow you to
- Balaam
- But the angel
- go
- leaders

### ULT

**35** But the angel of Yahweh said to Balaam, “Go on ahead with the men. But you must only speak the words that I tell you.” So Balaam went with the leaders of Balak.

### UST

**35** [But the angel](#) replied, “[I will allow you to go](#) with these men, but you must say only what I tell you to say!” So [Balaam](#) went on with the [leaders](#) whom Balak had sent.

## Numbers 22:36

### Arnon

This is the name of a river. See how you translated it in [Numbers 21:13](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Balaam](#)
- [Moab](#), [Moabite](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [he went](#)
- [Balaam](#)
- [in Moab](#)

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> When Balak heard that Balaam had come, he went out to meet him at a city in Moab at the Arnon, which is on the border.

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> When King Balak heard that [Balaam](#) was coming, [he went](#) to meet him at a city [in Moab](#) that is located alongside the Arnon River, near the border of his own land.



## Numbers 22:37

### Did I not send men to you to summon you?

This rhetorical question is used to rebuke Balaam for delaying to come. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Surely I sent men to summon you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Why did you not come to me?

This rhetorical question is used to rebuke Balaam for delaying to come. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have come to me!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Am I not able to honor you?

This rhetorical question is used to rebuke Balaam for delaying to come. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Surely you know that I am able to pay you money for coming to me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

**37** Balak said to Balaam, "Did I not send men to you to summon you? Why did you not come to me? Am I not able to honor you?"

#### UST

**37** [When he arrived where Balaam was](#), he said to him, "I sent you a message saying that you should come immediately! Why did you not come? Did you think that I was not able to pay you [a lot of money for coming](#)?"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)
- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [When he arrived where Balaam was](#)
- [a lot of money](#)
- [for coming](#)

## Numbers 22:38

### Do I now have any power to say anything?

Balaam uses this rhetorical question to tell Balak that he will not be able to do everything that Balak asks him to do. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "But I have no power to say anything I want" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### the words that God puts into my mouth

The message is spoken of as if it is something that God put into his mouth. Alternate translation: "the message that God wants me to say" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Balaam](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Balaam](#)

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> Then Balaam replied to Balak, "See, I have come to you. Do I now have any power to say anything? I can only say the words that God puts into my mouth."

### UST

<sup>38</sup> [Balaam](#) replied, "I have come here now, but I am not able to say anything that I want to. I will say only the words that [God](#) tells me to say."

## Numbers 22:39

### Kiriath Huzoth

This is the name of a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Then Balaam](#)

#### ULT

<sup>39</sup> Balaam went with Balak, and they arrived at Kiriath Huzoth.

#### UST

<sup>39</sup> [Then Balaam](#) went with Balak to Kiriath Huzoth.

## Numbers 22:40

### some meat

“some of the meat from the sacrifices”

### Translation Words - ULT

- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- flock, herd

### Translation Words - UST

- cattle
- and sheep as sacrifices

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> Then Balak sacrificed oxen and sheep and gave some meat to Balaam and the leaders who were with him.

### UST

<sup>40</sup> There Balak killed some [cattle and sheep as sacrifices](#), and offered parts of the meat to Balaam and the leaders who were with him.

## Numbers 22:41

### the high place of Baal

Possible meanings are 1) this refers to the same place as Bamoth in [Numbers 21:19](#). The word Bamoth means “the high place,” or 2) this is another high place where people sacrificed to Baal.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Balaam](#)
- [the Israelite people who](#)

#### ULT

**41** In the morning, Balak took Balaam up to the high place of Baal. From there Balaam could see only a part of the Israelites in their camp.

#### UST

**41** They slept there, and the next morning Balak took [Balaam](#) part way up the mountain to Bamoth Baal village. From there, they could see some of [the Israelite people who](#) were down below.

## Numbers 23

### Numbers 23 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

The story of Balaam continues in this chapter.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 23:7-10, 18-24.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Cursing God's people

God does not allow others to curse his people. Balaam blessed Israel twice when he was supposed to curse them. This may be taken as humor or an ironic situation. (See: [curse](#), [cursed](#), [cursing](#) and [people of God](#))

## Numbers 23:1

### Balak

This is the king of Moab. See how you translated this in [Numbers 22:2](#).

### prepare seven bulls and seven rams

"kill seven bulls and seven rams as a sacrifice"

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Balaam
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Translation Words - UST

- Build here...altars for me. Then kill seven
- Balaam
- young bulls
- rams for a sacrifice

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Balaam said to Balak, "Build seven altars here for me and prepare seven bulls and seven rams."

### UST

<sup>1</sup> [Balaam](#) said to King Balak, "[Build here](#) seven [altars for me](#). [Then kill seven young bulls](#) and seven [rams for a sacrifice](#)."

## Numbers 23:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Balaam
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

### Translation Words - UST

- and Balaam
- a young bull

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> So Balak did as Balaam requested. Then Balak and Balaam offered a bull and a ram on every altar.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> So Balak did that. And then he [and Balaam](#) each burned [a young bull](#) and a ram as a sacrifice on each altar.



## Numbers 23:3

### Stand at your burnt offering and I will go

"Stay here with your burnt offering and I will go a distance away"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Balaam](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [ask Yahweh](#)
- [Then Balaam](#)
- [burned offerings](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Then Balaam said to Balak, "Stand at your burnt offering and I will go. Perhaps Yahweh will come to meet me. Whatever he shows me I will tell you." So he went away to a hilltop with no trees.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> [Then Balaam](#) said to Balak, "You stand here close to your [burned offerings](#), and I will go and [ask Yahweh](#) if he has something else to tell me. Then I will tell you what he says to me." Then Balaam went by himself to the top of a hill.

## Numbers 23:4

### I have offered up a bull and a ram

It has already been stated that he killed these animals as a burnt offering. Alternate translation: "I have killed a bull and a ram and burnt them as an offering" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- God
- Balaam
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

#### Translation Words - UST

- We have built seven altars
- While he was on the top of the hill, God
- Balaam
- a young bull

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> While he was on the hilltop, God met him, and Balaam said to him, "I have built seven altars, and I have offered up a bull and a ram on each one."

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> [While he was on the top of the hill](#), [God](#) appeared to him there. [Balaam](#) said to him, "[We have built seven altars](#), and I have killed and burned [a young bull](#) and a ram as a sacrifice to you on each altar."

## Numbers 23:5

### Yahweh put a message in Balaam's mouth

Here Yahweh giving Balaam a message to speak is spoken of as if Yahweh placed it in his mouth. Alternate translation: "Yahweh told Balaam what he wanted him to say to Balak" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [restore](#), [restoration](#)
- [Balaam](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [gave](#)
- [Then Yahweh](#)
- [Go back](#)
- [Balaam](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Yahweh put a message in Balaam's mouth and said, "Return to Balak and speak to him."

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> [Then Yahweh gave Balaam](#) a message to give to King Balak. Then he said, "[Go back](#) and tell him what I told you."

## Numbers 23:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Moab, Moabite
- return
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

### Translation Words - UST

- from Moab beside
- When Balaam returned
- offerings
- with the leaders

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> So Balaam returned to Balak, who was standing by his burnt offering, and all the leaders of Moab were with him.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> When Balaam returned to Balak, Balak was standing with the leaders from Moab beside the offerings he had burned on the altar.

## Numbers 23:7

### Balak has brought me from Aram...the king of Moab from the eastern mountains

These phrases mean the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### ‘Come, curse Jacob for me,’...‘Come, defy Israel.’

Both of these statements mean the same thing. They emphasize that Balak wants Balaam to curse the people of Israel. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- curse, cursed, cursing
- Israel, Israelites
- Moab, Moabite
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- and curse
- Israelite people
- Moab
- the descendants of Jacob
- the king of
- Come

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Then Balaam began to speak his prophecy and said, “Balak has brought me from Aram, the king of Moab from the eastern mountains. ‘Come, curse Jacob for me,’ he said. ‘Come, defy Israel.’

### UST

<sup>7</sup> This is the message that Balaam told them, “Balak summoned me to come here from Aram; [the king of Moab](#) brought me here from the hills at the eastern side of Aram. He said, ‘[Come and curse the descendants of Jacob](#) for me! Come and say that bad things will happen to these [Israelite people](#)!’

## Numbers 23:8

### How can I curse those whom God has not cursed? How can I oppose those whom Yahweh does not oppose?

These rhetorical questions emphasize Balaam's refusal to disobey God. They can be translated as statements. Alternate translation: "But I cannot curse those whom God has not cursed. I cannot fight against those whom Yahweh does not fight!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> How can I curse those whom God has not cursed? How can I oppose those whom Yahweh does not oppose?

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> But how can I curse people whom God has not cursed? How can I fight against people against whom [Yahweh](#) does not fight?

## Numbers 23:9

### from the top of the rocks I see him...from the hills I look at him

These two phrases mean the same thing. Balaam viewed Israel from the top of a hill. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### I see him...I look at him

Here “him” is a metonym that refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### there is a people

“there is a group of people”

### do not consider themselves as just an ordinary nation

This negative statement is used to stress that the opposite is true. Alternate translation: “they consider themselves to be a special nation” (See: [Litotes](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [head](#)
- [nation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [a group of people](#)
- [by themselves](#)
- [nations](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> For from the top of the rocks I see him; from the hills I look at him. See, there is a people who live alone and do not consider themselves as just an ordinary nation.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> I have seen them from the tops of the rocky peaks, I have seen them from the hills. I see that they are [a group of people](#) who live [by themselves](#). They have separated themselves from other [nations](#).

## Numbers 23:10

### Who can count the dust of Jacob or number even only one-fourth of Israel?

Here “dust of Jacob” is a metaphor that speaks of the number of Israelites as if they were as numerous as the specks of dust. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “There are too many Israelites to count. No one could count even a fourth of them because there are so many.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### the death of a righteous person

It is understood that this will be a peaceful death. This can be stated. Alternate translation: “the peaceful death of a righteous person” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### a righteous person...like his

These are metonymies that refer to the people of Israel as a single person. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Israel, Israelites
- just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob

### Translation Words - UST

- I hope that I
- of the Israelite people
- like righteous people
- the descendants of Jacob

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Who can count the dust of Jacob or number even only one-fourth of Israel? Let me die the death of a righteous person, and let my life's end be like his!”

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Who can count [the descendants of Jacob](#), as numerous as particles of dust! Who can count even a fourth of the number [of the Israelite people](#)? I wish that I will die [like righteous people](#) die. [I hope that I](#) will die peacefully like they will die.”



## Numbers 23:11

### Balak

This is the king of Moab. See how you translated this in [Numbers 22:2](#).

### What have you done to me?

Balak uses this question to scold Balaam. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I cannot believe you did this to me!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### but look

This emphasizes the shocking action that follows.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Balaam](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [you have...them](#)
- [blessed](#)
- [you](#)
- [my enemies](#)

### ULT

**11** Balak said to Balaam, "What have you done to me? I brought you to curse my enemies, but look, you have blessed them."

### UST

**11** Then Balak said, "What have [you](#) done to me? I brought you here to curse [my enemies](#), but instead [you have blessed them!](#)"

## Numbers 23:12

### Should I not be careful to say only what Yahweh puts in my mouth?

Balaam uses this rhetorical question to defend his actions. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I must be very careful to say only what Yahweh tells me to say." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### to say only what Yahweh puts in my mouth

The message is spoken of as if it is something that God put into his mouth. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Numbers 22:38](#). Alternate translation: "to say only what Yahweh wants me to say" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Balaam answered and said, "Should I not be careful to say only what Yahweh puts in my mouth?"

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> But Balaam replied, "I can say only what [Yahweh](#) tells me to say. I cannot [say anything else](#)."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [watch](#), [watchman](#), [watchful](#), [guard](#), [take heed](#), [beware](#), [watch out](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [say anything else](#)

## Numbers 23:13

### There you will curse them for me

“There you will curse the Israelites for me”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- walk, walked

#### Translation Words - UST

- Come

#### ULT

**13** So Balak said to him, “Please come with me to another place where you can see them. You will only see the nearest of them, not all of them. There you will curse them for me.”

#### UST

**13** Then King Balak told Balaam, “[Come](#) with me to another place. There you will see only part of the Israelite people, and you will be able to curse those people for me.”

## Numbers 23:14

### field of Zophim

Translators may add a footnote that says: "The word 'Zophim' means 'to watch' or 'to spy.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Mount Pisgah

This is the name of a mountain. See how you translated this in [Numbers 21:20](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- head

#### Translation Words - UST

- altars
- and offered a young bull
- to a field on the top of Mount Pisgah

#### ULT

**14** So he took Balaam into the field of Zophim, to the top of Mount Pisgah, and built seven more altars. He offered up a bull and a ram on each altar.

#### UST

**14** So Balak took Balaam [to a field on the top of Mount Pisgah](#). There, again he built seven [altars and offered a young bull](#) and a ram as a sacrifice on each altar.

## Numbers 23:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [burned offerings](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Then Balaam said to Balak, “Stand here by your burnt offering, while I meet with Yahweh over there.”

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> Then Balaam said to the king, “Stand here close to your [burned offerings](#), while I go and talk with Yahweh.”

## Numbers 23:16

### put a message in his mouth

The message is spoken of as if it is something that God put into his mouth. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Numbers 22:38](#). Alternate translation: “told him what to say” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### He said

“Then Yahweh said”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [restore](#), [restoration](#)
- [Balaam](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and gave](#)
- [and Yahweh](#)
- [Go back](#)
- [Balaam again](#)

### ULT

**16** So Yahweh met Balaam and put a message in his mouth. He said, “Return to Balak and give him my message.”

### UST

**16** So Balaam did that, [and Yahweh](#) appeared to [Balaam again and gave](#) him another message. Then he said, “[Go back](#) to Balak and tell him that message.”

## Numbers 23:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [from Moab](#)
- [had burned the sacrifices](#)
- [the leaders](#)

### ULT

**17** Balaam returned to him, and look, he was standing by his burnt offering, and the leaders of Moab were with him. Then Balak said to him, "What has Yahweh said?"

### UST

**17** So Balaam returned to where the king and [the leaders from Moab](#) were standing, next to the altar where Balak [had burned the sacrifices](#). Balak asked him, "What did [Yahweh](#) say?"

## Numbers 23:18

### Balak, and hear...Listen to me, you son of Zippor

These two phrases mean the same thing and are repeated to emphasize how important it was for Balak to pay attention. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Balak...son of Zippor

See how you translated these names in [Numbers 22:2](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [you son of](#)

### ULT

**18** Balaam began his prophecy. He said, "Rise up, Balak, and hear. Listen to me, you son of Zippor.

### UST

**18** Then Balaam told him this message, "Balak, listen carefully, hear what I have to say, [you son of](#) Zippor!



## Numbers 23:19

### Has he promised anything without doing it? Has he said he would do something without carrying it out?

Both of these questions mean the same thing and emphasize that God does what he says he will. These rhetorical questions can be translated as statements. Alternate translation: "He has never promised a thing without fulfilling what he promised. He has always done exactly what he said he would do." (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [a human being](#)

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> God is not a man, that he should lie, Or a human being, that he should change his mind. Has he promised anything without doing it? Has he said he would do something without carrying it out?

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> God is not [a human being](#). Humans lie, but God never lies. He never changes his mind, as humans do. Whatever he has said that he will do, he does. Whatever he has promised to do, he has done it.

## Numbers 23:20

### I have been commanded to bless

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has commanded me to bless the Israelites" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [bless the Israelites](#)
- [he has blessed them](#)
- [to...and I...change that](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Look, I have been commanded to bless. God has given a blessing, and I cannot reverse it.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> He commanded me to request him to [bless the Israelites](#), So [he has blessed them, and I](#) cannot [change that](#).

## Numbers 23:21

### hardship in Jacob...trouble in Israel

These two phrases mean the same thing. Possible meanings are 1) God has given Israel only good things or 2) there is no sin in Israel that would cause him to judge them. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### shouts for their king are among them

“they shout with joy because Yahweh is their king”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [their God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [So the descendants](#)
- [is their true king](#)

#### ULT

**21** He has seen no hardship in Jacob or trouble in Israel. Yahweh their God is with them, and shouts for their king are among them.

#### UST

**21** [Yahweh their God](#) is with them; the people shout that he [is their true king](#). [So the descendants](#) of Jacob will not be harmed, they will not endure trouble without God.

## Numbers 23:22

### with strength like that of a wild ox

This simile says that Yahweh's great strength is equal to an ox. (See: [Simile](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [in Egypt](#) and
- [out](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> God brought them out of Egypt with strength like that of a wild ox.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> God brought them [out](#) slavery in Egypt and has led them through the wilderness with strength like a wild ox.

## Numbers 23:23

### There is no sorcery that works against Jacob...no fortune-telling harms Israel

These two lines mean the same thing, that no curse that anyone puts on the nation of Israel will be effective. Here "Jacob" is a metonym that refers to Israel. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### it must be said

This can be stated in active form. "people must say" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Look what God has done!

It is implied that what God did for them was good. Alternate translation: "Look at the good things God has done for them!"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [So](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> There is no sorcery that works against Jacob, and no fortune-telling harms Israel. Instead, it must be said about Jacob and Israel, 'Look what God has done!'

### UST

<sup>23</sup> When people curse the descendants of Jacob, they will not be harmed, when people work sorcery on them, it will have no power. [So](#) now people will say about the descendants of Jacob, 'God has done wonderful things for the Israelites!'

## Numbers 23:24

### the people rise like a lioness...he has killed

This verse is a long metaphor that speaks of Israel defeating her enemies as if Israel was a lion devouring its prey. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [devour](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [They stand firm](#)
- [and eaten their prey](#)

#### ULT

**24** Look, the people rise like a lioness, as a lion emerges and attacks. He does not lie down until he eats his victim and drinks the blood of what he has killed."

#### UST

**24** They are very strong, like lionesses that are ready to attack other animals. [They stand firm](#) like lions. The lions refuse to rest until they have killed [and eaten their prey](#) and drunk the blood of the animals they slaughtered."

## Numbers 23:25

### Balak

This is the king of Moab. See how you translated this in [Numbers 22:2](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#)
- [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#)
- [Balaam](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [If you will not...bless](#)
- [If you will not...bless](#)
- [Balaam](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Then Balak said to Balaam, "Do not curse them or bless them at all."

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> Then Balak said to [Balaam](#), "[If you will not](#) curse them, then I certainly do not want you to [bless](#) them!"

## Numbers 23:26

### Did I not tell you that I must say all that Yahweh tells me to say?

Balaam uses this rhetorical question to remind Balak that Balaam refused to disobey God even before he came to Balak. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I told you before that I must say all that Yahweh tells me to say." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Balaam](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh tells](#)
- [But Balaam](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> But Balaam answered and said to Balak, "Did I not tell you that I must say all that Yahweh tells me to say?"

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> [But Balaam](#) replied, "I told you that I must do only what [Yahweh tells](#) me to do!"



## Numbers 23:27

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Balaam
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- God to
- Balaam
- Come

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> So Balak replied to Balaam, "Come now, I will take you to another place. Perhaps it will please God for you to curse them there for me."

### UST

<sup>27</sup> Then King Balak said to [Balaam](#), "[Come](#) with me; I will take you to another place. Perhaps it will please [God to](#) allow you to curse them from that place."

## Numbers 23:28

### which looks down on the wilderness

It is understood that this wilderness was where Israel was camped.  
Alternate translation: "which looks down on the wilderness where Israel was" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)
- [head](#)
- [face, facial](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Balaam](#)
- [see the Israelites](#)
- [in](#)

#### ULT

**28** So Balak took Balaam to the top of Mount Peor, which looks down on the wilderness.

#### UST

**28** So Balak took [Balaam](#) to the top of Mount Peor where they could look down and [see the Israelites in](#) the desert.

## Numbers 23:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Balaam
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Translation Words - UST

- altars again
- Balaam
- young bulls
- rams for a sacrifice

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Balaam said to Balak, "Build me seven altars here and prepare seven bulls and seven rams."

### UST

<sup>29</sup> [Balaam](#) again told Balak, "Build me seven [altars again](#) and kill seven [young bulls](#) and seven [rams for a sacrifice](#)."

## Numbers 23:30

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Balaam
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

### Translation Words - UST

- Balaam
- a young bull

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> So Balak did as Balaam had said; he offered up a bull and a ram on each altar.

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> So Balak did what [Balaam](#) told him to do. He burned [a young bull](#) and a ram on each altar as sacrifices.

## Numbers 24

### Numbers 24 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

The story of Balaam continues in this chapter.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 24:3-9, 15-24.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Cursing God's people

God does not allow others to curse his people. Balaam blesses Israel again and the king is angry and sends him home. This may be taken as humor or an ironic situation. (See: [curse](#), [cursed](#), [cursing](#) and [people of God](#))

## Numbers 24:1

### as at the other times

“like he did the previous times”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Balaam
- face, facial
- walk, walked

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- the Israelite people
- Balaam
- Instead
- use

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> When Balaam saw that it pleased Yahweh to bless Israel, he did not go, as at the other times, to use sorcery. Instead, he looked toward the wilderness.

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> [Balaam](#) now realized that [Yahweh](#) wanted to bless [the Israelite people](#), not curse them. So he did not [use](#) magic like a shaman would do to find out what Yahweh wanted, as he often did. [Instead](#), he turned toward the desert.

## Numbers 24:2

### He raised his eyes

Here “raised his eyes” is an idiom that means to look up. Alternate translation: “He looked up” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Spirit of God came on him

This mean’s God’s Spirit took control of him to prophesy.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Balaam](#)
- [tribe, tribal, tribesmen](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Spirit](#)
- [Israelite people](#)
- [He](#)
- [with each tribe](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> He raised his eyes and saw that Israel was camped, each in their own tribe, and the Spirit of God came on him.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> [He](#) saw the [Israelite people](#) camped there in their tents, [with each tribe](#) gathered in one group. Then the [Spirit](#) of [God](#) came upon him,

## Numbers 24:3

### He received this prophecy

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God gave him this prophecy" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Balaam son of Beor

Beor was Balaam's father. See how you translated this in [Numbers 22:5](#).

### whose eyes are wide open

This idiom means he sees and understands clearly. (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Balaam](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [I, Balaam](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> He received this prophecy and said, "Balaam son of Beor is about to speak, the man whose eyes are wide open.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> and this is the prophetic message that he gave to Balak: "[I, Balaam son](#) of Beor, am giving this prophecy. This prophecy that I speak is as a man who sees what will happen in the future clearly speaks.



## Numbers 24:4

### General Information:

Balaam continues to prophesy under the control of the Spirit of God.

### He speaks...He sees...he bows

Here Balaam refers to himself as "He." (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### he bows down

This is an act of humility. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### with his eyes open

Here "eyes open" is an idiom that means Balaam has received the ability to know what God wants to say. (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Almighty](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [in front of him](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> He speaks and hears God's words. He sees a vision from the Almighty, Before whom he bows down with his eyes open.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> I hear this message from God. I see a vision from the one who is all-powerful. My eyes are open as I prostrate myself [in front of him](#).

## Numbers 24:5

### How beautiful are your tents, Jacob, the place where you live, Israel!

Both of these statements mean the same thing. They emphasize the Israelite camp was beautiful to Balaam. (See: [Parallelism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelite, Jacob](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [are lovely](#)
- [You descendants of Jacob](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> How beautiful are your tents, Jacob, the place where you live, Israel!

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> [You descendants of Jacob](#), your tents are very beautiful! The places where you live [are lovely](#)!

## Numbers 24:6

### General Information:

Balaam continues to prophesy under the control of the Spirit of God.

### Like valleys they spread out

Balaam speaks of the Israelies as if they were numerous enough to cover entire valleys. (See: [Simile](#))

### like gardens by the riverside

Balaam speaks of the Israelies as if they were well-watered gardens that produce an abundant harvest. (See: [Simile](#))

### aloes planted by Yahweh

Aloes are plants with a pleasant smell that grow well even in dry conditions. Balaam speaks of the Israelies as if they would thrive and be pleasant like aloe plants. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “aloes which Yahweh has planted” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#) and [Simile](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### like cedars beside the waters

Cedar trees were the largest trees in Israel. Balaam speaks of the Israelies as if they grew as large as well-watered cedar trees. (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Like valleys they spread out, like gardens by the riverside, like aloes planted by Yahweh, like cedars beside the waters.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Your tents are spread out in front of me like groves of palm trees in valleys, like gardens alongside a river. They are like strong aloe trees that [Yahweh](#) has planted, like strong cedar trees that grow along the rivers.

## Numbers 24:7

### General Information:

Balaam continues to prophesy under the control of the Spirit of God.

### Water flows...well-watered

Abundant water is associated with God's blessing on the crops of the land. Alternate translation: "God will bless Israel with plenty of water for their crops" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### their seed is well-watered

Well-watered seed refers to God's blessing on his people so that they will have abundant crops. Alternate translation: "they will have plenty of water for their seed to grow healthy crops" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Their king is to be higher...their kingdom will be honored

These two phrases have similar meaning, emphasizing how much God will bless them compared to other nations. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Their king is to be higher than Agag

Here "higher" refers to greater honor and power. This means the future king of Israel will have more honor and will be more powerful than Agag. Agag was king of the Amalekites. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### their kingdom will be honored

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "other people will give honor to their kingdom" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- exalt, exalted, exaltation
- king, kingdom, kingship
- kingdom

### Translation Words - UST

- to make them grow
- King
- The kingdom that he rules will be honored

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Water flows from their buckets, and their seed is well-watered. Their king is to be higher than Agag, and their kingdom will be honored.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Your water buckets will always be full. The seeds that you plant will always have plenty of water [to make them grow](#). The Israelites' king will be greater than [King](#) Agag. [The kingdom that he rules will be honored](#).

## Numbers 24:8

### General Information:

Balaam continues to prophesy under the control of the Spirit of God.

### God brings him

"God brings the Israelites"

### with strength like a wild ox

This simile emphasizes that the Israelites have great strength. (See: [Simile](#))

### He will eat up the nations

Balaam speaks of the Israelites as if they are wild animals that eat their enemies. This means they will destroy their enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [devour](#)
- [nation](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of Egypt](#)
- [that oppose him](#)
- [God devastates all](#)
- [the nations](#)
- [out](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> God brings him out of Egypt, with strength like a wild ox. He will eat up the nations who fight against him. He will break their bones to pieces. He will shoot them with his arrows.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> God brought them [out of Egypt](#), leading them along with his great power that is like a wild ox. [God devastates all the nations that oppose him](#). He breaks all those people's bones into pieces, and shoots them with his arrows.

## Numbers 24:9

### General Information:

Balaam finishes the prophecy under the control of the Spirit of God.

### He crouches down like a lion, like a lioness

In this simile, Balaam compares the Israelites to both male and female lions. This means they are dangerous and always ready to attack. (See: [Simile](#))

### Who dares disturb him?

Balaam uses a question to warn all the people to not provoke the Israelites. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "No one dares to disturb him!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### May everyone who blesses him be blessed; may everyone who curses him be cursed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "May God bless those who bless the Israelites; may he curse those who curse the Israelites" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- curse, cursed, cursing
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### Translation Words - UST

- God will bless everyone...blesses you Israelites
- God will bless everyone...blesses you Israelites
- and he will curse everyone who curses you
- that crouch

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> He crouches down like a lion, like a lioness. Who dares disturb him? May everyone who blesses him be blessed; may everyone who curses him be cursed."

### UST

<sup>9</sup> The Israelites are like lions [that crouch](#) and lie down, ready to spring on their prey, like lionesses that are resting. No one would dare to arouse them! [God will bless everyone](#) who [blesses you Israelites](#), and he will curse everyone who curses you."

## Numbers 24:10

### Balak's anger was kindled

The increase in Balak's anger is spoken of as if it was a fire starting to burn. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Balak became very angry" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### struck his hands together in anger

This was a sign of great frustration and anger. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- Balaam
- Balaam
- hand
- adversary, enemy

### Translation Words - UST

- I summoned
- blessed them
- blessed them
- Balaam
- that he was very angry
- He showed with his hands...and
- my enemies

### ULT

**10** Balak's anger was kindled against Balaam and he struck his hands together in anger. Balak said to Balaam, "I called you to curse my enemies, but look, you have blessed them three times."

### UST

**10** Then King Balak was extremely angry with Balaam. He showed with his hands that he was very angry, and he shouted, saying, "I summoned you here to curse my enemies! Instead, you have blessed them three times!"

## Numbers 24:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh has
- a lot of money
- I would pay you

### ULT

**11** So leave me right now and go home. I said I would greatly reward you, but Yahweh has kept you from getting any reward."

### UST

**11** So now, get out of here! Go back home! I said that I would pay you a lot of money if you cursed them, but Yahweh has prevented you from getting any pay!"



## Numbers 24:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)
- [messenger](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Balaam](#)
- [the messengers](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Then Balaam replied to Balak, "I said to the messengers that you sent to me,

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> [Balaam](#) said to Balak, "Do you not remember what I told [the messengers](#) that you sent to me? I said,

## Numbers 24:13

### Even if Balak gave me his palace full of silver and gold

Balaam is describing something that would never happen. This statement emphasizes that there is nothing that would make Balaam disobey God. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

### Did I not say this to them?

Balaam uses a question to remind Balak about what he said earlier. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. "Alternate translation: I said this to them." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- silver
- gold, golden
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- I
- Yahweh
- Yahweh says
- anything that is good
- cannot do anything bad
- with silver and
- gold
- a palace filled

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> 'Even if Balak gave me his palace full of silver and gold, I could not go beyond Yahweh's word and anything bad or good, or anything at all that I might want to do. I can say only what Yahweh tells me to say.' Did I not say this to them?

### UST

<sup>13</sup> 'Even if Balak would give me [a palace filled with silver and gold](#), I would not disobey [Yahweh](#). I [cannot do anything bad](#) or [anything that is good](#) that he does not approve of.' And I told you that [I](#) could say only what [Yahweh says](#) to me.

## Numbers 24:14

### this people

"the Israelites"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels
- walk, walked
- walk, walked

#### Translation Words - UST

- people
- people
- you Moab
- to tell you
- I will return to my
- allow me

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> So now, look, I will go back to my people. But first let me warn you what this people will do to your people in the days ahead."

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> So yes, [I will return to my people](#), but first, [allow me to tell you](#) what will happen to [you Moab people](#) in the future."

## Numbers 24:15

### Balaam son of Beor

Beor was Balaam's father. See how you translated this in [Numbers 22:5](#).

### whose eyes are wide open

This idiom means he sees and understands clearly. See how you translated this in [Numbers 24:3](#). (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Balaam](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [I, Balaam](#)

### ULT

**15** Balaam began this prophecy. He said, "Balaam son of Beor speaks, The man whose eyes are wide open.

### UST

**15** Then Balaam said this to Balak: "[I, Balaam, son](#) of Beor, am again giving a prophecy. This prophecy that I speak is again as a man who sees what will happen in the future clearly speaks.

## Numbers 24:16

### who has knowledge from the Most High

The abstract term “knowledge” can be stated as an action. Alternate translation: “who knows things that God Most High has revealed to him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### bows down

This is a sign of submission to God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Almighty](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [in front of him](#)
- [I know](#)

### ULT

**16** This is a prophecy of someone who hears words from God, who has knowledge from the Most High, who has visions from the Almighty, Before whom he bows down with open eyes.

### UST

**16** I hear a message from God; [I know](#) things that God, who lives in heaven, has revealed to me. I see a vision from the one who is all-powerful. My eyes are open as I prostrate myself [in front of him](#).

## Numbers 24:17

### General Information:

Balaam continues the first of his four prophecies.

### **I see him, but he is not here now. I look at him, but he is not near**

Both of these statements mean the same thing. Balaam is having a vision of a future event. The word “him” refers to a future leader of Israel. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### **A star will come out of Jacob**

Here “star” refers to an Israelite king that will rise in power. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

### **out of Jacob**

Here “Jacob” refers to the descendants of Jacob. Alternate translation: “from among the descendants of Jacob” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### **a scepter will rise out of Israel**

This means the same thing as the first part of the sentence. Here “scepter” refers to a powerful king. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### **out of Israel**

Here “Israel” refers to future Israelites. Alternate translation: “from among the Israelites in the future” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### **shatter Moab’s leaders**

Possible meanings are 1) he will break the heads of the leaders of Moab or 2) he will destroy the leaders of Moab.

### **all the descendants of Seth**

This also refers to the Moabites, who were descendants of Seth.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Moab, Moabite
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### Translation Words - UST

- the descendants of
- the Israelite people
- of Moab
- a king who holds a scepter

### ULT

**17** I see him, but he is not here now. I look at him, but he is not near. A star will come out of Jacob, and a scepter will rise out of Israel. He will shatter Moab’s leaders and destroy all the descendants of Seth.

### UST

**17** The things that I see in the vision are not going to happen now. I see things that God will cause to happen in the future. A man who is a descendant of Jacob will appear like a star; [a king who holds a scepter](#) will be one of [the Israelite people](#). He will crush the heads of you people [of Moab](#); he will wipe out [the descendants of](#) Seth.

## Numbers 24:18

### General Information:

Balaam finishes the first of his four prophecies.

### Edom will become a possession of Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The Israelites will occupy Edom" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Seir will also become their possession

Here "Seir" refers to the people who lived near Mount Seir. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Israel will also conquer the people of Seir" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [their enemies](#)
- [victorious](#)

### ULT

**18** Then Edom will become a possession of Israel, and Seir will also become their possession, enemies of Israel, whom Israel will conquer with force.

### UST

**18** The Israelites will occupy Edom, and they will conquer [their enemies](#) who live near Mount Seir. The Israelite people will be [victorious](#).

## Numbers 24:19

### Out of Jacob a king will come

Jacob was the ancestor of the Israelites. "Jacob" is a metonym that refers to the whole people group. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### of their city

This refers to the city of Ar where Balak met Balaam. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [dominion](#)
- [destroy](#), [destruction](#), [annihilate](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [where Balaam](#)
- [He will get rid of](#)

### ULT

**19** Out of Jacob a king will come who will have dominion, and he will destroy the survivors of their city."

### UST

**19** A ruler will come who is a descendant of Jacob. [He will get rid of](#) the people who still live in the city [where Balaam](#) first met Balak."



## Numbers 24:20

### Balaam looked at Amalek

Here "Amalek" is a metonym that refers to the people of Amalek. This continues Balaam's vision while turning to look in the direction of the Amalek nation, and then he prophesies about the Amalekites. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### his final end

A singular pronoun is used because the Amalekites are spoken of as a single person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [firstfruits](#)
- [nation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [were the greatest](#)
- [people group](#)

### ULT

**20** Then Balaam looked at Amalek and began his prophecy. He said, "Amalek was once the greatest of nations, but his final end will be destruction."

### UST

**20** Then Balaam looked out over where the Amalek people group lived, and he prophesied this, "The Amalek [people group were the greatest](#) nation, but they will be wiped out."

## Numbers 24:21

### the Kenites

This is the name of a people group who descended from Kain. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### The place where you live is strong

“The place where you live is well defended”

### your nest is in the rocks

This is a metaphor that means that they live in a secure place.  
Alternate translation: “your location is as secure as a nest high in the rocks” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [is made](#)

### ULT

**21** Then Balaam looked toward the Kenites and began his prophecy. He said, “The place where you live is strong, and your nest is in the rocks.

### UST

**21** Then he looked out over the area where the Kenite people group lived, and he prophesied this, “You think that the place where you live is secure like a nest that [is made](#) in the cliffs,

## Numbers 24:22

### Nevertheless you Kenites will be consumed by fire when Assyria carries you away captive

Here the destruction of the Kenites is spoken of as if they were burned up in a fire. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Nevertheless the Assyrians will destroy you Kenites like a fire, and take you away as captives" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured

#### Translation Words - UST

- the army of Assyria
- conquers you

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Nevertheless you Kenites will be consumed by fire when Assyria carries you away captive."

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> but you will be wiped out when [the army of Assyria conquers you](#)."

## Numbers 24:23

### Who will survive when God does this?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "No one will survive when God does this!" (See:

[Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [survive](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Then Balaam began his final prophecy. He said, "Woe! Who will survive when God does this?"

### UST

<sup>23</sup> Balaam ended his prophecies by saying, "Also, who can [survive](#) when God does all these things?"

## Numbers 24:24

### Kittim

This is the name of a city on an island in the Mediterranean Sea. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### they, too, will end in destruction

The abstract noun “destruction” can be stated as an action. Alternate translation: “God will destroy them also” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the armies of Assyria](#)
- [will come from](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Ships will come from the coast of Kittim; they will attack Assyria and will conquer Eber, but they, too, will end in destruction.”

### UST

<sup>24</sup> Ships [will come from](#) the Island of Cyprus, and the men in those ships will defeat [the armies of Assyria](#) and Eber. But God will get rid of those men, too.”

## Numbers 24:25

### Balak

This is the king of Moab. See how you translated this in [Numbers 22:2](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [return](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Balaam](#)
- [and Balak...to their homes](#)
- [returned](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Then Balaam got up and left. He returned to his home, and Balak also went away.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> Then [Balaam and Balak returned to their homes](#).

## **Numbers 25**

### **Numbers 25 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

The story of Balaam concludes in this chapter.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Foreign women**

Balaam told the young women from Moab to act friendly to the Israelite men and invite them to feasts in honor of their god Baal. The men went to the feasts and worshiped Baal. God was angry and killed 24,000 Israelite men. Foreign women are often the source of problems in Israel. They caused the men to worship their false gods. (See: [god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry](#))

## Numbers 25:1

### Shittim

This is the name of a place in Moab. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Moab, Moabite
- people, people group,
- profane, profaned

#### Translation Words - UST

- While the Israelites
- of the Moab people group
- who lived in that area
- some of the men became unfaithful

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Israel stayed in Shittim, and the men began to prostitute themselves with women of Moab,

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> [While the Israelites](#) were camped at a place called Acacia Grove, [some of the men became unfaithful](#) to God by sleeping with some of the women [of the Moab people group who lived in that area](#).



## Numbers 25:2

### bowed down

This was an act of worship. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- prostrate, worship
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- devour
- declare, proclaim, announce

#### Translation Words - UST

- to their gods
- They went to the feasts with the women and...the gods
- worshiped
- The Israelite men
- of the Moab people group
- accepted
- Then those women invited the men to come

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> for the Moabites had invited the people to the sacrifices to their gods. So the people ate and bowed down to Moabite gods.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> Then those women invited the men to come when the sacrifices were being offered to their gods. The Israelite men accepted. They went to the feasts with the women and worshiped the gods of the Moab people group.

## Numbers 25:3

### Peor

Peor was the name of a mountain. See how you translated this in [Numbers 23:28](#).

### Yahweh's anger was kindled

The increase in Yahweh's anger is spoken of as if it was a fire starting to burn. This can be stated in active form. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Numbers 21:20](#). Alternate translation: "Yahweh became very angry" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites

### Translation Words - UST

- That caused Yahweh
- By doing that, the Israelite people
- and he sent a severe plague on many of the Israelite people

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> The men of Israel joined in worshiping Baal of Peor, and Yahweh's anger was kindled against Israel.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> [By doing that, the Israelite people](#) joined the women in worshiping the god Baal who the Moab people group thought lived on Mount Peor. [That caused Yahweh](#) to become very angry with his people, [and he sent a severe plague on many of the Israelite people](#).

## Numbers 25:4

### all the leaders of the people

It is implied that this refers to the leaders who were guilty of idolatry. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "all the leaders of the people who are guilty of idolatry" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### to expose them in the daylight

This means that the leaders of Israel will kill these people and leave their dead bodies out where all the people can see them.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- people, people group,
- head
- return

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Do that
- I
- the Israelite
- Moses
- people
- the leaders of those who are doing this
- will no longer

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, "Kill all the leaders of the people and hang them up before me to expose them in the daylight, so that my fierce anger may turn away from Israel."

### UST

<sup>4</sup> [Yahweh](#) said this to [Moses](#): "Seize all [the leaders of those who are doing this](#) and execute them while I am watching. [Do that](#) in the daytime. After you do that, [I will no longer](#) be angry with [the Israelite people](#)."

## Numbers 25:5

### to Israel's leaders

"to Israel's leaders who were not guilty of idolatry"

### Peor

Peor was the name of a mountain. See how you translated this in [Numbers 23:28](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the other Israelite leaders...must execute](#)
- [So Moses](#)
- [the other Israelite leaders...must execute](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> So Moses said to Israel's leaders, "Each of you must execute his people who have joined in worshiping Baal of Peor."

### UST

<sup>5</sup> [So Moses](#) said to [the other Israelite leaders](#), "Each of you [must execute](#) your men who have joined others in worshiping Baal."

## Numbers 25:6

### brought among his family members a Midianite woman

It is implied that he brought her among his camp to have sex with her. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “brought a Midianite woman to the Israelite camp to sleep with her” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### in the sight of Moses and all the community of the people of Israel

Here “in the sight of” is an idiom that means they heard about it, or found out about it. (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- feast, feasting

#### Translation Words - UST

- while many people
- one of the Israelite men
- with her...the people
- one of the Israelite men
- with her...the people
- Moses...heard of it
- at the

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Then one of the men of Israel came and brought among his family members a Midianite woman. This happened in the sight of Moses and all the community of the people of Israel, while they were weeping at the entrance to the tent of meeting.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> But later, [while many people](#) were crying [at the](#) entrance of the sacred tent, [one of the Israelite men](#) brought a woman from the Midian people group into his tent and started to sleep [with her](#). [Moses](#) and all [the people heard of it](#).

## Numbers 25:7

### Eleazar

This is the name of Aaron's son. See how you translated it in [Numbers 3:2](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- priest, priesthood
- Aaron
- hand
- spear, spearmen

#### Translation Words - UST

- [who was a grandson](#)
- of
- he
- Aaron
- [rose up from among the community, grabbed a spear](#)
- [rose up from among the community, grabbed a spear](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> When Phinehas son of Eleazar son of Aaron the priest, saw that, he rose up from among the community and took a spear in his hand.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> When Phinehas, [who was a grandson of Aaron](#), heard this [he rose up from among the community, grabbed a spear](#).

## Numbers 25:8

### He followed

"Phinehas followed"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites

#### Translation Words - UST

- them
- the Israelites
- the Israelites
- the Israelites

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> He followed the Israelite man into the tent and thrust the spear through both of their bodies, both the Israelite man and the woman. So a plague that God had sent on the people of Israel stopped.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Then he rushed into the man's tent. He thrust the spear completely through the man's body and into the woman's belly and killed both of [them](#). When he did that, the plague that had started to strike [the Israelites](#) stopped.

## Numbers 25:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,

### Translation Words - UST

- already died

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Those who died by the plague were twenty-four thousand in number.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> But twenty-four thousand people had already died from that plague.



## Numbers 25:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses and said,

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> Then [Yahweh](#) said [to Moses](#),

## Numbers 25:11

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh begins to speak to Moses.

### turned my rage away from the people of Israel

God's rage is spoken of as if it were something that could be physically pushed aside in order to stop it. Alternate translation: "caused me to no longer be angry with the people of Israel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I have not consumed the people of Israel in my fierceness

God is spoken of as if he were a fierce animal that could have eaten up the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "I have not destroyed the people of Israel in my terrible anger" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- son
- son (2)
- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- wrath, fury
- priest, priesthood
- Aaron
- consume, devour

### Translation Words - UST

- Phinehas
- Phinehas (2)
- Israelite people
- from doing that (2)
- to
- Israelite people
- Israelite people
- because I was extremely angry
- Phinehas
- Phinehas
- I was ready to get rid

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> "Phinehas son of Eleazar son of Aaron the priest, has turned my rage away from the people of Israel because he was passionate with my zeal among them. So I have not consumed the people of Israel in my fierceness.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> "[Phinehas](#) has caused me to stop being angry with the [Israelite people](#), by being as eager as I am [to](#) stop this sinful behavior. [I was ready to get rid](#) of all the [Israelite people because I was extremely angry](#), but Phinehas has prevented me [from doing that](#).

## Numbers 25:12

### Connecting Statement:

This continues Yahweh's speech from verse 11.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [peacemakers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [agreement](#)
- [a special peace](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Therefore say, 'Yahweh says, "Look, I am giving to Phinehas my covenant of peace.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Now tell him that I am making [a special peace agreement](#) with him.

## Numbers 25:13

### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of Yahweh's speech that begins in verse 11.

### For him...of Israel. ""

This is the end of Yahweh's speech from [Numbers 25:11] (./10.md). This has quotations within quotations. The direct quotations can be stated as indirect quotation. "Therefore say to them that Yahweh says that he is giving to Phinehas his covenant of peace. For him and his descendants after him, it will be a covenant of an everlasting priesthood because he was zealous for Yahweh, his God. He has atoned for the people of Israel." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [them](#)
- [he was very eager to honor me, his God](#)
- [In this agreement](#)
- [Israel](#)

### ULT

**13** For him and his descendants after him, it will be a covenant of an everlasting priesthood because he was zealous for me, his God. He has atoned for the people of Israel. ""

### UST

**13** [In this agreement](#), I am promising to give to him and to his descendants the right to be priests. I am doing this because he showed that [he was very eager to honor me, his God](#), by stopping this sinful behavior. He has satisfied my holy righteousness against the sinfulness of [Israel](#) by causing me to forgive [them](#) for their sin."

## Numbers 25:14

### Now

This switches from the main story line to background information about Zimri and Kozbi. (See: [Background Information](#))

### who was killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom Phinehas killed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Zimri...Salu

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- son of
- The Israelite
- the leader
- of a family

### ULT

**14** Now the name of the Israelite man who was killed with the Midianite woman was Zimri son of Salu, a leader of an ancestor's family among the Simeonites.

### UST

**14** [The Israelite](#) man who was killed with the woman of the Moab people group was named Zimri [son of](#) Salu, who was [the leader of a family](#) from the tribe of Simeon.

## Numbers 25:15

### Zur

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Kozbi

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- of the clans
- leader of one
- of the clans

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> The name of the Midianite woman who was killed was Kozbi daughter of Zur, who was head of a tribe and family in Midian.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> The woman's name was Kozbi. She was the daughter of Zur, who was the [leader of one of the clans](#) of the Midian people group.

## Numbers 25:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> So Yahweh spoke to Moses and said,

### UST

<sup>16</sup> Then [Yahweh](#) said [to Moses](#),

## Numbers 25:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [adversary, enemy](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Take your men and attack](#)

#### ULT

17 "Treat the Midianites as enemies and attack them,

#### UST

17 "[Take your men and attack](#) the Midian people group and kill them.



## Numbers 25:18

### with their deceitfulness

The abstract noun “deceitfulness” can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: “by deceiving you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### They led you into evil

“They persuaded you to do this evil thing”

### in the case of Peor...in the matter of Peor

Both of these phrases mean that these things happened at Mount Peor.

### Peor

Peor was the name of a mountain. See how you translated this in [Numbers 23:28](#).

### who was killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom Phinehas killed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [adversary, enemy](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [enemies](#)

### ULT

**18** for they treated you like enemies with their deceitfulness. They led you into evil in the case of Peor and in the case of their sister Kozbi, the daughter of a leader in Midian, who was killed on the day of the plague in the matter of Peor.”

### UST

**18** They have become your [enemies](#), because they tricked you Israelite people and induced many of you to worship Baal, and because one of your men slept with Kozbi, who was the daughter of a leader of the Midian people group. She was killed at the time the plague started because of the people who sinned at Mount Peor.”

## Numbers 26

### Numbers 26 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

The ULT sets the lines in 26:12-17, 20-26, 29-32, 35, 38-39, 44-45, 48-49, 57-58 farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text because they are long lists.

The people are counted in preparation for entering into the Promised Land. (See: [Promised Land](#))

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### A new generation

None of the adults who came out of Egypt with Moses were still alive except the two faithful spies, Joshua and Caleb. (See: [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [unfaithful](#), [unfaithfulness](#), [trustworthy](#))

## Numbers 26:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- Moses
- Aaron

### Translation Words - UST

- the...Eleazar
- Yahweh
- the...Eleazar
- Moses
- the...Eleazar

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> It came about after the plague that Yahweh spoke to Moses and Eleazar son of Aaron the priest. He said,

### UST

<sup>1</sup> After the plague ended, [Yahweh](#) said to [Eleazar](#) and [Moses](#),

## Numbers 26:2

### Count all the community

They were only to count the men, not the women. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Count all the men of the community" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### twenty years old and up

"20 years old and older" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- people of
- of
- Israel again
- Israel again
- the men who are
- along with their family names
- the men who are
- fight in battles

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> "Count all the community of the people of Israel, from twenty years old and up, by their ancestor's families, all who are able to go to war for Israel."

### UST

<sup>2</sup> "Count all the [people of Israel again](#). Write down the names [of](#) all [the men who are](#) at least 20 years old who are able to [fight in battles, along with their family names](#)."

## Numbers 26:3

### spoke to them

“spoke to the Israelite leaders”

### plains

A plain is a large flat area of land.

### Translation Words - ULT

- priest, priesthood
- Moab, Moabite
- Moses
- Jericho

### Translation Words - UST

- the
- of Moab
- Moses
- across from Jericho

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> So Moses and Eleazar the priest spoke to them in the plains of Moab by the Jordan at Jericho and said,

### UST

<sup>3</sup> So while the Israelites were on [the](#) plains [of Moab](#), by the Jordan [across from Jericho](#), Eleazar and [Moses](#) told this to the Israelite leaders,

## Numbers 26:4

### twenty years old and up

"20 years old and older" (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [has commanded](#)
- [Write down the names of all](#)
- [descendants of Jacob who came](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the Israelite men who](#)
- [us](#)
- [Egypt who were still alive](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> "Count the people, from twenty years old and up, as Yahweh commanded Moses and the people of Israel, who came out of the land of Egypt."

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> "[Write down the names of all the Israelite men who](#) are at least 20 years old, as [Yahweh has commanded us](#)." So they did that, and this is a record of all the [descendants of Jacob who came](#) out of [Egypt who were still alive](#).

## Numbers 26:5

### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

### was the firstborn of Israel

Here “Israel” refers to the man also known as Jacob.

### From his son

The word “his” refers to Rueben.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Reuben
- Reuben
- family, household
- family, household
- firstborn

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Reuben
- Reuben
- family, household
- family, household
- firstborn

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Reuben was the firstborn of Israel. From his son Hanok came the clan of the Hanokites. From Pallu came the clan of the Palluites.

### UST

<sup>5-7</sup> These are the descendants of Reuben, Jacob’s oldest son:

the Hanokites descended from his son Hanok,

the Palluites descended from his son Pallu,

the Hezronites descended from his son Hezron,

the Carmites descended from his son Carmi.

The Israelite leaders counted 43,730 men from the tribe of Reuben.

## Numbers 26:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- family, household
- family, household (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- family, household
- family, household (2)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> From Hezron came the clan of the Hezronites. From Karmi came the clan of the Karmites.

### UST



## Numbers 26:7

### 43,730 men

“forty-three thousand seven hundred and thirty men” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [family](#), [household](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [family](#), [household](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> These were the clans of Reuben, who numbered 43,730 men.

#### UST

<sup>5-7</sup> These are the descendants of Reuben, Jacob's oldest son:

the Hanokites descended from his son Hanok,

the Palluites descended from his son Pallu,

the Hezronites descended from his son Hezron,

the Carmites descended from his son Carmi.

The Israelite leaders counted 43,730 men from the tribe of Reuben.

## Numbers 26:8

### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Eliab

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 16:1](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Eliab was a son of Pallu.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Pallu's [son](#) was Eliab

## Numbers 26:9

### Eliab...Dathan...Abiram

See how you translated these men's names in [Numbers 16:1](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [call, call out](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [conspire](#)
- [and his grandsons](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses and](#)
- [Aaron and](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Eliab's sons were Nemuel, Dathan, and Abiram. These were the same Dathan and Abiram who followed Korah when they challenged Moses and Aaron and rebelled against Yahweh.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> [and his grandsons](#) were Nemuel, Dathan and Abiram. Dathan and Abiram were the leaders who joined with Korah to [conspire](#) against [Aaron and Moses](#) [and](#) rebelled against [Yahweh](#).

## Numbers 26:10

### The earth opened its mouth and swallowed them up

Here the earth is spoken of as if it were a person opening its mouth and eating something. Alternate translation: "Yahweh caused the earth to split open, and the men fell in the hole" (See: [Personification](#))

### fire devoured 250 men

Here the fire is spoken of as if it were a large animal devouring something. Alternate translation: "Yahweh caused a fire that killed 250 men" (See: [Personification](#))

### 250 men

"two hundred and fifty men" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- fire that
- But the earth

### ULT

**10** The earth opened its mouth and swallowed them up together with Korah when all his followers died. At that time, fire devoured 250 men, who became a warning sign.

### UST

**10** [But the earth](#) opened up and swallowed them and Korah. Yahweh also sent a [fire that](#) burned up 250 men who supported those three men. That was a warning to all the Israelite people that they should respect and obey the leaders whom Yahweh had appointed.

## Numbers 26:11

### Korah's line

"all of Korah's family"

### die out

"end"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [But the descendants of](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> But Korah's line did not die out.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> [But the descendants of](#) Korah did not die on that day.

## Numbers 26:12

### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- clan
- family, household
- family, household
- family, household (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- clan
- family, household
- family, household
- family, household (2)

### ULT

**12** The clans of Simeon's descendants were these: Through Nemuel, the clan of the Nemuelites, through Jamin, the clan of the Jaminites, through Jakin, the clan of the Jakinites,

### UST

**12-14** These are the descendants of Simeon:

the Nemuelites descended from his son Nemuel,

the Jaminites descended from his son Jamin,

the Jakinites descended from his son Jakin,

the Zerahites descended from his son Zerah,

the Shaulites descended from his son Shaul.

The Israelite leaders counted 22,200 men from the tribe of Simeon.

## Numbers 26:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- family, household
- family, household (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- family, household
- family, household (2)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> through Zerah, the clan of the Zerahites, through Shaul, the clan of the Shaulites.

### UST

## Numbers 26:14

### 22,200 men

“twenty-two thousand two hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [family](#), [household](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [family](#), [household](#)

#### ULT

**14** These were the clans of Simeon's descendants, who numbered 22,200 men.

#### UST

**12-14** These are the descendants of Simeon:

the Nemuelites descended from his son Nemuel,

the Jaminites descended from his son Jamin,

the Jakinites descended from his son Jakin,

the Zerahites descended from his son Zerah,

the Shaulites descended from his son Shaul.

The Israelite leaders counted 22,200 men from the tribe of Simeon.



## Numbers 26:15

### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Gad
- clan
- family, household
- family, household
- family, household (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Gad
- clan
- family, household
- family, household
- family, household (2)

### ULT

**15** The clans of Gad's descendants were these: Through Zephon, the clan of the Zephonites, through Haggi, the clan of the Haggites, through Shuni, the clan of the Shunites,

### UST

**15-18** These are the descendants of Gad:

the Zephonites descended from his son Zephon,

the Haggites descended from his son Haggi,

the Shunites descended from his son Shuni,

the Oznites descended from his son Ozni,

the Erites descended from his son Eri,

the Arodites descended from his son Arod,

the Arelites descended from his son Areli.

The Israelite leaders counted 40,500 men from the tribe of Gad.

## Numbers 26:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- family, household
- family, household (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- family, household
- family, household (2)

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> through Ozni, the clan of the Oznites,  
through Eri, the clan of the Erites,

#### UST

## Numbers 26:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- family, household
- family, household (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- family, household
- family, household (2)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> through Arod, the clan of the Arodites, through Areli, the clan of the Arelites.

### UST

## Numbers 26:18

### 40,500 men

“forty thousand five hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Gad
- family, household

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Gad
- family, household

#### ULT

**18** These were the clans of Gad's descendants, who numbered 40,500 men.

#### UST

**15-18** These are the descendants of Gad:

the Zephonites descended from his son Zephon,

the Haggites descended from his son Haggi,

the Shunites descended from his son Shuni,

the Oznites descended from his son Ozni,

the Erites descended from his son Eri,

the Arodites descended from his son Arod,

the Arelites descended from his son Areli.

The Israelite leaders counted 40,500 men from the tribe of Gad.

## Numbers 26:19

### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Judea
- Canaan, Canaanite
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Judea
- Canaan, Canaanite
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### ULT

**19** Judah's sons were Er and Onan, but these men died in the land of Canaan.

### UST

**19-22** Judah's sons, Er and Onan, died in Canaan before they had any children. These are the descendants of Judah:

the Shelanites descended from his son Shelah,

the Perezites descended from his son Perez,

the Zerahites descended from his son Zerah.

Perez was the father of Hezron and Hamul.

The Hezronites descended from Hezron,

the Hamulites descended from Hamul.

The Israelite leaders counted 76,500 men from the tribe of Judah.

## Numbers 26:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Judea
- clan
- family, household
- family, household
- family, household (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Judea
- clan
- family, household
- family, household
- family, household (2)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> The clans of Judah's other descendants were these: through Shelah, the clan of the Shelanites, through Perez, the clan of the Perezites, and through Zerah, the clan of the Zerahites.

### UST

## Numbers 26:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- family, household
- family, household (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- family, household
- family, household (2)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> The descendants of Perez were these:  
Through Hezron, the clan of the  
Hezronites, through Hamul, the clan of  
the Hamulites.

### UST

## Numbers 26:22

### 76,500 men

“seventy-six thousand five hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [family](#), [household](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Judea](#)
- [family](#), [household](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> These were the clans of Judah’s descendants, who numbered 76,500 men.

#### UST

<sup>19-22</sup> Judah’s sons, Er and Onan, died in Canaan before they had any children. These are the descendants of Judah:

the Shelanites descended from his son Shelah,

the Perezites descended from his son Perez,

the Zerahites descended from his son Zerah.

Perez was the father of Hezron and Hamul.

The Hezronites descended from Hezron,

the Hamulites descended from Hamul.

The Israelite leaders counted 76,500 men from the tribe of Judah.



## Numbers 26:23

### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- clan
- family, household
- family, household (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- clan
- family, household
- family, household (2)

### ULT

**23** The clans of Issachar's descendants were these: Through Tola, the clan of the Tolaites, through Puah, the clan of the Puites,

### UST

**23-25** These are the descendants of Issachar:

the Tolaites descended from his son Tola,

the Puites descended from his son Puah,

the Jashubites descended from his son Jashub,

the Shimronites descended from his son Shimron,

The Israelite leaders counted 64,300 men from the tribe of Issachar.

## Numbers 26:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- family, household
- family, household (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- family, household
- family, household (2)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> through Jashub, the clan of the Jashubites, through Shimron, the clan of the Shimronites.

### UST

## Numbers 26:25

### 64,300 men

“sixty-four thousand three hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [family](#), [household](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [family](#), [household](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> These were the clans of Issachar, who numbered 64,300 men.

#### UST

<sup>23-25</sup> These are the descendants of Issachar:

the Tolaites descended from his son Tola,

the Puites descended from his son Puah,

the Jashubites descended from his son Jashub,

the Shimronites descended from his son Shimron,

The Israelite leaders counted 64,300 men from the tribe of Issachar.

## Numbers 26:26

### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- clan
- family, household
- family, household
- family, household (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- clan
- family, household
- family, household
- family, household (2)

### ULT

**26** The clans of Zebulun's descendants were these: Through Sered, the clan of the Seredites, through Elon, the clan of the Elonites, through Jahleel, the clan of the Jahleelites.

### UST

**26-27** These are the descendants of Zebulun:

the Seredites descended from his son Sered,

the Elonites descended from his son Elon,

the Jahleelites descended from his son Jahleel,

The Israelite leaders counted 60,500 men from the tribe of Zebulun.

## Numbers 26:27

### 60,500 men

“sixty thousand five hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [family](#), [household](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [family](#), [household](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> These were the clans of the Zebulunites, who numbered 60,500 men.

#### UST

<sup>26-27</sup> These are the descendants of Zebulun:

the Seredites descended from his son Sered,

the Elonites descended from his son Elon,

the Jahleelites descended from his son Jahleel,

The Israelite leaders counted 60,500 men from the tribe of Zebulun.

## Numbers 26:28

### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Joseph (OT)
- clan

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Joseph (OT)
- clan

### ULT

**28** The clans of Joseph's descendants were Manasseh and Ephraim.

### UST

**28-29** The sons of Joseph are Manasseh and Ephraim. These are the descendants of Manasseh:

the Makirites descended from his son Machir.

Makir was the father of Gilead.

The Gileadites descended from Gilead.

## Numbers 26:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Gilead, Gileadite
- family, household
- family, household

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Gilead, Gileadite
- family, household
- family, household

### ULT

**29** The descendants of Manasseh were these: through Makir, the clan of the Makirites (Makir was Gilead's father), through Gilead, the clan of the Gileadites.

### UST

**28-29** The sons of Joseph are Manasseh and Ephraim. These are the descendants of Manasseh:

the Makirites descended from his son Machir.

Makir was the father of Gilead.

The Gileadites descended from Gilead.

## Numbers 26:30

### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- family, household
- family, household (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- family, household
- family, household (2)

### ULT

**30** Gilead's descendants were these:  
Through Iezer, the clan of the Iezerites,  
through Helek, the clan of the Helekites,

### UST

**30-32** Theses are the descendants of  
Gilead:

the Iezerites descended from his  
son Iezer,

the Helekites descended from  
his son Helek,

the Asrielites descended from  
his son Asriel,

the Shechemites descended  
from his son Shechem,

the Shemidaite descended from  
his son Shemida,

the Hephherites descended from  
his son Hephher.



## Numbers 26:31

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- family, household
- family, household (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- family, household
- family, household (2)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> through Asriel, the clan of the  
Asrielites, through Shechem, the clan of  
the Shechemites,

### UST

## Numbers 26:32

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- family, household
- family, household (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- family, household
- family, household (2)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> through Shemida, the clan of the Shemidaïtes, through Hephher, the clan of the Hephherites.

### UST

<sup>30-32</sup> These are the descendants of Gilead:

the Iezerites descended from his son Iezer,

the Helekites descended from his son Helek,

the Asrielites descended from his son Asriel,

the Shechemites descended from his son Shechem,

the Shemidaïtes descended from his son Shemida,

the Hephherites descended from his son Hephher.

## Numbers 26:33

### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### ULT

**33** Zelophehad son of Hepher had no sons, but only daughters. The names of his daughters were Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milkah, and Tirzah.

### UST

**33-34** Hepher's son Zelophehad did not have any sons, but he had five daughters—Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milkah, and Tirzah. The Israelite leaders counted 52,700 men from the tribe of Manasseh, who was one of the sons of Joseph.

## Numbers 26:34

### 52,700 men

“fifty-two thousand seven hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [family](#), [household](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [family](#), [household](#)

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> These were the clans of Manasseh, who numbered 52,700 men.

#### UST

<sup>33-34</sup> Hepher's son Zelophehad did not have any sons, but he had five daughters—Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milkah, and Tirzah. The Israelite leaders counted 52,700 men from the tribe of Manasseh, who was one of the sons of Joseph.

## Numbers 26:35

### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- clan
- family, household
- family, household
- family, household (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- clan
- family, household
- family, household
- family, household (2)

### ULT

**35** The clans of Ephraim's descendants were these: Through Shuthelah, the clan of the Shuthelahites, through Beker, the clan of the Bekerites, through Tahan, the clan of the Tahanites.

### UST

**35-37** These are the descendants of Ephraim:

the Shuthelahites descended from his son Shuthelah,

the Becherites descended from his son Becher,

the Tahanites descended from his son Tahan,

These are the descendents of Shuthelah:

the Eranites descended from his son Eran,

The Israelite leaders counted 32,500 men from the tribe of Ephraim, who was Joseph's other son.

## Numbers 26:36

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- family, household

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- family, household

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> The descendants of Shuthelah were, by Eran, the clan of the Eranites.

### UST

## Numbers 26:37

### 32,500 men

“thirty-two thousand five hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

### These were Joseph’s descendants, counted

The word “these” refers to all of the men descended from Joseph’s sons, Ephraim and Manasseh. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “These were Joseph’s descendants, descended from his sons Manasseh and Ephraim, counted” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### counted in each of their clans

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they counted them in each of their clans” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [clan](#)
- [family, household](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [clan](#)
- [family, household](#)

### ULT

**37** These were the clans of Ephraim’s descendants, who numbered 32,500 men. These were Joseph’s descendants, counted in each of their clans.

### UST

**35-37** These are the descendants of Ephraim:

the Shuthelahites descended from his son Shuthelah,

the Becherites descended from his son Becher,

the Tahanites descended from his son Tahan,

These are the descendents of Shuthelah:

the Eranites descended from his son Eran,

The Israelite leaders counted 32,500 men from the tribe of Ephraim, who was Joseph’s other son.

## Numbers 26:38

### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- clan
- family, household
- family, household
- family, household (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- clan
- family, household
- family, household
- family, household (2)

### ULT

**38** The clans of Benjamin's descendants were these: Through Bela, the clan of the Belaites, through Ashbel, the clan of the Ashbelites, through Ahiham, the clan of the Ahihamites,

### UST

**38-41** These are the descendants of Benjamin:

the Belaites descended from his son Bela,

the Ashbelites descended from his son Ashbel,

the Ahihamites descended from his son Ahiham,

the Shuphamites descended from his son Shephupham,

the Huphamites descended from his son Hupham,

Bela was the father of Ard and Naaman.

The Ardites descended from his son Ard,

the Naamites descended from his son Naamam.

The Israelite leaders counted 45,600 men from the tribe of Benjamin.



## Numbers 26:39

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- family, household
- family, household (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- family, household
- family, household (2)

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> through Shephupham, the clan of the Shuphamites, through Hupham, the clan of the Huphamites.

### UST

## Numbers 26:40

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- family, household
- family, household

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- family, household
- family, household

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> Bela's sons were Ard and Naaman.  
From Ard came the clan of the Ardites,  
and from Naaman came the clan of the  
Naamites.

### UST

## Numbers 26:41

### 45,600 men

"forty-five thousand six hundred men" (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)
- [clan](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)
- [clan](#)

#### ULT

**41** These were the clans of Benjamin's descendants. They numbered 45,600 men.

#### UST

**38-41** These are the descendants of Benjamin:

the Belaites descended from his son Bela,

the Ashbelites descended from his son Ashbel,

the Ahiramites descended from his son Ahiram,

the Shuphamites descended from his son Shephupham,

the Huphamites descended from his son Hupham,

Bela was the father of Ard and Naaman.

The Ardites descended from his son Ard,

the Naamites descended from his son Naamam.

The Israelite leaders counted 45,600 men from the tribe of Benjamin.

## Numbers 26:42

### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- clan
- clan
- family, household
- family, household

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- clan
- clan
- family, household
- family, household

### ULT

<sup>42</sup> The clans of Dan's descendants were, by Shuham, the clans of the Shuhamites. These were the clans of Dan's descendants.

### UST

<sup>42-43</sup> These are the descendants of Dan:

the Shuhamites descended from his son Shuhman,

The Israelite leaders counted 64,400 men from the tribe of Dan.

## Numbers 26:43

### 64,400 men

“sixty-four thousand four hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [family](#), [household](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [family](#), [household](#)

#### ULT

<sup>43</sup> All the clans of the Shuhamites numbered 64,400 men.

#### UST

<sup>42-43</sup> These are the descendants of Dan:

the Shuhamites descended from  
his son Shuhman,

The Israelite leaders counted 64,400  
men from the tribe of Dan.

## Numbers 26:44

### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- clan
- family, household
- family, household
- family, household (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- clan
- family, household
- family, household
- family, household (2)

### ULT

**44** The clans of Asher's descendants were these: Through Imnah, the clan of the Imnites, through Ishvi, the clan of the Ishvites, through Beriah, the clan of the Beriites.

### UST

**44-47** These are the descendants of Asher:

the Imnites descended from his son Imnah,

the Ishvites descended from his son Ishvi,

the Berites descended from his son Beriah,

Beriah had two sons, Heber and Malkiel.

The Heberites descended from his son Heber

the Malkielites descended from his son Malkiel.

Asher also had a daughter named Serah.

The Israelite leaders counted 53,400 men from the tribe of Asher.

## Numbers 26:45

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- family, household
- family, household (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- family, household
- family, household (2)

### ULT

<sup>45</sup> The descendants of Beriah were these: Through Heber, the clan of the Heberites, through Malkiel, the clan of the Malkielites.

### UST

## Numbers 26:46

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

<sup>46</sup> The name of Asher's daughter was Serah.

**UST**



## Numbers 26:47

### 53,400 men

“fifty-three thousand four hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [family](#), [household](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [family](#), [household](#)

#### ULT

<sup>47</sup> These were the clans of Asher’s descendants, who numbered 53,400 men.

#### UST

<sup>44-47</sup> These are the descendants of Asher:

the Imnites descended from his son Imnah,

the Ishvites descended from his son Ishvi,

the Berites descended from his son Beriah,

Beriah had two sons, Heber and Malkiel.

The Heberites descended from his son Heber

the Malkielites descended from his son Malkiel.

Asher also had a daughter named Serah.

The Israelite leaders counted 53,400 men from the tribe of Asher.

## Numbers 26:48

### General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- clan
- family, household
- family, household (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- clan
- family, household
- family, household (2)

### ULT

**48** The clans of Naphtali's descendants were these: Through Jahzeel, the clan of the Jahzeelites, through Guni, the clan of the Gunites,

### UST

**48-50** These are the descendants of Naphtali:

the Jahzeelites descended from his son Jahzeel,

the Gunites descended from his son Guni,

the Jezerites descended from his son Jezer,

the Shillemites descended from his son Shillem,

The Israelite leaders counted 45,400 men from the tribe of Naphtali.

## Numbers 26:49

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- family, household
- family, household (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- family, household
- family, household (2)

### ULT

<sup>49</sup> through Jezer, the clan of the Jezerites, through Shillem, the clan of the Shillemites.

### UST

## Numbers 26:50

### 45,400 men

“forty-five thousand four hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [clan](#)
- [family](#), [household](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [clan](#)
- [family](#), [household](#)

#### ULT

**50** These were the clans of Naphtali's descendants, who numbered 45,400 men.

#### UST

**48-50** These are the descendants of Naphtali:

the Jahzeelites descended from his son Jahzeel,

the Gunites descended from his son Guni,

the Jezerites descended from his son Jezer,

the Shillemites descended from his son Shillem,

The Israelite leaders counted 45,400 men from the tribe of Naphtali.

## Numbers 26:51

### the complete count

“the total number”

**601730**

“six-hundred and one thousand, seven hundred and thirty” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [The total](#)
- [of the](#)
- [Israelite men](#)

#### ULT

**51** This was the complete count of men among the people of Israel: 601,730.

#### UST

**51** [The total of the Israelite men](#) whom the leaders counted was 601,730.

## Numbers 26:52

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>52</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses and said,

#### UST

<sup>52</sup> Then [Yahweh](#) said [to Moses](#),

## Numbers 26:53

### The land must be divided

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You must divide the land" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### these men

This refers to all of the men that were counted in their clans, beginning in [Numbers 26:5](#).

### according to the number of their names

"by the number of people in each clan"

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- name
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- Canaan land among the tribes
- of people in each tribe
- Distribute the land

### ULT

**53** "The land must be divided among these men as an inheritance according to the number of their names.

### UST

**53** "Divide [Canaan land among the tribes](#). [Distribute the land](#) according to the number [of people in each tribe](#) that are on your lists.

## Numbers 26:54

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### give more inheritance

In this passage, the word “inheritance” refers to land inherited. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “give more land as an inheritance” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### who were counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom the leaders of Israel counted” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#)
- [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#)
- [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#)
- [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#)
- [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#)

### ULT

**54** To the larger clans you must give more inheritance, and to the smaller clans you must give less inheritance. To every family you must give an inheritance according to the number of men who were counted.

### UST

**54-56** Decide by casting lots to determine which group will get which area, but give the largest areas to the groups with the most people.”



## Numbers 26:55

### the land must be divided

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you must divide the land" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### by random lots

"by casting lots"

### it will be divided

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you will divide it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### ULT

**55** However, the land must be divided by random lots. They must inherit the land as it will be divided among their ancestors' tribes.

#### UST

## Numbers 26:56

### distributed to them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “and you must distribute the land to them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- lots, casting lots

#### Translation Words - UST

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- lots, casting lots

#### ULT

**56** Their inheritance must be divided among the larger and the smaller clans, distributed to them by random lot.”

#### UST

**54-56** Decide by casting lots to determine which group will get which area, but give the largest areas to the groups with the most people.”

## Numbers 26:57

### General Information:

This is a list of the Levite clans. Moses counts the Levites separately from the other tribes because they did not receive any land. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### counted clan by clan

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that the leaders also counted clan by clan” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Gershon...Kohath...Merari

See how you translated these men’s names in [Numbers 3:17](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [clan](#)
- [family, household](#)
- [family, household](#)
- [family, household](#) (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- [counted](#)
- [Levi](#)
- [the male descendants of](#)
- [in clans...Gershon](#)
- [descended from...Kohath](#)
- [The leaders also...and Merari](#) (2)

### ULT

<sup>57</sup> The Levite clans, counted clan by clan, were these: Through Gershon, the clan of the Gershonites, through Kohath, the clan of the Kohathites, through Merari, the clan of the Merarites.

### UST

<sup>57</sup> [The leaders also counted the male descendants of Levi](#). They were [in clans descended from Gershon, Kohath, and Merari](#).

## Numbers 26:58

### Amram's

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 3:19](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)
- [family](#), [household](#)
- [family](#), [household](#)
- [family](#), [household](#)
- [family](#), [household](#) (2)
- [family](#), [household](#)
- [family](#), [household](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Levi](#)
- [also included people from](#)
- [the clans](#)
- [Hebron](#)
- [All of them were](#) (2)
- [descendants of](#)
- [was the](#)

#### ULT

**58** The clans of Levi were these: the clan of the Libnites, the clan of the Hebronites, the clan of the Mahlites, the clan of the Mushites, and the clan of the Korahites. Kohath was the Amram's ancestor.

#### UST

**58** These [also included people from the clans](#) of Libni, [Hebron](#), Mahli, Mushi, and Korah. [All of them were descendants of Levi](#). Kohath [was the](#) ancestor of Amram,

## Numbers 26:59

### Amram

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 3:19](#).

### She bore to Amram their children

"She and Amram had children"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [and Moses](#)
- [in Egypt](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [of Levi](#)

#### ULT

<sup>59</sup> The name of Amram's wife was Jochebed, a descendant of Levi, who was born to Levites in Egypt. She bore to Amram their children, who were Aaron, Moses, and Miriam their sister.

#### UST

<sup>59</sup> whose wife was Jochebed. She also was a descendant [of Levi](#), but she was born [in Egypt](#). She and Amram had two sons, [Aaron and Moses](#), and their older sister Miriam.

## Numbers 26:60

### Nadab...Abihu...Ithamar

See how you translated these men's names in [Numbers 3:2](#).

#### ULT

<sup>60</sup> To Aaron were born Nadab and Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar.

#### UST

<sup>60</sup> Aaron's sons were Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar.

## Numbers 26:61

### they offered before Yahweh unacceptable fire

Here the word “fire” is used to refer to “burning incense.” See how you translated a similar phrase in [Numbers 3:4](#). Alternate translation: “they burned an incense offering to Yahweh in a way that he did not approve of” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh had commanded](#)
- [died](#)
- [burned](#)

#### ULT

**61** Nadab and Abihu died when they offered before Yahweh unacceptable fire.

#### UST

**61** But Nadab and Abihu [died](#) when they [burned](#) incense for a sacrifice to Yahweh in a way that disobeyed what [Yahweh had commanded](#).

## Numbers 26:62

### who were counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom the leaders counted” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### twenty-three thousand

“23,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

### one month old and up

“one month old and older”

### they were not counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “but the leaders did not count them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### because no inheritance was given to them

This can be stated in active form. Here “inheritance” refers to land inherited. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “because Yahweh said they would not receive any land as an inheritance” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [The leaders counted](#)
- [counted](#)
- [were counted](#)
- [men from](#)
- [the descendants of Levi](#)
- [the rest of](#)
- [the Israelite](#)
- [the Israelite](#)

### ULT

<sup>62</sup> The males who were counted among them numbered twenty-three thousand, all males one month old and up. But they were not counted among Israel's descendants because no inheritance was given to them among the people of Israel.

### UST

<sup>62</sup> [The leaders counted](#) twenty-three thousand [men from the descendants of Levi](#) who were at least one month old. But these men were not [counted](#) when [the rest of the Israelite](#) people [were counted](#), because were not given any land at that time.



## Numbers 26:63

### who were counted by Moses and Eleazar the priest

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom Moses and Eleazar the priest counted” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Jericho](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [said should be counted](#)
- [They counted](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)
- [on the](#)
- [of Moab](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [across from Jericho](#)

#### ULT

<sup>63</sup> These are the ones who were counted by Moses and Eleazar the priest. They counted the people of Israel in the plains of Moab by the Jordan at Jericho.

#### UST

<sup>63</sup> Those were the men whom Eleazar and [Moses said should be counted](#). [They counted the Israelite people on the](#) plains [of Moab](#), on the east side of the Jordan River, [across from Jericho](#).

## Numbers 26:64

### there was no man

"there were no men"

### who had been counted by Moses and Aaron the priest

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom Moses and Aaron the priest had counted" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### when the descendants of Israel were counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when they counted the descendants of Israel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [were](#)
- [of the...when the Israelites](#)
- [of the...when the Israelites](#)
- [on the lists that were made by](#)
- [and Moses](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)

### ULT

<sup>64</sup> But among these there was no man who had been counted by Moses and Aaron the priest when the descendants of Israel were counted in the wilderness of Sinai.

### UST

<sup>64</sup> None [of the](#) men whom they counted were [on the lists that were made by](#) Aaron [and Moses when the Israelites were in the wilderness](#) of Sinai.

## Numbers 26:65

### There was not a man left among them, except

The word “them” refers to all of the people who were counted in the wilderness of Sinai. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “The only ones who were still alive were” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### son of Jephunneh

Jephunneh was Caleb’s father. See how you translated this in [Numbers 13:6](#).

### son of Nun

Nun was Joshua’s father. See how you translated this in [Numbers 11:28](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Yahweh
- desert, wilderness

### Translation Words - UST

- were Jephunneh’s son Caleb
- son
- Yahweh had
- in this desert

### ULT

**65** For Yahweh had said that all of those people would certainly die in the wilderness. There was not a man left among them, except Caleb son of Jephunneh and Joshua son of Nun.

### UST

**65** They were told what [Yahweh had](#) said. He said, “They will all die [in this desert](#),” and that is what happened. The only ones who were still alive [were](#) [Jephunneh’s son Caleb](#) and Nun’s [son](#) Joshua.

## Numbers 27

### Numbers 27 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Daughters

The daughters of Korah received no land because their father was punished by Yahweh. Yahweh still graciously gave them their father's portion of land. (See: [grace](#), [gracious](#))

#### The new leader is Joshua

God told Moses to appoint Joshua as the new leader. Joshua became Yahweh's anointed leader. (See: [appoint](#), [appointed](#) and [anoint](#), [anointed](#), [anointing](#))

## Numbers 27:1

### Then to Moses came the daughters of Zelophehad...son of Joseph

"Then the daughters of Zelophehad son of Hepher son of Gilead son of Machir son of Manasseh, of the clans of Manasseh son of Joseph came to Moses." This tells us the genealogy of Zelophehad.

### Zelophehad son of Hepher...Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milkah, and Tirzah

See how you translated these men's names in [Numbers 26:33](#).

### Gilead...Machir

See how you translated these men's names in [Numbers 26:29](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [son](#) (4)
- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [clan](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Zelophehad](#)
- [Zelophehad](#) (2)
- [Zelophehad](#) (3)
- [Zelophehad](#) (4)
- [of](#)
- [They were](#)
- [Zelophehad](#)
- [One day the](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then to Moses came the daughters of Zelophehad son of Hepher son of Gilead son of Machir son of Manasseh, of the clans of Manasseh son of Joseph. These were the names of his daughters: Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milkah, and Tirzah.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> [One day the](#) five daughters [of Zelophehad](#) came to Moses. [They were](#) Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milkah, and Tirzah.

## Numbers 27:2

### They stood

"The daughters of Zelophehad stood"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- priest, priesthood
- Moses
- feast, feasting
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

#### Translation Words - UST

- Eleazar
- Moses
- of the sacred
- leaders

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> They stood before Moses, Eleazar the priest, the leaders, and before all the community at the entrance to the tent of meeting. They said,

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> They came to the entrance [of the sacred](#) tent and stood in front of [Eleazar](#), [Moses](#), the tribal [leaders](#), and many other Israelite people.

## Numbers 27:3

### who conspired against Yahweh in the company of Korah

The people in the company of Korah gathered together and rebelled against Yahweh. Yahweh caused them to die, because of their sin. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “who died because they were among Korah’s followers who rebelled against Yahweh” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### for his own sin

“because of his own sin”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [any sons](#)
- [who rebelled against Yahweh](#)
- [They said, “Our father](#)
- [the desert, and](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> “Our father died in the wilderness. He was not among those who conspired against Yahweh in the company of Korah. He died for his own sin, and he had no sons.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> [They said, “Our father](#) died during the time that we were in [the desert, and](#) he did not have any sons. But he was not among those who supported Korah, [who rebelled against Yahweh](#), and he died because of his own sin. He did not have [any sons](#).

## Numbers 27:4

### Why should our father's name be taken away from among his clan members because he had no son?

At that time, only sons received land as an inheritance. The daughters use this question to suggest that they should receive the inheritance and continue the family clan. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not remove our father's name from the clan members just because he did not have a son." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Give us land among our father's relatives

This means that they are asking to inherit land near where their father's relatives are inheriting land. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Give us land where our father's relatives live" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Why should our father's name be taken away from among his clan members because he had no son? Give us land among our father's relatives."

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> Why should [the name of his clan](#) disappear because [our father had](#) no [sons](#)? So give [us some land](#) like our [father's relatives](#) will be getting!"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [family, household](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [us some land](#)
- [sons](#)
- [the name](#)
- [our father had](#)
- [father's relatives](#)
- [of his clan](#)



## Numbers 27:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [Moses asked](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> So Moses brought their case before Yahweh.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> So [Moses asked Yahweh](#) what to do about their case.

## Numbers 27:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [And Yahweh](#)
- [And Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses and said,

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> [And Yahweh](#) replied,

## Numbers 27:7

### among their father's relatives

This means that they will be inherit land where their father's relatives are inheriting land. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "where their father's relatives live" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

#### Translation Words - UST

- some land
- the land that would have been given
- to their brothers if they had any
- their father's relatives
- What the
- the land that would have been given

#### ULT

7 "Zelophehad's daughters are speaking correctly. You must certainly give them land as an inheritance among their father's relatives, and you must ensure that their father's inheritance passes on to them.

#### UST

7 "[What the](#) daughters of Zelophehad are requesting is right. You must give them [some land](#), just as you are giving to [their father's relatives](#). Give to each of them some of [the land that would have been given to their brothers if they had any](#).

## Numbers 27:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

### Translation Words - UST

- the things...would have inherited
- the Israelite people
- his sons
- the Israelite people
- the things...would have inherited

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> You must speak to the people of Israel and say, 'If a man dies and has no son, then you must cause his inheritance to pass to his daughter.'

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Also tell this to the Israelite people: 'If a man who has no sons dies, give the things that his sons would have inherited to his daughters.'

## Numbers 27:9

### General Information:

This continues God's law about who will receive land if a man does not have any sons.

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- brother

### Translation Words - UST

- the things that his sons...daughters would have inherited
- his brothers

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> If he has no daughter, then you must give his inheritance to his brothers.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> If the man has no sons or daughters, give to his brothers the things that his sons and daughters would have inherited.

## Numbers 27:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- brother
- brother
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### Translation Words - UST

- things that his sons or daughters or...would have inherited
- brothers
- brothers
- his father's

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> If he has no brothers, then you must give his inheritance to his father's brothers.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> If the man had no brothers, give to his father's brothers the things that his sons or daughters or brothers would have inherited.

## Numbers 27:11

### be a law established by decree for the people of Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “be a law that all the people of Israel must obey” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### has commanded me

Here “me” refers to Moses.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#)
- [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#)
- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [judge](#), [judgment](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [family](#), [household](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#)
- [others would have inherited](#)
- [That](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [people](#)
- [to you](#)
- [the Israelite](#)
- [for](#)
- [Moses, to tell them](#)
- [father](#)
- [his closest relative](#)

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> If his father has no brothers, then you must give his inheritance to his nearest relative in his clan, and he must take it for his own. This will be a law established by decree for the people of Israel, as Yahweh has commanded me.”

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> If the man's [father](#) has no [brothers](#), give to [his closest relative](#) the things that the [others would have inherited](#).<sup>1</sup> [That](#) will be a rule [for the Israelite people](#), because I am giving this as a [command to you, Moses, to tell them](#).”

## Numbers 27:12

### mountains of Abarim

This is a range of mountains in Moab. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### that I have given to the people of Israel

Here Yahweh speaks about the land that he is giving the Israel as if he has already given it to them. He speaks this way to emphasize that he is committed to give it to them. Alternate translation: “that I will give to the people of Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [east of the Jordan River](#)
- [One day, Yahweh](#)
- [people](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [the land that](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Yahweh said to Moses, “Go up the mountains of Abarim and look at the land that I have given to the people of Israel.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> [One day, Yahweh](#) said to [Moses](#), “Climb to the top of the Abarim mountains [east of the Jordan River](#). Then look out over [the land that](#) I am giving to the Israelite [people](#).



## Numbers 27:13

### you, too, must be gathered to your people

This is a euphemism that means Moses will die and his spirit will go to the place where his ancestors are. Alternate translation: “you must die” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### like Aaron your brother

You can make clear the understood information that Aaron died. Alternate translation: “like your older brother Aaron died” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [your older brother](#)
- [will...Aaron did](#)
- [will...Aaron did](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> After you have seen it, you, too, must be gathered to your people, like Aaron your brother.

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> After you have seen it, you will die just like [your older brother Aaron did](#).

## Numbers 27:14

### you two rebelled

This refers to Moses and Aaron.

### wilderness of Zin

See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 13:21](#).

### when the water flowed from the rock, in your anger

This refers to an event when Yahweh made water miraculously flow out of a rock. God told Moses to speak to the rock. Instead, Moses hit the rock because he was angry with the people. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### you failed to honor me as holy

“you did not treat me as holy”

### before the eyes of the whole community

Here the people of the people are represented by their “eyes” to emphasize what they saw. Alternate translation: “in front of the whole community” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### waters of Meribah

See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 20:13](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [set apart](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [you did not show the people my holy power](#)
- [that you both disobeyed...Zin...I told you to speak to the rock](#)
- [that you both disobeyed...Zin...I told you to speak to the rock](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> This will happen because you two rebelled against my command in the wilderness of Zin. There, when the water flowed from the rock, in your anger you failed to honor me as holy before the eyes of the whole community.” These are the waters of Meribah of Kadesh in the wilderness of Zin.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> The reason that you will die and not enter that land is [that you both disobeyed](#) my instructions in the wilderness of [Zin](#). When the Israelite people rebelled against me there at Meribah, near Kadesh, [I told you to speak to the rock](#) to cause water to flow out of it. But because you struck the rock instead of speaking to it, [you did not show the people my holy power.](#)”

## Numbers 27:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Then Moses spoke to Yahweh and said,

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> Then [Moses](#) said this to [Yahweh](#),

## Numbers 27:16

### the God of the spirits of all humanity

Possible meaning are 1) here “spirits” refers to all people.” Alternate translation: “the God over all of humanity” or 2) the reference to “spirits” refers to God having given life and breath to all people. Alternate translation: “the God who gives breath to all people” or “the God who give life to all humanity” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### a man over the community

To be “over” a group of people means to have authority to lead them. Alternate translation: “a man to lead the community” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [who directs](#)
- [the God](#)
- [So please appoint a new leader](#)
- [Yahweh, you are](#)

### ULT

**16** “May you, Yahweh, the God of the spirits of all humanity, appoint a man over the community,

### UST

**16** “[Yahweh, you are the God who directs](#) the spirits of all people. [So please appoint a new leader](#) for the Israelite people.

## Numbers 27:17

**a man who may go out and come in before them and lead them out and bring them in**

This is an idiom that means a person who will lead all the people and also lead the army into battle. (See: [Idiom](#))

**so that your community is not like sheep that have no shepherd**

This is a simile that means without a leader the people will wander and be helpless. (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- who will lead your people...around like sheep that do not
- who will lead your people...around like sheep that do not
- a battle

### ULT

**17** a man who may go out and come in before them and lead them out and bring them in, so that your community is not like sheep that have no shepherd."

### UST

**17** Appoint someone [who will lead your people](#) when they go to fight [a battle](#), so that they will not just wander [around like sheep that do not](#) have a shepherd."

## Numbers 27:18

### Take Joshua son of Nun, a man in whom my Spirit lives

Yahweh's Spirit is in Joshua, meaning that Joshua obeys Yahweh and follows his commands.

### lay your hand on him

This is a sign of dedicating someone to God's service. Alternate translation: "lay your hand on him to appoint him" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Joshua
- hand

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Spirit
- Yahweh replied
- to appoint
- Joshua
- Lay...hands

#### ULT

**18** Yahweh said to Moses, "Take Joshua son of Nun, a man in whom my Spirit lives, and lay your hand on him.

#### UST

**18** [Yahweh replied](#), "Get [Joshua son](#) of Nun, who has my [Spirit](#) within him. [Lay](#) your [hands](#) on him [to appoint](#) him.

## Numbers 27:19

### command him before their eyes to lead them

Here the people are represented by their “eyes” to emphasize what they see. Alternate translation: “in front of all of them command Joshua to lead the people of Israel” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [priest](#), [priesthood](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [commission him to be the new leader](#)
- [priest](#)

#### ULT

**19** Place him before Eleazar the priest and before all the community, and command him before their eyes to lead them.

#### UST

**19** Cause him to stand in front of Eleazar the [priest](#), as all the people are watching, and [commission him to be the new leader](#) of the Israelite people.

## Numbers 27:20

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses about Joshua.

### You must put some of your authority on him

Here Yahweh speaks of Moses giving some of his authority to Joshua as if it were an article of clothing that he could put on him. Alternate translation: “You should give him some of your authority” or “Let him decide what the people should do” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [that they](#)
- [Israelite people will know](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> You must put some of your authority on him, so that all the community of the people of Israel may obey him.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> Give to him some of the authority that you now have, in order that all the [Israelite people will know that they](#) must obey him.



## Numbers 27:21

### Urim

This was a sacred stone that the High Priest wore on his chest plate. He used it to determine God's will. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### It will be at his command that the people will go out and come in

This means that Joshua will have authority to command the movements of the community of Israel. "Going out" and "coming in" are two opposite commands used to emphasize that he will have full command over their movements. Alternate translation: "He will command the community's movements" (See: [Merism](#))

### both he and all the people of Israel with him, the whole community

Both of these phrases mean the same thing, and they are used together for emphasis. Alternate translation: "both he and the entire nation of Israel" (See: [Parallelism](#))

### ULT

**21** He will go before Eleazar the priest to seek my will for him by the decisions of the Urim. It will be at his command that the people will go out and come in, both he and all the people of Israel with him, the whole community."

### UST

**21** When you all need [me to](#) guide you, Joshua [will stand](#) in front of [Eleazar](#). Then by casting lots Eleazar will determine what they should do. At Joshua's [command](#) all [people of Israel](#) [will mobilize themselves together](#)."

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- people of
- will stand
- me to
- Israel will mobilize themselves together
- Eleazar
- command

## Numbers 27:22

### placed him before

"told him to stand in front of"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [priest](#), [priesthood](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Joshua](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [commanded](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [He](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Joshua](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> So Moses did as Yahweh had commanded him. He took Joshua and placed him before Eleazar the priest and all the community.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> So [Moses](#) did what [Yahweh](#) [commanded](#). [He](#) presented [Joshua](#) to Eleazar and to all the Israelite people.

## Numbers 27:23

### He laid his hands on him and commanded him to lead

“He” refers to Moses, and “him” refers to Joshua.

### He laid his hands on him

The laying on of hands was a way of setting a person apart to do a special task for God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### to lead

You can make clear the understood information to lead the people.

Alternate translation: “to lead the people” or “to be the leader of the Israelites” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### as Yahweh had commanded him to do

Here “him” refers to Moses.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to do the work](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [told Moses to](#)
- [his hands...him and commissioned him](#)
- [to do](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> He laid his hands on him and commanded him to lead, as Yahweh had commanded him to do.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> Moses laid [his hands](#) on [him and commissioned him to do the work](#) that [Yahweh told Moses to](#) tell him [to do](#).

## **Numbers 28**

### **Numbers 28 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Offerings for special days**

God commanded the Israelites to make special offerings for Sabbaths, new months, Passover and firstfruits. On each of these occasions, specific sacrifices were required. (See: [Sabbath](#) and [Passover](#) and [firstfruits](#))

## Numbers 28:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses and said,

### UST

<sup>1</sup> [Yahweh](#) said this [to Moses](#),

## Numbers 28:2

### at the appointed times

"at the times that I haven chosen"

### the food of my offerings made by fire to produce

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the food offerings that you will burn on the altar produce" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### a sweet aroma for me

"a smell I enjoy"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [bread](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Tell this](#)
- [people](#)
- [When they](#)
- [the offerings](#)
- [them](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> "Command the people of Israel and say to them, 'You must offer sacrifices to me at the appointed times, the food of my offerings made by fire to produce a sweet aroma for me.'

### UST

<sup>2</sup> "[Tell this](#) to the Israelite [people](#), 'Bring to me [the offerings](#) that will be burned on the altar. [When they](#) are burned, the smell will be very pleasing to me. And tell them that they must bring [them](#) at the proper time.

## Numbers 28:3

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### the offering made by fire

This can be stated in active form. "the burnt offering" or "the offering you have burned by fire on the altar" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [male lambs](#)
- [They must have no defects](#)
- [to me](#)
- [on the altar](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> You must also say to them, 'This is the offering made by fire that you must offer to Yahweh—male lambs a year old without blemish, two each day, as a regular burnt offering.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Tell them that what they must bring [to me](#) each day are two [male lambs](#) that are one year old. [They must have no defects](#). They must be completely burned [on the altar](#).

## Numbers 28:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> One lamb you must offer in the morning, and the other lamb you must offer in the evening.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> They should bring one in the morning and the other early in the evening.



## Numbers 28:5

### mixed with

This can be stated in active form. "which you have mixed with" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### a tenth of an ephah

"A tenth" means one part out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: "2 liters" or "a tenth of an ephah (which is about 2 liters)" (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

### one-fourth of a hin

"One-fourth" means one part out of four equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: "a liter" or "one-fourth of a hin (which is almost 1 liter)" (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

### beaten oil

"pressed oil" or "pure olive oil." This refers to oil that has been pressed out of olives.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [They must also bring a flour offering](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> You must offer a tenth of an ephah of fine flour as a grain offering, mixed with one-fourth of a hin of beaten oil.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> [They must also bring a flour offering](#) of two liters of finely-ground flour, mixed with a liter of olive oil.

## Numbers 28:6

### that was commanded at Mount Sinai

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that Yahweh commanded at Mount Sinai" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### made by fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that you burned on the altar" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to me](#)
- [on the altar](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> This is the regular burnt offering that was commanded at Mount Sinai to produce a sweet aroma, an offering made by fire to Yahweh.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> That is the offering that they must bring every day. They started to bring those offerings while you were at Mount Sinai. When those offerings are burned [on the altar](#), the smell will be very pleasing [to me](#).

## Numbers 28:7

### one-fourth of a hin

“One-fourth” means one part out of four equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “a liter” or “one-fourth of a hin (which is almost 1 liter)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

### You must pour out in the holy place a drink offering of strong drink to Yahweh

This sentence describes the drink offering that is to accompany the lamb. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “It must be a drink offering of strong drink and you must pour it out in the holy place to Yahweh” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [drink offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sacred altar](#)
- [they must also pour on the](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> The drink offering with it must be one-fourth of a hin for one of the lambs. You must pour out in the holy place a drink offering of strong drink to Yahweh.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> When they burn each lamb, [they must also pour on the sacred altar](#) in the holy place one liter of wine.

## Numbers 28:8

### like the one offered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “like the one you offered” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to me](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> The other lamb you must offer in the evening along with another grain offering like the one offered in the morning. You must also offer another drink offering with it, an offering made by fire, to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> In the evening, when they offer the second lamb, they must also bring the same offerings of flour and wine as they burned in the morning. When they are burned, the smell will also be very pleasing [to me](#).

## Numbers 28:9

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### two-tenths of an ephah

“Two-tenths” means two parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “four and a half liters” or “two tenths of an ephah (which is about 4.5 liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

### mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “which you have mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the drink offering with it

Many offerings had a drink offering that was required to be offered with them. The full meaning of the can be made clear. Alternate translation: “the drink offering that accompanies it” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [drink offering](#)
- [grain offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [male lambs](#)
- [of](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [and a wine offering of four and one-half liters of wine](#)
- [Also bring a flour offering](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> On the Sabbath day you must offer two male lambs, each a year old without blemish, and two-tenths of an ephah of fine flour as a grain offering, mixed with oil, and the drink offering with it.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> On each [Sabbath](#), you must bring two [male lambs](#), each a year old, that have no defects. [Also bring a flour offering of four and one-half liters of finely ground flour mixed with olive oil and a wine offering of four and one-half liters of wine.](#)

## Numbers 28:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Sabbath
- Sabbath
- drink offering
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- burnt offering, offering by fire (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- each Sabbath
- Those are in addition to
- and wine
- Those are the offerings
- the offerings of two lambs (2)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> This is to be the burnt offering for every Sabbath, in addition to the regular burnt offering and the drink offering with it.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Those are the offerings that are to be burned on the altar each Sabbath. Those are in addition to the offerings of two lambs and wine that you must bring each day.

## Numbers 28:11

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### Translation Words - ULT

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- burnt offering, offering by fire

### Translation Words - UST

- male lambs
- All of these must be without defects
- They
- to me
- young bulls
- young bulls
- on the altar

### ULT

**11** At the beginning of each month, you must offer a burnt offering to Yahweh. You must offer two young bulls, one ram, and seven male lambs a year old without blemish.

### UST

**11** On the first day of each month you must bring [to me](#) an offering of two [young bulls](#), one male sheep, and seven [male lambs](#) that are one year old. [All of these must be without defects.](#) [They](#) must all be burned completely [on the altar](#).

## Numbers 28:12

### three-tenths of an ephah

“Three-tenths” means three parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “six liters” or “three-tenths of an ephah (which is about six liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

### mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “which you have mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### two-tenths of fine flour

The words “of an ephah” are understood and may be stated clearly. “Two-tenths” means two parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “four and a half liters of fine flour” or “two-tenths of an ephah (which is about 4.5 liters) of fine flour” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [grain offering](#)
- [grain offering](#) (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- [an offering](#)
- [make an offering of](#) (2)

#### ULT

**12** You must also offer three-tenths of an ephah of fine flour as a grain offering mixed with oil for each bull, and two-tenths of fine flour as a grain offering mixed with oil for the one ram.

#### UST

**12** Also bring with each bull [an offering](#) of six liters of finely-ground flour mixed with olive oil. With each male sheep [make an offering of](#) four liters of nice flour mixed with olive oil.



## Numbers 28:13

### a tenth of an ephah

"A tenth" means one part out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: "2 liters" or "a tenth of an ephah (which is about 2 liters)" (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

### made by fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that you burned on the altar" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- grain offering

### Translation Words - UST

- to me
- on the altar
- Also bring an offering

### ULT

**13** You must also offer a tenth of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil as a grain offering for each lamb. This is to be the burnt offering, to produce a sweet aroma, an offering made by fire to Yahweh.

### UST

**13** [Also bring an offering](#) of two liters of finely-ground flour mixed with olive oil with each lamb. When all of these are burned [on the altar](#), the smell will be very pleasing [to me](#).

## Numbers 28:14

### half a hin

"Half" means one part out of two equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: "two liters" or "half a hin (which is two liters)" (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

### a third of a hin

"One third of a hin." "A third" means one part out of three equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: "1.2 liters" or "One and one-fifth liters" or "half a hin (which is 1.2 liters)" (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

### one-fourth of a hin

"One-fourth" means one part out of four equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: "a liter" or "one-fourth of a hin (which is almost 1 liter)" (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [drink offering](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [also bring...of wine](#)
- [of wine](#)
- [and burned completely on the altar](#)

### ULT

**14** The people's drink offerings must be half a hin of wine for a bull, a third of a hin for a ram, and one-fourth of a hin for a lamb. This is to be the burnt offering for every month throughout the months of the year.

### UST

**14** With each bull [also bring](#) two liters [of wine](#). With each male sheep, bring one and one-fifth liters of wine. With each lamb bring one liter [of wine](#). These offerings must be brought on the first day of each month [and burned completely on the altar](#).

## Numbers 28:15

### One male goat as a sin offering to Yahweh must be offered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You must offer one male goat to Yahweh as a sin offering" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- drink offering
- burnt offering, offering by fire

#### Translation Words - UST

- to me
- goat
- In addition to these offerings that you burn

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> One male goat as a sin offering to Yahweh must be offered. This will be in addition to the regular burnt offering and the drink offering with it.

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> [In addition to these offerings that you burn](#), you must bring [to me](#) one [goat](#) for an offering to remove the guilt of your sins.

## Numbers 28:16

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month

“During the first month, on day 14 of the month.” This refers to the first month of the Hebrew calendar. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### comes Yahweh’s Passover

“you must celebrate Yahweh’s Passover”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [The Passover festival must be celebrated to honor me](#)

### ULT

**16** During the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month, comes Yahweh’s Passover.

### UST

**16** [The Passover festival must be celebrated to honor me](#) each year on the fourteenth day of your first month.

## Numbers 28:17

### On the fifteenth day of this month

“On day 15 day of this month.” This refers to the first month of the Hebrew calendar. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### a feast is to be held

This can be stated in active form. “you must have a feast” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### bread without yeast must be eaten

This can be stated in active form. “you must eat bread without yeast” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- unleavened bread
- devour
- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- of Unleavened Bread
- eat must be made without yeast
- The Festival

#### ULT

**17** On the fifteenth day of this month a feast is to be held. For seven days, bread without yeast must be eaten.

#### UST

**17** [The Festival of Unleavened Bread](#) will start on the next day. For the following seven days, the bread that you [eat must be made without yeast](#).

## Numbers 28:18

### On the first day

This refers to the first day of the feast. This can be stated clearly.  
Alternate translation: "On day 1 of the feast" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### there must be a holy assembly to honor Yahweh

"you must gather together to worship and honor Yahweh." The phrase "a holy assembly" means the people gather together to worship Yahweh. Worshiping Yahweh is a holy event.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [that you would normally do](#)

### ULT

**18** On the first day, there must be a holy assembly to honor Yahweh. You must not do regular work on that day.

### UST

**18** On the first day of that festival, you must gather together to worship me, and you must not do any regular work [that you would normally do](#).

## Numbers 28:19

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### you must offer a sacrifice made by fire, a burnt offering

The idea of “burnt” can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must burn an offering on the altar” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- burnt offering, offering by fire

### Translation Words - UST

- male lambs
- young bulls
- They
- to me
- young bulls
- young bulls
- that will be completely burned on the altar

### ULT

**19** However, you must offer a sacrifice made by fire, a burnt offering to Yahweh. You must offer two young bulls, one ram, and seven male lambs a year old, without blemish.

### UST

**19** On that day, you must bring [to me](#) for an offering [that will be completely burned on the altar](#) two [young bulls](#), one male sheep, and seven [male lambs](#) that are one year old. [They](#) must all have no defects.

## Numbers 28:20

### three-tenths of an ephah

“Three-tenths” means three parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “six liters” or “three-tenths of an ephah (which is about six liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

### mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “which you have mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### two-tenths

The words “of an ephah of fine flour” are understood from the previous phrase. They can be repeated. “Two-tenths” means two parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “four and a half liters of fine flour” or “two-tenths of an ephah of fine flour (which is about 4.5 liters)” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [grain offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of finely ground flour](#)

### ULT

**20** Along with the bull, you must offer a grain offering of three-tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil, and along with the ram, two-tenths.

### UST

**20** With each of these bulls, bring a grain offering of six liters of finely-ground flour mixed with olive oil. With the male sheep, bring a grain offering of four liters [of finely ground flour](#) mixed with olive oil.



## Numbers 28:21

### a tenth of an ephah

“A tenth” means one part out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “2 liters” or “a tenth of an ephah (which is about 2 liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

#### ULT

**21** With each of the seven lambs, you must offer a tenth of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil,

#### UST

**21** With each of the seven lambs, bring an offering of two liters of finely-ground flour mixed with olive oil.

## Numbers 28:22

### to make atonement

The phrase “make atonement” can be expressed with the verb “atone.” Alternate translation: “to atone” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [atonement](#), [atone](#), [atoned](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [for your sin](#)
- [for a sacrifice](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> and one male goat as a sin offering to make atonement for yourselves.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> Also bring one goat [for a sacrifice](#) to make atonement [for your sin](#).

## Numbers 28:23

### required each morning

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “which Yahweh requires each morning” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [each morning](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> You must offer these in addition to the regular burnt offering required each morning.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> Bring these offerings in addition to the offerings that you bring [each morning](#).

## Numbers 28:24

### As described here

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "As I, Yahweh, have described here" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the food of the offering made by fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you must burn the food offering on the altar" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### a sweet aroma for Yahweh

"as a sweet aroma for Yahweh"

### It must be offered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You must offer it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [drink offering](#)
- [bread](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to me](#)
- [and the wine](#)
- [grain](#)
- [in addition to the animals](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> As described here, you must offer these sacrifices daily, for the seven days of the Passover, the food of the offering made by fire, a sweet aroma for Yahweh. It must be offered in addition to the regular burnt offering and the drink offering with it.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> The smell of the grain that is burned on the altar each day for seven days will be very pleasing [to me](#). Bring the [grain in addition to the animals and the wine](#) that you burn on the altar.

## Numbers 28:25

### have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh

“gather together to worship and honor Yahweh.” The phrase “a holy assembly” means the people gather together to worship Yahweh. Worshiping Yahweh is a holy event.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [you must again gather together](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> On the seventh day you must have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh, and you must not do regular work on that day.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> On the seventh day of that festival, [you must again gather together](#) to worship me, and you must not do any regular work that you would normally do.

## Numbers 28:26

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### the day of the firstfruits

“the day of the firstfruits, that is the day.” This refers to the day during the Festival of Weeks when they offer the grain offering to Yahweh.

### have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh

“gather together to worship and honor Yahweh.” The phrase “a holy assembly” means the people gather together to worship Yahweh. Worshiping Yahweh is a holy event.

### Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- grain offering

### Translation Words - UST

- that you would normally do on that day
- to me
- Harvest festival, when you

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Also on the day of the firstfruits, when you offer a new grain offering to Yahweh in your Festival of Weeks, you must have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh, and you must not do regular work on that day.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> On the day of the [Harvest festival](#), [when you](#) bring [to me](#) the first grain that you have harvested, you must gather together to worship me. Do not do any regular work [that you would normally do on that day](#).

## Numbers 28:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- burnt offering, offering by fire

### Translation Words - UST

- male lambs
- young bulls
- When they are completely burned
- to me
- young bulls
- young bulls
- one male sheep
- on the altar

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> You must offer a burnt offering to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh. You must offer two young bulls, one ram, and seven male lambs a year old.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> Bring to me two young bulls, one male sheep, and seven male lambs that are one year old. When they are completely burned on the altar, the smell will be very pleasing to me.

## Numbers 28:28

### mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “which you have mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### three-tenths of an ephah

“Three tenths” means three parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “six liters” or “three-tenths of an ephah (which is about six liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

### three-tenths of an ephah

“Three tenths” means three parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “six liters” or “three-tenths of an ephah (which is about six liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

### two-tenths

The words “of an ephah of fine flour” are understood from the previous phrase and can be repeated. “Two-tenths” means two parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “four and a half liters of fine flour” or “two-tenths of an ephah of fine flour (which is about 4.5 liters)” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [grain offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Also bring a flour offering](#)

#### ULT

**28** Offer also grain offering to go with them: Fine flour mixed with oil, three-tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil for each bull and two-tenths for the one ram.

#### UST

**28** [Also bring a flour offering](#) of finely ground flour mixed with olive oil. For each bull bring five and three-quarters of a liter, and with each male sheep bring three and four-fifths liters.



## Numbers 28:29

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### a tenth of an ephah

“A tenth” means one part out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “2 liters” or “a tenth of an ephah (which is about 2 liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour which you mix with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

**29** Offer a tenth of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil for each of the seven lambs,

#### UST

**29** For each of the lambs bring two liters.

## Numbers 28:30

### to make atonement

The word “atonement” can be expressed with the verb “atone.”  
Alternate translation: “to atone” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [atonement](#), [atone](#), [atoned](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [to make atonement](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> and one male goat to make atonement for yourselves.

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> Also sacrifice one male goat [to make atonement](#) for your sins.

## Numbers 28:31

### their drink offerings

This refers to the drink offerings that are required to accompany each of the animals when they are sacrificed. Alternate translation: “the drink offerings that are offered with them” or “the drink offerings that accompany them” (See: [Possession](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [drink offering](#)
- [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#)
- [grain offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [wine](#)
- [on the altar](#)
- [Bring these offerings and the offering of](#)

### ULT

**31** When you offer those animals without blemish, along with their drink offerings, this must be in addition to the regular burnt offering and the grain offering with it.”

### UST

**31** [Bring these offerings and the offering of wine](#) in addition to the animals and flour that you burn [on the altar](#) each day. And remember that the animals that you sacrifice must have no defects.”

## **Numbers 29**

### **Numbers 29 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter continues the material from the previous chapter about offerings on specific days.

## Numbers 29:1

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### In the seventh month, on the first day of the month

This refers to the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. Alternate translation: "On day 1 of month 7" (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh

"gather together to worship and honor Yahweh." The phrase "a holy assembly" means the people gather together to worship Yahweh. Worshiping Yahweh is a holy event.

### It will be a day when you blow trumpets

The word "you" refers to the people of Israel who here represent the priests. The priests blew the trumpet to begin a worship service or to gather the community together. Alternate translation: "It will be a day when the priests blow trumpets" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the priests must](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> "In the seventh month, on the first day of the month, you must have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh. You must not do regular work on that day. It will be a day when you blow trumpets.

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> "Each year, gather together to worship me on the first day of your seventh month, and do not do any regular work that you would normally do on that day. On that day [the priests must](#) blow their trumpets.

## Numbers 29:2

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [cow](#), [bull](#), [calf](#), [cattle](#), [heifer](#), [ox](#)
- [cow](#), [bull](#), [calf](#), [cattle](#), [heifer](#), [ox](#)
- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)
- [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [male lambs](#)
- [young](#)
- [They must have no defects](#)
- [very pleasing to me](#)
- [bull](#)
- [The animals that](#)
- [one male sheep](#)
- [When the offerings on the altar on that day](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> You must offer a burnt offering to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh. You must offer one young bull, one ram, and seven male lambs a year old, each without blemish.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> [When the offerings on the altar on that day](#) are being completely burned, the smell will be [very pleasing to me](#). [The animals that](#) you must bring are one [young bull](#), [one male sheep](#), and seven [male lambs](#) that are one year old. [They must have no defects](#).

## Numbers 29:3

### their grain offering

This refers to the grain offerings that are required to accompany each of the animals when they are sacrificed. Alternate translation: “the grain offerings that are offered with them” or “the grain offerings that accompany them” (See: [Possession](#))

### mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “which you have mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### three-tenths of an ephah

The phrase “of fine flour mixed with oil” is understood from the previous phrase and can be repeated. “Three-tenths” means three parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “six liters of fine flour mixed with oil” or “three-tenths of an ephah (which is about six liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

### two-tenths

The phrase “of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil” is understood from earlier in the sentence. “Two tenths” means two parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “four and a half liters of fine flour mixed with oil” or “two-tenths of an ephah (which is about 4.5 liters)” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [grain offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [a grain offering](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> You must offer with them their grain offering, fine flour mixed with oil, three-tenths of an ephah for the bull, two-tenths for the ram,

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> With these animals bring [a grain offering](#) of finely ground flour mixed with olive oil. With the bull, bring five and three-quarters liters. With the male sheep, bring three and four-fifths liters,

## Numbers 29:4

### one-tenth

The phrase “of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil” is understood from earlier in the sentence. “One-tenth” means one part out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “2 liters of fine flour mixed with oil” or “a tenth of an ephah (which is about 2 liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> and one-tenth for each lamb of the seven lambs.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> and with each of the seven lambs bring two liters.



## Numbers 29:5

### to make atonement

The word “atonement” can be expressed with the verb “atone.”  
Alternate translation: “to atone” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [atonement](#), [atone](#), [atoned](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [sins](#)
- [to atone](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> You must offer one male goat as a sin offering to make atonement for yourselves.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> Also offer one male goat [to atone](#) for your [sins](#).

## Numbers 29:6

### in the seventh month...the first of each month

"in month 7...day 1 of each month." The word "month" refers to a month of the Hebrew calendar. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### of each month: the special burnt offering...with it

"of each month--the special burnt offering...with it." This is the offering that is made on the first day of each month.

### the regular burnt offering, its grain offering, and its drink offerings

This refers to the offerings the priests were to give every day. The grain offering and drink offering were to be offered with the regular burnt offering. Alternate translation: "the regular burnt offering, with the grain offering and drink offerings that accompany it" (See: [Possession](#))

### you will obey what has been decreed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you will obey Yahweh's decree" or "you will obey what Yahweh had decreed" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### an offering made by fire to Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "an offering you burnt on the altar to Yahweh" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- drink offering
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs
- new moon
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- grain offering
- grain offering

### Translation Words - UST

- to me
- and wine must be made exactly
- as I have decreed that you are to do
- and on the first day of each month
- to the animals that are completely burned on the altar
- When these offerings
- All of those animals will be

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Make these offerings in the seventh month in addition to all of the offerings you will make on the first of each month: the special burnt offering and the grain offering to go with it. These must be in addition to the regular burnt offering, its grain offering, and its drink offerings. As you make these offerings, you will obey what has been decreed to produce a sweet aroma, an offering made by fire to Yahweh.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> All of those animals will be in addition to the animals that are completely burned on the altar each morning and on the first day of each month. The offerings of flour and wine must be made exactly as I have decreed that you are to do. When these offerings are burned, the smell will be very pleasing to me.

- [The offerings of flour](#)

## Numbers 29:7

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### the tenth day of the seventh month

“day 10 of month 7” The word “month” refers to those in the Hebrew calendar. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh

“gather together to worship and honor Yahweh.” The phrase “a holy assembly” means the people gather together to worship Yahweh. Worshiping Yahweh is a holy event.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [eat any food or do any work](#)
- [eat any food or do any work](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> On the tenth day of the seventh month you must have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh. You must humble yourselves and do no work.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> “Each year, on the tenth day of your seventh month, you must gather together to worship me. Do not [eat any food or do any work](#) on that day.

## Numbers 29:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- burnt offering, offering by fire

### Translation Words - UST

- male lambs
- young
- They
- to me
- bull
- The animals that
- one male sheep
- When you burn offerings on the altar

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> You must offer a burnt offering to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh. You must offer one young bull, one ram, and seven male lambs a year old. They must each be without blemish.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> When you burn offerings on the altar on that day, the smell will be very pleasing to me. The animals that you must bring are one young bull, one male sheep, and seven male lambs that are one year old. They must have no defects.

## Numbers 29:9

### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour which you have mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### three-tenths of an ephah

“Three-tenths” means three parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “six liters” or “three-tenths of an ephah (which is about six liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

### two-tenths

The words “of an ephah” are understood from earlier in the verse. They can be repeated here. “Two-tenths” means two parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “four and a half liters” or “two-tenths of an ephah (which is about 4.5 liters)” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [grain offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [a flour offering of](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> You must offer with them a grain offering, fine flour mixed with oil, three-tenths of an ephah for the bull, two-tenths for the one ram,

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> With the bull, bring [a flour offering of](#) five and three-quarters liters of finely ground flour mixed with olive oil. With the male sheep, bring three and four-fifths liters.

## Numbers 29:10

### a tenth of an ephah

"A tenth" means one part out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: "2 liters" or "a tenth of an ephah (which is about 2 liters)" (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> and a tenth of an ephah for each of the seven lambs.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> With each of the lambs, bring two liters.

## Numbers 29:11

### of atonement

The word “atonement” can be expressed with the verb “atone.”  
Alternate translation: “that atones for you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### its grain offering, and their drink offerings

The grain offering was to be offered with the burnt offering. The drink offerings were to be offered with both the sin offering and the burnt offering. Alternate translation: “along with the grain offering and the drink offerings that accompany them” (See: [Possession](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [drink offering](#)
- [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#)
- [grain offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to remove the guilt of your sins](#)
- [and the animals and flour and wine that you burn on the altar each day](#)
- [and wine](#)
- [Those offerings will be](#)
- [flour](#)

### ULT

**11** You must offer one male goat as a sin offering. This will be in addition to the sin offering of atonement, the regular burnt offering, its grain offering, and their drink offerings.

### UST

**11** Also bring one male goat [to remove the guilt of your sins, and the animals and flour and wine that you burn on the altar each day](#) to atone for your sins. [Those offerings will be](#) in addition to the animals and [flour and wine](#) that are completely burned on the altar each day.



## Numbers 29:12

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### the fifteenth day of the seventh month

“day 15 of month 7.” The word “month” refer to those in the Hebrew calendar. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh

“gather together to worship and honor Yahweh.” The phrase “a holy assembly” means the people gather together to worship Yahweh. Worshiping Yahweh is a holy event.

### you must keep the festival for him

This is an idiom. Here the word “keep” means to observe or celebrate. The word “him” refers to Yahweh. Alternate translation: “you must observe the festival for Yahweh” or “you must celebrate the festival for Yahweh” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [feast, feasting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to worship me](#)
- [You must continue to celebrate](#)
- [You must continue to celebrate](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> On the fifteenth day of the seventh month you must have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh. You must not do regular work on that day, and you must keep the festival for him seven days.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> On the fifteenth day of your seventh month, you must all gather together [to worship me](#). You must not do any regular work that you would normally do on that day. [You must continue to celebrate](#) for seven days.

## Numbers 29:13

### a sacrifice made by fire

This can be stated in active form. "you must burn it on the altar"  
(See: [Active or Passive](#))

### thirteen young bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs

"13 young bulls, 2 rams, and 14 male lambs" (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- burnt offering, offering by fire

#### Translation Words - UST

- male lambs that are
- young bulls
- male lambs that are
- very pleasing to me
- young bulls
- young bulls
- male sheep
- When the offerings

#### ULT

**13** You must offer a burnt offering, a sacrifice made by fire to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh. You must offer thirteen young bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs a year old. Each must be without blemish.

#### UST

**13** [When the offerings](#) are burned on the altar, the smell will be [very pleasing to me](#). The animals that you must bring are thirteen [young bulls](#), two [male sheep](#), and fourteen [male lambs that are](#) one year old. These animals must have no defects.

## Numbers 29:14

### fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour which you have mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### three-tenths of an ephah

The phrase “of fine flour mixed with oil” is understood from earlier in the sentence and can be repeated. “Three-tenths” means three parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “six liters of fine flour mixed with oil” or “three-tenths of an ephah (which is about six liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

### thirteen bulls

“13 bulls” (See: [Numbers](#))

### two-tenths

The phrase “of an ephah of fine flour” is understood from earlier in the sentence. “Two-tenths” means two parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “four and a half liters of fine flour” or “two-tenths of an ephah (which is about 4.5 liters)” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [cow](#), [bull](#), [calf](#), [cattle](#), [heifer](#), [ox](#)
- [grain offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [With each of the](#)
- [bring a flour offering of](#)

#### ULT

**14** You must offer with them a grain offering, fine flour mixed with oil, three-tenths of an ephah for every bull of the thirteen bulls, two-tenths for each ram of the two rams,

#### UST

**14** [With each of the](#) thirteen bulls, [bring a flour offering of](#) five and three-quarters liters of finely-ground flour mixed with olive oil. With each of the male sheep, bring three and four-fifths liters.

## Numbers 29:15

### fourteen lambs

"14 lambs" (See: [Numbers](#))

### a tenth of an ephah

The phrase "of fine flour" is understood from earlier in the sentence. "A tenth" means one part out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: "2 liters of fine flour" or "a tenth of an ephah (which is about 2 liters)" (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the fourteen lambs](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> and a tenth of an ephah for each of the fourteen lambs.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> With each of [the fourteen lambs](#), bring two liters.

## Numbers 29:16

### its grain offering, and the drink offering with it

The grain offering and drink offering accompany the regular burnt offering.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- drink offering
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- grain offering

#### Translation Words - UST

- to remove the guilt of your sins
- and wine that are completely burned
- to the offerings of animals
- and flour

#### ULT

**16** You must offer one male goat as a sin offering in addition to the regular burnt offering, its grain offering, and the drink offering with it.

#### UST

**16** Also bring one male goat to be sacrificed [to remove the guilt of your sins](#), in addition [to the offerings of animals and flour and wine that are completely burned](#) on the altar each day.

## Numbers 29:17

### On the second day of the assembly

“On day 2 of the festival.” Here the word “assembly” refers to the Festival of Weeks. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### twelve young bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs

“12 young bulls, 2 rams, and 14 male lambs” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [cow](#), [bull](#), [calf](#), [cattle](#), [heifer](#), [ox](#)
- [cow](#), [bull](#), [calf](#), [cattle](#), [heifer](#), [ox](#)
- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [lambs](#)
- [young bulls](#)
- [of the festival](#), [you must bring to the altar](#) (2)
- [young bulls](#)
- [young bulls](#)
- [rams](#)

#### ULT

**17** On the second day of the assembly, you must offer twelve young bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs a year old, each without blemish.

#### UST

**17** On the second day [of the festival](#), [you must bring to the altar](#) twelve [young bulls](#), two [rams](#), and fourteen [lambs](#) that are one year old. These animals must have no defects.

## Numbers 29:18

### as were commanded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as Yahweh commanded" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [drink offering](#)
- [ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs](#)
- [grain offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and wine](#)
- [that are required](#)
- [offerings of flour](#)

### ULT

**18** You must make with them a grain offering and the drink offerings for the bulls, for the rams, and for the lambs, making as many offerings as were commanded.

### UST

**18** Bring also with the animals the [offerings of flour and wine that are required](#).

## Numbers 29:19

### its grain offering, and their drink offerings

The grain offering was to be offered with the burnt offering. Drink offerings were to be offered with both the sin offering and the burnt offering. Alternate translation: “along with the grain offering and the drink offerings that accompany them” (See: [Possession](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [drink offering](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [grain offering](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [it to remove the guilt of your sins](#)
- [and wine that are completely burned](#)
- [to the offerings of animals](#)
- [and flour](#)

#### ULT

**19** You must offer one male goat as a sin offering in addition to the regular burnt offering, its grain offering, and their drink offerings.

#### UST

**19** Also offer one male goat; sacrifice [it to remove the guilt of your sins](#). These animals will be in addition [to the offerings of animals and flour and wine that are completely burned](#) on the altar each day.



## Numbers 29:20

### the third day of the assembly

“day 3 of the festival.” Here the word “assembly” refers to the Festival of Weeks. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### eleven bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs

“11 bulls, 2 rams, and 14 male lambs” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow](#), [bull](#), [calf](#), [cattle](#), [heifer](#), [ox](#)
- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [lambs](#)
- [young](#)
- [bulls](#)
- [rams](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> On the third day of the assembly, you must offer eleven bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs a year old, each without blemish.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> On the third day of the festival, you must bring to the altar eleven [young bulls](#), two [rams](#), and fourteen [lambs](#) that are one year old. These animals must have no defects. They must all be burned on the altar, and their smell will please me.

## Numbers 29:21

### as were commanded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as Yahweh commanded" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [drink offering](#)
- [ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs](#)
- [grain offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and wine](#)
- [that are required](#)
- [offerings of flour](#)

### ULT

**21** You must make with them a grain offering and the drink offerings for the bulls, for the rams, and for the lambs, making as many offerings as were commanded.

### UST

**21** Bring also with the animals the [offerings of flour and wine that are required](#).

## Numbers 29:22

### its grain offering, and their drink offerings

The grain offering was to be offered with the burnt offering. The drink offerings were to be offered with both the sin offering and the burnt offering. Alternate translation: “along with the grain offering and the drink offerings that accompany them” (See: [Possession](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [drink offering](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [grain offering](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [to remove the guilt of your sins](#)
- [and wine that are completely burned](#)
- [to the offerings of animals](#)
- [and flour](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> You must offer one male goat as a sin offering in addition to the regular burnt offering, its grain offering, and their drink offerings.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> Also offer one male goat to be sacrificed [to remove the guilt of your sins](#). These animals will be in addition [to the offerings of animals and flour and wine that are completely burned](#) on the altar each day.

## Numbers 29:23

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do during the festival in the seventh month.

### the fourth day of the assembly

“day 4 of the festival.” Here the word “assembly” refers to the Festival of Weeks. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### fourteen male lambs

“14 male lambs” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow](#), [bull](#), [calf](#), [cattle](#), [heifer](#), [ox](#)
- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [lambs](#)
- [young](#)
- [bulls](#)
- [rams](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> On the fourth day of the assembly, you must offer ten bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs a year old, each without blemish.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> On the fourth day of the festival, you must bring to the altar ten [young bulls](#), two [rams](#), and fourteen [lambs](#) that are one year old. These animals must have no defects. They must all be burned on the altar, and their smell will please me.

## Numbers 29:24

### as were commanded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as Yahweh commanded" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [drink offering](#)
- [ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs](#)
- [grain offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and wine](#)
- [that are required](#)
- [offerings of flour](#)

### ULT

**24** You must make with them a grain offering and the drink offerings for the bulls, for the rams, and for the lambs, making as many offerings as were commanded.

### UST

**24** Bring also with the animals the [offerings of flour and wine that are required](#).

## Numbers 29:25

### its grain offering, and their drink offerings

The grain offering was to be offered with the burnt offering. The drink offerings were to be offered with both the sin offering and the burnt offering. Alternate translation: "along with the grain offering and the drink offerings that accompany them" (See: [Possession](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [drink offering](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [grain offering](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [to remove the guilt of your sins](#)
- [and wine that are completely burned](#)
- [to the offerings of animals](#)
- [and flour](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> You must offer one male goat as a sin offering in addition to the regular burnt offering, its grain offering, and their drink offerings.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> Also offer one male goat to be sacrificed [to remove the guilt of your sins](#). These animals will be in addition [to the offerings of animals and flour and wine that are completely burned](#) on the altar each day.

## Numbers 29:26

### the fifth day of the assembly

“day 5 of the festival.” Here the word “assembly” refers to the Festival of Weeks. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### fourteen male lambs

“14 male lambs” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow](#), [bull](#), [calf](#), [cattle](#), [heifer](#), [ox](#)
- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [lambs](#)
- [young](#)
- [bulls](#)
- [rams](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> On the fifth day of the assembly, you must offer nine bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs a year old, each without blemish.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> On the fifth day of the festival, you must bring to the altar nine [young bulls](#), two [rams](#), and fourteen [lambs](#) that are one year old. These animals must have no defects. They must all be burned on the altar, and their smell will please me.

## Numbers 29:27

### as were commanded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as Yahweh commanded" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [drink offering](#)
- [ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs](#)
- [grain offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and wine](#)
- [that are required](#)
- [offerings of flour](#)

### ULT

**27** You must make with them a grain offering and the drink offerings for the bulls, for the rams, and for the lambs, making as many offerings as were commanded.

### UST

**27** Bring also with the animals the [offerings of flour and wine that are required](#).



## Numbers 29:28

### its grain offering, and their drink offerings

The grain offering was to be offered with the burnt offering. The drink offerings were to be offered with both the sin offering and the burnt offering. Alternate translation: "along with the grain offering and the drink offerings that accompany them" (See: [Possession](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [drink offering](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [grain offering](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [to remove the guilt of your sins](#)
- [and wine that are completely burned](#)
- [to the offerings of animals](#)
- [and flour](#)

#### ULT

**28** You must offer one male goat as a sin offering in addition to the regular burnt offering, its grain offering, and their drink offerings.

#### UST

**28** Also offer one male goat to be sacrificed [to remove the guilt of your sins](#). These animals will be in addition [to the offerings of animals and flour and wine that are completely burned](#) on the altar each day.

## Numbers 29:29

### the sixth day of the assembly

“day 6 of the festival.” Here the word “assembly” refers to the Festival of Weeks. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### fourteen male lambs

“14 male lambs” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow](#), [bull](#), [calf](#), [cattle](#), [heifer](#), [ox](#)
- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [lambs](#)
- [young](#)
- [bulls](#)
- [rams](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> On the sixth day of the assembly, you must offer eight bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs a year old, each without blemish.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> On the sixth day of the festival, you must bring to the altar eight [young bulls](#), two [rams](#), and fourteen [lambs](#) that are one year old. These animals must have no defects. They must all be burned on the altar, and their smell will please me.

## Numbers 29:30

### as were commanded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as Yahweh commanded" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [drink offering](#)
- [ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs](#)
- [grain offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and wine](#)
- [that are required](#)
- [offerings of flour](#)

### ULT

**30** You must make with them a grain offering and the drink offerings for the bulls, for the rams, and for the lambs, making as many offerings as were commanded.

### UST

**30** Bring also with the animals the [offerings of flour and wine that are required](#).

## Numbers 29:31

### its grain offering, and their drink offerings

The grain offering was to be offered with the burnt offering. The drink offerings were to be offered with both the sin offering and the burnt offering. Alternate translation: “along with the grain offering and the drink offerings that accompany them” (See: [Possession](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [drink offering](#)
- [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#)
- [grain offering](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [to remove the guilt of your sins](#)
- [and wine](#)
- [to the offerings of animals](#)
- [and flour](#)

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> You must offer one male goat as a sin offering in addition to the regular burnt offering, its grain offering, and their drink offerings.

#### UST

<sup>31</sup> Also offer one male goat to be sacrificed [to remove the guilt of your sins](#). These animals will be in addition [to the offerings of animals and flour and wine](#) that are completely burned on the altar each day.

## Numbers 29:32

### the seventh day of the assembly

“day 7 of the festival.” Here the word “assembly” refers to the Festival of Weeks. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### fourteen male lambs

“14 male lambs” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#)
- [son](#)
- [cow](#), [bull](#), [calf](#), [cattle](#), [heifer](#), [ox](#)
- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [lambs](#)
- [young](#)
- [bulls](#)
- [rams](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> On the seventh day of the assembly, you must offer seven bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs a year old, each without blemish.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> On the seventh day of the festival, you must bring to the altar seven [young bulls](#), two [rams](#), and fourteen [lambs](#) that are one year old. These animals must have no defects. They must all be burned on the altar, and their smell will please me.

## Numbers 29:33

### as were commanded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as Yahweh commanded" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [drink offering](#)
- [ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs](#)
- [grain offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and wine](#)
- [that are required](#)
- [offerings of flour](#)

### ULT

**33** You must make with them a grain offering and the drink offerings for the bulls, for the rams, and for the lambs, making as many offerings as were commanded.

### UST

**33** Bring also with the animals the [offerings of flour and wine that are required](#).

## Numbers 29:34

### its grain offering, and their drink offerings

The grain offering was to be offered with the burnt offering. The drink offerings were to be offered with both the sin offering and the burnt offering. Alternate translation: “along with the grain offering and the drink offerings that accompany them” (See: [Possession](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [drink offering](#)
- [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#)
- [grain offering](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [to remove the guilt of your sins](#)
- [and wine](#)
- [to the offerings of animals](#)
- [and flour](#)

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> You must offer one male goat as a sin offering in addition to the regular burnt offering, its grain offering, and their drink offerings.

#### UST

<sup>34</sup> Also offer one male goat to be sacrificed [to remove the guilt of your sins](#). These animals will be in addition [to the offerings of animals and flour and wine](#) that are completely burned on the altar each day.

## Numbers 29:35

### General Information:

Yahweh tells Moses what the people must do after the seven-day festival in the seventh month.

### eighth day

This “eighth” is the ordinal number for eight. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### have another solemn assembly

“gather together again to worship Yahweh.” This is another assembly similar to the one on the first day of the festival.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [festival](#)

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> On the eighth day you must have another solemn assembly. You must not do regular work on that day.

### UST

<sup>35</sup> Eight days after the start of that [festival](#), you must again gather together to worship me; you must not do any regular work that you would normally do on that day.



## Numbers 29:36

### an offering made by fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must burn it on the altar” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- lamb, Lamb of God
- son
- Yahweh
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- burnt offering, offering by fire

#### Translation Words - UST

- lambs
- They must all
- On that day, you
- bull
- ram
- on the altar

#### ULT

**36** You must make a burnt offering, an offering made by fire to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh. You must offer one bull, one ram, and seven male lambs a year old, each without blemish.

#### UST

**36** [On that day, you](#) must bring to the altar one [bull](#), one full-grown [ram](#), and seven [lambs](#) that are one year old. These animals must have no defects. [They must all](#) be burned [on the altar](#), and their smell will please me.

## Numbers 29:37

### their grain offering and their drink offerings

These offerings were to be offered with the bull, the ram, and the lambs. Alternate translation: “the grain offerings and the drink offerings” (See: [Possession](#))

### as were commanded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “as Yahweh commanded” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [drink offering](#)
- [ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs](#)
- [grain offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and wine](#)
- [that are required](#)
- [the offerings of flour](#)

### ULT

**37** You must offer their grain offering and their drink offerings for the bull, for the ram, and for the lambs, making as many offerings as were commanded.

### UST

**37** Bring also with the bull and the male sheep and each of the lambs [the offerings of flour and wine that are required](#).

## Numbers 29:38

### its grain offering, and their drink offerings

The grain offering was to be offered with the burnt offering. The drink offerings were to be offered with both the sin offering and the burnt offering. Alternate translation: “along with the grain offering and the drink offerings that accompany them” (See: [Possession](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [drink offering](#)
- [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#)
- [grain offering](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [to remove the guilt of your sins](#)
- [and wine](#)
- [to the offerings of animals](#)
- [and flour](#)

#### ULT

**38** You must offer one male goat as a sin offering in addition to the regular burnt offering, its grain offering, and their drink offerings.

#### UST

**38** Also offer one male goat to be sacrificed [to remove the guilt of your sins](#). These animals will be in addition [to the offerings of animals and flour and wine](#) that are completely burned on the altar each day.

## Numbers 29:39

### These are what you must offer

"These offerings are what you must offer"

### fixed festivals

"planned festivals." These are festivals that occurred at regularly scheduled times. The word "fixed" means "set" or "predetermined."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the offerings that you must bring to me](#)

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> These are what you must offer to Yahweh at your fixed festivals. These must be in addition to your vows and freewill offerings. You must offer these as your burnt offerings, grain offerings, drink offerings, and fellowship offerings."

### UST

<sup>39</sup> At your festivals, these are [the offerings that you must bring to me](#): The offerings that will be completely burned on the altar, the grain offerings, the wine offerings, and the offerings to restore fellowship with me. Those are in addition to the offerings that you give to me because you promised to do something, and other special offerings that you want to give to me."

## Numbers 29:40

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [had commanded](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)
- [Then Moses](#)
- [him](#)

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> Moses told the people of Israel everything that Yahweh had commanded him to say.

### UST

<sup>40</sup> [Then Moses](#) told to [the Israelite people](#) all the things that [Yahweh had commanded him](#).

## Numbers 30

### Numbers 30 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Vows

Because a vow is a type of promise, men must do what they have vowed to do. A father or a husband has one day in which to cancel a woman's vow. Otherwise, she must do what she vowed she would do. (See: [vow](#) and [promise, promised](#))

## Numbers 30:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [head](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [had given](#)
- [of the](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israelite](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [the leaders](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Moses spoke to the leaders of the tribes of the people of Israel. He said, "This is what Yahweh has commanded.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> [Moses](#) spoke with [the leaders of the Israelite](#) tribes. He told them these commands that [Yahweh had given](#) to him:

## Numbers 30:2

### a man makes a vow

The words “a man” refer to any man, not one particular man. It refers only to men and does not include women. Alternate translation: “any man”

### to bind himself with a binding promise

Here Moses speaks of a person promising to do something as if his promise were a physical object that he ties to himself. Alternate translation: “committing to fulfill a promise” or “promising to do something” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### he must not break his word. He must keep his promise to do everything that comes out of his mouth

These two sentences have similar meanings and are combined to emphasize that he must fulfill his promises. Here “word” is a metonym that refers to what he said. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### he must not break his word

The phrase “his word” refers to a man’s oaths and vows. Here Moses speaks of not fulfilling these as if they were physical objects that the man could break. Alternate translation: “he must fulfill his promises” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### everything that comes out of his mouth

Here the word “mouth” is a metonym for the things that the man says. Alternate translation: “to do everything that he says he will do” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

### Translation Words - UST

- he will do something
- Yahweh
- he promised
- he promised

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> When a man makes a vow to Yahweh, or swears an oath to bind himself with a binding promise, he must not break his word. He must keep his promise to do everything that comes out of his mouth.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> “If a man solemnly promises [Yahweh](#) that [he will do something](#), he must do what [he promised](#).



## Numbers 30:3

### binds herself with a promise

Here Moses speaks of a woman promising to do something as if her promise were a physical object that she ties to herself. Alternate translation: “commits herself to fulfilling a promise” or “promises to do something” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [temple](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [to Yahweh to do something](#)
- [parents](#)
- [parents](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> When a young woman living in her father's house makes a vow to Yahweh and binds herself with a promise, while within the house of her father,

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> If a young woman who is still living with her [parents](#) solemnly promises [to Yahweh to do something](#),

## Numbers 30:4

### the vow and the promise

These two phrases have very similar meanings. They emphasize what she has promised to do. Alternate translation: “the vow” (See: [Doublet](#))

### by which she has bound herself

Here Moses speaks of how a woman has committed herself to fulfilling a promise as if her promise were a physical object that she had bound to her body. Alternate translation: “that she has committed herself to fulfill” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### he says nothing to reverse her

“he does not cancel what she has said”

### will stand

This is an idiom. It means that her vows will remain in effect and that she will be required to fulfill them. Alternate translation: “she will be obligated to fulfill” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [gird](#), [girded](#), [wrapped around](#), [tied up](#), [belt](#), [tuck in belt](#), [put belt around](#)
- [gird](#), [girded](#), [wrapped around](#), [tied up](#), [belt](#), [tuck in belt](#), [put belt around](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [she promised](#), [and if](#)
- [she promised](#), [and if](#)
- [if her father](#)
- [he does not say](#)
- [she promised](#), [and if](#)
- [she must do what she promised](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> if her father hears the vow and the promise by which she has bound herself, and if he says nothing to reverse her, then all her vows will remain in force, and every pledge by which she has bound herself will stand.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> and [if her father](#) hears about what [she promised](#), [and if he does not say](#) anything to her, [she must do what she promised](#).

## Numbers 30:5

### her vows or the pledges

These two phrases have very similar meanings. They emphasize what she has promised to do. Alternate translation: “her vows” (See: [Doublet](#))

### will stand

This is an idiom. It means that her vows will remain in effect and she will be required to fulfill them. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 30:4](#). Alternate translation: “she will be obligated to fulfill” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Yahweh will release her

This refers to Yahweh forgiving her for not fulfilling her vows. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will forgive her for not fulfilling her vows” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> But if her father overrules her when he hears about it, none of her vows or the pledges by which she obligated herself will stand; Yahweh will release her because her father has forbidden her.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> But if [her father](#) hears [about](#) what she promised and does not allow her to do that, then she does not need to do what she promised. [Yahweh](#) will forgive [her](#) for not doing what she promised.

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

### Translation Words - UST

- her
- Yahweh
- her father
- her father
- about

## Numbers 30:6

### rash

something done without thinking

### by which she has bound herself

Here Moses speaks of how a woman has committed herself to fulfilling a promise as if her promise were a physical object that she had bound to her body. Alternate translation: “which she has committed herself to fulfill” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

### Translation Words - UST

- do something, but
- do something, but

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> If she marries a husband after she makes a vow or her lips uttered a rash promise by which she has bound herself,

### UST

<sup>6</sup> If a woman promises Yahweh that she will [do something, but](#) then she gets married,

## Numbers 30:7

### says nothing to her

You may need to specify that he says nothing to her about her vow. Alternate translation: "says nothing to her about her vow" or "does not tell her to have Yahweh release her from the vow" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### by which she bound herself

Here Moses speaks of how a woman has committed herself to fulfilling a promise as if her promise were a physical object that she had bound to her body. Alternate translation: "that she has committed herself to fulfill" See how this is translated in [Numbers 30:4](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### will stand

This is an idiom. It means that her vows will remain in effect and that she will be required to fulfill them. Alternate translation: "she will be obligated to fulfill" See how this is translated in [[Numbers 30:4](#)] (.i04.md). (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [herself](#)
- [or...makes rash utterances](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> and her husband hears about it but says nothing to her, then her vows will stand, and the pledges by which she bound herself will stand.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> If she marries a husband while under the vows, [or](#) she [makes rash utterances](#) by which she obligates [herself](#), they will stand.

## Numbers 30:8

### the vow that she has made...the rash talk of her lips

“the vow that she has made...that is, the rash talk of her lips.” These two phrases refer to the same thing. The second phrase describes the vow that the woman made. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### the rash talk of her lips

The phrase “the rash talk” refers to the rash promise that she made. Here “her lips” means the woman herself. She is referred to as “her lips” because lips are related to what she says. Alternate translation: “the rash things she has said” or “her rash promise” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### with which she has bound herself

Here Moses speaks of how a woman has committed herself to fulfilling a promise as if her promise were a physical object that she had bound to her body. Alternate translation: “that she has committed herself to fulfill” See how this is translated in [Numbers 30:4](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Yahweh will release her

Here Moses speaks about Yahweh forgiving the woman for not fulfilling her vow as if he were releasing her from something that bound her. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will forgive her” or “Yahweh will forgive her for not fulfilling her vow” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

### Translation Words - UST

- herself
- Yahweh
- she has bound

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But if her husband stops her on the day that he hears about it, then he cancels the vow that she has made, the rash talk of her lips with which she has bound herself, and Yahweh will release her.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> But if her husband stops her on the day that he hears about it, then he cancels the vow that she has made, the rash talk of her lips with which [she has bound herself](#). [Yahweh](#) will release her.

## Numbers 30:9

### General Information:

Moses continues telling the leaders of the tribes what Yahweh has commanded.

### a divorced woman

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “a woman whom a man has divorced” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### will stand against her

This is an idiom. It means that her vows will remain in effect and she will be required to fulfill them. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Numbers 30:4](#). Alternate translation: “she will be obligated to fulfill” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [makes a promise...she](#)
- [she must](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But any vow of a widow or a divorced woman will stand against her.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> If a widow or a woman who has been divorced [makes a promise](#), [she must](#) do what [she](#) promised.

## Numbers 30:10

### If a woman made a vow in her husband's house

This refers to a married woman. You can make the meaning of this statement clear. Alternate translation: "If a married woman makes a vow" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- house

#### Translation Words - UST

- do something
- promises
- a woman who is married

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> If a woman made a vow in her husband's house or bound herself by a pledge with an oath,

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> If [a woman who is married promises](#) to [do something](#),



## Numbers 30:11

### then all her vows will stand

This is an idiom. The phrase “will stand” means that her vows will remain in effect and she will be required to fulfill them. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Numbers 30:4](#). Alternate translation: “then she must fulfill all her vows” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

#### Translation Words - UST

- she must
- she must

#### ULT

**11** and her husband hears of it but he says nothing to her and he does oppose her, then all her vows will stand, and every pledge by which she bound herself will stand.

#### UST

**11** and if her husband hears about it but does not object, [she must](#) do what she promised.

## Numbers 30:12

### then whatever came out of her lips

Here what the woman said is referred to as something that came out of her lips. Alternate translation: “then whatever she said” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### will not stand

This is an idiom. It means that her vows will not remain in effect and she will be not required to fulfill them. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 30:4](#). Alternate translation: “she will not be obligated to fulfill” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Yahweh will release her

Here Moses speaks about Yahweh forgiving the woman for not fulfilling her vow as if he were releasing her from something that bound her. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will forgive her” or “Yahweh will forgive her for not fulfilling her vow” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh

### Translation Words - UST

- allow her to do that
- and Yahweh

#### ULT

**12** But if her husband cancels them on the day that he heard about them, then whatever came out of her lips about her vows or promises will not stand. Her husband has canceled them, and Yahweh will release her.

#### UST

**12** But if he hears about it and does not [allow her to do that](#), she does not need to do what she promised, [and Yahweh](#) will forgive her for not doing it.

## Numbers 30:13

### binding oath to afflict her

an oath by which the woman says that unless she fulfills the oath, God or other people have the right to afflict her

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- humble, humbled, humility
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

#### Translation Words - UST

- her to do what she has promised
- not allow
- she has promised

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Any vow and any binding oath to afflict her, her husband may make it stand or her husband may cancel it.

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> A woman's husband may require her to do what [she has promised](#), or he may [not allow her to do what she has promised](#).

## Numbers 30:14

### binding promises

Moses describes a woman's promises as if they were something that she is physically bound by. Alternate translation: "obligations" or "promises" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### will stand

This is an idiom. It means that her vows will remain in effect and that she will be required to fulfill them. Alternate translation: "she will be obligated to fulfill" See how this is translated in [Numbers 30:4](#). (See: [Idiom](#))

### because he has said nothing to her

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: "because he has said nothing to her about them" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [tongue, language](#)
- [tongue, language](#)
- [tongue, language](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [does not object](#)
- [does not object](#)
- [does not object](#)

### ULT

**14** But if her husband says nothing to her from day to day, then he confirms all her vows and binding promises that she has made, and they will stand, because he has said nothing to her on the day that he heard of them.

### UST

**14** If he [does not object](#) for several days after he hears about it, she must do what she promised.

## Numbers 30:15

### then he will be responsible for her guilt

This means that he will be guilty of her sin instead of her if she does not fulfill her vow. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "if she does not fulfill her vow, she will not be guilty of her sin, and he will be guilty instead of her" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [iniquity](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Her husband is the one whom Yahweh will punish](#)

#### ULT

**15** If her husband cancels his wife's vow after he has heard about them, then he will be responsible for her guilt."

#### UST

**15** But if he waits a long time after she has promised to do something and then he tells her that he will not permit her to do it, if she does not do what she promised, she will not be punished. [Her husband is the one whom Yahweh will punish.](#)"

## Numbers 30:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [statute](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gave](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)
- [the rules](#)
- [parents](#)
- [with](#)
- [their](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> These are the statutes that Yahweh commanded Moses to announce— statutes for what is between a man and his wife and between a father and his daughter when she is in her youth in her father's family.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> Those are [the rules](#) that [Yahweh gave to Moses](#) for husbands and wives, and for young women who are still living [with their parents](#).

## **Numbers 31**

### **Numbers 31 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Midianites**

Israel killed the Midianites, including Balaam, for tempting them to worship Baal. This battle was at Yahweh's command. Yahweh would bring justice. (See: [just](#), [justice](#), [unjust](#), [injustice](#), [justify](#), [justification](#))

## Numbers 31:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses and said,

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> [Yahweh](#) spoke [to Moses](#) and said,



## Numbers 31:2

### Take vengeance on the Midianites for what they did to the Israelites

Yahweh was punishing the Midianites for convincing the Israelites to worship idols.

### you will die and be gathered to your people

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. This is a polite way to emphasize that it is time for Moses to die and for his spirit to go to the place where his ancestors are. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Euphemism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Tell the Israelite people](#)
- [Tell the Israelite people](#)
- [will die](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> "Take vengeance on the Midianites for what they did to the Israelites. After doing that, you will die and be gathered to your people."

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> "[Tell the Israelite people](#) that they should pay back the Midian people group for what they did to you. After that happens, you [will die](#)."

## Numbers 31:3

### Arm some of your men for war

"Give weapons to some of your men"

### go against Midian and carry out Yahweh's vengeance on it

"go fight a war against the Midianites and punish them for what they did to us"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- people, people group,

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- So Moses
- the people

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> So Moses spoke to the people. He said, "Arm some of your men for war so they may go against Midian and carry out Yahweh's vengeance on it."

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> [So Moses](#) said to [the people](#), "Get some men prepared for battle. [Yahweh](#) will enable them to pay back the Midian people group for what they did to us."

## Numbers 31:4

### a thousand

"1,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [tribe, tribal, tribesmen](#)
- [tribe, tribal, tribesmen](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [men](#)
- [tribe to fight](#)
- [tribe to fight](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Every tribe throughout Israel must send a thousand soldiers to war."

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> Select a thousand [men](#) from each [tribe to fight](#)."

## Numbers 31:5

### twelve thousand

"12,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Israel's thousands of men

"the thousands of Israel's men"

### one thousand was provided from each tribe

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "every tribe sent 1,000 men to war" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### twelve thousand men armed for war

All 12 tribes sent men, including the tribe of Levi. Each tribe sent 1,000 men into battle. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [tribe, tribal, tribesmen](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [men](#)
- [from each tribe](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> So out of Israel's thousands of men, one thousand was provided from each tribe, twelve thousand men armed for war.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> So twelve thousand [men](#) prepared for fighting in the battle, one thousand [from each tribe](#).

## Numbers 31:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- priest, priesthood
- Moses
- hand
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### Translation Words - UST

- son of
- sacred tent
- the priest, went
- When Moses
- to the battle
- from the

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Then Moses sent them to battle, a thousand from every tribe, along with Phinehas son of Eleazar the priest, and with some articles from the holy place and the trumpets in his possession for sounding signals.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> When Moses sent them to the battle, Phinehas son of Eleazar the priest, went with them. He took with him some of the things from the sacred tent and the trumpets that would be blown to give the signal to start the battle.

## Numbers 31:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [had told](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> They fought against Midian, as Yahweh had commanded Moses. They killed every man.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> The Israelite men fought the soldiers from the Midian people group, as [Yahweh had told Moses](#) to tell them to do, and they killed every man from the Midian people group.

## Numbers 31:8

### Evi, Rekem, Zur, Hur, and Reba

These are names of kings of Midian. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Balaam son of Beor

Beor was Balaam's father. See how you translated this in [Numbers 22:5](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Balaam
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- sword, swordsmen
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### Translation Words - UST

- son of
- Balaam
- they...were
- killed
- a sword
- kings
- kings

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> They killed the kings of Midian with the rest of their dead: Evi, Rekem, Zur, Hur, and Reba, the five kings of Midian. They also killed Balaam son of Beor, with the sword.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Among those whom [they](#) killed [were](#) the five [kings](#) of the Midian people group—Evi, Rekem, Zur, Hur, and Reba. They also [killed](#) [Balaam](#) with [a sword](#) [son of](#) Beor.

## Numbers 31:9

### They took these as plunder

"They took the Midianites' possessions as their own"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- beast
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

#### Translation Words - UST

- of the
- They
- herds of goats, and
- other possessions

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> The army of Israel took captive the women of Midian, their children, all their cattle, all their flocks, and all their goods. They took these as plunder.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> They captured all the women and children of the Midian people group and took away their cattle, their flocks of sheep, and herds of goats, and all their other possessions.



## Numbers 31:10

### They burned all their cities where they lived and all their camps

“Israel’s army burned all the Midianites’ cities where the Midianites lived and all the Midianites’ camps”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Then they burned down](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> They burned all their cities where they lived and all their camps.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> [Then they burned down](#) all the houses in the towns and villages where the people of the Midian people group lived.

## Numbers 31:11

### They took

“The army of Israel took”

### plunder

This refers to the material goods they recovered from killing the Midianite men.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [livestock, animals](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [animals](#)

### ULT

**11** They took all the plunder and prisoners, both people and animals.

### UST

**11** But they took home with them all the women and children and [animals](#) and possessions.

## Numbers 31:12

### plains

a large area of flat land

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- Moab, Moabite
- Moses
- Jericho
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured

### Translation Words - UST

- of the
- Israelite
- to Eleazer
- of Moab
- Moses
- across from Jericho
- these

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> They brought the prisoners, the plunder, and the captured things to Moses, to Eleazar the priest, and to the community of the people of Israel. They brought these to the camp in the plains of Moab, by the Jordan near Jericho.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> They brought all [these to Eleazer](#) and [Moses](#), and to the rest [of the Israelite](#) people who were at their camp on the plains [of Moab](#), near the Jordan River, [across from Jericho](#).

## Numbers 31:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [priest](#), [priesthood](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [went](#)
- [Eleazar](#)
- [and Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Moses, Eleazar the priest, and all the leaders of the community went to meet them outside the camp.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> [Eleazar](#) and all the leaders of the people [and Moses went](#) outside the camp to greet them.

## Numbers 31:14

### the commanders of thousands and the captains of hundreds

Possible meanings are 1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders and captains led. Alternate translation: “the commanders of 1,000 soldiers and the captains of 100 soldiers” or 2) the words translated as “thousands” and “hundreds” do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: “the commanders of large military divisions and the captains of smaller military divisions” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [prince](#), [princess](#), [governors](#), [provincial governors](#), [officials](#), [noblemen](#), [nobility](#)
- [prince](#), [princess](#), [governors](#), [provincial governors](#), [officials](#), [noblemen](#), [nobility](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [were](#)
- [But Moses](#)
- [He was angry with the army officers](#)
- [those men who...commanders](#)

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> But Moses was angry with the officers of the army, the commanders of thousands and the captains of hundreds, who came from battle.

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> [But Moses](#) was angry with some of the men who had returned from the battle. [He was angry with the army officers, those men who were commanders](#) over thousands of men and those who were commanders over hundreds of men.

## Numbers 31:15

### Have you let all the women live?

The law was explicit on who would be permitted to live. The army violated the law by allowing all the women and children to live. This was a rebuke to the army leaders. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [He](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Moses said to them, "Have you let all the women live?"

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> [He](#) asked them, "Why did you allow the women to live?"

## Numbers 31:16

### Look

This word is used here to draw the audience's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- transgress, transgression
- Balaam

### Translation Words - UST

- people
- Yahweh. As a result
- Yahweh
- our
- suggested and urged
- Balaam

### ULT

**16** Look, these women caused the people of Israel, through Balaam's advice, to commit sin against Yahweh in the matter of Peor, when the plague spread among Yahweh's community.

### UST

**16** They are the ones who did what [Balaam suggested and urged our people](#) to worship Baal instead of [Yahweh](#). [As a result, Yahweh](#) caused a plague to strike his people while they were at Peor.

## Numbers 31:17

### has known a man by lying with him

“has had sexual relations with a man” (See: [Euphemism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- you must kill
- and also kill
- who have slept with any

#### ULT

**17** Now then, kill every male among the little ones, and kill every woman who has known a man by lying with him.

#### UST

**17** So, now [you must kill](#) all the boys of the Midian people group, [and also kill](#) all the women [who have slept with any](#) man.



## Numbers 31:18

### General Information:

Moses speaks to the commanders of the Israelite army about becoming clean before God.

### who have not known a man by lying with him

“who have not had sexual relations with any man.” This refers to girls who were virgins. (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [You can keep them to be...or your slaves](#)
- [You can keep them to be...or your slaves](#)

### ULT

**18** But take for yourselves all the young girls who have not known a man by lying with him.

### UST

**18** Spare only the girls who are virgins. [You can keep them to be](#) your wives [or your slaves](#).

## Numbers 31:19

### All of you

Moses is referring to anyone who fought in battle, not just the commanders.

### you must purify yourselves

They must become spiritually clean again before entering the camp.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- die, dead, deadly, death,

#### Translation Words - UST

- must perform the ritual to
- enable you to become acceptable to God again
- who have killed someone

#### ULT

**19** You must camp outside the camp of Israel for seven days. All of you who have killed anyone and or have touched any dead person—you must purify yourselves on the third day and on the seventh day—you and your prisoners.

#### UST

**19** All of you [who have killed someone](#) or touched the corpse of someone who was killed in the battle must stay outside the camp for seven days. On the third day and on the seventh day, you [must perform the ritual to enable you to become acceptable to God again](#). You and your prisoners.

## Numbers 31:20

### everything made of animal hide and goats' hair, and everything made of wood

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "everything that someone has made of animal hide, goats' hair, or wood" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [also wash your clothes](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> You must purify every garment and everything made of animal hide and goats' hair, and everything made of wood."

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> You must [also wash your clothes](#) and anything that you took to the battle that is made of leather or goat's hair or wood."

## Numbers 31:21

### General Information:

Eleazar teaches the soldiers the customs of becoming ceremonially clean before Yahweh after going to war.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [the law](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [priest](#), [priesthood](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Then](#)
- [has instructed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Eleazar the priest said to the soldiers who had gone to war, "This is a decreed law that Yahweh has given to Moses:

### UST

<sup>21</sup> [Then](#) Eleazar said to [the](#) soldiers who had returned from the battle, "This is what [Yahweh has instructed Moses](#).

## Numbers 31:22

### gold, silver, bronze, iron, tin, and lead

metals that were used during that time period

#### Translation Words - ULT

- silver
- bronze
- gold, golden

#### Translation Words - UST

- silver or
- bronze
- put into a fire any gold or

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> The gold, silver, bronze, iron, tin, and lead,

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> You must [put into a fire any gold or silver or bronze](#) or iron or tin or lead things that you brought back from the battle.

## Numbers 31:23

### that resists fire

“that will not burn”

### put it through the fire

“put it into the fire”

### water of cleansing

This refers to water that someone has mixed with ashes from a sin offering. See: [Numbers 19:17-19](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- clean, wash
- pure, purify, purification
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

### Translation Words - UST

- causes things and people
- acceptable
- acceptable for you to use
- into the fire
- into the fire
- in a fire, sprinkle them with

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> and everything that resists fire, you must put it through the fire, and it will become clean. You must then purify those things with the water of cleansing. Whatever cannot go through the fire you must cleanse with that water.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> Put everything that will not burn [into the fire](#), and then they will be [acceptable for you to use](#). But also sprinkle those things with the water that [causes things and people](#) to become [acceptable](#) to God. The things that would burn if you put them [in a fire, sprinkle them with](#) that water.

## Numbers 31:24

### then you will become clean

These are the customs of becoming ceremonially clean before Yahweh.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- pure, purify, purification

#### Translation Words - UST

- and then you will become acceptable

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> You must wash your clothes on the seventh day, and then you will become clean. Afterward you may come into Israel's camp."

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> On the seventh day, wash your clothes, and then you will become acceptable to God again. After you do that, you may return to the camp."

## Numbers 31:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said,

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> [Yahweh](#) also said [to Moses](#),



## Numbers 31:26

### Count all the plundered things that were taken

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Count all of the possessions that the soldiers took" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the leaders of the community's ancestor's clans

"the leaders of each clan"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- priest, priesthood
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
- head
- head
- livestock, animals

#### Translation Words - UST

- the
- Tell...and the...that...write
- that were captured in
- leaders of the family groups
- leaders of the family groups
- the animals

#### ULT

**26** "Count all the plundered things that were taken, both people and animals. You, Eleazar the priest, and the leaders of the community's ancestor's clans

#### UST

**26** "[Tell](#) Eleazar [and the leaders of the family groups](#) that they must [write](#) down a list of all the goods, [the](#) women, and [the animals that were captured in](#) the battle.

## Numbers 31:27

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> must divide the plunder into two parts. Divide it between the soldiers who went out to battle and all the rest of the community.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> Then tell Eleazar and the leaders of the family groups that they must divide all those things between the men who fought in the battle and the rest of the people.

## Numbers 31:28

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses. The word “me” refers to Yahweh.

### Then levy a tax to be given to me from the soldiers who went out to battle

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Collect a tax from the soldiers’ plunder and give it to me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### every five hundred

“every 500” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [exalt, exalted, exaltation](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and sheep, to be a tax for](#)
- [me](#)
- [take](#)
- [donkeys](#)
- [and sheep, to be a tax for](#)

### ULT

**28** Then levy a tax to be given to me from the soldiers who went out to battle. This tax must be one out of every five hundred, whether persons, cattle, donkeys, sheep, or goats.

### UST

**28** From the men who fought in the battle, [take](#) one from every five hundred people and from every five hundred cattle and [donkeys and sheep, to be a tax for me](#).

## Numbers 31:29

### from their half

“from the soldiers’ half”

### to be presented to me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “which he will present to me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to me](#)
- [the](#)
- [offering presented](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Take this tax from their half and give it to Eleazar the priest for an offering to be presented to me.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> Take these things to Eleazar to be my share as [the offering presented to me](#).

## Numbers 31:30

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

### Also from the people of Israel's half

"Also from the people of Israel's half of the plunder"

### who take care

those who oversee and maintain the tabernacle and sacrifices to Yahweh

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- donkey, mule
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

### Translation Words - UST

- the descendants of
- sacred tent
- from the other things
- Levi
- donkeys
- sheep, goats
- who take care of my

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Also from the people of Israel's half, you must take one out of every fifty—from the persons, cattle, donkeys, sheep, and goats. Give these to the Levites who take care of my tabernacle."

### UST

<sup>30</sup> And from the other things, take one item from every fifty. That includes people, cattle, donkeys, sheep, goats, and other animals. Give those things to the descendants of Levi who take care of my sacred tent."

## Numbers 31:31

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [priest](#), [priesthood](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [commanded](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Eleazar](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> So Moses and Eleazar the priest did as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

### UST

<sup>31</sup> So [Eleazar](#) and [Moses](#) did what [Yahweh commanded](#).

## Numbers 31:32

### Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main teaching. Here Moses begins listing the amount of plunder and how much went to the soldiers, to the people, and to Yahweh.

### 675,000 sheep

“six hundred and seventy-five thousand sheep” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [flock](#), [herd](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [flock](#), [herd](#)

### ULT

**32** Now the plunder that remained of what the soldiers had taken was 675,000 sheep,

### UST

**32-35** There were 675,000 sheep, seventy-two thousand cattle, sixty-one thousand donkeys, and thirty-virgins that they had captured from the Midian people group.

## Numbers 31:33

### seventy-two thousand oxen

"72,000 oxen" (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

<sup>33</sup> seventy-two thousand oxen,

UST



## Numbers 31:34

### sixty-one thousand donkeys

“61,000 donkeys” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [donkey](#), mule

#### Translation Words - UST

- [donkey](#), mule

ULT

<sup>34</sup> sixty-one thousand donkeys,

UST

## Numbers 31:35

### thirty-two thousand women

"32,000 women" (See: [Numbers](#))

### women who had not known a man by lying with him

"women who had no had sexual relations with a man." This refers to women who are virgins. (See: [Euphemism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> and thirty-two thousand women who had not known a man by lying with him.

#### UST

<sup>32-35</sup> There were 675,000 sheep, seventy-two thousand cattle, sixty-one thousand donkeys, and thirty-virgins that they had captured from the Midian people group.

## Numbers 31:36

### General Information:

Moses is listing the plunder that goes to the soldiers and the tax that goes to Yahweh. (See: [Numbers](#))

### The half that was kept for the soldiers

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The soldiers' part of the sheep" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### 337,000 sheep

"three hundred and thirty-seven thousand sheep" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sheep](#)

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> The half that was kept for the soldiers numbered 337,000 sheep,

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> The men who fought in the battle took 337,000 [sheep](#) from the battle,

## Numbers 31:37

### was 675

“was six hundred and seventy-five” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to Yahweh](#)
- [them](#)

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> from which Yahweh's part of the sheep was 675.

### UST

<sup>37</sup> and they gave 675 of [them to Yahweh](#).

## Numbers 31:38

### thirty-six thousand

36,000 (See: [Numbers](#))

### seventy-two

72 (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>38</sup> The oxen were thirty-six thousand from which Yahweh's part was seventy-two.

#### UST

<sup>38</sup> They took thirty-six thousand cattle and gave 72 of them [to Yahweh](#).

## Numbers 31:39

### General Information:

Moses is listing the plunder that goes to the soldiers and the tax that goes to Yahweh. (See: [Numbers](#))

**were 30,500**

“were thirty thousand five hundred” (See: [Numbers](#))

**sixty-one**

61 (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [donkey](#), mule

### Translation Words - UST

- [to Yahweh](#)
- [donkeys](#)

#### ULT

<sup>39</sup> The donkeys were 30,500 from which Yahweh's part was sixty-one.

#### UST

<sup>39</sup> They took 30,500 [donkeys](#), and they gave 61 of them [to Yahweh](#).

## Numbers 31:40

### sixteen thousand

16,000 (See: [Numbers](#))

### thirty-two

32 (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh

#### Translation Words - UST

- virgins
- to Yahweh

#### ULT

<sup>40</sup> The persons were sixteen thousand women from which Yahweh's part was thirty-two.

#### UST

<sup>40</sup> They took sixteen thousand [virgins](#), and they gave 32 of them [to Yahweh](#).

## Numbers 31:41

### to be an offering presented to Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "to be an offering to Yahweh" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [priest](#), [priesthood](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [sacrifice](#), [sacrifices](#), [offering](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [had commanded](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [as Yahweh](#)
- [to Eleazar](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [gave](#)

#### ULT

<sup>41</sup> Moses took the tax that was to be an offering presented to Yahweh. He gave it to Eleazar the priest, as Yahweh commanded Moses.

#### UST

<sup>41</sup> [Moses gave to Eleazar](#) all the animals that had been presented to [Yahweh](#), [as Yahweh had commanded](#).



## Numbers 31:42

### General Information:

Moses is listing the plunder that goes to the people and the tax that goes to Yahweh. (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

**42** As for the people of Israel's half that Moses had taken from the soldiers who had gone to war—

### UST

**42-46** Moses separated what those who had fought in the battle received from what the other people received. The people received 337,500 sheep, thirty-six thousand cattle, 30,500 donkeys, and sixteen thousand virgins.

## Numbers 31:43

### 337,500 sheep

“three hundred and thirty-seven thousand five hundred sheep” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

#### ULT

<sup>43</sup> the community's half was 337,500 sheep,

#### UST

## Numbers 31:44

### thirty-six thousand oxen

36,000 oxen (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

<sup>44</sup> thirty-six thousand oxen,

UST

## Numbers 31:45

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- donkey, mule

### Translation Words - UST

- donkey, mule

**ULT**

<sup>45</sup> 30,500 donkeys,

**UST**

## Numbers 31:46

### sixteen thousand women

"16,000 women." It has been stated earlier that all the males and the married women captives were put to death (See: [Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>46</sup> and sixteen thousand women.

#### UST

<sup>42-46</sup> Moses separated what those who had fought in the battle received from what the other people received. The people received 337,500 sheep, thirty-six thousand cattle, 30,500 donkeys, and sixteen thousand virgins.

## Numbers 31:47

### General Information:

Moses is listing the plunder that goes to the people and the tax that goes to Yahweh. (See: [Numbers](#))

### General Information:

The tax on the people's portion was higher than the tax on the soldiers' portion.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)
- [watch](#), [watchman](#), [watchful](#), [guard](#), [take heed](#), [beware](#), [watch out](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [commanded](#)
- [what the people](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [As Yahweh](#)
- [what the people](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [to the descendants of Levi](#)
- [took care of](#)

### ULT

<sup>47</sup> From the people of Israel's half, Moses took one out of every fifty, both of people and animals. He gave them to the Levites who kept care of Yahweh's tabernacle, as Yahweh had commanded him to do.

### UST

<sup>47</sup> From [what the people](#) received, [Moses](#) took one from every fifty items and gave them to [Yahweh](#). That included animals and people. [As Yahweh commanded](#), [Moses](#) gave them all [to the descendants of Levi](#) who [took care of](#) the sacred tent.

## Numbers 31:48

### the commanders over thousands and the captains over hundreds

Possible meanings are 1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders and captains led. Alternate translation: “the commanders over 1,000 soldiers and the captains over 100 soldiers” or 2) the words translated as “thousands” and “hundreds” do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: “the commanders over large military divisions and the captains over smaller military divisions” See how you translated a similar phrase in [Numbers 31:14](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [commanders over hundreds of men](#)
- [commanders](#)

#### ULT

<sup>48</sup> Then the officers of the army, the commanders over thousands and the captains over hundreds, came to Moses.

#### UST

<sup>48</sup> Then the army officers, those who were [commanders](#) over thousands of men and those who were [commanders over hundreds of men](#), they came to [Moses](#).

## Numbers 31:49

### Your servants have counted

The commanders refer to themselves as “your servants.” This is a polite way to speak to someone with greater authority.

### not one man is missing

This can be stated in a positive statement. “we know for certain that every man is here” (See: [Litotes](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [hand](#)
- [head](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [have counted](#)
- [your](#)
- [whom we command, and we found](#)
- [whom we command, and we found](#)
- [We, who are...servants](#)

### ULT

<sup>49</sup> They said to him, “Your servants have counted the soldiers who are under our command, and not one man is missing.

### UST

<sup>49</sup> They said, “[We, who are your servants, have counted](#) the soldiers [whom we command, and we found](#) that none of them is missing.



## Numbers 31:50

### General Information:

The officers of the army continue speaking to Moses.

### armlets and bracelets, signet rings, earrings, and necklaces

These are all types of jewelry that people wore.

### to make atonement for ourselves before Yahweh

“to thank God for saving our lives”

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- atonement, atone, atoned
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- gold, golden

### Translation Words - UST

- for our sins
- will atone
- So to thank Yahweh for that
- for our sins
- gold

### ULT

<sup>50</sup> We have brought Yahweh's offering, what each man found, articles of gold, armlets and bracelets, signet rings, earrings, and necklaces, to make atonement for ourselves before Yahweh.”

### UST

<sup>50</sup> [So to thank Yahweh for that](#), we have brought to him a gift of the [gold](#) items that we found after the battle, gold arm bands and bracelets and rings, earrings and necklaces. We hope that this [will atone for our sins](#).”

## Numbers 31:51

### the gold and all the articles of craftsmanship

“all the articles of gold” or “all the golden jewelry”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- priest, priesthood
- Moses
- gold, golden

#### Translation Words - UST

- So Eleazar
- Moses
- gold

#### ULT

<sup>51</sup> Moses and Eleazar the priest received from them the gold and all the articles of craftsmanship.

#### UST

<sup>51</sup> [So Eleazar](#) and [Moses](#) accepted the [gold](#) items that they brought.

## Numbers 31:52

**All the gold of the offering that they gave to Yahweh—the offerings from the commanders of thousands and from the captains of hundreds—weighed**

“All the gold of the offering that the commanders of thousands and the captains of hundreds gave to Yahweh weighed”

**from the commanders of thousands and from the captains of hundreds**

Possible meanings are 1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders and captains led. Alternate translation: “from the commanders of 1,000 soldiers and from the captains of 100 soldiers” or 2) the words translated as “thousands” and “hundreds” do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: “from the commanders of large military divisions and from the captains of smaller military divisions” See how you translated a similar phrase in [Numbers 31:14](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

**16750**

“sixteen thousand, seven hundred and fifty” (See: [Numbers](#))

**shekels**

A shekel is 11 grams. (See: [Biblical Money](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- gold, golden
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

### Translation Words - UST

- they presented
- the offering
- of
- they presented

### ULT

<sup>52</sup> All the gold of the offering that they gave to Yahweh—the offerings from the commanders of thousands and from the captains of hundreds—weighed 16,750 shekels.

### UST

<sup>52</sup> The total [of the offering they presented](#) weighed about one hundred and ninety one kilograms.

## Numbers 31:53

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>53</sup> Each soldier had taken plunder, each man for himself.

### UST

<sup>53</sup> Each soldier had taken these things for himself.

## Numbers 31:54

### as a reminder of the people of Israel for Yahweh

The gold will remind the people that Yahweh gave them victory. It will also remind Yahweh that the people fulfilled his revenge on the Midianites.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- Moses
- feast, feasting
- gold, golden
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

#### Translation Words - UST

- them
- Yahweh
- the Israelite people about how
- defeat the Midian
- Moses
- in the sacred
- gold items
- from these commanders

#### ULT

<sup>54</sup> Moses and Eleazar the priest took the gold from the commanders of thousands and captains of hundreds. They took it into the tent of meeting as a reminder of the people of Israel for Yahweh.

#### UST

<sup>54</sup> Eleazar and [Moses](#) accepted these [gold items from these commanders](#) and put them [in the sacred](#) tent to remind [the Israelite people about how Yahweh](#) had helped [them defeat the Midian](#) people group.

## Numbers 32

### Numbers 32 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

#### Reuben and Gad's inheritance

Reuben and Gad were given the land conquered east of the Jordan River. This land had good pastures, and suited these tribes because they had many sheep, goats and cattle. They had not yet entered into the Promised Land, and it would have been sinful to not fight with the rest of Israel. So they promised to enter the land to fight with the other tribes, and then return to their own land. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [Promised Land](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

## Numbers 32:1

### Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Moses tells background information about the tribes of Reuben and Gad. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Reuben
- Gad
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- the tribes of
- The people of
- Reuben
- and Gad
- the region
- the land

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now the descendants of Reuben and of Gad had large numbers of livestock. When they saw the land of Jazer and Gilead, the land was a wonderful place for livestock.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> [The people of the tribes of Reuben and Gad](#) had a lot of livestock. They saw that [the land](#) near the city of Jazer and [the region](#) of Gilead east of the Jordan River had good grass for the animals to graze on.

## Numbers 32:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- priest, priesthood
- Reuben
- Moses
- Gad

### Translation Words - UST

- They
- of the
- Eleazar
- leaders
- Moses
- leaders

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> So the descendants of Gad and Reuben came and spoke to Moses, to Eleazar the priest, and to the leaders of the community. They said,

### UST

<sup>2</sup> So their leaders came to [Eleazar](#) and the [leaders of the](#) people and [Moses](#). [They](#) said,



## Numbers 32:3

### **Ataroth, Dibon, Jazer, Nimrah, Heshbon, Elealeh, Sebam, Nebo, and Beon**

These are names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### **ULT**

<sup>3</sup> “This is a list of places we have surveyed: Ataroth, Dibon, Jazer, Nimrah, Heshbon, Elealeh, Sebam, Nebo, and Beon.

#### **UST**

<sup>3</sup> “This is a list of places we have surveyed: Ataroth, Dibon, Jazer, Nimrah, Heshbon, Elealeh, Sebam, Nebo, and Beon.

## Numbers 32:4

### General Information:

The people from Reuben and Gad continue speaking to Moses, Eleazar, and the other leaders.

### the lands that Yahweh attacked before the community of Israel

Yahweh enabling the Israelites to conquer the people who lived in the land is spoken of as if Yahweh went before the Israelites and attacked the people. Alternate translation: “the lands where Yahweh enabled us to defeat the people living there” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### We, your servants

The people of the tribes of Reuben and Gad refer to themselves in this way to show respect to a person of higher authority.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh has enabled
- Israelites
- to capture some land
- the land near the towns of Ataroth, Dibon, Jazer, Nimrah, Heshbon, Elealeh, Sebam, Nebo, and Beon

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> These are the lands that Yahweh attacked before the community of Israel, and they are good places for livestock. We, your servants, have a lot of livestock.”

### UST

<sup>4</sup> [Yahweh has enabled](#) us [Israelites to capture some land](#) that is very good for animals to graze on—[the land near the towns of Ataroth, Dibon, Jazer, Nimrah, Heshbon, Elealeh, Sebam, Nebo, and Beon](#).

## Numbers 32:5

### If we have found favor in your eyes

Here “found favor” is an idiom that means be approved of or that the leaders are pleased with them. Here “eyes” are a metonym for sight, and sight is a metaphor representing his evaluation. Alternate translation: “If we have found favor with you” or “If you are pleased with us” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### let this land be given to us

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “give this land to us” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Do not make us cross over the Jordan

They wanted the land on the east side of the Jordan River instead of crossing over to the west side and claiming land there. Alternate translation: “Do not make us cross over the Jordan to take possession of land on that side” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Jordan River, Jordan
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- pleases you
- the Jordan River
- land on
- ours

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> They said, “If we have found favor in your eyes, let this land be given to us, your servants, as a possession. Do not make us cross over the Jordan.”

### UST

<sup>5</sup> If it [pleases you](#), we would like this land to be [ours](#), instead of [land on](#) the other side of [the Jordan River](#).”

## Numbers 32:6

### Should your brothers go to war while you settle down here?

Moses asks this question to rebuke the people from the tribes of Gad and Reuben. Alternate translation: "It is wrong for you to settle down in this land while your brothers go to war." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Reuben
- Moses
- Gad

#### Translation Words - UST

- of the
- tribes
- and Reuben
- Moses
- of Gad

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Moses replied to the descendants of Gad and Reuben, "Should your brothers go to war while you settle down here?"

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> [Moses](#) replied to the leaders [of the tribes of Gad and Reuben](#), "It is not right for your fellow Israelites to go to fight in wars and you stay here!"

## Numbers 32:7

### Why discourage the hearts...the land that Yahweh has given them?

Moses asks this question to correct the people from the tribes of Gad and Reuben. Alternate translation: "Do not discourage the hearts... the land that Yahweh has given them." or "Your actions would discourage the hearts...the land that Yahweh has given them." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### discourage the hearts of the people of Israel from going

Here the word "hearts" represents the people themselves and refers to the seat of their emotions. Alternate translation: "discourage the people of Israel from going" or "cause the people of Israel to not want to go" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [If you do that, you will cause the other Israelites](#)
- [to be discouraged, with the result](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [If you do that, you will cause the other Israelites](#)
- [the land](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Why discourage the hearts of the people of Israel from going over into the land that Yahweh has given them?

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> [If you do that, you will cause the other Israelites to be discouraged, with the result](#) that they will not cross the Jordan River to [the land](#) that [Yahweh](#) is giving to them.

## Numbers 32:8

### General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Reuben and Gad.

### Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- Our ancestors
- the land of Canaan was like

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Your fathers did the same thing when I sent them from Kadesh Barnea to examine the land.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> [Our ancestors](#) did the same kind of thing. I sent them from Kadesh Barnea to see what [the land of Canaan was like](#).

## Numbers 32:9

### Valley of Eshkol

This is the name of a place. See how you translated this in [Numbers 13:23](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### They saw the land

This refers to seeing what was in the land. Alternate translation: "They saw the strong people and cities in the land" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### discouraged the hearts of the people of Israel

Here the word "hearts" represents the people themselves and refers to the seat of their emotions. See how you translated this in [Numbers 32:7](#). Alternate translation: "discouraged the people of Israel" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- heart
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite people
- to be discouraged
- Yahweh said
- the Israelite people
- huge people in the land
- the land (2)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> They went up to the Valley of Eshkol. They saw the land and then discouraged the hearts of the people of Israel so that they refused to enter the land that Yahweh had given them.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> They went as far as Eshcol Valley, but when they saw the [huge people in the land](#), they returned and caused [the Israelite people to be discouraged](#) saying, 'We should not try to enter [the land](#) that [Yahweh said](#) that he is giving to us.'

## Numbers 32:10

### Yahweh's anger was kindled

Yahweh becoming angry is spoken of as if his anger was a fire that begins to burn. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh became very angry" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

#### Translation Words - UST

- So Yahweh
- and he solemnly declared

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Yahweh's anger was kindled on that day. He took an oath and said,

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> [So Yahweh](#) became very angry with them, [and he solemnly declared](#) this,



## Numbers 32:11

### none of the men

"none of the people." This phrase refers to both men and women.

### twenty years old and up

"20 years old or older" (See: [Numbers](#))

### completely followed me

Being devoted to Yahweh and obeying him are spoken of as if they were following Yahweh. Alternate translation: "completely obeyed me" or "been completely devoted to me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

### ULT

**11** 'Surely none of the men who came up out of Egypt, from twenty years old and up, will see the land about which I swore to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, because they have not completely followed me, except for

### UST

**11-12** 'From all the people who came out of Egypt, the only ones who are at least twenty years old who will see the land that I promised to give to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, are Jephunneh's son Caleb and Nun's son Joshua, because they trusted me completely. None of the other people who came out of Egypt will even see that land, because they have not completely believed in my power.'

## Numbers 32:12

### Jephunneh...Nun

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Kenizzite

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**12** Caleb son of Jephunneh the Kenizzite, and Joshua son of Nun. Only Caleb and Joshua have completely followed me.'

### UST

**11-12** 'From all the people who came out of Egypt, the only ones who are at least twenty years old who will see the land that I promised to give to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, are Jephunneh's son Caleb and Nun's son Joshua, because they trusted me completely. None of the other people who came out of Egypt will even see that land, because they have not completely believed in my power.'

## Numbers 32:13

### Yahweh's anger was kindled against Israel

Yahweh becoming angry is spoken of as if his anger was a fire that begins to burn. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh became very angry with Israel" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### forty years

"40 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

### all the generation...sight was destroyed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he destroyed all the generation...sight" or "all the generation...sight had died" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### who had done evil in his sight

Being in someone's sight means to be in front of that person where he can see. Alternate translation: "who had done evil before Yahweh" or "who had done evil in Yahweh's presence" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [So Yahweh was](#)
- [against Yahweh by refusing to trust him died, one by one](#)
- [the Israelite people, and as a result](#)
- [against Yahweh by refusing to trust him died, one by one](#)
- [has caused us...in this desert](#)

### ULT

**13** So Yahweh's anger was kindled against Israel. He made them wander around in the wilderness for forty years until all the generation who had done evil in his sight was destroyed.

### UST

**13** [So Yahweh was](#) angry with [the Israelite people, and as a result](#) he [has caused us](#) to wander [in this desert](#) for forty years. Finally, all the people who had sinned [against Yahweh by refusing to trust him died, one by one](#).

## Numbers 32:14

### you have risen up in your fathers' place

The people of Reuben and Gad acting like their ancestors did is spoken of as if they were standing in the place where their ancestors did. Alternate translation: "you have begun to act just like your ancestors" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### to add to Yahweh's burning anger toward Israel

The people causing Yahweh to become angrier is spoken of as if his anger was a fire and the people are adding more fuel to that fire. Alternate translation: "to cause Yahweh to be even more angry with Israel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [You...Israelite people are going to cause](#)
- [And...are...like your ancestors did](#)

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Look, you have risen up in your fathers' place, like just more sinful men, to add to Yahweh's burning anger toward Israel.

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> And you are acting [like your ancestors did](#)! You sinful [Israelite people are going to cause Yahweh](#) to be more angry with you than he was with our ancestors!

## Numbers 32:15

### all this people

“this entire people” or “all this generation of people”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- desert, wilderness
- people, people group,

#### Translation Words - UST

- to
- in the desert
- he will cause you and all your fellow Israelites

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> If you turn away from following him, he will again leave Israel in the wilderness and you will have destroyed all this people.”

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> If you stop trusting him, [he will cause you and all your fellow Israelites to](#) stay longer [in the desert](#), and he will get rid of all of you!”

## Numbers 32:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- flock, herd

### Translation Words - UST

- we will build pens for

#### ULT

**16** So they came near Moses and said, "Allow us to build fences here for our cattle and cities for our families.

#### UST

**16** Then the leaders of the tribes of Reuben and Gad said to Moses, "First we will build pens for our animals and build cities for our families here.

## Numbers 32:17

### will be ready and armed

“will be ready with weapons” or “will be ready to fight a war”

### in the fortified cities

“in the secured cities”

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- We will...the other Israelites
- We will...the other Israelites
- get land on the other side of the river

### ULT

**17** However, we ourselves will be ready and armed to go with Israel's army until we have led them into their place. But our families will live in the fortified cities because of the other people who still live in this land.

### UST

**17** Then our families will live in strong cities with walls around them, and they will be safe from the people who live in this land. Then we will get ready to fight battles. We will help the other Israelites to get land on the other side of the river.

## Numbers 32:18

### General Information:

The leaders of Gad and Reuben continue speaking.

### has obtained his inheritance

The land that the people were to receive as a permanent possession is spoken of as if it were an inheritance that they were to obtain.

Alternate translation: "has taken possession of his portion of the land" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- has received
- some land
- Israelite
- return to
- Israelite
- our homes

### ULT

**18** We will not return to our houses until every one of the people of Israel has obtained his inheritance.

### UST

**18** We will not [return to our homes](#) until every [Israelite has received some land](#).



## Numbers 32:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- Jordan River, Jordan

### Translation Words - UST

- take
- any land
- Jordan River

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> We will not inherit the land with them on the other side of the Jordan, because our inheritance is here on the east side of the Jordan.”

### UST

<sup>19</sup> We will not [take any land](#) on the west side of the [Jordan River](#), because our land will be here on the east side.”

## Numbers 32:20

### if you arm yourselves

“if you take your weapons”

### before Yahweh

This means Yahweh will go with them to battle and enable them to defeat their enemy and take their land. Alternate translation: “in the presence of Yahweh” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> So Moses replied to them, “If you do what you say, if you arm yourselves to go before Yahweh to war,

### UST

<sup>20</sup> So [Moses](#) told them, “I will tell you what you must do. You must get ready to fight battles for [Yahweh](#).”

## Numbers 32:21

### until he has driven out his enemies from before him

“until Yahweh has driven out his enemies from his presence.” The pronouns here all refer to Yahweh. Yahweh enabling the Israelites to defeat their enemies is spoken of as if Yahweh were fighting their battles. Alternate translation: “until Yahweh has enabled your soldiers to defeat the enemy and force them away from his presence” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jordan River](#)
- [Jordan River](#)
- [carrying your weapons](#)
- [You must cross](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> then every one of your armed men must cross over the Jordan before Yahweh, until he has driven out his enemies from before him

### UST

<sup>21</sup> [You must cross](#) the [Jordan River](#) [carrying your weapons](#).

## Numbers 32:22

### the land is subdued before him

Here the word "land" refers to the people who live there. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "in his presence the Israelites have subdued the people who live in the land" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### you may return

It is implied that they will return to the east side of the Jordan. Alternate translation: "you may return to this land on the east side of the Jordan" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### You will be guiltless toward Yahweh and toward Israel

Possible meanings are 1) "You will have fulfilled your obligation to Yahweh and to Israel" or 2) "There will be nothing for which Yahweh or the people of Israel can blame you."

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [innocent](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [You will have done what you have promised](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [permitted to return to your homes](#)
- [and the Israelite people](#)
- [helps us to take that land](#)
- [this land to be your own](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> and the land is subdued before him. Then afterward you may return. You will be guiltless toward Yahweh and toward Israel. This land will be your possession before Yahweh.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> After [Yahweh helps us to take that land](#) from the people who live there, you will be [permitted to return to your homes](#). [You will have done what you have promised](#) Yahweh [and the Israelite people](#) that you would do, and you may keep [this land to be your own](#), given to you by [Yahweh](#).

## Numbers 32:23

### Be sure that your sin will find you out

Moses speaks of sin as if it were a person who will condemn the guilty person. This means that the people cannot escape the punishment that their sin deserves. Alternate translation: "Know for sure that Yahweh will punish you for your sin" (See: [Personification](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [sinning](#)
- [sin](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [against](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> But if you do not do so, look, you will have sinned against Yahweh. Be sure that your sin will find you out.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> But if you do not do these things, you will be [sinning against Yahweh](#), and he will punish you for that [sin](#).

## Numbers 32:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Build cities for your families and pens for your sheep; then do what you have said."

### UST

<sup>24</sup> Now you can build cities for your families and pens for your animals, but after doing that, you must do what you have promised."

## Numbers 32:25

### Your servants

The people of Gad and Reuben refer to themselves as “your servants.” This is a polite way of speaking to someone with greater authority.

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- command, commandment
- son
- son
- Reuben
- Moses
- Gad
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- because you
- are our leader
- tribes
- The leaders of the
- and Reuben
- replied
- of Gad
- us

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> The descendants of Gad and Reuben spoke to Moses and said, “Your servants will do as you, our master, commands.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> [The leaders of the tribes of Gad and Reuben replied](#), “We will do what you have asked [us](#) to do, [because you are our leader](#).

## Numbers 32:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Gilead, Gileadite
- beast

### Translation Words - UST

- of the Gilead area
- and our cattle

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Our little ones, our wives, our flocks, and all our livestock will stay there in the cities of Gilead.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> Our wives and children [and our cattle](#) and sheep and goats will stay here in the cities [of the Gilead area](#),



## Numbers 32:27

### will cross over

You can make it clear that they will cross over the Jordan. Alternate translation: "will cross over the Jordan River" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### every man who is armed for war

"every man prepared for war"

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- you, our leader
- for Yahweh
- you, our leader

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> However, we, your servants, will cross over before Yahweh to battle, every man who is armed for war, as you, our master, say."

### UST

<sup>27</sup> but we will prepare to go to battle. We will take our weapons and go across the Jordan River and fight [for Yahweh](#), just as [you, our leader](#), have said."

## Numbers 32:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [priest](#), [priesthood](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Joshua](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [head](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gave](#)
- [them](#)
- [of the Israelite](#)
- [of the Israelite](#)
- [instructions about](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Joshua](#)
- [tribes](#)
- [leaders](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> So Moses gave instructions concerning them to Eleazar the priest, to Joshua son of Nun, and to the leaders of the ancestor's clans in the tribes of the people of Israel.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> So [Moses gave instructions about them](#) to Eleazar, [Joshua](#), and the [leaders of the Israelite tribes](#).

## Numbers 32:29

### every man who is armed

“every man who is ready with his weapon”

### if the land is subdued before you

Here the word “land” refers to the people who live there. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “if Yahweh subdues before you the people living in the land” or “if they help you subdue the people living in the land” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Yahweh
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Reuben
- Moses
- Gilead, Gileadite
- Gad
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- Gad
- the tribes of
- prepare for
- cross the Jordan River with you
- and Reuben
- Moses
- Gilead
- Gad
- land
- and...area to

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Moses said to them, “If the descendants of Gad and Reuben cross over the Jordan with you, every man who is armed to battle before Yahweh, and if the land is subdued before you, then you will give them the land of Gilead as a possession.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> [Moses](#) said to them, “If the men from [the tribes of Gad and Reuben prepare for](#) battle and [cross the Jordan River with you](#), in order to do what Yahweh desires and help you to take that [land](#), give them the [Gilead area to](#) belong to them.

## Numbers 32:30

**then they will acquire their possessions among you in the land of Canaan**

“then the descendants of Gad and Reuben will receive land with you in Canaan”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [They will need to accept some land in Canaan](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> But if they do not cross over with you armed, then they will acquire their possessions among you in the land of Canaan.”

### UST

<sup>30</sup> But if they do not take their weapons and go with you prepared to fight, they will not receive this land. [They will need to accept some land in Canaan](#), like the rest of you will do.”

## Numbers 32:31

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Yahweh
- Reuben
- Gad
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- The leaders of the
- tribes
- Yahweh has said
- Reuben
- of Gad
- Yahweh has said

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> So the descendants of Gad and Reuben answered and said, "As Yahweh has said to us, your servants, this is what we will do.

### UST

<sup>31</sup> [The leaders of the tribes of Gad](#) and [Reuben](#) replied, "We will do what you have said and what [Yahweh has said](#).

## Numbers 32:32

### We will cross over armed

You can make it clear that they will cross the Jordan. Alternate translation: "We will cross over the Jordan ready to fight" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### our possessed inheritance

The land that the people were to receive as a permanent possession is spoken of as if it were an inheritance that they were to obtain. Alternate translation: "the portion of land that we will possess" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### will remain with us

This idiom refers to ownership. Alternate translation: "will be ours" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- Yahweh
- Canaan, Canaanite
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- But our land will be here
- and we will do what Yahweh desires
- into Canaan land
- But our land will be here

### ULT

**32** We will cross over armed before Yahweh into the land of Canaan, but our possessed inheritance will remain with us on this side of the Jordan."

### UST

**32** We will cross the river [into Canaan land](#), [and we will do what Yahweh desires](#) and be prepared for battle. [But our land will be here](#) on the east side of the Jordan River."

## Numbers 32:33

### the kingdom of Sihon...and of Og

These are names of kings who ruled two separate kingdoms.  
Alternate translation: "the kingdom of Sihon...and the kingdom of Og" (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- Joseph (OT)
- Reuben
- Moses
- Amorite
- Gad
- Bashan
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- kingdom
- kingdom
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

#### Translation Words - UST

- to the tribes
- of
- son
- Joseph's
- and Reuben
- So Moses
- the Amor people group
- of Gad
- Bashan...including
- the king of
- the king of (2)
- and the land
- land
- ruled
- ruled...and surrounding
- of the tribe

#### ULT

**33** So to the descendants of Gad and Reuben, and also to the half tribe of Manasseh son of Joseph, Moses gave the kingdom of Sihon, king of the Amorites, and of Og, king of Bashan. He gave to them the land, and distributed to them all its cities with their borders, the cities of the land around them.

#### UST

**33** [So Moses](#) agreed to give that land [to the tribes of Gad and Reuben](#) and to half [of the tribe of Joseph's son](#) Manasseh. That land was previously the land where Sihon, [the king of the Amor people group, ruled, and the land](#) where Og, [the king of Bashan](#) region, [ruled, including](#) its cities [and surrounding land](#).

## Numbers 32:34

### Dibon, Ataroth, Aroer

These are names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Gad

#### Translation Words - UST

- people of
- of Gad

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> The descendants of Gad rebuilt  
Dibon, Ataroth, Aroer,

#### UST

<sup>34</sup> The [people of](#) the tribe [of Gad](#) rebuilt  
Dibon, Ataroth, Aroer,



## Numbers 32:35

### Atroth Shophan, Jazer, Jogbehah

These are names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Atroth Shophan, Jazer, Jogbehah,

#### UST

<sup>35</sup> Atroth Shophan, Jazer, Jogbehah,

## Numbers 32:36

### Beth Nimrah, and Beth Haran

These are names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [flock, herd](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [for their sheep](#)

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Beth Nimrah, and Beth Haran as fortified cities with pens for sheep.

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> Beth Nimrah, and Beth Haran cities. Those were cities with strong walls around them. And they also built pens [for their sheep](#).

## Numbers 32:37

### Heshbon, Elealeh, Kiriathaim

These are names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Reuben](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [people of](#)
- [Reuben](#)

#### ULT

<sup>37</sup> The descendants of Reuben rebuilt Heshbon, Elealeh, Kiriathaim,

#### UST

<sup>37</sup> The [people of](#) the tribe of [Reuben](#) rebuilt Heshbon, Elealeh, Kiriathaim,

## Numbers 32:38

### Nebo, Baal Meon...Sibmah

These are names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### their names were later changed

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “people later changed the names of these cities” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [name](#)
- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [they gave new names](#)
- [they gave new names](#)
- [they gave new names](#)
- [they gave new names](#)

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> Nebo, Baal Meon—their names were later changed, and Sibmah. They gave other names to the cities that they rebuilt.

### UST

<sup>38</sup> Nebo, Baal Meon, and Sibmah cities. When they rebuilt Nebo and Baal Meon, [they gave new names](#) to those cities.

## Numbers 32:39

### Machir

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this name in [Numbers 26:29](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [inherit, inheritance, heir](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Amorite](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [took](#)
- [The descendants of](#)
- [son](#)
- [from the Amor people group](#)

#### ULT

<sup>39</sup> The descendants of Machir son of Manasseh went to Gilead and took it away from the Amorites who were in it.

#### UST

<sup>39</sup> [The descendants of](#) Manasseh's [son](#) Makir went to the region of Gilead and [took](#) it away [from the Amor people group](#).

## Numbers 32:40

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Moses
- Gilead, Gileadite

### Translation Words - UST

- and they started
- So Moses
- Gilead

#### ULT

<sup>40</sup> Then Moses gave Gilead to Machir son of Manasseh, and his people settled there.

#### UST

<sup>40</sup> So Moses gave Gilead to the family of Makir, and they started to live there.

## Numbers 32:41

### Jair

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Havvoth Jair

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- walk, walked
- declare, proclaim, announce

### Translation Words - UST

- who was also a descendant of
- went and
- and he named them

### ULT

<sup>41</sup> Jair son of Manasseh went and captured its towns and called them Havvoth Jair.

### UST

<sup>41</sup> Jair, [who was also a descendant of](#) Manasseh, [went and](#) captured the small towns in that region, [and he named them](#) the Towns of Jair.

## Numbers 32:42

### Nobah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Kenath

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to be the new name of that area](#)
- [went](#)
- [used...own name](#)

### ULT

<sup>42</sup> Nobah went and captured Kenath and its villages, and he called it Nobah, after his own name.

### UST

<sup>42</sup> A man named Nobah [went](#) and captured the city of Kenath and the nearby towns, and then he [used](#) his [own name to be the new name of that area](#).



## **Numbers 33**

### **Numbers 33 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter is a summary of Israel's exodus from Egypt to the Promised Land, including their wandering through the desert. The phrase "they set out" means "they left."

## Numbers 33:1

### by their armed groups

“by their military divisions.” This means that each tribe had their own men, who were armed, to protect them. See how you translated “armed groups” in [Numbers 1:3](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- a list of the
- where the Israelites went
- and Moses led
- Egypt
- them
- after they left

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> These were the movements of the people of Israel after they left the land of Egypt by their armed groups under the leadership of Moses and Aaron.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Here is [a list of the](#) places [where the Israelites went](#) as Aaron [and Moses led them after they left Egypt](#).

## Numbers 33:2

### as commanded by Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as Yahweh commanded" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### departure after departure

"from one place to another place"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Moses wrote down the places from where they left to where they went, as commanded by Yahweh. These were their movements, departure after departure.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> [Yahweh](#) commanded [Moses](#) to write down the names of the places where they went.

## Numbers 33:3

### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### during the first month, leaving on the fifteenth day of the first month

Here “first” is the ordinal number one and “fifteenth” is the ordinal number fifteen. This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The fifteenth day is near the beginning of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### the people of Israel left openly, in the sight of all the Egyptians

“the Israelites left in plain view of the Egyptians”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Passover](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of the year, the day after they](#)
- [celebrated the Passover](#)
- [they](#)
- [the Egyptian army...them](#)
- [left](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> They traveled from Rameses during the first month, leaving on the fifteenth day of the first month. On the morning after the Passover, the people of Israel left openly, in the sight of all the Egyptians.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> On the fifteenth day of the first month [of the year, the day after they celebrated the Passover](#), [they left](#) the city of Rameses in Egypt and marched boldly while [the Egyptian army](#) was coming behind [them](#).

## Numbers 33:4

### their firstborn

This refers to the firstborn sons. Alternate translation: “their firstborn sons” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### he also inflicted punishment on their gods

Yahweh proving that he is more powerful than all of the false gods that the Egyptians worshiped is spoken of as if Yahweh punished those false gods. Alternate translation: “he also proved that he is greater than their gods” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- bury, buried, burial
- firstborn

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh showed that
- Yahweh showed that
- were still burying
- bodies of their firstborn sons

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> This happened while the Egyptians were burying all their firstborn, those whom Yahweh had killed among them, for he also inflicted punishment on their gods.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> As they left, the people of Egypt [were still burying](#) the [bodies of their firstborn sons](#). By killing them, [Yahweh showed that](#) the gods that the people of Egypt worshiped were false gods.

## Numbers 33:5

### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### set out from

“departed from”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [After leaving](#)
- [they](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> The people of Israel set out from Rameses and camped at Succoth.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> [After leaving](#) Rameses, [they](#) first went to Succoth and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:6

### on the edge of the wilderness

“on the border of the wilderness”

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> They set out from Succoth and camped at Etham, on the edge of the wilderness.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> Then they left Succoth and went to Etham, at the edge of the desert, and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- face, facial
- return

### Translation Words - UST

- to
- and returned

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> They set out from Etham and turned back to Pi Hahiroth, which is opposite Baal Zephon, where they camped opposite Migdol.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Then they left Etham and returned to Pi Hahiroth, to the east of Baal Zephon, and set up their tents near Migdol.



## Numbers 33:8

### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### passed through the middle of the sea

This refers to when Yahweh divided the Red Sea so that the Israelites could escape from the Egyptian army.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Desert](#)
- [the](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then they set out from opposite Pi Hahiroth and passed through the middle of the sea into the wilderness. They traveled three days' journey into the wilderness of Etham and camped at Marah.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Then they left Pi Hahiroth and walked through the Sea of Reeds and continued three days into [the](#) Etham [Desert](#), and set their tents at Marah.

## Numbers 33:9

### twelve springs...seventy palm trees

"12 springs...70 palm trees" (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [palm](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [palm trees there](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> They set out from Marah and arrived at Elim. At Elim were twelve springs of water and seventy palm trees. That is where they camped.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> Then they left Marah and went to Elim. There were twelve springs and seventy [palm trees there](#). They set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**10** They set out from Elim and camped by the Sea of Reeds.

### UST

**10** Then they left Elim and went to the area near the Sea of Reeds and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:11

### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [desert, wilderness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and went near the wilderness of](#)

#### ULT

**11** They set out from the Sea of Reeds and camped in the wilderness of Sin.

#### UST

**11** Then they left the Sea of Reeds [and went near the wilderness of](#) Sinai and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> They set out from the wilderness of Sin and camped at Dophkah.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Then they left the wilderness of Sinai and went to Dophkah and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**13** They set out from Dophkah and camped at Alush.

### UST

**13** Then they left Dophkah and went to Alush and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:14

### where no water was found for the people to drink

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “where the people could not find water to drink” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),

#### Translation Words - UST

- [they](#)

#### ULT

**14** They set out from Alush and camped at Rephidim, where no water was found for the people to drink.

#### UST

**14** Then they left Alush and went and set up their tents at Rephidim, where [they](#) had no water to drink.

## Numbers 33:15

### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [desert, wilderness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and went to the wilderness of](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> They set out from Rephidim and camped in the wilderness of Sinai.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Then they left Rephidim [and went to the wilderness of](#) the Sinai and set up their tents there.



## Numbers 33:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**16** They set out from the wilderness of Sinai and camped at Kibroth Hattaavah.

### UST

**16** Then they left the wilderness of the Sinai and went to Kibroth Hattaavah and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**17** They set out from Kibroth Hattaavah and camped at Hazeroth.

### UST

**17** Then they left Kibroth Hattaavah and went to Hazeroth and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**18** They set out from Hazeroth and camped at Rithmah.

### UST

**18** Then they left Hazeroth and went to Rithmah and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:19

### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### ULT

**19** They set out from Rithmah and camped at Rimmon Perez.

#### UST

**19** Then they left Rithmah and went to Rimmon Perez and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> They set out from Rimmon Perez and camped at Libnah.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> Then they left Rimmon Perez and went to Libnah and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> They set out from Libnah and camped at Rissah.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> Then they left Libnah and went to Rissah and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> They set out from Rissah and camped at Kehelathah.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> Then they left Rissah and set up their tents at Kehelathah.

## Numbers 33:23

### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> They set out from Kehelathah and camped at Mount Shepher.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> Then they left Kehelathah; they went to Mount Shepher and set up their tents there.



## Numbers 33:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> They set out from Mount Shepher and camped at Haradah.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> Then they left Mount Shepher and went to Haradah and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> They set out from Haradah and camped at Makheloth.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> Then they left Haradah and went to Makheloth and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> They set out from Makheloth and camped at Tahath.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> Then they left Makheloth and went to Tahath and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:27

### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> They set out from Tahath and camped at Terah.

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> Then they left Tahath and went to Terah and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> They set out from Terah and camped at Mithkah.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> Then they left Terah and went to Mithcah and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> They set out from Mithkah and camped at Hashmonah.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> Then they left Mithcah and went to Hashmonah and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:30

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> They set out from Hashmonah and camped at Moseroth.

### UST

<sup>30</sup> Then they left Hashmonah and went to Moseroth and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:31

### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### ULT

**31** They set out from Moseroth and camped at Bene Jaakan.

#### UST

**31** Then they left Moseroth and went to Bene Jaakan and set up their tents there.



## Numbers 33:32

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> They set out from Bene Jaakan and camped at Hor Haggidgad.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> Then they left Bene Jaakan and went to Hor Haggidgad and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:33

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> They set out from Hor Haggidgad and camped at Jotbathah.

### UST

<sup>33</sup> Then they left Hor Haggidgad and went to Jotbathah and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:34

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> They set out from Jotbathah and camped at Abronah.

### UST

<sup>34</sup> Then they left Jotbathah and went to Abronah and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:35

### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### ULT

**35** They set out from Abronah and camped at Ezion Geber.

#### UST

**35** Then they left Abronah and went to Ezion Geber and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:36

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [desert, wilderness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the wilderness of](#)

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> They set out from Ezion Geber and camped in the wilderness of Zin at Kadesh.

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> Then they left Ezion Geber and went to [the wilderness of](#) Zin and set up their tents at Kadesh there.

## Numbers 33:37

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [their tents there](#)

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> They set out from Kadesh and camped at Mount Hor, at the edge of the land of Edom.

### UST

<sup>37</sup> Then they left Kadesh and went to Mount Hor, at the border of Edom, and set up [their tents there](#).

## Numbers 33:38

### in the fortieth year after

Here “fortieth” is the ordinal number for forty. Alternate translation: “40 years after” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### in the fifth month, on the first day of the month

This “fifth” is the ordinal number for five. This “first” is the ordinal number for one. This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day is near the middle of July on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Aaron
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### Translation Words - UST

- after the Israelites
- obeyed Yahweh
- after the Israelites
- the priest
- Egypt
- Aaron
- he died

### ULT

**38** Aaron the priest went up Mount Hor at Yahweh's command and died there in the fortieth year after the people of Israel had come out of the land of Egypt, in the fifth month, on the first day of the month.

### UST

**38** [Aaron the priest obeyed Yahweh](#) and climbed up the mountain. There [he died](#), on the first day of their fifth month, forty years [after the Israelites](#) left [Egypt](#).

## Numbers 33:39

### 123 years old

“one hundred and twenty-three years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Aaron](#)

#### ULT

<sup>39</sup> Aaron was a 123 years old when he died on Mount Hor.

#### UST

<sup>39</sup> [Aaron](#) was 123 years old when he died.



## Numbers 33:40

### The Canaanite, the king of Arad

“The Canaanite king of Arad”

### Arad

This was the name of a Canaanite city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### heard of the coming of the people of Israel

“heard that the people of Israel were coming”

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Canaan, Canaanite
- king, kingdom, kingship

### Translation Words - UST

- the Israelites
- the Israelites
- where the Canaan people group
- of Canaan
- That was when the king of

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> The Canaanite, the king of Arad, who lived in the southern wilderness in the land of Canaan, heard of the coming of the people of Israel.

### UST

<sup>40</sup> [That was when the king of](#) the city of Arad heard that [the Israelites](#) were coming. Arad was in the southern wilderness in the land [of Canaan](#), [where the Canaan people group](#) lived.

## Numbers 33:41

### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### ULT

**41** They set out from Mount Hor and camped at Zalmonah.

#### UST

**41** The Israelites left Mount Hor and went to Zalmonah and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:42

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>42</sup> They set out from Zalmonah and camped at Punon.

### UST

<sup>42</sup> Then they left Zalmonah and went to Punon and set up tents there.

## Numbers 33:43

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>43</sup> They set out from Punon and camped at Oboth.

### UST

<sup>43</sup> Then they left Punon and went to Oboth and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:44

### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moab](#), [Moabite](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of Moab, and set up their tents there](#)

#### ULT

<sup>44</sup> They set out from Oboth and camped at Iye Abarim, on the border of Moab.

#### UST

<sup>44</sup> Then they left Oboth and went to Iye Abarim, which was on the border of the region [of Moab, and set up their tents there](#).

## Numbers 33:45

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Gad

### Translation Words - UST

- Gad

#### ULT

<sup>45</sup> They set out from Iye Abarim and camped at Dibon Gad.

#### UST

<sup>45</sup> Then they left Iye Abarim and went to Dibon [Gad](#) and set up their tents there.

## Numbers 33:46

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Gad

### Translation Words - UST

- Gad

#### ULT

<sup>46</sup> They set out from Dibon Gad and camped at Almon Diblathaim.

#### UST

<sup>46</sup> Then they left Dibon [Gad](#) and set up their tents at Almon Diblathaim.

## Numbers 33:47

### General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### ULT

<sup>47</sup> They set out from Almon Diblathaim and camped in the mountains of Abarim, opposite Nebo.

#### UST

<sup>47</sup> Then they left Almon Diblathaim and went to the Abarim Mountains, near Nebo and set up their tents there.



## Numbers 33:48

### plains

a large area of flat land

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moab](#), [Moabite](#)
- [Jericho](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of Moab](#)
- [across from Jericho](#)

### ULT

<sup>48</sup> They set out from the mountains of Abarim and camped in the plains of Moab by the Jordan at Jericho.

### UST

<sup>48</sup> Then they left the Abarim mountains and went to the plains [of Moab](#), near the Jordan River, [across from Jericho](#).

## Numbers 33:49

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moab](#), [Moabite](#)
- [Jordan River](#), [Jordan](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of Moab](#)
- [Their tents stretched for several kilometers](#)

### ULT

<sup>49</sup> They camped by the Jordan, from Beth Jeshimoth to Abel Shittim in the plains of Moab.

### UST

<sup>49</sup> They set up their tents there on the plains [of Moab](#). [Their tents stretched for several kilometers](#) from Beth Jeshimoth to Abel Shittim.

## Numbers 33:50

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Jericho](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [of Moab](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [across from Jericho](#)

#### ULT

<sup>50</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses in the plains of Moab by the Jordan at Jericho and said,

#### UST

<sup>50</sup> While we were there on the plains [of Moab](#) near the Jordan River, [across from Jericho](#), [Yahweh](#) spoke to [Moses](#). He said,

## Numbers 33:51

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Canaan, Canaanite
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite people
- the Israelite people
- Jordan River
- of Canaan
- the region

### ULT

**51** "Speak to the people of Israel and say to them, 'When you cross over the Jordan into the land of Canaan,

### UST

**51** "Tell this to [the Israelite people](#), 'When you cross the [Jordan River](#) and enter [the region of Canaan](#),

## Numbers 33:52

### demolish all their high places

“destroy all of their high places”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [perish](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heir](#)
- [destroy, destruction, annihilate](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Destroy](#)
- [leave](#)
- [Destroy](#)
- [where they worship their idols](#)

#### ULT

<sup>52</sup> then you must drive out all the land's inhabitants before you. You must destroy all their carved figures. You must destroy all their cast figures and demolish all their high places.

#### UST

<sup>52</sup> you must force all the people who live there to [leave](#). [Destroy](#) all their carved figures and all cast figures made of metal. Wreck all the places [where they worship their idols](#).

## Numbers 33:53

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- possess, possessed, possession, dispossess
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- Take...own
- to you
- their land
- land (2)

### ULT

<sup>53</sup> You must take possession of the land and settle in it, because I have given you the land to possess.

### UST

<sup>53</sup> [Take their land](#) from them and start to live there, because I have given their [land to you](#) for you to [own](#).

## Numbers 33:54

### inherit the land

The Israelites claiming the land as their permanent possession is spoken of as if they were inheriting the land. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Wherever the lot falls to each clan, that land will belong to it

“Each clan will receive the land according to how the lot falls”

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- clan
- lots, casting lots
- earth, earthen, earthly
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- give
- give
- receive its own land
- the groups
- and...the smaller areas
- that
- land
- Each tribe will
- which group will get

### ULT

**54** You must inherit the land by lot, according to each clan. To the larger clans you must give a larger share of land, and to the smaller clans you must give a smaller share of land. Wherever the lot falls to each clan, that land will belong to it. You will inherit the land according to your ancestors' tribes.

### UST

**54** Divide up the [land](#) by casting lots to decide [which group will get](#) which area. Give the larger areas to the groups [that](#) have more people, and [give the smaller areas](#) to [the groups](#) that have fewer people. [Each tribe will receive its own land.](#)

## Numbers 33:55

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### like objects in your eyes and thorns in your sides

Just like a small object in a person's eye or a small thorn that sticks into a person skin can cause great irritation, so even a small portion of the Canaanites, if left in the land, would cause great trouble for the Israelites. (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [land](#)
- [there](#)

### ULT

**55** But if you do not drive out the land's inhabitants before you, then the people you allow to stay will become like objects in your eyes and thorns in your sides. They will make your lives difficult in the land where you settle.

### UST

**55** If you do not force the people who live [there](#) to leave, they will cause you to have much trouble. They will be like sharp hooks in your eyes, and like thorns in your sides. And they will bring trouble to you, in that [land](#) where you will be living.



## Numbers 33:56

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>56</sup> Then it will happen that what I now intend to do to those people, I will do also to you.”

### UST

<sup>56</sup> And then I will punish you, as I had planned to punish them.”

## **Numbers 34**

### **Numbers 34 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

The ULT sets the lines in 34:19-28 farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text because they are long lists.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **The boundaries**

Moses told them all of the land they would inherit and live in and said that they should divide it up by casting lots.  
(See: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#))

## Numbers 34:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses and said,

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> [Yahweh](#) said [to Moses](#),

## Numbers 34:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heir](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Tell](#)
- [and it will become yours](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)
- [Canaan](#)
- [Canaan](#)
- [land](#)
- [of](#)
- [the land](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> "Command the people of Israel and say to them, 'When you enter the land of Canaan, the land that will belong to you, the land of Canaan and its borders,

### UST

<sup>2</sup> "Tell this to [the Israelite people](#), 'You will soon enter [Canaan land](#), [and it will become yours](#). The following will be the borders [of the land](#).

## Numbers 34:3

### wilderness of Zin

See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 33:12](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [will start at the](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> your southern border will extend from the wilderness of Zin along the border of Edom. The eastern end of the southern border will be on a line that ends at the southern end of the Salt Sea.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> On the south you will receive part of the wilderness of Zin, near the border of the region of Edom. On the east side, the border [will start at the](#) south end of the Dead Sea.

## Numbers 34:4

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where the borders are for the land that he is giving to the Israelites. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [preach](#), [preaching](#), [preacher](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#)
- [preach](#), [preaching](#), [preacher](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [From there it will extend to Hazar Addar](#)
- [From there it will extend to Hazar Addar](#)
- [the Scorpion Pass, and extend](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Your border will turn south from the hill of Akrabbim and pass along through the wilderness of Zin. From there, it will run south of Kadesh Barnea and continue to Hazar Addar and further to Azmon.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> It will extend to a little south of [the Scorpion Pass, and extend](#) west through the wilderness of Sin and south of Kadesh Barnea. [From there it will extend to Hazar Addar](#) and from there to Azmon.

## Numbers 34:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of Egypt](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> From there, the border will turn from Azmon toward the brook of Egypt and follow it to the sea.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> From Azmon it will extend west to the dry riverbed at the border [of Egypt](#) and then to the Mediterranean Sea.

## Numbers 34:6

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where the borders are for the land that he is giving to the Israelites.

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> The western border will be the coastline of the Great Sea. This will be your western border.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> The border on the west will be the Mediterranean Sea.



## Numbers 34:7

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where the borders are for the land that he is giving to the Israelites. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Mount Hor

See how you translated this name in [Numbers 20:22](#).

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Your northern border will extend along a line that you must mark out from the Great Sea to Mount Hor,

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> The border on the north will start from the Mediterranean Sea and extend west to Mount Hor.

## Numbers 34:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> then from Mount Hor to Lebo Hamath,  
then on to Zedad.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> From there it will extend to Lebo  
Hamath and then to Zedad.

## Numbers 34:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [From there](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Then the border will continue to Ziphron and end at Hazar Enan. This will be your northern border.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> [From there](#) the border will extend to Ziphron, and it will end at Hazar Enan.

## Numbers 34:10

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where the borders are for the land that he is giving to the Israelites. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### ULT

**10** Then you must mark out your eastern border from Hazar Enan south to Shepham.

#### UST

**10** The border on the east will start at Hazar Enan and extend south to Shepham.

## Numbers 34:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**11** Then the eastern border will go down from Shepham to Riblah, on the east side of Ain. The border will continue along the east side of the Sea of Kinnereth.

### UST

**11** From there it will extend east of Ain to Riblah and then along the hills that are east of Galilee Lake.

## Numbers 34:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [south along the Jordan River](#)
- [country](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Then the border will continue south along the Jordan River to the Salt Sea and continue down the eastern border of the Salt Sea. This will be your land, following its borders all around.”

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Then the border will extend [south along the Jordan River](#) and end at the Dead Sea. Those will be the borders around your [country](#).”

## Numbers 34:13

### to the nine tribes and to the half tribe

This means the remaining tribes of Israel who will live on the west side of the Jordan River in the land of Canaan. The tribes of Reuben and Gad and the half tribe of Manasseh had already received their land on the east side of the Jordan River.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [told](#)
- [commanded that it should be divided](#)
- [that you will receive](#)
- [each of the](#)
- [because Yahweh has](#)
- [people](#)
- [So Moses](#)
- [the land](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Then Moses commanded the people of Israel and said, "This is the land that you will receive by lot, which Yahweh has commanded to give to the nine tribes and to the half tribe.

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> [So Moses told](#) all that to the Israelite [people](#). Then he said to them, "That is [the land that you will receive](#). You must cast lots to decide which area will go to [each of the](#) nine and a half tribes, [because Yahweh has commanded that it should be divided](#) among them.

## Numbers 34:14

### following the assignment of property to their ancestor's tribe

"according to how Yahweh assigned the property to their ancestor's tribe"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house
- house (2)

#### Translation Words - UST

- land in which
- of
- they will live
- the tribe
- the
- the tribe
- land in which (2)

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> The tribe of the descendants of Reuben, following the assignment of property to their ancestor's tribe, and the tribe of the descendants of Gad, following the assignment of property to their ancestor's tribe, and the half tribe of Manasseh have all received their land.

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> The tribes [of](#) Reuben, Gad, and half of [the tribe](#) of Manasseh have already received [the land in which they will live](#).



## Numbers 34:15

### The two tribes and the half tribe

"The tribes of Reuben and Gad, and half of the tribe of Manasseh"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- Jericho

#### Translation Words - UST

- received
- from Jericho

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> The two tribes and the half tribe have received their share of land beyond the Jordan at Jericho eastward, toward the sunrise."

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> They have [received](#) land on the east side of the Jordan River, across [from Jericho](#)."

## Numbers 34:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses and said,

### UST

<sup>16</sup> Then [Yahweh](#) said [to Moses](#),

## Numbers 34:17

### divide the land for your inheritance

Here “your” is plural and refers to the people of Israel. These men will cast lots to divide the land. Then they will distribute it to the tribes. (See: [Forms of You](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [inherit, inheritance, heir](#)
- [son](#)
- [name](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [divide](#)
- [Joshua](#)
- [First](#)
- [the](#)
- [land](#)

#### ULT

17 “These are the names of the men who will divide the land for your inheritance: Eleazar the priest and Joshua son of Nun.

#### UST

17 “These are the men who will [divide the land](#). [First](#), Eleazar and [Joshua](#),

## Numbers 34:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the land](#)

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> You must choose one leader from every tribe to divide the land for their clans.

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> but other leaders from each of the twelve tribes will help them divide [the land](#).

## Numbers 34:19

### General Information:

This is the list of men who will help divide the land among the tribes.  
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- name
- Judea
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- appoint
- of Judah
- From the tribe

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> These are the names of the men:  
From the tribe of Judah, Caleb son of Jephunneh.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> [From the tribe of Judah](#), [appoint](#)  
Jephunneh's [son](#) Caleb.

## Numbers 34:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [From](#)
- [son](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> From the tribe of the descendants of Simeon, Shemuel son of Ammihud.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> [From](#) the tribe of Simeon appoint Ammihud's [son](#) Shemuel.

## Numbers 34:21

### General Information:

This continues the list of men who will help divide the land among the tribes. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- From the tribe of Benjamin
- From the tribe of Benjamin

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> From the tribe of Benjamin, Elidad son of Kislón.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> [From the tribe of Benjamin](#) appoint Kislón's [son](#) Elidad.

## Numbers 34:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [From](#)
- [son](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> From of the tribe of the descendants of Dan a leader, Bukki son of Jogli.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> [From](#) the tribe of Dan appoint Jogli's [son](#) Bukki.



## Numbers 34:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- Joseph (OT)
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### Translation Words - UST

- From
- of
- son
- Manasseh
- the tribe

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> From the descendants of Joseph, of the tribe of the descendants of Manasseh a leader, Hanniel son of Ephod.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> [From the tribe of Manasseh](#) appoint Ephod's [son](#) Hanniel.

## Numbers 34:24

### General Information:

This continues the list of men who will help divide the land among the tribes. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Ephraim, Ephraimite

### Translation Words - UST

- From the tribe of Ephraim
- son
- From the tribe of Ephraim

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> From the tribe of the descendants of Ephraim a leader, Kemuel son of Shiphtan.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> [From the tribe of Ephraim](#) appoint Shiphtan's [son](#) Kemuel.

## Numbers 34:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [From](#)
- [son](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> From the tribe of the descendants of Zebulun a leader, Elizaphan son of Parnak.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> [From](#) the tribe of Zebulun appoint Parnak's [son](#) Elizaphan.

## Numbers 34:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [From](#)
- [son](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> From the tribe of the descendants of Issachar a leader, Paltiel son of Azzan.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> [From](#) the tribe of Issachar appoint Azzan's [son](#) Paltiel.

## Numbers 34:27

### General Information:

This concludes the list of men who will help divide the land among the tribes. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [From](#)
- [son](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> From the tribe of the descendants of Asher a leader, Ahihud son of Shelomi.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> [From](#) the tribe of Asher appoint Shelomi's [son](#) Ahihud.

## Numbers 34:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [From](#)
- [son](#)

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> From the tribe of the descendants of Naphtali a leader, Pedahel son of Ammihud.”

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> [From](#) the tribe of Naphtali appoint Ammihud's [son](#) Pedahel.”

## Numbers 34:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [divide](#)
- [people](#)
- [Yahweh commanded](#)
- [among the Israelite](#)
- [of Canaan](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Yahweh commanded these men to divide the land of Canaan and to give each of the tribes of Israel their share.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> [Yahweh commanded](#) that all those were the men who should [divide](#) the region [of Canaan among the Israelite people](#).

## **Numbers 35**

### **Numbers 35 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter continues the material from the previous chapter.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Revenge**

Yahweh told Moses to establish safe places for people who accidentally killed other people. This prevented revenge killings. Justice is an important concept in this chapter. (See: [avenge](#), [avenger](#), [revenge](#), [vengeance](#) and [just](#), [justice](#), [unjust](#), [injustice](#), [justify](#), [justification](#))



## Numbers 35:1

### plains

a large area of flat land

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Jericho](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [in Moab](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [across from Jericho](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh spoke to Moses on the plains of Moab by the Jordan at Jericho and said,

### UST

<sup>1</sup> [Yahweh](#) told this to [Moses](#) while the Israelites were on the plain [in Moab](#) near the Jordan River, [across from Jericho](#),

## Numbers 35:2

### give some of their own shares of land to the Levites

Yahweh did not give the Levites their own land, so they had to live in cities that belonged to other tribes.

### pastureland

an area of land where animals feed on grass

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levitical](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Tell](#)
- [descendants of](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)
- [Levi](#)
- [that they will](#)

### ULT

2 "Command the people of Israel to give some of their own shares of land to the Levites. They must give them cities to live in and pastureland surrounding those cities.

### UST

2 "Tell the Israelite people that from the land that they will receive, they must give to the descendants of Levi some cities in which they can live. They must also give them some land around these cities.

## Numbers 35:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> The Levites will have these cities to live in. The pastureland will be for their cattle, their flocks, and all their animals.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> These cities will be for the descendants of Levi to live in, and around the cities will be land for their cattle and flocks of sheep and goats and other animals.

## Numbers 35:4

### one thousand cubits

"1,000 cubits." If it is necessary to use modern distance units, here is a way of doing it. Alternate translation: "457 meters" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [them](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> The pasturelands around the cities that you will give to the Levites must extend from the city walls for one thousand cubits in every direction.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> The land that you give [them](#) for their animals must extend out for 457 meters from the walls of the cities.

## Numbers 35:5

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### two thousand cubits

"2,000 cubits." A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#) and [Numbers](#))

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> You must measure two thousand cubits from outside the city on the east side, and two thousand cubits to the south side, two thousand cubits to the west side, and two thousand cubits to the north side. This will be the pasturelands for their cities. The cities will be in the center.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> Also measure 920 meters in each direction out from the walls of each city. That additional land will be land for their animals outside the walls of the cities.

## Numbers 35:6

### a person who has killed someone

This refers to people who have killed someone, but it had not yet been determined whether they killed the person intentionally or accidentally.

### forty-two

"42" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Levi](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Six of the cities that you will give to Levites must serve as cities of refuge. You must provide these as places to which a person who has killed someone can flee. Also provide forty-two other cities.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Six of the cities that you give to the descendants of [Levi](#) will be cities to which people can run to be safe. If someone accidentally kills someone else, the one who killed that person may run to one of those cities to be safe.

## Numbers 35:7

### forty-eight

“48” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Levi](#), [Levite](#), [Levitical](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [descendants of Levi](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> The cities that you give to the Levites will total forty-eight. You must give their pasturelands with them.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> You must also give to the [descendants of Levi](#) forty-two other cities and the land around those cities for their animals.

## Numbers 35:8

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Levi, Levite, Levitical

### Translation Words - UST

- and the tribes that have fewer
- and the tribes that have fewer
- to the descendants of
- The Israelite tribes
- Levi

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> The larger tribes of the people of Israel, the tribes that have more land, must provide more cities. The smaller tribes will provide fewer cities. Each tribe must provide for the Levites according to the share that it has received."

### UST

<sup>8</sup> The Israelite tribes who have the most people must give them more cities than the tribes who have fewer people give. Each tribe must give some of its cities to the descendants of Levi, but the tribes that have more land must give more cities, and the tribes that have fewer cities will give fewer cities."



## Numbers 35:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said,

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> [Yahweh](#) also said [to Moses](#),

## Numbers 35:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Canaan, Canaanite
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite people
- the Israelite people
- Jordan River
- of Canaan
- the region

### ULT

**10** "Speak to the people of Israel and say to them, 'When you cross over the Jordan into the land of Canaan,

### UST

**10** "Tell this to [the Israelite people](#), 'When you cross the [Jordan River](#) and enter [the region of Canaan](#),

## Numbers 35:11

### unintentionally

accidentally or without wanting to or trying to

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive

#### Translation Words - UST

- the one who

#### ULT

**11** then you must choose cities to serve as cities of refuge for you, a place to which a person who has killed someone unintentionally may flee.

#### UST

**11** you must choose some cities to which people can run to be safe. If someone kills another person, [the one who](#) killed that person may run to one of those cities and be safe.

## Numbers 35:12

### the avenger

This refers to a close relative that seeks vengeance by killing the accused man.

### so that the accused man will not be killed without first standing trial before the community

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so that no one will kill the accused man before the community is able to judge him in court” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [redeem, redeemer, redemption](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [may think he must avenge his relative's death](#)
- [The man who killed someone accidentally](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> These cities must be your refuge from the avenger, so that the accused man will not be killed without first standing trial before the community.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> One of the relatives of the person who was killed [may think he must avenge his relative's death](#) by killing the murderer. But in that city, the killer will be safe because the people in that city would kill those relatives if they tried to get revenge there. [The man who killed someone accidentally](#) must be put on trial in a court.

## Numbers 35:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**13** You must choose six cities as cities of refuge.

### UST

**13** You must set apart six cities to be cities to which someone who killed another person accidentally may run and be safe.

## Numbers 35:14

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of Canaan](#)

### ULT

**14** You must provide three cities beyond the Jordan and three in the land of Canaan. They will be cities of refuge.

### UST

**14** There must be three of these cities on the east side of the Jordan River and three on the west side, in the region [of Canaan](#).

## Numbers 35:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [you can also run and](#)
- [other people who](#)
- [Israelite people may run and be safe](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> For the people of Israel, for the foreigners, for anyone living among you, these six cities will serve as a refuge to which anyone who kills someone unintentionally can flee.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Those six cities will be cities where [Israelite people may run and be safe](#), and where foreigners and [other people who](#) are living among [you can also run and](#) be safe. Any of those people who accidentally kills someone may run to one of these cities and be safe there.

## Numbers 35:16

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

### He must certainly be put to death

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You must certainly execute him" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,

### Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,

### ULT

**16** But if an accused man has struck his victim with an instrument of iron, and if his victim dies, then the accused is indeed a murderer. He must certainly be put to death.

### UST

**16-18** But you must consider that anyone who kills another person with an iron weapon or with a big rock or with a piece of wood, is a murderer, and the one who killed the other person must be executed.



## Numbers 35:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### Translation Words - UST

- hand
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### ULT

**17** If an accused man has struck his victim with a stone in his hand that might kill the victim, and if his victim dies, then the accused is indeed a murderer. He must certainly be put to death.

### UST

## Numbers 35:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### Translation Words - UST

- hand
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### ULT

**18** If an accused man has struck his victim with a wooden weapon that might kill the victim, and if the victim dies, then the accused is indeed a murderer. He must certainly be put to death.

### UST

**16-18** But you must consider that anyone who kills another person with an iron weapon or with a big rock or with a piece of wood, is a murderer, and the one who killed the other person must be executed.

## Numbers 35:19

### The avenger of blood

Here the word "blood" is a metonym for the murder. Alternate translation: "The one who avenges the murder" or "The relative seeking vengeance" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [redeem](#), [redeemer](#), [redemption](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [A relative of](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> The avenger of blood must put the murderer to death. When he meets him, the avenger of blood must put him to death.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> [A relative of](#) the person who was murdered must be the one who executes the murderer as soon as he finds him.

## Numbers 35:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,

### Translation Words - UST

- at another person

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> If he strikes another in hatred or throws something at him, while hiding to ambush him, so that the victim dies,

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> If someone shoves another person over a cliff or throws something [at another person](#)

## Numbers 35:21

### the accused who struck him must surely be put to death

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the relative must certainly execute the accused man” or “the accused man must die” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- hand
- die, dead, deadly, death,

#### Translation Words - UST

- A relative of
- hand
- and causes that person to die

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> or if he strikes him down in hatred with his hand so that the victim dies, then the accused who struck him must surely be put to death. He is a murderer. The avenger of blood may put the murderer to death when he meets him.

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> or hits that person with his [hand and causes that person to die](#), if he did it because he hated that person, then you must consider that he is a murderer, and must be executed. [A relative of](#) the person who was killed must be the one who executes the murderer as soon as he finds him.

## Numbers 35:22

### without premeditated hate

“without planning it out of hate ahead of time”

### without lying in wait

Someone intentionally seeking a way to harm another person is spoken of as if someone were hiding in order to ambush that other person. Alternate translation: “without intentionally having tried to harm the victim” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

**22** But if an accused man suddenly hits a victim without premeditated hate or throws something that hits the victim without lying in wait

#### UST

**22** But someone might accidentally shove someone else, or he might accidentally throw something at another person and hit him, but not because he hates that person.

## Numbers 35:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- adversary, enemy
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- seek, search, look for
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### Translation Words - UST

- to hurt
- There is a law for the one who does that
- who was killed
- plan
- he

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> or if he throws a stone that could kill a victim without seeing the victim, then the accused was not the victim's enemy; he was not trying to hurt the victim. But this is what to do if the victim dies anyway.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> Or he might drop a rock on someone that he could not see. There is a law for the one who does that did not plan to hurt anyone and did not hate the person who was killed.

## Numbers 35:24

### the avenger of blood

Here the word "blood" is a metonym for the murder. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 35:19](#). Alternate translation: "the one who avenges the murder" or "the relative seeking vengeance" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- judge, judgment
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

#### Translation Words - UST

- has the right to get revenge
- must decide
- That law is that

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> In that case, the community must judge between the accused and the avenger of blood on the basis of these rules.

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> [That law is that](#) the people of that city [must decide](#) whether the relative of the dead person [has the right to get revenge](#), or whether the one who killed the other person truly did it accidentally.



## Numbers 35:25

### The community must rescue the accused

This means if the community judges that the death was accidental then they must save the accused man from the relative who wants to kill him. If the community judges that the death was not accidental, then the relative must execute the accused man. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the one who was anointed with the holy oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the one you anointed with holy oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- redeem, redeemer, redemption
- priest, priesthood
- hand
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- return

### Translation Words - UST

- the right
- to get revenge
- priest
- was done accidentally
- they must protect
- may go back to

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> The community must rescue the accused from the power of the avenger of blood. The community must return the accused to the city of refuge to which he had originally fled. He must live there until the death of the current high priest, the one who was anointed with the holy oil.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> If they decide that the killer planned to kill the other person, they must not allow him to stay in their city. But if they decide that it was done accidentally, they must protect the killer from being killed by the dead person's relative. They must send the killer to one of the cities where he will be safe, and allow him to stay there until the high priest dies. After that, the killer may go back to his home, because the dead person's relative no longer has the right to get revenge.

## Numbers 35:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- But while the high priest is still living
- must not leave

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> But if the accused man at any time goes beyond the border of the city of refuge to which he fled,

### UST

<sup>26</sup> But while the high priest is still living, the person who is in that safe city must not leave that city.

## Numbers 35:27

### the avenger of blood

Here the word "blood" is a metonym for the murder. See how you translated these words in [Numbers 35:19](#). Alternate translation: "the one who avenges the murder" or "the relative seeking vengeance" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [redeem, redeemer, redemption](#)
- [redeem, redeemer, redemption](#)
- [blood](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [a relative of the dead person](#)
- [that relative is permitted](#)
- [relative is guilty of](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> and if the avenger of blood finds him outside the border of his city of refuge, and if he kills the accused man, the avenger of blood will not be guilty of murder.

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> If he goes outside the city, and if [a relative of the dead person](#) finds him, [that relative is permitted](#) to kill that person, and people will not consider that the [relative is guilty of](#) murder.

## Numbers 35:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood (2)
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- to atone for that murder
- the...priest...will be considered to be a sacrifice
- priest (2)
- his home

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> This is because the accused man should have remained in his city of refuge until the death of the high priest. After the death of the high priest, the accused may return to the land where he has his own property.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> The killer must stay in that city where he will be safe until the high [priest](#) dies. He will be safe from revenge after that, because the death of the high [priest will be considered to be a sacrifice to atone for that murder](#). After that, the killer may return to [his home](#).

## Numbers 35:29

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

**through all your people's generations**

“and all of your descendants who will live after you”

### Translation Words - ULT

- judge, judgment
- generation

### Translation Words - UST

- legal proceedings
- must always obey

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> These laws must be statutes for you through all your people's generations in all the places where you live.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> You [must always obey](#) these [legal proceedings](#), wherever you live.

## Numbers 35:30

### the murderer must be killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone must execute the murderer” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### as testified to by the words of witnesses

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “according to the testimony of witnesses” or “as witnesses testify to the murder” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### But one witness’ word alone may not cause any person to be put to death

The testimony of one witness is not enough to execute a person for murder. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “But the word of only one witness is not enough for you to execute a person” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- heart
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### Translation Words - UST

- If someone is accused of...another person
- the one who is accused may be executed only if
- saw
- There must be more than one witness
- is permitted to be executed

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Whoever kills any person, the murderer must be killed, as testified to by the words of witnesses. But one witness’ word alone may not cause any person to be put to death.

### UST

<sup>30</sup> If someone is accused of killing another person, the one who is accused may be executed only if there are people who saw him do it. There must be more than one witness. No one is permitted to be executed if there was only one witness.

## Numbers 35:31

### He must certainly be put to death

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You must execute him" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,

#### Translation Words - UST

- truly...executed

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Also, you must not accept ransom for the life of a murderer who is guilty of murder. He must certainly be put to death.

#### UST

<sup>31</sup> If there is a murderer who [truly](#) should be [executed](#), do not spare his life by accepting a ransom. He must be executed.

## Numbers 35:32

### You must not...allow him to reside on his own property

This implied that the man would have left the city of refuge and returned home. Alternate translation: "You must not...allow him to leave the city of refuge and return home to live on his own property" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### in this way

"by accepting a ransom"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [restore](#), restoration
- [priest](#), priesthood

### Translation Words - UST

- [to return](#)
- [before the high priest](#)

### ULT

**32** You must not accept ransom for the one who has fled to a city of refuge. You must not in this way allow him to reside on his own property until the high priest dies.

### UST

**32** If someone has run to a city where he will be safe, do not allow him to give you money in order that you will permit him [to return](#) to his home [before the high priest](#) dies.



## Numbers 35:33

### **Do not pollute in this way the land where you live, because blood from murder pollutes the land**

Making the land unacceptable to Yahweh is spoken of as if it were physically polluting the land. Alternate translation: "Do not make the land where you live unacceptable to me in this way, because blood from murder makes the land unacceptable to me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### **in this way**

This means by disobeying the laws concerning a person who kills someone.

### **No atonement can be made for the land when blood has been shed on it, except by the blood of the one who shed it**

This refers to when a person intentionally kills another person. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When someone has shed blood in the land, only the execution of the murderer can make atonement for the land" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [blood](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

#### **Translation Words - UST**

- [deliberately kills](#)
- [land](#)
- [land](#)

#### **ULT**

**33** Do not pollute in this way the land where you live, because blood from murder pollutes the land. No atonement can be made for the land when blood has been shed on it, except by the blood of the one who shed it.

#### **UST**

**33** You must execute people who truly murder others. If you did not do that, you would be causing the people who live in the [land](#) to become unacceptable to me. Anyone who [deliberately kills](#) an innocent person must be executed.

## Numbers 35:34

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- Israelites
- Yahweh
- Israelites
- the land

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> So you must not defile the land in which you live because I am living in it. I, Yahweh, live among the people of Israel.”

### UST

<sup>34</sup> I am [Yahweh](#), and I live among you [Israelites](#), so do not spoil [the land](#) by allowing people to murder others without being punished.”

## Numbers 36

### Numbers 36 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

#### Female heirs

Women who inherited land from their father must marry men from their tribe so the inheritance does not leave the tribe. (See: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#))

## Numbers 36:1

### Machir

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 26:29](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son (2)
- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Joseph (OT)
- Moses
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- clan
- family, household
- head
- head
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

#### Translation Words - UST

- Gilead
- of the
- family (2)
- tribe
- the Israelite people
- the Israelite people
- of Manasseh
- Moses
- of the clan of
- other family leaders of
- The
- and the
- leaders
- other family leaders of
- other family leaders of

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then the leaders of the ancestors' families of the clan of Gilead son of Machir (who was Manasseh's son), who were from the clans of the descendants of Joseph, came and spoke before Moses and before the leaders who were the heads of the ancestor's families of the people of Israel.

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> [The family leaders of the clan of Gilead of the tribe of Manasseh](#) went to [Moses and the other family leaders of the Israelite people](#).

## Numbers 36:2

### You were commanded by Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh commanded you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Zelophehad

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 26:33](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- brother
- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- you
- commanded
- commanded
- land
- the land that belonged to
- our fellow
- tribes
- Yahweh
- Yahweh also
- Israelite
- land

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> They said, "Yahweh commanded you, our master, to give a share of land by lot to the people of Israel. You were commanded by Yahweh to give the share of Zelophehad our brother to his daughters.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> They said to Moses, "[Yahweh commanded you](#), our leader, to apportion the [land](#) to the Israelite [tribes](#) by casting lots to decide which group would get which area. [Yahweh also commanded you to give the land that belonged to our fellow Israelite Zelophehad to his daughters.](#)

## Numbers 36:3

### will be removed from our ancestor's share

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "will no longer belong to our ancestor's share" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### It will be added

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "It will belong to" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### it will be removed from the assigned share of our inheritance

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "it will no longer be a part of our inheritance" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### Translation Words - UST

- land
- will no longer belong to us
- our land
- if his...marry men from
- the other
- Israelite tribes
- People
- tribes

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> But if his daughters marry men in another tribe of the people of Israel, then their share of land will be removed from our ancestor's share. It will be added to the share of the tribes that they join. In that case, it will be removed from the assigned share of our inheritance.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> But [if his](#) daughters [marry men from the other Israelite tribes](#), that [land](#) will no longer belong to our tribe. [People](#) of other [tribes](#) will get it. So some of [our land will no longer belong to us](#).

## Numbers 36:4

### the year of Jubilee of the people

This refers to a celebration which happens once every fifty years. In this celebration, all land that someone sold or traded must return to the original owner. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### their share will be joined

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "their share will belong" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### their share will be taken away from the share of our ancestors' tribe

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they will take our tribe's share of the land" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### Translation Words - UST

- when all the land
- when all the land
- land that we received from our
- the tribes of
- that his daughters marry...and we will never own it again
- the

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> In that case, when the year of Jubilee of the people of Israel comes, then their share will be joined to the share of the tribe that they have joined. In this way, their share will be taken away from the share of our ancestors' tribe."

### UST

<sup>4</sup> When the year of the celebration of Jubilee comes, [when all the land](#) that has been bought by someone is returned to its original owners, the land that belonged to Zelophehad will belong to [the tribes of](#) the men [that his daughters marry](#). So some of our land, [the land that we received from our](#) fathers, will be taken from us, [and we will never own it again](#)."

## Numbers 36:5

### at Yahweh's word

"according to what Yahweh said"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [told](#)
- [These men from](#)
- [them](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [so](#)
- [tribe of Manasseh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> So Moses gave a command to the people of Israel, at Yahweh's word. He said, "What the tribe of Joseph's descendants says is right.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> [Yahweh told Moses](#) what to reply to them, [so](#) Moses said this to [them](#), "[These men from](#) the [tribe of Manasseh](#) are right.



## Numbers 36:6

### Let them be married to whom they think best

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Let them marry whom they want" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### they must marry only within the family of their father's tribe

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "but they may only marry someone from their father's tribe" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [clan](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [must](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [from your own](#)
- [to the](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> This is what Yahweh commands concerning Zelophehad's daughters. He says, 'Let them be married to whom they think best, but they must marry only within the family of their father's tribe.'

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> This is what [Yahweh](#) is saying [to the](#) daughters of Zelophehad, 'Each of you may marry anyone you want to, but you [must](#) marry only someone [from your own](#) tribe.'

## Numbers 36:7

### No share

The word “share” represents the portion of land that each tribe received as an inheritance. Alternate translation: “No portion of the land” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### Translation Words - UST

- will keep the land
- will keep the land
- from
- the land that belongs to Israelites
- Israelite
- the land that belongs to Israelites
- ancestors

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> No share of the people of Israel must change from one tribe to another. Each one of the people of Israel must continue with the share of his ancestor’s tribe.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> In that way, [the land that belongs to Israelites](#) will not be passed [from](#) one tribe to another tribe. Each [Israelite will keep the land](#) in the tribe that belonged to his [ancestors](#).

## Numbers 36:8

### who owns a share in her tribe

“who owns a share of land in her tribe”

### may own an inheritance

The land that each clan possesses is spoken of as if it were an inheritance that they received. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- son (2)
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- family, household

### Translation Words - UST

- land
- the land that belonged to
- but she must marry someone from her own
- Israelite (2)
- Israelite
- Israelite
- her father's
- his ancestors
- tribe

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Every woman of the people of Israel who owns a share in her tribe must marry someone from the clans belonging to her father's tribe. This is so that everyone of the people of Israel may own an inheritance from his ancestors.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> A woman who inherits [her father's land](#) may get married, [but she must marry someone from her own tribe](#). In that way, every [Israelite](#) will keep [the land that belonged to his ancestors](#).

## Numbers 36:9

### No share may change hands from one tribe to another

Transferring ownership from one tribe to another is spoken of as if the property passed from one person's hands to another person's hands. Alternate translation: "No one may transfer the ownership of any share of land from one tribe to another" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

#### Translation Words - UST

- The land must
- received
- from its ancestors
- Each Israelite tribe
- tribe

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> No share may change hands from one tribe to another. Everyone of the tribes of the people of Israel must keep his own inheritance."

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> [The land must](#) not be passed from one [tribe](#) to another tribe. [Each Israelite tribe](#) must keep the land that it [received from its ancestors](#)."

## Numbers 36:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [obeyed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> So Zelophehad's daughters did as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> Zelophehad's daughters [obeyed](#) what [Yahweh](#) told [Moses](#).

## Numbers 36:11

### Mahlah, Tirzah, Hoglah, Milkah, and Noah

See how you translated these women's names in [Numbers 26:33](#).  
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [their father's relatives](#)

#### ULT

**11** Mahlah, Tirzah, Hoglah, Milkah, and Noah, the daughters of Zelophehad, married descendants of Manasseh.

#### UST

**11** The five daughters—Mahlah, Tirzah, Hoglah, Milkah and Noah—married their cousins, [their father's relatives](#).

## Numbers 36:12

### their inheritances

The land that each of Zelophehad's daughters possessed is spoken of as if it were an inheritance that they received. Alternate translation: "the lands that they received as an inheritance" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- son
- Joseph (OT)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- family, household
- family, household

### Translation Words - UST

- their land
- whom they
- from
- Manasseh
- their father's
- The men
- family and tribe

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> They married into the clans of the descendants of Manasseh son of Joseph. In this way, their inheritances remained in the tribe to which their father's clan belonged.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> [The men whom they](#) married were [from](#) the tribe of [Manasseh](#), so [their land](#) continued to belong to [their father's family and tribe](#).

## Numbers 36:13

### plains

a large area of flat land

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moab, Moabite
- Moses
- Jericho
- hand

### Translation Words - UST

- were the commands and
- to tell
- while they were
- Yahweh
- the Israelites
- of Moab
- Moses
- across from Jericho
- gave to

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> These are the commands and the decrees that Yahweh gave by Moses to the people of Israel in the plains of Moab by the Jordan at Jericho.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> Those were the commands and decrees that Yahweh gave to Moses to tell to the Israelites, while they were on the plains of Moab, close to the Jordan River, across from Jericho.





# **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Version 12**

# Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

## Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people who speak these languages can talk about them as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, they may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. They would say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

## Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

## Examples from the Bible

...from **\*childhood\*** you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

## Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

...**from** childhood

you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

**But** godliness

with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**.  
 But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**.  
 But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

**Today** salvation

has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved**...  
 Today God **has saved** the people in this house...

**The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider** slowness

to be. (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

**He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the** purposes

of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: Numbers 3:38; 3:46; 3:49; 4:12; 4:14; 4:16; 4:28; 4:33; 6:5; 6:13; 6:18; 6:19; 6:21; 7:2; 8:22; 9:18; 9:23; 10:10; 14:9; 14:18; 14:27; 17:5; 17:10; 22:7; 24:16; 24:24; 25:18; 28:22; 28:30; 29:5; 29:11)

## Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

## Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- ACTIVE: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- PASSIVE: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

## Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

## Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

## Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

## Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed**, too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal **was broken down**... (Judges 6:28 ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

## Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

**A loaf of bread** was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

**The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

**It would be better for him if a millstone** were put

around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

**A loaf of bread** was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Abstract Nouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: Numbers 1:16; 1:17; 1:20; 1:22; 1:24; 1:26; 1:28; 1:30; 1:32; 1:34; 1:36; 1:38; 1:40; 1:42; 1:45; 1:47; 1:51; 2:32; 3:3; 3:9; 3:10; 3:22; 3:28; 3:31; 3:34; 3:38; 3:51; 4:4; 4:18; 4:26; 4:38; 4:40; 4:42; 4:44; 4:49; 5:8; 5:9; 5:14; 5:21; 5:23; 5:27; 5:28; 5:29; 6:3; 6:4; 6:5; 6:7; 6:8; 6:12; 6:13; 6:15; 6:19; 6:20; 6:21; 7:13; 7:19; 7:25; 7:31; 7:37; 7:43; 7:49; 7:55; 7:61; 7:67; 7:73; 7:79; 7:88; 8:4; 8:8; 9:13; 9:15; 9:17; 9:22; 9:23; 10:11; 10:13; 11:3; 11:26; 11:34; 12:15; 13:22; 13:24; 14:6; 14:9; 14:14; 14:21; 14:29; 14:42; 15:10; 15:11; 15:12; 15:13; 15:14; 15:19; 15:24; 15:25; 15:26; 15:28; 15:30; 15:34; 15:35; 16:5; 16:7; 16:26; 16:38; 16:39; 16:48; 17:6; 18:1; 18:6; 18:7; 18:8; 18:9; 18:16; 18:17; 18:18; 18:27; 18:29; 19:9; 19:13; 19:16; 19:20; 20:1; 20:13; 21:3; 21:8; 21:27; 21:30; 21:35; 22:6; 22:12; 22:22; 22:27; 23:20; 23:23; 24:3; 24:6; 24:7; 24:9; 24:10; 24:18; 24:22; 25:3; 25:14; 25:18; 26:37; 26:53; 26:54; 26:55; 26:56; 26:57; 26:62; 26:63; 26:64; 27:11; 28:2; 28:3; 28:5; 28:6; 28:8; 28:9; 28:12; 28:13; 28:15; 28:17; 28:19; 28:20; 28:23; 28:24; 28:28; 28:29; 29:3; 29:6; 29:9; 29:13; 29:14; 29:18; 29:21; 29:24; 29:27; 29:30; 29:33; 29:36; 29:37; 30:9; 31:5; 31:20; 31:26; 31:28; 31:29; 31:36; 31:41; 32:5; 32:10; 32:13; 32:22; 32:29; 32:38; 33:2; 33:14; 35:12; 35:16; 35:21; 35:25; 35:30; 35:31; 35:33; 36:2; 36:3; 36:4; 36:6)

## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.
- When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways:
  - **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
  - **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. **Implicit information** is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

### Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

## Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "**Foxes** have holes

, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

**it will be more tolerable for** Tyre and Sidon

at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

...it will be more tolerable for **those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, at the day of judgment than for you.  
or:  
...it will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you.

**Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For** they do not wash their hands



when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

**Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULT) - The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

**it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**

or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: Numbers 1:2; 1:50; 1:54; 2:9; 2:16; 2:24; 2:25; 2:31; 2:34; 3:10; 3:15; 3:38; 3:41; 3:47; 4:6; 4:7; 4:8; 4:11; 4:14; 4:18; 4:22; 4:25; 4:29; 4:34; 4:35; 4:38; 4:39; 4:43; 4:47; 5:4; 5:6; 5:8; 5:12; 5:13; 5:16; 5:27; 5:28; 6:12; 6:14; 6:15; 6:20; 6:21; 7:3; 7:9; 8:15; 9:2; 9:3; 9:6; 9:7; 9:10; 9:16; 9:21; 10:33; 10:36; 11:29; 13:11; 14:24; 14:35; 14:37; 15:15; 15:39; 18:7; 18:16; 18:17; 20:12; 21:8; 21:18; 22:23; 22:31; 23:4; 23:10; 23:28; 24:19; 25:4; 25:6; 26:2; 26:37; 26:54; 26:62; 27:3; 27:4; 27:7; 27:14; 28:7; 28:9; 28:18; 30:5; 30:8; 30:10; 30:12; 30:15; 31:5; 31:46; 32:5; 32:9; 32:22; 32:27; 32:32; 33:4; 35:25; 35:32; 36:4)

## Background Information

### Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called

**background information.** The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-events]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

**Example** - The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because ***their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!*** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope ***they had brought with them***, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that ***it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.***

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day;" "He once killed three wild pigs in one day;" "that they had brought with them;" and "Peter had mistakenly killed his cousins' pig."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were", rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "Peter ***was*** the best hunter in the village" and "it ***was*** his own pig."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

### A writer may use background information

- To help their listeners be interested in the story
- To help their listeners understand something in the story
- To help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- To tell the setting of a story
- Setting includes:
  - where the story takes place
  - when the story takes place
  - who is present when the story begins
  - what is happening when the story begins

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

## Examples from the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was eighty-six years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, **was about thirty years of age**. He **was the son** (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Now **it happened on a Sabbath** that Jesus **was going through the grain fields** and his disciples **were picking the heads of grain**, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence, "But some of the Pharisees said."

## Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kind of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
2. Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

Now

Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

English uses the word "now" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

**With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch** for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

**Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.**  
 Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram

. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

**"When Abram was eighty-six years old,** Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

**John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch** for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

"Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/grammar-connect-words-phrases\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-newevent\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Numbers 12:3](#); [22:4](#); [25:14](#); [32:1](#))

# Biblical Distance

## Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man’s hand.
- The **span** or handspace was the width of a man’s hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man’s forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **“long” cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as “furlong”, which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)  
[Fractions](#)

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
“long” cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

## Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as “.46 meters” or even as “46 centimeters”, readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a meter”, “45 centimeters”, or “50 centimeters”.
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was sixty stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as “about ten kilometers” from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

## Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

**They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.** (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be ***two and a half kubits***; its width will be ***one kubit and a half***; and its height will be ***one kubit and a half***."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be ***one meter***; its width will be ***two thirds of a meter***; and its height will be ***two thirds of a meter***."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be ***one meter***; its width will be ***two thirds of a meter***; and its height will be ***two thirds of a meter***."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be ***two and a half cubits (one meter)***; its width will be ***one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)***; and its height will be ***one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)***."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**<sup>1</sup>; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**<sup>2</sup>; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter.**"

The footnotes would look like:

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**<sup>1</sup>; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**<sup>2</sup>; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter.**"

The footnotes would look like:

[1] two and a half cubits  
[2] one cubit and a half

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:31](#); [35:4](#); [35:5](#))

## Biblical Money

### Description:

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold and would give a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

### Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

### Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see [Biblical Weight](#). The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

### Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.



**The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.** (Luke 7:41 ULT)

(1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

"The one owed **five hundred denali**, and the other owed **fifty denali**."

(2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

"The one owed **five hundred silver coins**, and the other owed **fifty silver coins**."

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

"The one owed **five hundred days' wages**, and the other owed **fifty days' wages**."

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

"The one owed **five hundred denarii** <sup>1</sup>, and the other owed **fifty denarii**. <sup>2</sup>"

The footnotes would look like:

[1] five hundred days's wages  
[2] fifty day's wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

"The one owed **five hundred denarii** <sup>1</sup>, and the other owed **fifty denarii**."  
(Luke 7:41 ULT)

[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)  
[Translate Unknowns](#)

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:46](#); [3:50](#); [31:52](#))

# Biblical Volume

## Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	cor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	letheq	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

## Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters”, readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters”.
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

## When the unit of measure is stated

### Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

### Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

**For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah.** (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

"For four hektares of vineyard will yield only one **bat**, and one **homer** of seed will yield only an **efa**."

(2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only **twenty-two liters** and **220 liters** of seed will yield only **twenty-two liters**."

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only **twenty-two liters**, and **ten baskets** of seed will yield only **one basket**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only six gallons, and **six and a half bushels** of seed will yield only twenty quarts."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only **one bath (six gallons)**, and **one homer (six and a half bushels)** of seed will yield only **an ephah (twenty quarts)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters <sup>1</sup>, and 220 liters <sup>2</sup> of seed will yield only twenty-two liters <sup>3</sup>."

The footnotes would look like:

- [1] one bath
- [2] one homer
- [3] one ephah

## When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word “measure”.

**whenever anyone came to the grainery for** twenty measures

of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
2. Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount”.
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

**whenever anyone came to the grainery for** twenty measures

of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

(1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount”.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty amounts** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty amounts** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty baskets** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty jars** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty liters** of grain, there were only **ten liters**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty liters** of wine, there were only **twenty liters**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:15](#); [11:32](#); [15:4](#); [15:6](#); [15:9](#); [28:5](#); [28:7](#); [28:9](#); [28:12](#); [28:13](#); [28:14](#); [28:20](#); [28:21](#); [28:28](#); [28:29](#); [29:3](#); [29:4](#); [29:9](#); [29:10](#); [29:14](#); [29:15](#))

# Biblical Weight

## Description

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?*

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight”, and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

## Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram”.
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath’s spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms”, it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms”.
6. When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

## Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

**The bronze from the offering weighed** seventy talents and 2,400 shekels

. (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

"The bronze from the offering weighed **seventy talents and 2,400 sekeles**."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"The bronze from the offering weighed **2,400 kilograms**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

"The bronze from the offering weighed **5,300 pounds**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"The bronze from the offering weighed **seventy talents (2,380 kilograms)** and **2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

"The bronze from the offering weighed **seventy talents and 2,400 shekels**.  
1 "

The footnote would look like:

[1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)  
[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:46; 3:47; 7:13; 7:14; 7:19; 7:20; 7:25; 7:26; 7:31; 7:32; 7:37; 7:38; 7:43; 7:44; 7:49; 7:50; 7:55; 7:56; 7:61; 7:62; 7:67; 7:68; 7:73; 7:74; 7:79; 7:80; 7:85; 7:86; 18:16](#))

## Copy or Borrow Words

### Description

Sometimes the Bible includes things that are not part of your culture and that your language may not have a word for. It also includes people and places that you may not have names for.

When that happens you can “borrow” the word from the Bible into your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to “borrow” words. (There are also other ways to translate words for things that are not in your language. See [Translate Unknowns](#).)

This page answers the question: *What does it mean to borrow words from another language and how can I do it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

### Examples from the Bible

He saw a **fig** tree on the roadside (Matthew 21:19 ULT)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, there might not be a name for this kind of tree in your language.

Above him were the **seraphim**; each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULT)

Your language might not have a name for this kind of creature.

The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of **Malachi**. (Malachi 1:1 ULT)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

### Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.
- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter “j” the same way that people pronounce the letter “y” when speaking English.
- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft “th” sound in the English word “think,” and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like “st” as in “stop.”

There are several ways to borrow a word.

1. If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
2. You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
3. You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.

אֶפְרַיִם - A man's name in Hebrew letters.



"Zephaniah" - The same name in Roman letters

(2) You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.

**Zephaniah** - This is a man's name.

"Zephaniah" - The name as it is spelled in English, but you can pronounce it according to the rules of your language.

(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

**Zephaniah** - If your language does not have the "z", you could use "s". If your writing system does not use "ph" you could use "f". Depending on how you pronounce the "i" you could spell it with "i" or "ai" or "ay".

"Sefania"

"Sefanaia"

"Sefanaya"

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:21](#); [20:1](#))

# Direct and Indirect Quotations

## Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "I do not know at what time I will arrive."

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would", to replace the future tense indicated by "will".

- John said that **he** did not know at what time **he** would arrive.

## Why this is a translation issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one rather than the other, or there is a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

## Examples from the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He instructed him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest...** "

Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God would come**,
- Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you.** "
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look here!**' or, '**Look there!**'

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-quotations\]\]](#)

## Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

**He instructed him to tell no one, but told him,** “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.

” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him to tell no one, but ***to go on his way, and to show himself to the priest and to offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.***”

- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

**He instructed him,** to tell no one

, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him, “***Tell no one.*** Just go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_quotations](http://ufw.io/figs_quotations).

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Quotes within Quotes](#)

(Go back to: [Numbers 21:16](#); [25:13](#))

# Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

## Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not” such as the underlined parts of these words: “**un** happy,” “**im** possible,” and “use**less**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

It is **not** that we do **not** have authority... (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULT)

And this better confidence did **not** happen **without** the taking of an oath,... (Hebrews 7:20 ULT.)

Be sure of this—wicked people will **not** go **unpunished** (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

## Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally, “I did not see no one”. It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one”. The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone”.
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent”.
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent”.
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is intelligent” or “He is very intelligent”.

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know both what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

## Examples from the Bible

...in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

This means “so that they will be fruitful”.

All things were made through him and **without** him there was **not** one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything. The double negative makes a stronger statement than the simple positive.

## Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

■ **For we do not**

have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15 ULT)

■ “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”

**...in order not**

to be unfruitful\*\*. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

■ “...so that they may be fruitful.”

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

■ **Be sure of this—wicked people will not**

go unpunished... (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

■ “Be sure of this—wicked people will **certainly** be punished...”

**All things were made through him and without**

him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

■ “All things were made through him. He made **absolutely** everything that has been made.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:32](#); [19:12](#); [19:15](#); [26:65](#))

# Doublet

## Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

## Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

## Examples from the Bible

King David was **old** and **advanced in years**. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

...he attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself... (1 Kings 2:32 ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

...as of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19 ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect--not even one.

## Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words or phrases.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

## Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare false

and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

“You have decided to prepare **false** things to say.”

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

■ **King David was** old

and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

■ “King David was **very old**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

■ **...a lamb** without blemish

and without spot... (1 Peter 1:19 ULT) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

■ “...a lamb **without any blemish at all**...”

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:22](#); [19:2](#); [20:22](#); [21:27](#); [30:4](#); [30:5](#))

# Ellipsis

## Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words from a sentence that it normally should have to be a complete sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, ***nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.***  
(Psalm 1:5)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would be:

...nor ***will*** sinners ***stand*** in the assembly of the righteous.

## There are two types of ellipsis.

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage, or from the nature of the situation.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

## Examples from the Bible

### Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf ***and Sirion like a young ox.*** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and ***he makes*** Sirion ***skip*** like a young ox.

But if we are afflicted, ***for your comfort and salvation;*** if we are comforted, ***for your comfort...***  
(2 Corinthians 1:6)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)



But if we are afflicted, **we are afflicted** for your comfort and salvation; if we are comforted, **we are comforted** for your comfort,...

## Absolute Ellipsis

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, **that I might receive my sight.**" (Luke 18:40-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

"Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight."

To Titus...**Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.** (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus...**May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our savior.

## Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

...**the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor** sinners in the assembly

of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinners will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous

**...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, that I might receive my sight**

**."** (Luke 18:40-41)

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight."

**He makes Lebanon skip like a calf** and Sirion like a young ox

. (Psalm 29:6)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [Numbers 2:8; 2:11; 2:13; 2:15; 2:19; 2:21; 2:23; 2:26; 2:28; 2:30; 4:40; 6:3; 6:17; 8:7; 8:18; 27:13; 27:23; 28:12; 28:20; 28:28; 29:3; 29:9; 29:14; 30:7; 30:14; 32:33](#))

# Euphemism

## Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

This page answers the question: *What is a Euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Definition

...they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead”. It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

## Examples from the Bible

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself...(1 Samuel 24:3 ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

## Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself

. (1 Samuel 24:3 ULT) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave **to dig a hole**”  
 “...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave **to have some time alone**”

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since ***I do not know a man?***" - (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

**they found Saul and his sons** fallen

on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

"they found Saul and his sons ***dead*** on Mount Gilboa."

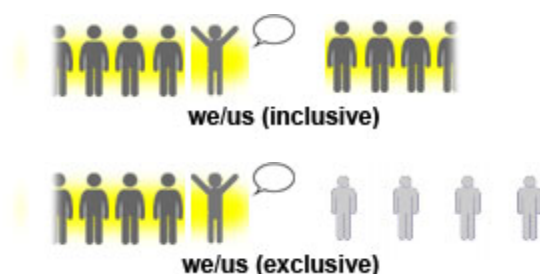
(Go back to: [Numbers 5:13](#); [5:19](#); [5:21](#); [5:27](#); [8:17](#); [Notes](#); [20:24](#); [20:26](#); [27:13](#); [31:2](#); [31:17](#); [31:18](#); [31:35](#))

## Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

### Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but **not you**”. The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us”, “our”, “ours”, and “ourselves”. Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



### Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we”, then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of “we” to use.

### Examples from the Bible

They said, “**We** have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless **we** went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

**we** have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to **us** (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us”, they were **including** the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us”, he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-gendernotations\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Numbers 20:10; 21:7](#))

# First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you”. Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you”.

## Description

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we”. (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you”. (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he”, “she”, “it” and “they”. (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

[Pronouns](#)

## Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you”.

## Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his”. He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,  
“...Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **him**? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him”. He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to **my Lord**, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you”. He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your”.

## Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.

But David said to Saul, “Your servant

used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

(2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like God’s

? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **me**?”

**So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if** each of you

does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of You](#)

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:11](#); [24:4](#); [24:20](#))

## Forms of You

### Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual]]

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_younum](http://ufw.io/figs_younum).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

### Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_youform](http://ufw.io/figs_youform).

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:3](#); [6:23](#); [6:24](#); [6:25](#); [6:26](#); [9:14](#); [10:5](#); [10:6](#); [10:8](#); [10:10](#); [14:12](#); [18:3](#); [18:4](#); [18:5](#); [18:7](#); [20:18](#); [34:17](#))



# Fractions

## Description

Fractions are a kind of number that refer to equal parts of a thing or to equal groups within a larger group of people or things. An item or a group of items is divided into two or more parts or groups, and a fraction refers to one or more of those parts or groups.

This page answers the question: *What are fractions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

For the drink offering, you must offer **a third** of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7 ULT)

A hin is a container used for measuring wine and other liquids. They were to think about dividing a hin container into three equal parts and fill up only one of those parts, and offer that amount.

**a third** of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9 ULT)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have “-th” added to the end of the number.

Number of parts the whole is divided into	Fraction
four	fourth
ten	tenth
one hundred	one hundredth
one thousand	one thousandth

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

Number of parts the whole is divided into	Fraction
two	half
three	third
five	fifth

## Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they do not use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many are included in a group.

## Examples From the Bible

Now to **one half** of the tribe of Manasseh, Moses had given an inheritance in Bashan, but to the other **half**, Joshua gave an inheritance beside their brothers in the land west of the Jordan. (Joshua 22:7 ULT)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase “one half of the tribe of Manasseh” refers one of those groups. The phrase “the other half” refers to the other group.

The four angels who had been prepared for that very hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released to kill **a third** of humanity. (Revelation 9:15 ULT)

If all the people in the world were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

You must also prepare **a fourth** of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULT)

They were to imagine dividing a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare the amount equal to one of them.

## Translation Strategies

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

1. Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
2. For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UST.
3. For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

## Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.

A third

of the ocean became red like blood (Revelation 8:8 ULT)

It was like they **divided** the ocean **into three parts**, and **one part** of the ocean became blood.

**then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of three tenths**

of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)

...then you must **divide** an ephah of fine flour **into ten parts** and **divide** a hin of oil **into two parts**. Then mix **three of those parts** of the flour with **one of the parts** of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.

(2) For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

two thirds of a shekel

(1 Samuel 13:21 ULT)

**eight grams** of silver (1 Samuel 13:21 UST)

three tenths of an ephah

of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)

**six and one-half liters** of finely ground flour mixed with **two liters** of olive oil. (Numbers 15:9 UST)

(3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

■ three tenths of an ephah

of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. (Numbers 15:9, ULT)

■ **six quarts** of fine flour mixed with **two quarts** of oil.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[Biblical Money](#)

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:7](#); [5:15](#); [28:5](#); [28:7](#); [28:9](#); [28:12](#); [28:13](#); [28:14](#); [28:20](#); [28:21](#); [28:28](#); [28:29](#); [29:3](#); [29:4](#); [29:9](#); [29:10](#); [29:14](#); [29:15](#))

## Go and Come

### Description

This page answers the question: *What do I do if the word "go" or "come" is confusing in a certain sentence?*

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words "go" or "come" and whether to use the words "take" or "bring" when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say "I'm coming," while Spanish speakers say "I'm going." You will need to study the context in order to understand what is meant by the words "go" and "come" (and also "take" and "bring"), and then translate those words in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words "go" and "come" or "take" and "bring" differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

### Examples from the Bible

Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark" (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.  
Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham's relatives lived far away from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to **go** to them, not **come** toward Abraham.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, "When you have **gone** into the land..."

Joseph and Mary **brought** him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 1:22 ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Joseph and Mary **took** or **carried** Jesus to the temple.

Behold, there came a man named Jairus, and he was one of the leaders of the synagogue.  
Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet and implored him to **come** to his house, (Luke 8:41 ULT)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to **go** with him to his house.

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not **go** out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UST)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Elizabeth did not **come** out in public.

### Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

1. Use the word "go," "come," "take," or "bring" that would be natural in your language.

2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come**

to my relatives and they will not give her to you. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

But you will be free from my oath if you **go** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

**Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go**

out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UST)

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not **come** out in public for five months.

(2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

**When you have** come

to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

“When you have **arrived** in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it...”

**Yahweh said to Noah, “Come**

, you and all your household, into the ark... (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

“Yahweh said to Noah, “**Enter**, you and all your household, into the ark...”

**Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go**

out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UST)

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not **appear** in public for five months.

(Go back to: [Numbers 22:7; 22:16](#))

# Hebrew Months

## Description

This page answers the question: *What are the Hebrew months?*

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Abib, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The Bible may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

## List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

**Abib** - (This month is called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Abib 10, the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

**Ziv** - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on western calendars.

**Sivan** - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

**Tammuz** - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on western calendars.

**Ab** - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on western calendars.

**Elul** - This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on western calendars.

**Ethanim** - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

**Bul** - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on western calendars.

**Kislev** - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on western calendars.

**Tebeth** - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on western calendars.

**Shebat** - This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rain fall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on western calendars.

**Adar** - This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

### Examples from the Bible

You are going out of Egypt on this day, in ***the month of Abib***. (Exodus 13:4 ULT)

You must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day ***in the first month of the year***, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULT)

### Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#).)

1. Tell the number of the Hebrew month.
2. Use the months that people know.
3. State clearly what season the month occurred in.
4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

**At that time, you will appear before me in** the month of Abib

, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt. (Exodus 23:15 ULT)

**It will always be a statute for you that in** the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month, you must humble yourselves and do no work. (Leviticus 16:29 ULT)

- (1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

At that time, you will appear before me in ***the first month of the year***, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

- (2) Use the months that people know.

At that time, you will appear before me in ***the month of March***, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

It will always be a statute for you that ***on the day I choose in late September*** you must humble yourselves and do no work."

- (3) State clearly what season the month occurred in.

It will always be a statute for you that ***in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month***, you must humble yourselves and do no work.

- (4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

It will always be a statute for you that in ***the day I choose in early autumn***  
<sup>1</sup> you must humble yourselves and do no work.

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> The Hebrew says, “the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:1](#); [1:18](#); [9:1](#); [9:5](#); [9:11](#); [10:10](#); [10:11](#); [20:1](#); [28:16](#); [28:17](#); [29:1](#); [29:6](#); [29:7](#); [29:12](#); [33:3](#); [33:38](#))



# How to Translate Names

## Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

## Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see [Borrow Words](#).
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

## Examples from the Bible

You went over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the **Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called **Beerlahairoi**; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me”.

She named him **Moses** and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out”.

**Saul** was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

## Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

**You went over the** Jordan

and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**

**Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you.”** (Luke 13:31 ULT)

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because **King Herod** wants to kill you.

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

**She named him** Moses

and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

She named him **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)**, and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

**...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called** Beerlahairoi

; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

...she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**;

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

...a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

...a young man named **Paul**<sup>1</sup>

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

**But** Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

**But** Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

**It came about in Iconium that** Paul

and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

(Go back to: Numbers 1:5; 1:6; 1:7; 1:10; 1:12; 2:18; 2:20; 2:24; 2:25; 2:29; 2:31; 3:2; 3:17; 3:21; 3:24; 3:27; 3:30; 3:33; 7:41; 7:77; 10:29; 11:34; 11:35; 13:4; 13:5; 13:6; 13:7; 13:8; 13:9; 13:10; 13:11; 13:12; 13:13; 13:14; 13:15; 13:21; 13:22; 13:23; 13:33; 14:6; 21:14; 21:19; 21:20; 21:23; 21:30; 22:2; 22:5; 22:39; 23:14; 24:7; 24:21; 24:24; 25:1; 25:14; 25:15; 26:5; 26:8; 26:12; 26:15; 26:19; 26:23; 26:26; 26:28; 26:30; 26:33; 26:35; 26:38; 26:42; 26:44; 26:48; 26:57; 27:12; 31:8; 32:3; 32:9; 32:12; 32:33; 32:34; 32:35; 32:36; 32:37; 32:38; 32:41; 32:42; 33:3; 33:5; 33:8; 33:11; 33:15; 33:19; 33:23; 33:27; 33:31; 33:35; 33:40; 33:41; 33:44; 33:47; 34:4; 34:7; 34:10; 34:19; 34:21; 34:24; 34:27; 36:1; 36:2; 36:11)

# Hyperbole

## Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

- It rains here every night.
1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
  2. The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.
  3. The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

**Hyperbole:** This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **one stone upon another** (Luke 19:44 ULT)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the learning of the Egyptians** (Acts 7:22 ULT)

- This hyperbole means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught, and thus was as educated as any Egyptian.

**Generalization:** This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

## Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

## Examples from the Bible

### Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expression the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you about **all things** and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

They found him, and they said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

### Examples of Generalization

**Can anything good come out of Nazareth?** (John 1:46 ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

**A lazy hand causes poverty, but the hand of the diligent makes him rich.** (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

### Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

...they saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat... (John 6:19 ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means "most."

Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways  
and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

## Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

**The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops** as numerous as the sand on the seashore

. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases”.

**The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame...** (Proverbs 13:18 ULT)

**In general**, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

**And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)

“And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

**The whole**

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

**Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”  
or:  
**Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”

- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

**The whole**

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

■ The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:22](#); [16:13](#); [Notes](#); [22:5](#))



## Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining...,” “What if the sun stopped shining...,” “Suppose the sun stopped shining...,” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they will understand why the event was imagined.

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

### Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be one hundred years old, he would have seen his grandson's grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be one hundred years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be one hundred years old, he will see his grandson's grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

### Reason this Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language's ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

### Examples from the Bible

#### Hypothetical situations in the past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! ***If the mighty deeds had been done*** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, ***they would have repented*** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.”  
(Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that ***if*** the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, ***if you had been here, my brother would not have died.***” (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus had come sooner, so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner, and her brother did die.

### Hypothetical situations in the present

Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. ***If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed.*** (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, ***if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out?***” (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

### Hypothetical situation in the future

***Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved;*** but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

### Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

The Israelites said to them, “***If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.*** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. ***I wish that you were either cold or hot!*** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

### Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.

- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_hypo](http://ufw.io/figs_hypo).

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:11](#); [12:14](#); [22:18](#); [22:33](#); [24:13](#))

## Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are telling me a lie.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided”.

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should **enter under my roof**. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house”.

Let these words **go deeply into your ears**. (Luke 9:44 ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say”.

**Purpose:** An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

## Examples from the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

the children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3 ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

## Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."  
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

...Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

he resolutely set his face

to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

**I am not worthy that you should enter** under my roof

. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

**Let these words** go deeply into your ears

(Luke 9:44 ULT)

**Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

"My eyes grow dim

from grief (Psalm 6:7 ULT)

I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: Numbers 1:18; 1:50; 3:4; 3:8; 4:5; 5:12; 5:14; 5:19; 5:20; 5:21; 5:29; 5:30; 6:2; 6:3; 6:4; 6:5; 6:6; 6:7; 6:8; 6:13; 6:18; 6:19; 6:21; 6:24; 6:25; 6:26; 7:84; 8:16; 9:1; 9:3; 9:4; 9:6; 9:10; 9:11; 9:13; 9:20; 10:9; 10:31; 11:14; Notes; 14:22; 15:20; 15:40; 16:3; 16:7; 18:8; 18:15; 20:19; 21:11; 21:20; 22:5; 22:22; 22:27; 24:2; 24:3; 24:4; 24:10; 24:15; 25:3; 25:6; 27:16; 27:17; 29:12; 30:4; 30:5; 30:7; 30:9; 30:11; 30:12; 30:14; 31:16; 32:5; 32:13; 32:20; 32:32; 35:16; 35:21; 35:31)

# Litotes

## Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no”, “not”, “none”, and “never”. The opposite of “good” is “bad”. Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

## Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

Now when it became day, there was **no small excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,  
are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah,  
for from you will come a ruler  
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

## Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

**For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was** not useless

. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good**.”

**Now when it became day, there was** no small excitement

among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

"Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."

"Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter."

(Go back to: [Numbers 23:9](#); [31:49](#))

# Merism

## Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULT)

I am the **Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End**. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

**Alpha and Omega** are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth...**, (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

**Heaven and earth** is a merism that includes everything that exists.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

## Examples from the Bible

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere”.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone”.

## Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth

... (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything...**



From the rising of the sun to its setting

, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

■ ***In all places***, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

■ **I praise you, Father, Lord of** heaven and earth

. (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

■ I praise you, Father, Lord of ***everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.***

**He will bless those who honor him, both** young and old

. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

■ He will bless ***all those*** who honor him, regardless of whether they are ***young or old.***

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:4](#); [21:30](#); [27:21](#))

# Metaphor

## Description

A **metaphor** is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say:

- The girl I love is a red rose.

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

## The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about "the girl I love". This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and "a red rose." The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both *beautiful*. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a **metaphor** is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker's **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

## Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms "table **leg**", "family **tree**", "book **leaf**" (meaning a page in

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)

a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

### Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP (the Image) often represents the concepts of MORE or BETTER (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going *up*,” “A *highly* intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going *down*,” and “I am feeling very *low*.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat *up*.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us *go ahead* with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You *defend* your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A *flow* of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

### Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. They make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2 ULT)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

Jesus said, “Go and tell that fox...,” (Luke 13:32 ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors are the metaphors that need special care to translate correctly. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

## Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

## Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

## Examples from the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1 ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you", the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshipped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**." The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we took no bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See [Simile](#).
4. If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet

. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

**It was because of your** hard hearts

that he wrote you this law, (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law,

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”

■ **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay**

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

■ And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

■ **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you** to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

■ Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

■ **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay**

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

■ “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand.”

■ “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand.”

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

■ **Yahweh lives; may** my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

■ Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

■ **Yahweh lives; may** my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

■ Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

**Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you** to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

■ Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

**I will make you become** fishers of men

. (Mark 1:17 ULT)

I will make you become **people who gather men**.  
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns.

(Go back to: Numbers 1:53; 3:18; 3:21; 5:2; 5:21; 5:28; 6:7; 6:27; 8:19; 9:6; 9:10; 9:13; 10:35; 11:10; 11:11; 11:12; 11:14; 11:17; 11:20; 11:25; 11:26; 11:29; 12:5; 12:9; 12:12; 12:15; 13:27; 13:32; 13:33; 14:8; 14:9; 14:14; 14:15; 14:18; 14:42; 14:43; 15:3; 15:7; 15:10; 15:13; 15:14; 15:24; 15:30; 15:31; 15:39; 16:2; 16:3; 16:10; 16:13; 16:14; 16:21; 16:26; 16:32; 16:34; 16:35; 16:45; 18:6; 18:13; 18:17; 18:20; 18:21; 18:23; 18:24; 18:26; 19:7; 19:9; 19:10; 19:11; 19:13; 19:14; 19:17; 19:20; 21:28; 22:8; 22:38; 23:5; 23:10; 23:12; 23:16; 23:24; 24:8; 24:21; 25:11; 27:12; 27:20; 30:2; 30:3; 30:4; 30:6; 30:7; 30:8; 30:12; 30:14; 32:4; 32:5; 32:10; 32:11; 32:13; 32:14; 32:18; 32:21; 32:32; 33:4; 33:54; 35:22; 35:33; 36:8; 36:9; 36:12)

# Metonymy

## Description

**Metonymy** is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

## Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

## Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

## Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64 ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

...who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

## Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.



## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***This cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

"He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***The wine in this cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him ***the throne*** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

"The Lord God will give him ***the kingly authority*** of his father, David."

or:

"The Lord God will ***make him king*** like his ancestor, King David."

who warned you to flee from ***the wrath*** to come? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

"who warned you to flee from God's coming ***punishment?***"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.

(Go back to: Numbers 3:4; 3:6; 3:8; 3:48; 3:51; 4:5; 4:15; 4:16; 5:7; 5:8; 5:14; 5:30; 6:9; 7:2; 10:2; 10:5; 10:6; 10:9; 10:10; 11:17; 11:23; 11:25; 12:7; 12:11; 13:26; 13:27; 14:3; 14:22; 14:24; 14:29; 14:32; 14:33; 14:43; 15:20; 15:31; 15:39; 16:13; 16:22; 16:38; 16:46; 16:47; 18:5; 18:6; 18:7; 19:12; 20:3; 20:9; 20:16; 20:17; 20:18; 20:20; 21:1; 21:2; 21:3; 21:17; 21:21; 21:24; 22:3; 22:28; 22:31; 23:9; 23:10; 23:23; 24:7; 24:17; 24:18; 24:19; 24:20; 26:61; 30:2; 30:12; 32:5; 32:22; 35:19; 35:24; 35:27; 36:7)

# Numbers

## Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words ("five") or as numerals ("5"). Some numbers are very large, such as "two hundred" (200), "twenty-two thousand" (22,000), or "one hundred million" (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was **eighty-six** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about **three thousand** men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULT)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word "about" shows that it is not an exact number.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

## Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

## Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands** (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

## Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

## Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

## Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals "130" instead of "one hundred thirty").

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:3; 1:21; 1:23; 1:25; 1:27; 1:29; 1:31; 1:33; 1:35; 1:37; 1:39; 1:41; 1:43; 1:46; 2:4; 2:5; 2:6; 2:7; 2:8; 2:9; 2:10; 2:11; 2:12; 2:13; 2:14; 2:15; 2:16; 2:18; 2:19; 2:20; 2:21; 2:22; 2:23; 2:24; 2:25; 2:26; 2:27; 2:28; 2:29; 2:30; 2:31; 2:32; 3:22; 3:28; 3:34; 3:39; 3:43; 3:46; 3:47; 3:50; 4:3; 4:23; 4:30; 4:35; 4:36; 4:39; 4:40; 4:43; 4:44; 4:47; 4:48; 7:3; 7:13; 7:19; 7:25; 7:31; 7:37; 7:43; 7:49; 7:55; 7:61; 7:67; 7:73; 7:79; 7:85; 7:86; 7:87; 7:88; 8:24; 8:25; 11:21; 11:31; 13:22; 13:25; 16:2; 16:35; 16:49; 17:2; 20:29; 26:2; 26:4; 26:5; 26:7; 26:10; 26:12; 26:14; 26:15; 26:18; 26:19; 26:22; 26:23; 26:25; 26:26; 26:27; 26:33; 26:34; 26:35; 26:37; 26:38; 26:41; 26:42; 26:43; 26:44; 26:47; 26:48; 26:50; 26:51; 26:62; 29:13; 29:14; 29:15; 29:17; 29:20; 29:23; 29:26; 29:29; 29:32; 31:4; 31:5; 31:14; 31:28; 31:32; 31:33; 31:34; 31:35; 31:36; 31:37; 31:38; 31:39; 31:40; 31:42; 31:43; 31:44; 31:46; 31:47; 31:48; 31:52; 32:11; 32:13; 33:9; 33:39; 35:4; 35:5; 35:6; 35:7](#))

# Ordinal Numbers

## Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

## Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

## Reason this is a translation issue:

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

## Examples from the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim, ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row

must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

## Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

**The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim,...**another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.  
There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim,...**the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

**A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four**

rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

(2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

**The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **twenty-four** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim,...Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: Numbers 1:1; 1:18; 2:9; 2:16; 2:24; 6:9; 6:10; 7:12; 7:18; 7:24; 7:30; 7:36; 7:42; 7:48; 7:54; 7:60; 7:66; 7:72; 7:78; 9:1; 9:3; 9:5; 9:11; 10:6; 10:11; 10:14; 28:16; 28:17; 28:18; 29:1; 29:6; 29:7; 29:12; 29:17; 29:20; 29:23; 29:26; 29:29; 29:32; 29:35; 33:3; 33:38)

# Parallelism

## Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.  
This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term **Doublet** for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

## Examples from the Bible

### (1) The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

Your word is a lamp to my feet  
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

### (2) The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,  
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULT)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

### (3) The second completes what is said in the first.

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,  
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULT)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

**(4) The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.**

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,  
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULT)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,  
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULT)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

## Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

**Until now you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13, ULT) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

“Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

**Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

“Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”

**For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel.** (Micah 6:2 ULT) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

“For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”

- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

**Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”



(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

**you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13 ULT)

“All you have done is lie to me.”

**Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(**Go back to:** [Numbers 1:18; 3:16; 3:51; 4:20; 5:10; 6:21; 7:2; 7:89; 8:16; 8:20; 9:3; 9:14; 10:4; 11:33; 12:8; 17:12; 18:15; 18:19; 19:13; 20:26; 21:18; 21:27; 21:28; 21:29; 22:3; 23:7; 23:9; 23:18; 23:19; 23:21; 23:23; 24:5; 24:7; 24:17; 27:21; 30:2; 30:8; 31:2](#))

# Personification

## Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

Or sin:

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

## Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

## Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
2. In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

...sin crouches

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

...**sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you**

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

...**sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

...sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person**.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

...**even the** winds and the sea obey him

(Matthew 8:27 ULT) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

**NOTE:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:14](#); [5:19](#); [10:33](#); [10:35](#); [10:36](#); [21:17](#); [21:20](#); [26:10](#); [32:23](#))

# Possession

## Description

In common English, “possession” refers to having something, or to something that a person has. In English that grammatical relationship is shown by using the word “**of**”, by using an apostrophe and the letter **s**, or by using a possessive pronoun.

- the house **of** my grandfather
- my grandfather**'s** house
- **his** house

This page answers the question: *What is possession and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

- Ownership - Someone owns something.
  - My clothes - The clothes that I own
- Social relationship - Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.
  - my mother - the woman who gave birth to me, or the woman who cared for me
  - my teacher - the person who teaches me
- Contents - Something has something in it.
  - a bag of clothes - a bag that has clothes in it, or a bag that is full of clothes
- Part and whole: One thing is part of another.
  - my head - the head that is part of my body
  - the roof of a house - the roof that is part of a house

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one possesses the other.
- Some languages do not use possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

## Examples from the Bible

**Ownership** - In the example below, the son owned the money.

...the younger son...wasted **his money** with wildly extravagant living. (Luke 15:13)

**Social Relationship** - In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

Then **the disciples of John** came to him..., (Matthew 9:14 ULT)

**Material** - In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

On their heads were something like **crowns of gold** (Revelation 9:7)

**Contents** - In the example below, the cup has water in it.

Whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink...will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

**Part of a whole** - In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

But Uriah slept at **the door of the king's palace** (2 Samuel 11:9 ULT)

**Part of a group** - In the example below, “us” refers to the whole group and “each one” refers to the individual members.

■ To ***each one of us*** has been given a gift (Ephesians 4:7 ULT)

## Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

**Subject** - Sometimes the word after “of” tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, ***John baptized people***.

■ The baptism

\* of John\*, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me.” (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, ***Christ loves us***.

■ Who will separate us from ***the \*love*** of Christ\*? (Romans 3:35)

**Object** - Sometimes the word after “of” tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, ***people love money***.

■ For ***the \*love*** of money\* is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10 ULT)

**Instrument** - Sometimes the word after “of” tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would ***punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords***.

■ then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings ***the \*punishment*** of the sword\* (Job 19:29 ULT)

**Representation** - In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their ***baptism represented their repentance***.

■ As John came, he was baptizing in the wilderness and was preaching ***a \*baptism*** of repentance\* for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULT)

## Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

1. Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
2. Read the verse in the UST. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
3. See what the notes say about it.

## Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

1. Use an adjective to show that one describes the other.
2. Use a verb to show how the two are related.
3. If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use an adjective to show that one describes the other. The adjective below is in **bold** print.

■ On their heads were ***something like*** crowns of gold

(Revelation 9:7)

“On their heads were gold

\* crowns\* “

(2) Use a verb to show how the two are related. In the example below, the added verb is in bold.

...**Whoever gives you** a cup of water

to drink...will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

...Whoever gives you **a cup that \*has** water in it\* to drink...will not lose his reward.

**Wealth is worthless on** the day of wrath

(Proverbs 11:4 ULT)

Wealth is worthless on **the day when God \*shows** his wrath.\* **Wealth is worthless on the** day when God **punishes** people because of his wrath

\*\*.

(3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. In the example below, that verb is in bold.

**Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen** the punishment of Yahweh your God

, (Deuteronomy 11:2 ULT)

Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen **how Yahweh your God \*punished** the people of Egypt.\*

**You will only observe and see the** punishment of the wicked

. (Psalms 91:8 ULT)

You will only observe and see **how Yahweh \*punishes** the wicked\*.

**...you will receive the gift** of the Holy Spirit

. (Acts 2:38 ULT)

...you will receive **the Holy Spirit, whom God will \*give** to you\*.

(Go back to: [Numbers 28:31](#); [29:3](#); [29:6](#); [29:11](#); [29:19](#); [29:22](#); [29:25](#); [29:28](#); [29:31](#); [29:34](#); [29:37](#); [29:38](#))

# Predictive Past

## Description

The predictive past is a figure of speech that uses the past tense to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is sometimes done in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is also called the prophetic perfect.

Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding;  
their leaders go hungry, and their masses have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is the predictive past?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

## Reason this is a translation issue:

Readers who are not aware of the past tense being used in prophecy to refer to future events may find it confusing.

## Examples from the Bible

Now all the entrances to Jericho were closed because of the army of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers." (Joshua 6:1-2 ULT)

For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given;  
and the rule will be on his shoulder; (Isaiah 9:6 ULT)

In the examples above, God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

And about these people also Enoch, the seventh in line from Adam, foretold, saying, "Look, the Lord came with tens of thousands of his holy ones, (Jude 1:14 ULT)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen in the future, but he used the past tense when he said "the Lord came."

## Translation Strategies

If the past tense would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the future tense to refer to future events.
2. If it refers to something in the immediate future, use a form that would show that.
3. Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

**For to us a child** has been born

, to us a son has been given; (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

"For to us a child **will be born**, to us a son **will be given**;

(2) If it refers to something that would happen very soon, use a form that shows that.

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I have handed

over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.” (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I **am about to hand** over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.”

(3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I have handed

over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.” (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I **am handing** over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.”

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:2](#))



# Pronouns

## Description

Pronouns are words that people might use to refer to someone or something instead of using a noun. Some examples are "I", "you", "he", "it", "this", "that", "himself", "someone", and others. Personal pronouns are the most common type of pronoun.

This page answers the question: *What are pronouns and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]*

## Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show if the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may give. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

### Person

- First Person - The speaker and possibly others (I, we)
  - [Exclusive and Inclusive “We”](#)
- Second Person - The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
  - [Forms of You](#)
- Third Person - Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

### Number

- Singular - one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural - more than one (we, you, they)
  - Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups
- Dual - two (Some languages have pronouns for specifically two people or two things.)

### Gender

- Masculine - he
- Feminine - she
- Neuter - it

### Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

## Other Types of pronouns

**Reflexive Pronouns** refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- **John saw** himself

in the mirror. - The word “himself” refers to John.

**Interrogative Pronouns** are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: who, whom, whose, what, where, when, why, how

- Who

built the house?

**Relative Pronouns** mark a relative clause. They give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence: that, which, who, whom, where, when

- **I saw the house** that

John built. The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.

- **I saw the man** who

built the house. The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

**Demonstrative Pronouns** are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else: this, these, that, those.

- **Have you seen** this

here?

- **Who is** that over there?

**Indefinite pronouns** are used when no particular noun is being referred to: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- **He does not want to talk to** anyone

.

- Someone fixed it, but I do not know who.
- They say that you should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, “they” and “you” just refer to people in general.

(Go back to: [Numbers 18:3](#))

## Quotes within Quotes

### Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we say there are "layers" of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

This page answers the question: *What is a quote within a quote, and how can I help the readers understand who is saying what?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Direct and Indirect Quotations](#)

### Reasons this is a translation issue

1. When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example: if a quote that is inside a quote has the word "I", the listener needs to know whether "I" refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.
2. Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes. They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others.
3. Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

### Examples from the Bible

#### A quotation with only one layer

But Paul said, "I was born a Roman citizen." (Acts 22:28 ULT)

#### Quotations with two layers

Jesus answered and said to them, "Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, 'I am the Christ,' and will lead many astray." Matthew 24:4-5 ULT

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

Jesus answered, "You say that I am a king." (John 18:37 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

#### A quotation with three layers

Abraham said, "...I said to her, 'You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, **"He is my brother."**'" (Genesis 20:10-13 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Abraham said to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have underlined the third layer.)

#### A quotation with four layers

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: ***'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'***"'" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have underlined the fourth layer.)

## Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

1. Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.
2. Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (See [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#).)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have underlined the indirect quotes in the ULT and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

**Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner....I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him if he would go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things**

. But when Paul called to be kept under guard for the Emperor's decision, I ordered him to be kept until I send him to Caesar." (Acts 25:14-21 ULT)

Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner....I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him, **'Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things?'** But when Paul said, **'I want to be kept under guard for the Emperor's decision,'** I told the guard, **'Keep him under guard until I send him to Caesar.'**

(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word "that" can come before indirect quotes. It is underlined in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also underlined.

**Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, "I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them, 'At twilight you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be filled with bread. Then you will know that I am Yahweh your God.' "** (Exodus 16:11-12 ULT)

Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, "I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them **that** at twilight **they** will eat meat, and in the morning **they** will be filled with bread. Then **they** will know that I am Yahweh **their** God."

**They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"** (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

They told him **that** a man had come to meet **them** who said to **them**, "Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him **that** Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotemarks]]

(Go back to: [Numbers 25:13](#))

# Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

## Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, ***"Is this how you insult God's high priest?"*** (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purpose of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

## Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

***Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?*** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

***What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?*** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden...(Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

## Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? ***Of course not!*** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

**Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? ***None of you would do that!***

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?

It is like a mustard seed... (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

***This is what the kingdom of God is like.*** It is like a mustard seed..."

Is this how you insult God's high priest?

(Acts 23:4 ULT)

***You should not insult God's high priest!***

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?

(Job 3:11 ULT)

***I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!***

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

(Luke 1:43 ULT)

***How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!***

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule

the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, ***do you not?***

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

**Or** what man among you is there who

, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, ***would you give him a stone?***

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils

? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

***What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils?*** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: [Numbers 9:7](#); [11:4](#); [11:11](#); [11:12](#); [11:13](#); [11:18](#); [11:20](#); [11:22](#); [11:23](#); [11:29](#); [12:2](#); [12:8](#); [13:19](#); [Notes](#); [14:3](#); [14:11](#); [14:27](#); [14:41](#); [16:3](#); [16:9](#); [16:11](#); [16:13](#); [16:14](#); [16:22](#); [20:4](#); [20:5](#); [20:10](#); [21:5](#); [22:9](#); [22:30](#); [22:32](#); [22:37](#); [22:38](#); [23:8](#); [23:10](#); [23:11](#); [23:12](#); [23:19](#); [23:26](#); [24:9](#); [24:13](#); [24:23](#); [27:4](#); [31:15](#); [32:6](#); [32:7](#))



# Simile

A simile is an explicit comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than”.

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than”.

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were **like sheep without a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as serpents** and harmless **as doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

## Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

## Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier of Christ Jesus**. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for **as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky**, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

**For the word of God is living and active and sharper** than any two-edged sword

. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**,

**How often did I long to gather your children together, just** as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings

, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

**If you have faith even as small** as a grain of mustard

, (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

**How often did I long to gather your children together, just** as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings  
, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metaphor](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Numbers 8:4](#); [8:11](#); [8:13](#); [8:15](#); [9:15](#); [9:16](#); [12:10](#); [12:12](#); [13:33](#); [14:9](#); [16:30](#); [22:4](#); [23:22](#); [24:6](#); [24:8](#); [24:9](#); [27:17](#); [33:55](#))

# Symbolic Action

## Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean “Yes” or turn their head from side to side to mean “No”. Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

## Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

## Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In others cultures it means “Yes”.

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

## Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and **knock**. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

**Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

**Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

**Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

**Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

**Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULT) - Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

**Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULT) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [Numbers 8:7](#); [8:10](#); [8:12](#); [12:14](#); [14:5](#); [14:6](#); [16:4](#); [16:22](#); [16:45](#); [18:19](#); [20:6](#); [22:31](#); [24:4](#); [24:10](#); [24:16](#); [25:2](#); [27:18](#); [27:23](#))

# Symbolic Language

## Description

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things, other events, etc. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future. Though people may not immediately know the meaning of a symbol, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.

This page answers the question: *What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

Eat this scroll, then go speak to the house of Israel." (Ezekiel 3:1 ULT)

This was in a dream. Eating the scroll is a symbol of reading and understanding well what was written on the scroll, and accepting these words from God into himself.

## Purposes of symbolism

- One purpose of symbolism is to help people understand the importance or severity of an event by putting it in other, very dramatic terms.
- Another purpose of symbolism is to tell some people about something while hiding the true meaning from others who do not understand the symbolism.

## Reason this is a translation issue

People who read the Bible today may find it hard to recognize that the language is symbolic, and they may not know what the symbol stands for.

## Translation Principles

- When symbolic language is used, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.
- It is also important not to explain the symbol more than the original speaker or writer did, since he may not have wanted everyone living then to be able to understand it easily.

## Examples from the Bible

After this I saw in my dream at night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

The meaning of the underlined symbols is explained in Daniel 7:23-24 as shown below. The animals represent kingdoms, iron teeth represent a powerful army, and the horns represent powerful leaders.

This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings. (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

I turned around to see whose voice was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw **seven golden lampstands**. In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a Son of Man,...He had in his right hand **seven stars**, and coming out of his mouth was **a sharp two-edged sword**...As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: **the seven stars are the angels of the seven churches**, and **the seven lampstands are the seven churches**. (Revelation 1:12, 16, 20 ULT)

This passage explains the meaning of the seven lampstands and the seven stars. The two-edged sword represents God's word and judgment.

## Translation Strategies

1. Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
2. Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal

, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. (Daniel 7:7 ULT) - People will be able to understand what the symbols mean when they read the explanation in Daniel 7:23-24.

(2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal

, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, <sup>1</sup> terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; <sup>2</sup> it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. <sup>3</sup>

The footnotes would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> The animal is a symbol for a kingdom.

<sup>[2]</sup> The iron teeth is a symbol for the kingdom's powerful army.

<sup>[3]</sup> The horns are a symbol of powerful kings.

(Go back to: [Numbers 24:17](#))

# Synecdoche

## Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

**My soul** exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

**the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful...” (Mark 2:24 ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

## Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

## Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

“My soul

exalts the Lord.” (Luke 1:46 ULT)

“I exalt the Lord.”

...the Pharisees

said to him (Mark 2:24 ULT)

...a representative of the Pharisees said to him...

...I looked on all the deeds that my hands

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]



had accomplished... (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

I looked on all the deeds that *I* had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:49; 2:17; 4:15; 7:89; 10:9; 16:15; 17:4; 17:7; 17:10; 20:8; 20:12; 20:18; 21:23; 27:14; 27:16; 27:19; 29:1; 30:8; 32:7; 32:9](#))

# Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: "How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?"

## Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

We have here only five loaves of **bread** and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

## Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

## Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

## Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made **great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins...will be white like **snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

## Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

**Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves**

. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **are truly hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

**We have here only five** loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have here only five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

**your sins...will be white like** snow

(Isaiah 1:18 ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

your sins...will be white like **milk** your sins...will be white like **the moon**

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

**Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with** myrrh

. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

**We have here only five loaves of** bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

■ We have here only five loaves of ***baked crushed seed bread*** and two fish

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

■ **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for** jackals

(Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

■ I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for ***wild dogs***

**We have here only five** loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

■ We have here only five ***loaves of baked food*** and two fish

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

■ **to him who made** great lights

(Psalm 136:7 ULT)

■ to him who made ***the sun and the moon***

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

[How to Translate Names](#)

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:31](#); [24:6](#); [27:21](#))



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Version 14**

# Aaron

## Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the [priest](#) priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [priest](#), [Moses](#), [Israel](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:14
- Acts 07:38-40
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Luke 01:05
- Numbers 16:45

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:15** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **10:05** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **13:09** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **13:11** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **14:07** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H175, G2

(Go back to: [Numbers 2:1; 3:1; 3:2; 3:3; 3:4; 3:6; 3:10; 3:32; 4:1; 4:5; 4:15; 4:16; 4:17; 4:19; 4:27; 4:28; 4:33; 6:23; 7:8; 8:2; 8:3; 8:11; 8:13; 8:21; 8:22; 9:6; 10:8; 12:4; 12:5; 12:10; 12:11; 13:26; 14:2; 14:26; 15:33; 16:3; 16:20; 16:37; 16:40; 16:41; 16:42; 16:46; 16:47; 16:50; 17:3; 17:6; 17:8; 17:10; 18:1; 18:8; 18:20; 19:1; 20:2; 20:12; 20:23; 20:24; 20:25; 20:26; 20:28; 20:29; 25:7; 25:11; 26:1; 26:9; 26:59; 27:13; 33:38](#))

## adversary, enemy

### Definition:

An "adversary" is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term "enemy" has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an "adversary" of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an "adversary" and an "enemy."
- The term "adversary" may be translated as "opponent" or "enemy," but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:14
- Isaiah 09:11
- Job 06:23
- Lamentations 04:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G5227

(Go back to: [Numbers 10:9](#); [10:35](#); [14:42](#); [23:11](#); [24:8](#); [24:10](#); [24:18](#); [25:17](#); [25:18](#); [32:21](#); [35:23](#))

## advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

### Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, Holy Spirit, wise)

### Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G1011, G1012, G1106, G4823, G4825

(Go back to: [Numbers 24:14](#))



## afflict, affliction, distress

### Definition:

The term "afflict" means to cause someone distress or suffering. An "affliction" is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To "be afflicted with" means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To "afflict" someone could be translated as "cause someone to experience troubles" or "cause someone to suffer" or "cause suffering to come."
- A phrase like "afflict someone with leprosy" could be translated as "cause someone to be sick with leprosy."
- When a disease or disaster is sent to "afflict" people or animals, this could be translated as "cause suffering to."
- Depending on the context, the term "affliction" could be translated as "calamity" or "sickness" or "suffering" or "great distress."
- The phrase "afflicted with" could also be translated as "suffering from" or "sick with."

(See also: leprosy, plague, suffer)

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:06
- Amos 05:12
- Colossians 01:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G2346, G2347, G3804

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:10](#); [11:11](#); [16:15](#); [22:34](#))

## alarm, alarmed

### Facts:

An alarm is something that warns people about something that could harm them. To “be alarmed” is to be very worried and frightened about something dangerous or threatening.

- King Jehoshaphat was alarmed when he heard that the Moabites were planning to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- Jesus told his disciples not to be alarmed when they hear about disasters happening in the last days.
- The expression “sound an alarm” means to give a warning. In ancient times, a person could sound an alarm by making a noise.

### Translation Suggestions

- To “alarm someone” means to “cause someone to worry” or to “worry someone.”
- To “be alarmed” could be translated as “be worried” or “be frightened” or “be very concerned.”
- The expression “sound an alarm” could be translated by “publicly warn” or “announce that danger is coming” or “blow a trumpet to warn about danger.”

(See also: Jehoshaphat, [Moab](#))

### Bible References:

- Daniel 11:44-45
- Jeremiah 04:19-20
- Numbers 10:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7321, H8643

(Go back to: [Numbers 10:9](#))

# Almighty

## Facts:

The term “Almighty” literally means “all-powerful.” In the Bible, this term always refers to God.

- The titles “the Almighty” or “the Almighty One” refer to God and reveal that he has complete power and authority over everything.
- This term is also used to describe God in the titles “Almighty God” and “God Almighty” and “Lord Almighty” and “Lord God Almighty.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “All-powerful” or “Completely Powerful One” or “God, who is completely powerful.”
- Ways to translate the phrase “Lord God Almighty” could include “God, the Powerful Ruler” or “Powerful Sovereign God” or “Mighty God who is Master over everything.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), power)

## Bible References:

- Exodus 06:2-5
- Genesis 17:01
- Genesis 35:11-13
- Job 08:03
- Numbers 24:15-16
- Revelation 01:7-8
- Ruth 01:19-21

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H7706, G3841

(Go back to: [Numbers 24:4](#); [24:16](#))

# altar

## Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, [false god](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:09
- James 02:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 23:19

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:09** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:06** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:26](#); [4:11](#); [4:13](#); [4:14](#); [4:26](#); [5:25](#); [5:26](#); [7:1](#); [7:10](#); [7:11](#); [7:84](#); [7:88](#); [16:46](#); [18:3](#); [18:5](#); [18:7](#); [18:17](#); [23:1](#); [23:4](#); [23:14](#); [23:29](#))

## amen, truly

### Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULT) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”

(See also: fulfill, true)

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 05:19
- Jude 01:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 01:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H543, G281

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:22](#))

# Amorite

## Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means "high one," which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the "sin of the Amorites," which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

## Bible References:

- Amos 02:09
- Ezekiel 16:03
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 09:10

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:07** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- **15:08** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- **15:09** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- **15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H567,

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:29](#); [21:13](#); [21:21](#); [21:25](#); [21:26](#); [21:31](#); [21:32](#); [21:34](#); [32:33](#); [32:39](#))

## ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

### Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, [son](#), Son of God)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:2; 1:4; 1:16; 1:18; 1:20; 1:22; 1:24; 1:26; 1:28; 1:30; 1:32; 1:34; 1:36; 1:38; 1:40; 1:42; 1:44; 1:45; 1:47; 2:2; 2:32; 2:34; 3:4; 3:15; 3:20; 3:24; 3:30; 3:35; 4:2; 4:22; 4:29; 4:34; 4:38; 4:40; 4:42; 4:46; 6:7; 7:2; 11:12;](#)

12:14; 13:2; 14:18; 14:23; 17:2; 17:3; 17:6; 18:1; 18:2; 20:15; 25:14; 25:15; 26:2; 26:55; 27:3; 27:4; 27:7; 27:10; 27:11;  
30:3; 30:4; 30:5; 30:16; 31:26; 32:8; 32:14; 32:28; 33:54; 34:14; 36:1; 36:3; 36:4; 36:6; 36:7; 36:8; 36:12)



## anoint, anointed, anointing

### Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.
- In biblical times, a woman might anoint herself with perfume to make herself more sexually attractive.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: Christ, [consecrate](#), high priest, King of the Jews, [priest](#), [prophet](#) )

### Bible References:

- 1 John 02:20
- 1 John 02:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 04:27-28
- Amos 06:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 05:13-15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G32, G218, G743, G1472, G2025, G3462, G5545, G5548

(Go back to: [Numbers 16 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

## appoint, appointed

### Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:11
- Acts 03:20
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H561, H977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G322, G606, G1299, G1303, G1935, G2525, G2749, G4287, G4296, G4384, G4929, G5021, G5087

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:5](#); [1:19](#); [2:4](#); [2:6](#); [2:8](#); [2:11](#); [2:13](#); [2:15](#); [2:19](#); [2:21](#); [2:23](#); [2:26](#); [2:28](#); [2:30](#); [3:16](#); [3:34](#); [3:42](#); [4:6](#); [4:8](#); [4:11](#); [4:14](#); [4:19](#); [4:27](#); [4:34](#); [4:38](#); [4:42](#); [4:49](#); [6:26](#); [6:27](#); [9:8](#); [11:17](#); [14:14](#); [Notes](#); [16:7](#); [16:18](#); [16:46](#); [21:8](#); [21:9](#); [23:5](#); [23:16](#); [24:21](#); [26:34](#); [26:41](#); [26:50](#); [Notes](#); [27:21](#); [35:12](#))

## assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

### Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

### Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

### New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:14
- Acts 07:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Nehemiah 08:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G1577, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:18](#); [10:7](#); [10:25](#); [11:16](#); [11:22](#); [11:32](#); [12:14](#); [12:15](#); [14:5](#); [15:15](#); [16:3](#); [16:33](#); [16:47](#); [19:20](#); [20:4](#); [20:6](#); [20:10](#); [20:12](#); [20:24](#); [20:26](#); [21:16](#); [22:4](#); [27:13](#); [29:35](#); [31:2](#))

# Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

## Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: Samaria)

## Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11
- Genesis 25:17-18
- Isaiah 07:16-17
- Jeremiah 50:17
- Micah 07:11-13

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:02** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **20:03** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **20:04** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H804, H1121

(Go back to: [Numbers 24:22](#); [24:24](#))

## atonement, atone, atoned

### Definition:

The terms “atone” and “atonement” refer to how God provided a sacrifice to pay for people’s sins and to appease his wrath for sin.

- In Old Testament times, God allowed temporary atonement to be made for the sins of the Israelites by the offering of a blood sacrifice, which involved killing an animal.
- As recorded in the New Testament, Christ’s death on the cross is the only true and permanent atonement for sin.
- When Jesus died, he took the punishment that people deserve because of their sin. He paid the atonement price with his sacrificial death.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “atone” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “pay for” or “provide payment for” or “cause someone’s sins to be forgiven” or “make amends for a crime.”
- Ways to translate “atonement” could include “payment” or “sacrifice to pay for sin” or “providing the means of forgiveness.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to payment of money.

(See also: atonement lid, forgive, propitiation, reconcile, [redeem](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 43:25-27
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Leviticus 04:20
- Numbers 05:08
- Numbers 28:22

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3722, H3725, G2643

(Go back to: [Numbers 8:12](#); [15:28](#); [28:22](#); [28:30](#); [29:5](#); [31:50](#))

## avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance

### Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The expression to “avenge” could also be translated as to “right a wrong” or to “get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: punish, [just](#), righteous)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 018:47
- Romans 12:19

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H8199, G1556, G1557, G1558, G3709

(Go back to: [Numbers 5 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

# Balaam

## Facts:

Balaam was a pagan prophet whom King Balek hired to curse Israel while they were camped at the Jordan River in northern Moab, preparing to enter the land of Canaan.

- Balaam was from the city of Pethor, which was located in the region around the Euphrates River, about 400 miles away from the land of Moab.
- The Midianite king, Balek, was afraid of the strength and numbers of the Israelites, so he hired Balaam to curse them.
- As Balaam was traveling toward Israel, an angel of God stood in his path so that Balaam's donkey stopped. God also gave the donkey the ability to speak to Balaam.
- God did not allow Balaam to curse the Israelites and commanded him to bless them instead.
- Later however, Balaam still brought evil on the Israelites when he influenced them to worship the false god Baal-peor.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [bless](#), [Canaan](#), [curse](#), [donkey](#), Euphrates River, [Jordan River](#), Midian, [Moab](#), Peor)

## Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:16
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Joshua 13:22-23
- Numbers 22:05
- Revelation 02:14

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1109, G903

(Go back to: [Numbers 22:5](#); [22:7](#); [22:8](#); [22:9](#); [22:10](#); [22:12](#); [22:13](#); [22:14](#); [22:16](#); [22:18](#); [22:20](#); [22:21](#); [22:23](#); [22:25](#); [22:27](#); [22:29](#); [22:30](#); [22:31](#); [22:34](#); [22:35](#); [22:36](#); [22:37](#); [22:38](#); [22:39](#); [22:41](#); [23:1](#); [23:2](#); [23:3](#); [23:4](#); [23:5](#); [23:11](#); [23:16](#); [23:25](#); [23:26](#); [23:27](#); [23:28](#); [23:29](#); [23:30](#); [24:1](#); [24:2](#); [24:3](#); [24:10](#); [24:12](#); [24:15](#); [24:25](#); [31:8](#); [31:16](#))

# barley

## Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [grain](#), [thresh](#), wheat)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
- Job 31:40
- Judges 07:14
- Numbers 05:15
- Revelation 06:06

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H8184, G2915, G2916

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:15](#))



# Bashan

## Facts:

Bashan was a region of land east of the Sea of Galilee. It covered an area that is now part of Syria and the Golan Heights.

- An Old Testament city of refuge called “Golan” was located in the region of Bashan.
- Bashan was a very fertile region known for its oak trees and pasturing animals.
- Genesis 14 records that Bashan was the site of a war between several kings and their nations.
- During Israel's wanderings in the desert after their escape from Egypt, they took possession of part of the region of Bashan.
- Years later, King Solomon obtained supplies from that region.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), oak, Sea of Galilee, Syria)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:13
- Amos 04:01
- Jeremiah 22:20-21
- Joshua 09:10

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1316

(Go back to: [Numbers 21:33](#); [32:33](#))

## beast

### Facts:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: authority, Daniel, [livestock](#), [nation](#), power, reveal, Beelzebul)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Samuel 17:44
- 2 Chronicles 25:18
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 07:21
- Psalms 049:12-13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H338, H929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G2226, G2341, G2342, G2934, G4968, G5074

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:13](#); [3:41](#); [3:45](#); [31:9](#); [32:26](#))

## Benjamin, Benjamite

### Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), Paul, Rachel, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 02:08
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:04
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 03:4-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G958

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:11](#); [1:36](#); [1:37](#); [2:22](#); [7:60](#); [10:24](#); [13:9](#); [26:38](#); [26:41](#); [34:21](#))

## bind, bond, bound

### Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: fulfill, [peace](#), prison, [servant](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

- Leviticus 08:07

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H247, H481, H519, H615, H631, H632, H640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G254, G331, G332, G1195, G1196, G1198, G1199, G1210, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2611, G2615, G3734, G3784, G3814, G4019, G4029, G4385, G4886, G4887, G5265

(Go back to: [Numbers 21:28](#))

## bless, blessed, blessing

### Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:23](#); [6:24](#); [6:27](#); [22:6](#); [22:12](#); [23:11](#); [23:20](#); [23:25](#); [24:9](#); [24:10](#))

## blood

### Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood is a metaphor for life, and when it is shed or poured out, it is a metaphor for the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: [flesh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 02:20
- Acts 05:28
- Colossians 01:20
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 04:11
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

(Go back to: [Numbers 18:17](#); [19:5](#); [35:27](#); [35:33](#))

## bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:18
- Exodus 20:05
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:05
- Matthew 02:11
- Revelation 03:09

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:27](#); [14:5](#); [14:43](#); [16:4](#); [16:22](#); [16:45](#); [20:6](#); [22:31](#); [24:9](#); [35:23](#))



# bread

## Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#)) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), yeast)

## Bible References:

- Acts 02:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 09:13
- Mark 06:38
- Matthew 04:04
- Matthew 11:18

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

(Go back to: [Numbers 4:7](#); [14:9](#); [21:5](#); [28:2](#); [28:24](#))

## bronze

### Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: armor, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 07:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 02:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 01:15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G5470, G5474, G5475

(Go back to: [Numbers 16:39](#); [21:9](#); [31:22](#))

# brother

## Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, God the Father, sister, [spirit](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:7](#); [8:26](#); [14:4](#); [16:10](#); [18:2](#); [18:6](#); [20:3](#); [20:8](#); [20:14](#); [25:6](#); [27:4](#); [27:7](#); [27:9](#); [27:10](#); [27:11](#); [27:13](#); [36:2](#))

## burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

### Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Galatians 06:03
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:04

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H6006, G4, G916, G922, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

(Go back to: [Numbers 4:15](#); [4:19](#); [4:27](#); [4:31](#); [4:32](#); [4:47](#); [4:49](#); [11:11](#); [22:17](#); [22:37](#); [24:11](#))

## burnt offering, offering by fire

### Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), [atonement](#), [ox](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 03:05
- Mark 12:33

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G3646

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:16](#); [8:12](#); [10:10](#); [15:3](#); [15:8](#); [23:3](#); [23:6](#); [23:15](#); [23:17](#); [28:3](#); [28:6](#); [28:10](#); [28:11](#); [28:13](#); [28:14](#); [28:15](#); [28:19](#); [28:23](#); [28:24](#); [28:27](#); [28:31](#); [29:2](#); [29:6](#); [29:8](#); [29:11](#); [29:13](#); [29:16](#); [29:19](#); [29:22](#); [29:25](#); [29:28](#); [29:31](#); [29:34](#); [29:36](#); [29:38](#))

## bury, buried, burial

### Definition:

The term “bury” refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term “burial” is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: [Jericho](#), tomb)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 09:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:07
- Psalm 079:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6900, H6912, H6913, G1779, G1780, G2290, G4916, G5027

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:34](#); [33:4](#))

## call, call out

### Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), cry)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:24](#); [24:10](#); [26:9](#))



## Canaan, Canaanite

### Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ham, [Promised Land](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 09:18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:07
- Genesis 47:02

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:05** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **04:06** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **04:09** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **05:03** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G5478

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:2](#); [13:17](#); [21:1](#); [21:3](#); [26:19](#); [32:30](#); [32:32](#); [33:40](#); [33:51](#); [34:2](#); [34:29](#); [35:10](#); [35:14](#))

## **captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured**

### **Definition:**

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: Babylon, exile, prison, seize)

### **Bible References:**

- 2 Corinthians 10:05
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 43:03
- Luke 04:18

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221

(Go back to: [Numbers 21:29](#); [24:22](#); [31:12](#); [31:26](#))

## cedar, cedarwood

### Definition:

The term "cedar" refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: fir, [pure](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:1-2
- 1 Kings 07:1-2
- Isaiah 02:13
- Zechariah 11:02

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H730

(Go back to: [Numbers 19:6](#))

## census

### Definition:

The term “census” refers to a formal counting of the number of people in a nation or empire.

- The Old Testament records different times when God ordered that the men of Israel be counted, such as when the Israelites first left Egypt and then again just before they entered Canaan.
- Often the purpose of a census was in order to know how many people should be paying taxes.
- For example, one time in Exodus the Israelite men were counted so that each one would pay a half shekel for taking care of the temple.
- When Jesus was a baby, the Roman government did a census to count all the people who lived throughout their empire, to require them to pay taxes.

### Translation Suggestions

- Possible ways to translate this term could include, “name counting” or “list of names” or “enrollment.”
- The phrase “take a census” could be translated as “register people’s names” or “enroll people” or “write down people’s names.”

(See also: [nation](#), Rome)

### Bible References:

- Acts 05:37
- Exodus 30:12
- Exodus 38:26
- Luke 02:03
- Numbers 04:1-4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3789, H5674, H5921, H6485, H7218, G582, G583

(Go back to: [Introduction to Numbers](#))

## chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

### Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones)” or “the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: [appoint](#), Christ)

### Bible References:

- 2 John 01:01
- Colossians 03:12
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:07
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 08:33

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H970, H972, H977, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G138, G140, G1586, G1588, G1589, G1951, G3724, G4400, G4401, G4758, G4899, G5500

(Go back to: [Numbers 17 General Notes](#))

# clan

## Definition:

The term "clan" refers to a group of extended family members who come from a common ancestor.

- In the Old Testament, the Israelites were counted according to their clans, or family groups.
- Clans were normally named after their most well-known ancestor.
- Individual people were sometimes referred to by the name of their clan. An example of this is when Moses' father-in-law Jethro is sometimes called by his clan name, Reuel.
- The term "clan" might also be translated as "family group" or "extended family" or "relatives."

(See also: [family](#), Jethro, [tribe](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:33-35
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 36:15-16
- Genesis 36:29-30
- Genesis 36:40
- Joshua 15:20
- Numbers 03:38-39

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H441, H1004, H4940

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:2; 1:20; 1:22; 1:24; 1:26; 1:28; 1:30; 1:32; 1:34; 1:36; 1:38; 1:40; 1:42; 2:34; 3:15; 3:18; 3:19; 3:20; 3:30; 3:35; 3:39; 4:2; 4:22; 4:29; 4:34; 4:36; 4:38; 4:40; 4:42; 4:44; 4:46; 11:10; 26:12; 26:15; 26:20; 26:23; 26:26; 26:28; 26:35; 26:37; 26:38; 26:41; 26:42; 26:44; 26:48; 26:50; 26:57; 27:1; 33:54; 36:1; 36:6](#))

## clean, wash

### Definition:

The term "clean" generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term "wash" refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from something.

- "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
- Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be "clean" from sin.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God."
- "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify."
- Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled."
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled."
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 07:02
- Genesis 07:08
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 051:07
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27
- Luke 05:13
- Acts 08:07
- Acts 10:27-29

- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- James 04:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2839, G2840, G3394, G3689

(Go back to: [Numbers 5 General Notes](#); [9:13](#); [18:11](#); [18:13](#); [Notes](#); [19:7](#); [19:8](#); [19:9](#); [19:13](#); [19:18](#); [19:19](#); [19:20](#); [31:23](#))



## column, pillar

### Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: foundation, [false god](#), image)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:04
- Exodus 13:21
- Exodus 33:09
- Genesis 31:45
- Proverbs 09:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H352, H547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G4769

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:36](#); [3:37](#); [4:31](#); [4:32](#))

## command, commandment

### Definition:

The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

### Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, [statute](#), law, Ten Commandments)

### Bible References:

- Luke 01:06
- Matthew 01:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H560, H565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506

(Go back to: Numbers 1:3; 1:19; 1:21; 1:22; 1:23; 1:25; 1:27; 1:29; 1:31; 1:33; 1:35; 1:37; 1:39; 1:41; 1:43; 1:44; 1:45; 1:47; 1:49; 1:50; 1:54; 2:32; 2:33; 2:34; 3:10; 3:15; 3:16; 3:22; 3:39; 3:40; 3:42; 3:51; 4:23; 4:29; 4:30; 4:32; 4:36; 4:37; 4:40; 4:41; 4:44; 4:45; 4:46; 4:48; 4:49; 5:2; 8:3; 8:20; 8:22; 9:5; 9:8; 11:24; 12:4; 12:5; 13:32; 14:18; 14:29; 15:22; 15:23; 15:31; 15:36; 15:39; 15:40; 16:29; 17:8; 17:9; 17:11; 19:2; 19:3; 20:8; 20:9; 20:11; 20:16; 20:20; 20:27; 21:23; 21:33; 22:36; 26:4; 26:7; 26:51; 26:54; 26:57; 26:62; 26:63; 26:64; 27:11; 27:16; 27:19; 27:22; 27:23; 28:2; 29:40; 30:1; 30:16; 31:7; 31:13; 31:14; 31:21; 31:31; 31:41; 31:47; 31:49; 32:25; 32:28; 34:2; 34:4; 34:9; 34:13; 34:29; 35:2; 36:2; 36:5; 36:6; 36:10; 36:13)

## confess, confession

### Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: [faith](#), [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 2 John 01:7-8
- James 05:16
- Leviticus 05:5-6
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Nehemiah 01:6-7
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 038:17-18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3034, H8426, G1843, G3670, G3671

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:7](#))

# confirm, confirmation, legal

## Definition:

The term "confirm" refers to verifying that something is true or legally certifying that a transaction has occurred.

- When a king is "confirmed" it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to verify that what was written is true.
- The "confirmation" of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath "as confirmation" means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate "confirm" could include, "state as true" or "prove to be trustworthy" or "agree with" or "assure" or "promise," depending on the context.

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [trust](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
- 2 Corinthians 01:21
- 2 Kings 23:3
- Hebrews 06:16-18

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G950, G951, G3315, G4972

(Go back to: [Numbers 7:1](#))

## consecrate, consecrated, consecration

### Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or to “make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: [holy](#), [pure](#), sanctify)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 04:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 44:19

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G1457, G5048

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:13](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [8:17](#); [11:18](#); [16:37](#); [18:14](#))

## consume, devour

### Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

### Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as, “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as, “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: [devour](#), [wrath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 07:16
- Jeremiah 03:23-25
- Job 07:09
- Numbers 11:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H398, H402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H4529, H5595, H8046, H8552, G355, G2618, G2654, G2719, G5315

(Go back to: [Numbers 7:1](#); [25:11](#))

## covenant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "covenant" refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 09:12
- Genesis 17:07
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12

- Mark 14:24
- Luke 01:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 07:08
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 03:06
- Galatians 03:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:05** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

(Go back to: [Numbers 10:33](#); [14:44](#); [18:19](#); [25:12](#); [25:13](#))



## covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love

### Definition:

In biblical times, the term translated as "covenant faithfulness" was used to describe the kind of faithfulness, loyalty, kindness, and love that was both expected and demonstrated between people who were closely related to one another, either by marriage or by blood. This same term is used often in the Bible to describe the way God relates to his people, especially his commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to them.

- The way this term is translated can depend on how each of the individual terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term might include: "faithful love;" "loyal, committed love;" or "loving dependability."

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), [grace](#), [Israel](#), [people of God](#), [promise](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezra 03:11
- Numbers 14:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2617

(Go back to: [Numbers 14:18](#); [14:19](#))

## cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

### Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [yoke](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 01:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:03
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 01:09
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:05
- Hebrews 09:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H504, H929, H1165, H1241, H1241, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H5697, H6499, H6499, H6510, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8377, H8450, H8450, G1016, G1151, G2353, G2934, G3447, G3448, G4165, G5022, G5022

(Go back to: [Numbers 7:3; 7:15; 7:17; 7:21; 7:23; 7:27; 7:29; 7:33; 7:35; 7:39; 7:41; 7:45; 7:47; 7:51; 7:53; 7:57; 7:59; 7:63; 7:65; 7:69; 7:71; 7:75; 7:77; 7:81; 7:83; 7:87; 7:88; 8:8; 15:8; 15:24; 22:40; 23:1; 23:2; 23:4; 23:14; 23:29; 23:30; 28:11; 28:19; 28:27; 29:2; 29:8; 29:13; 29:14; 29:17; 29:20; 29:23; 29:26; 29:29; 29:32; 29:36](#))

## curse, cursed, cursing

### Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as, "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as, "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as, "The soil will not be very fertile."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10
- Galatians 03:14
- Genesis 03:14
- Genesis 03:17
- James 03:10
- Numbers 22:06
- Psalms 109:28

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed!**"
- **02:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **04:04** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:07** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672, G6035

(Go back to: [Numbers 22 General Notes](#); [22:6](#); [22:12](#); [Notes](#); [23:7](#); [Notes](#); [24:9](#))

## cut off

### Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as, to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:06
- Proverbs 23:18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G609, G851, G1581

(Go back to: [Numbers 4:18](#); [9:13](#); [11:33](#); [13:23](#); [13:24](#); [15:30](#); [15:31](#); [19:13](#); [19:20](#))

## declare, proclaim, announce

### Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [preach](#), decree)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 02:16
- Ezekiel 05:11-12
- Matthew 07:21-23

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H262, H559, H816, H874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G518, G669, G1229, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1834, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G3140, G3670, G3724, G3822, G3870, G3955, G4296

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:3](#); [11:34](#); [12:5](#); [13:16](#); [21:3](#); [25:2](#); [32:38](#); [32:41](#); [32:42](#))

# dedicate, dedication, established, devoted

## Definition:

To dedicate is to set apart or commit something for a special purpose or function.

- David dedicated his gold and silver to the Lord.
- Often the word “dedication” refers to a formal event or ceremony to set apart something for a special purpose.
- The dedication of the altar included offering a sacrifice to God.
- Nehemiah led the Israelites in a dedication of Jerusalem’s repaired walls with a renewed promise to serve only Yahweh and to take care of his city. This event included giving thanks to God with musical instruments and singing.
- The term “dedicate” could also be translated as “specially assign a special purpose” or “commit something to be used for a specific use” or “commit someone to do a special task.”

(See also: commit)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:11-12
- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- 1 Kings 07:51
- 1 Timothy 04:05
- 2 Chronicles 02:4-5
- John 17:18-19
- Luke 02:22-24

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2596, H2597, H2598, H2764, H4394, H6942, H6944, G1456, G1457

(Go back to: [Numbers 7:10](#); [7:84](#); [7:88](#))

# delight

## Definition:

The term "delight" means great pleasure or great joy.

- To "delight in" something means to "to take pleasure in" or "take joy in" or "be happy about" it. If a person "delights in" something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called "delightful."
- The expression "my delight is in the law of Yahweh" could be translated as "the law of Yahweh gives me great joy" or "I love to obey the laws of Yahweh" or "I am happy when I obey Yahweh's commands."
- The phrases "take no delight in" and "have no delight in" could be translated as "not at all pleased by" or "not happy about."
- The phrase "delight himself in" means "he enjoys doing" something or "he is very happy about" something or someone.
- The term "delights" refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as "pleasures" or "things that give joy."
- An expression such as "I delight to do your will" could also be translated as "I enjoy doing your will" or "I am very happy when I obey you."

## Bible References:

- Proverbs 08:30
- Psalm 001:02
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Solomon 01:03

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H4574, H5276, H5727, H5730, H6026, H6027, H7306, H7381, H7521, H7522, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597

(Go back to: [Numbers 14:8](#))

## deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

### Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), save)

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:10
- Acts 07:35
- Galatians 01:04
- Judges 10:12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:03** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G325, G525, G629, G1080, G1325, G1560, G1659, G1807, G1929, G2673, G3086, G3860, G4506, G4991, G5088, G5483

(Go back to: [Numbers 10:9](#); [35:25](#))



## descend, descendant

### Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person's descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob's descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: Abraham, [ancestor](#), [Jacob](#), Noah, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 02:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** “The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- **04:09** “I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- **05:10** “Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- **17:07** “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants**!”
- **18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**.
- **48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G4690

(Go back to: [Numbers 16:40](#))

## desert, wilderness

### Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

### Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 04:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 03:14
- Luke 01:80
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 01:03
- Matthew 04:01
- Matthew 11:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:1](#); [1:19](#); [3:4](#); [3:14](#); [9:1](#); [9:5](#); [10:12](#); [10:31](#); [12:16](#); [14:2](#); [14:16](#); [14:29](#); [14:32](#); [14:33](#); [14:35](#); [15:32](#); [16:13](#); [21:5](#); [21:11](#); [21:13](#); [26:64](#); [26:65](#); [27:3](#); [27:14](#); [32:13](#); [32:15](#); [33:8](#); [33:11](#); [33:15](#); [33:36](#))

# destroy, destruction, annihilate

## Definition:

The term "destroy" means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term "destroyer" means, "a person who destroys."
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as "the destroyer of the firstborn." This could be translated as "the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males."
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called "the Destroyer." He is the "one who destroys" because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: angel, [Egypt](#), [firstborn](#), [Passover](#))

## Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 06:26
- Judges 16:24

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H622, H398, H1104, H1197, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2000, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H4191, H4229, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5595, H5642, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7667, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8316, H8552, G355, G396, G622, G853, G1311, G1842, G2049, G2506, G2507, G2647, G2673, G2704, G3089, G3645, G4199, G5351, G5356

(Go back to: [Numbers 16:33](#); [21:2](#); [21:3](#); [24:19](#); [33:52](#))

# devour

## Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

## Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:08
- Amos 01:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 021:09

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:3](#); [6:4](#); [9:11](#); [11:1](#); [11:4](#); [11:5](#); [11:13](#); [11:18](#); [11:19](#); [11:21](#); [12:12](#); [13:32](#); [16:35](#); [18:10](#); [18:11](#); [18:13](#); [18:31](#); [21:28](#); [23:24](#); [24:8](#); [25:2](#); [28:17](#))

# die, dead, deadly, death,

## Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

### 1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

### 2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

## Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "eternal death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: believe, [faith](#), [life](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 02:15
- Colossians 02:20
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 05:10
- Romans 05:12
- Romans 06:10

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:4](#); [4:15](#); [4:20](#); [11:15](#); [14:15](#); [14:37](#); [15:36](#); [16:13](#); [16:48](#); [16:49](#); [18:22](#); [20:1](#); [20:4](#); [20:26](#); [20:28](#); [21:5](#); [21:6](#); [22:29](#); [22:33](#); [25:5](#); [25:9](#); [26:19](#); [26:61](#); [31:8](#); [31:17](#); [31:19](#); [33:38](#); [35:16](#); [35:17](#); [35:18](#); [35:20](#); [35:21](#); [35:23](#); [35:30](#); [35:31](#))

# dominion

## Definition:

The term "dominion" refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan's dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ's death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "authority" or "power" or "control."
- The phrase "have dominion over" could be translated as "rule over" or "manage."

(See also: authority, power)

## Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:10-11
- Colossians 01:13
- Jude 01:25

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G2634, G2904, G2961, G2963

(Go back to: [Numbers 24:19](#))

## donkey, mule

### Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:32-34
- 1 Samuel 09:04
- 2 Kings 04:21-22
- Deuteronomy 05:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:02

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G3678, G3688, G5268

(Go back to: [Numbers 16:15](#); [31:28](#); [31:30](#); [31:34](#); [31:39](#); [31:45](#))



## drink offering

### Definition:

A drink offering was a sacrifice to God that involved pouring wine on an altar. It was often offered together with a burnt offering and a grain offering.

- Paul refers to his life as being poured out like a drink offering. This means that he was totally dedicated to serving God and telling people about Jesus, even though he knew he would suffer and probably be killed because of that.
- Jesus' death on the cross was the ultimate drink offering, as his blood was poured out on the cross for our sins.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Another way to translate this term could be "offering of grape wine."
- When Paul says he is being "poured out like an offering" this could also be translated as "I am completely committed to teaching God's message to people, just like an offering of wine is poured out completely on the altar."

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [grain offering](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 25:29
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Genesis 35:14
- Jeremiah 07:16-18
- Numbers 05:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5257, H5261, H5262

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:15](#); [15:24](#); [28:7](#); [28:9](#); [28:10](#); [28:14](#); [28:15](#); [28:24](#); [28:31](#); [29:6](#); [29:11](#); [29:16](#); [29:18](#); [29:19](#); [29:21](#); [29:22](#); [29:24](#); [29:25](#); [29:27](#); [29:28](#); [29:30](#); [29:31](#); [29:33](#); [29:34](#); [29:37](#); [29:38](#))

# earth, earthen, earthly

## Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [metonymy](#))
- The expressions “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

## Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), world)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 06:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 06:05

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G4578, G5517

(Go back to: [Numbers 9:14; 10:30; 11:31; 13:2; 13:16; 13:17; 13:18; 13:19; 13:20; 13:21; 13:25; 13:26; 13:27; 13:32; 14:3; 14:6; 14:7; 14:8; 14:9; 14:14; 14:16; 14:21; 14:23; 14:24; 14:30; 14:31; 14:34; 14:36; 14:37; 14:38; 15:2; 15:18; 15:19; 16:14; 16:32; 16:33; 16:34; 20:12; 20:23; 20:24; 21:4; 21:24; 21:26; 21:34; 21:35; 22:5; 22:6; 22:11; 22:13; 26:10; 26:53; 26:55; 27:12; 32:1; 32:4; 32:5; 32:7; 32:8; 32:9; 32:17; 32:22; 32:29; 32:32; 32:33; 33:37; 33:51; 33:52; 33:53; 33:54; 33:55; 34:2; 34:12; 34:13; 34:17; 34:18; 35:10; 35:28; 35:33; 35:34; 36:2](#))

# Egypt, Egyptian

## Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as "Egypt" and "Pathros" in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel's patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

## Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:7-9
- Acts 07:10
- Exodus 03:07
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 02:15

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **08:08** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **08:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to *\_Egypt\_* to buy food.
- **08:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **09:01** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:1](#); [3:13](#); [8:17](#); [9:1](#); [11:5](#); [11:18](#); [11:20](#); [13:22](#); [14:2](#); [14:3](#); [14:4](#); [14:19](#); [14:22](#); [15:41](#); [20:5](#); [20:15](#); [20:16](#); [21:5](#); [22:5](#); [22:11](#); [23:22](#); [24:8](#); [26:4](#); [26:59](#); [32:11](#); [33:1](#); [33:38](#); [34:5](#))

## elder, older, old

### Definition:

The term "elder" or "older" refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish "elders" continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian "elders" gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:16](#); [11:25](#); [16:25](#); [22:4](#); [22:7](#))

## Ephraim, Ephraimite

### Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to “the hill country of Ephraim” or “the mountains of Ephraim.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:16
- Genesis 41:52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H669, H673, G2187

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:32](#); [1:33](#); [2:18](#); [2:24](#); [7:48](#); [10:22](#); [13:8](#); [26:35](#); [26:37](#); [34:24](#))

## evil, wicked, unpleasant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [good](#), righteous, demon)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:1](#); [11:15](#); [13:19](#); [14:27](#); [14:35](#); [14:37](#); [20:5](#); [24:13](#); [32:13](#); [35:23](#))

# ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

## Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), shepherd)

## Bible References:

- Acts 08:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 02:14
- Luke 15:05
- Mark 06:34
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:8; 7:15; 7:17; 7:21; 7:23; 7:27; 7:29; 7:33; 7:35; 7:39; 7:41; 7:45; 7:47; 7:51; 7:53; 7:57; 7:59; 7:63; 7:65; 7:69; 7:71; 7:75; 7:77; 7:81; 7:83; 7:87; 7:88; 15:3; 23:1; 23:29; 28:27; 29:2; 29:8; 29:13; 29:17; 29:20; 29:23; 29:26; 29:29; 29:32; 29:36; 31:28; 31:30; 31:36; 31:37; 31:43](#))



## exalt, exalted, exaltation

### Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: praise, [worship](#), [glory](#), boast, [proud](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 05:31
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 018:46

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G1869, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

(Go back to: [Numbers 16:37](#); [18:26](#); [20:11](#); [24:7](#); [31:28](#))

## face, facial

### Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:04
- Genesis 33:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:4](#); [6:25](#); [6:26](#); [8:2](#); [8:3](#); [11:31](#); [12:3](#); [14:5](#); [16:4](#); [16:22](#); [16:43](#); [16:45](#); [19:4](#); [19:16](#); [20:6](#); [20:10](#); [21:11](#); [21:20](#); [23:28](#); [24:1](#); [33:7](#))

# faith

## Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

## Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: believe, [faithful](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:07
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:20

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **31:07** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”
- **38:09** Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

(Go back to: [Numbers 13 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

## faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

### Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”
- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: adultery, believe, disobey, [faith](#), believe)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:07
- Joshua 02:14
- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:07
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 01:07
- 1 Thessalonians 05:24
- 3 John 01:05

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!'"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

(Go back to: [Numbers 12:7](#); [14:11](#); [20:12](#); [Notes](#))

## family, household

### Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. In the Bible, this term sometimes includes other close relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- In biblical times, usually the oldest man was the major authority of a family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The New Testament often uses terms related to the concept of “family” to refer to the Church, meaning people who believe in Jesus.

(See also: [clan](#), [ancestor](#), [house](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:18
- Exodus 01:21
- Joshua 02:12-13
- Luke 02:04

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:18; 3:20; 3:21; 3:23; 3:27; 3:29; 3:33; 4:18; 4:24; 4:28; 4:33; 4:37; 4:41; 4:42; 4:45; 26:5; 26:6; 26:7; 26:12; 26:13; 26:14; 26:15; 26:16; 26:17; 26:18; 26:20; 26:21; 26:22; 26:23; 26:24; 26:25; 26:26; 26:27; 26:29; 26:30; 26:31; 26:32; 26:34; 26:35; 26:36; 26:37; 26:38; 26:39; 26:40; 26:42; 26:43; 26:44; 26:45; 26:47; 26:48; 26:49; 26:50; 26:57; 26:58; 27:4; 27:11; 36:1; 36:8; 36:12](#))

## favor, favorable, favoritism

### Definition:

The term “favor” generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
- The term “favoritism” means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include “approval” or “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means to prefer above all others.

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:07
- 2 Corinthians 01:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:05

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7521, H7522, H7965, G1184, G3685, G4380, G4382, G5485, G5486

(Go back to: [Numbers 10:32](#); [11:11](#); [11:15](#); [32:5](#))

## fear, afraid, dread

### Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king. The term "dread" refers to extreme or intense fear.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect;" or "deep respect;" "revere;" or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or, "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or, "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: marvel, awe, [Lord](#), power, [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- Acts 02:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14
- Jonah 01:09
- Luke 12:05
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

(Go back to: [Numbers 12:8](#); [14:9](#); [21:34](#))



## feast, feasting

### Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 01:12-13
- Luke 02:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G1062, G1173, G1859, G2165, G4910

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:1; 2:2; 2:17; 3:7; 3:8; 3:25; 3:38; 4:3; 4:4; 4:15; 4:23; 4:25; 4:28; 4:30; 4:31; 4:33; 4:35; 4:37; 4:39; 4:41; 4:43; 4:47; 6:10; 6:13; 6:18; 7:5; 7:89; 8:9; 8:15; 8:19; 8:22; 8:24; 8:26; 10:3; 11:16; 12:4; 14:10; 16:2; 16:18; 16:19; 16:42; 16:43; 16:50; 17:4; 18:4; 18:6; 18:21; 18:22; 18:23; 18:31; 19:4; 20:6; 25:6; 27:2; 28:17; 29:12; 31:54](#))

# fig

## Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

## Bible References:

- Habakkuk 03:17
- James 03:12
- Luke 13:07
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 07:17
- Matthew 21:18

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

(Go back to: [Numbers 20:5](#))

## fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

### Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: [pure](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:08
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:06
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:12
- Nehemiah 01:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:4](#); [6:18](#); [9:15](#); [9:16](#); [11:1](#); [11:2](#); [11:3](#); [14:14](#); [16:7](#); [16:18](#); [16:35](#); [16:37](#); [16:46](#); [18:9](#); [21:28](#); [26:10](#); [26:61](#); [31:10](#); [31:23](#))

## firstborn

### Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: [inherit](#), [sacrifice](#), [son](#))

### Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:33
- Luke 02:6-7
- Revelation 01:05

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G4416, G5207

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:20](#); [3:12](#); [3:13](#); [3:40](#); [3:41](#); [3:42](#); [3:43](#); [3:45](#); [3:50](#); [8:16](#); [8:17](#); [8:18](#); [18:15](#); [18:17](#); [26:5](#); [33:4](#))

## firstfruits

### Definition:

The term “firstfruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “firstfruits” of all believers in him, believers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “firstfruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: [firstborn](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13
- Exodus 23:16-17
- James 01:18
- Jeremiah 02:03
- Psalms 105:36

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H6529, H7225, G536

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:20](#); [15:20](#); [18:12](#); [18:13](#); [24:20](#); [Notes](#))

# flesh

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

## Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

## Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 John 01:07
- Ephesians 06:12
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 02:24
- John 01:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 08:08

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

(Go back to: [Numbers 8:7](#); [11:4](#); [11:13](#); [11:18](#); [11:21](#); [12:12](#); [16:22](#); [18:15](#); [19:5](#); [19:7](#); [19:8](#); [27:16](#))

## flock, herd

### Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both sheep and cattle, then you may need to say "groups of sheep" where the Bible says only “flocks,” and "groups of cattle" where the Bible says only “herds.”

(See also: goat, [cow](#), pig, [sheep](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 02:8-9
- Matthew 08:30
- Matthew 26:31

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G34, G4167, G4168

(Go back to: [Numbers 22:40](#); [31:32](#); [32:16](#); [32:36](#))

## **forsake, forsaken, leave**

### **Definition:**

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 06:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 071:18

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G646, G657, G863, G1459, G2641,

(Go back to: [Numbers 10:31](#))



## fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

### Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces--”that is children.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural, “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), [grape](#), Holy Spirit, [vine](#), womb)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 01:11
- Luke 08:15
- Matthew 03:08
- Matthew 07:17

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:26](#); [13:27](#))

# Gad

## Facts:

Gad was one of the sons of Jacob. Jacob was also named Isreal.

- Gad's family became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.
- The names of the cities Baalgad and Migdalgad are each two words in the original text and are sometimes written "Baal Gad" and "Migdal Gad."

(Translation suggestions:[How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [census](#), [prophet](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:18
- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 30:11
- Joshua 01:12
- Joshua 21:38

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1410, H1425, G1045

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:24; 1:25; 2:14; 7:42; 10:20; 13:15; 26:15; 26:18; 32:1; 32:2; 32:6; 32:25; 32:29; 32:31; 32:33; 32:34; 33:45; 33:46](#))

## gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

### Definition:

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the gate cannot be opened from the outside.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 09:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:01
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 07:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4439, G4440

(Go back to: [Numbers 4:26](#))

# generation

## Definition:

The term “generation” generally refers to a group of people who are all alive at the same time. They are all born in the same general time period and are therefore about the same age.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

## Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [evil](#), [ancestor](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 03:13-15
- Genesis 15:16
- Genesis 17:07
- Mark 08:12
- Matthew 11:16
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1755, H1859, H8435, G1074

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:20](#); [1:22](#); [1:24](#); [1:26](#); [1:28](#); [1:30](#); [1:32](#); [1:34](#); [1:36](#); [1:38](#); [1:40](#); [1:42](#); [3:1](#); [9:10](#); [10:8](#); [15:14](#); [15:15](#); [15:21](#); [15:23](#); [15:38](#); [18:23](#); [35:29](#))

## Gilead, Gileadite

### Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), Jephthah, Manasseh, [Reuben](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:22
- 1 Samuel 11:01
- Amos 01:03
- Deuteronomy 02:36-37
- Genesis 31:21
- Genesis 37:25-26

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1568, H1569

(Go back to: [Numbers 26:29](#); [32:26](#); [32:29](#); [32:40](#))

## **gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around**

### **Definition:**

The term “gird” means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to using a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The common biblical phrase, “gird up the loins” refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean “get ready to work” or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The expression “gird up the loins” could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated figuratively as “prepare yourself for action” or “get yourself ready.”
- The term “girded with” could be translated as “encircled by” or wrapped with” or “belted with.”

(See also: loins)

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Peter 01:13
- Job 38:03

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H640, H247, H2290, H2296, H8151, G328, G1241, G4024

(Go back to: [Numbers 30:4](#); [30:5](#); [30:6](#); [30:7](#); [30:8](#); [30:9](#); [30:10](#); [30:11](#))

## **glean, gleanings**

### **Definition:**

The term “glean” means to go through a field or orchard and pick up whatever grain or fruit the harvesters have left behind.

- God commanded the Israelites to let the widows, poor people, and foreigners glean the leftover grain in order to provide food for themselves.
- Sometimes the owner of the field would allow the gleaners to go directly behind the harvesters to glean, which enabled them to glean much more of the grain. A clear example of how this worked is in the story of Ruth, who was generously allowed to glean among the harvesters in the fields of her relative Boaz.
- Other ways to translate “glean” can be “pick up” or “gather” or “collect.”

(See also: Boaz, [grain](#), harvest, Ruth)

### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 24:21-22
- Isaiah 17:4-5
- Job 24:06
- Ruth 02:02
- Ruth 02:15

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3950, H3951, H5953, H5955

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:8](#))



## glory, glorious, glorify

### Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God's character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

### Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh's presence in a particular location.

### New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God's greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God's greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: honor, majesty, [exalt](#), obey, praise)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:02
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 02:09
- John 12:28

- Acts 03:13-14
- Acts 07:1-3
- Romans 08:17
- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 04:19
- Colossians 03:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:05
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 04:15-16
- Revelation 15:04

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glor**y to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glor**y and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glor**y of God.”
- **37:08** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glor**y if you believe in me?”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2744, G4888

(Go back to: [Numbers 14:21](#); [14:22](#); [16:19](#); [16:42](#); [20:6](#))

# God

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”  
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: create, [false god](#), God the Father, Holy Spirit, [false god](#), Son of God, [Yahweh](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:7](#); [10:9](#); [10:10](#); [15:40](#); [15:41](#); [16:9](#); [16:22](#); [21:5](#); [22:9](#); [22:10](#); [22:12](#); [22:18](#); [22:20](#); [22:22](#); [22:38](#); [23:4](#); [23:21](#); [23:27](#); [24:2](#); [25:2](#); [25:13](#); [27:16](#))

## god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

### Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 35:02
- Exodus 32:01
- Psalms 031:06
- Psalms 081:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 07:41
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 02:22
- Galatians 04:8-9
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 01:09

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H367, H410, H426, H430, H457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G1493, G1494, G1495, G1496, G1497, G2299, G2712

(Go back to: [Numbers 15 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

## gold, golden

### Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), ark of the covenant, [false god](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:07
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:15
- Acts 03:06
- Daniel 02:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

(Go back to: [Numbers 4:11](#); [7:14](#); [7:20](#); [7:26](#); [7:32](#); [7:38](#); [7:44](#); [7:50](#); [7:56](#); [7:62](#); [7:68](#); [7:74](#); [7:80](#); [7:84](#); [7:86](#); [8:4](#); [22:18](#); [24:13](#); [31:22](#); [31:50](#); [31:51](#); [31:52](#); [31:54](#))

# good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

## Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [holy](#), profit, righteous)

## Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- **01:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **08:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.



- **28:01** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

(Go back to: [Numbers 10:29](#); [14:3](#); [14:7](#); [24:13](#))

## grace, gracious

### Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 04:33
- Acts 06:08
- Acts 14:04
- Colossians 04:06
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:07
- John 01:16
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G2143, G5485, G5543

(Go back to: [Numbers 27 General Notes](#))

## grain offering

### Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), guilt offering, [sacrifice](#), sin offering)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19
- Leviticus 02:02

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

(Go back to: [Numbers 4:16](#); [5:15](#); [5:18](#); [5:25](#); [5:26](#); [6:15](#); [6:17](#); [7:87](#); [8:8](#); [15:4](#); [15:6](#); [15:9](#); [15:24](#); [16:15](#); [18:9](#); [28:9](#); [28:12](#); [28:13](#); [28:20](#); [28:26](#); [28:28](#); [28:31](#); [29:3](#); [29:6](#); [29:9](#); [29:11](#); [29:14](#); [29:16](#); [29:18](#); [29:19](#); [29:21](#); [29:22](#); [29:24](#); [29:25](#); [29:27](#); [29:28](#); [29:30](#); [29:31](#); [29:33](#); [29:34](#); [29:37](#); [29:38](#))

## grain, grainfields

### Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), wheat)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 42:03
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 06:02
- Mark 02:24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 01:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G248, G2590, G3450, G4621, G4719

(Go back to: [Numbers 18:12](#))

## grape, grapevine

### Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called "raisins" and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God's kingdom.

(See also: [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [wine](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 23:24
- Hosea 09:10
- Job 15:33
- Luke 06:43-44
- Matthew 07:15-17
- Matthew 21:33

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H811, H891, H1154, H1155, H1210, H3196, H5955, H6025, H6528, G288, G4718

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:3](#); [13:20](#); [13:23](#))

# hand

## Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. In the Bible, this term is associated with a person's power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
- To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

## Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [bless](#), [captive](#), honor, power)

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G5495, G5496, G5497

(Go back to: Numbers 2:17; 3:3; 4:28; 4:33; 4:37; 4:45; 4:49; 5:18; 5:25; 6:19; 6:21; 7:8; 7:14; 7:20; 7:26; 7:32; 7:38; 7:44; 7:50; 7:56; 7:62; 7:68; 7:74; 7:80; 7:84; 7:86; 8:10; 8:12; 9:23; 10:13; 13:29; 14:30; 15:23; 15:30; 16:40; 20:11; 20:20; 21:2; 21:26; 21:34; 22:7; 22:23; 22:29; 22:31; 24:10; 24:24; 25:7; 27:18; 27:23; 31:6; 31:49; 33:1; 33:3; 34:3; 35:17; 35:18; 35:21; 35:25; 36:13)

# head

## Definition:

The word "head" refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including "top," "first," "beginning," "source," and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term "head" include:

- The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression "head of a mountain" refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term "head" refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase "You have made me the head over nations" means "You have made me the ruler..." or "You have given me authority over...."

## Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "authority" or "ruler" or "the one who is responsible for."
- The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include "top" or "beginning" or "source" or "leader."

(See also: [grain](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10
- Colossians 02:19
- Numbers 01:04

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:2; 1:4; 1:16; 1:49; 4:2; 4:22; 5:7; 5:18; 6:5; 6:7; 6:9; 6:11; 6:18; 7:2; 8:12; 10:4; 13:3; 14:4; 14:40; 14:44; 20:28; 21:20; 23:9; 23:14; 23:28; 25:4; 25:15; 26:2; 30:1; 31:26; 31:49; 32:28; 36:1](#))



# heart

## Definition:

The term "heart" refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

## Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires."
- Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
- The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
- The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
- Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: hard)

## Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G674, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

(Go back to: [Numbers 15:39](#); [16:28](#); [16:38](#); [19:13](#); [24:13](#); [32:7](#); [32:9](#); [35:30](#))

## holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

### Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was often used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, [consecrate](#), sanctify, [set apart](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 03:02
- Lamentations 04:01
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38

- Acts 07:33
- Acts 11:08
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 01:22
- 1 Thessalonians 03:13
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **09:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:01** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:05** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:05** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

(Go back to: Numbers 3:28; 3:31; 3:32; 3:47; 3:50; 4:4; 4:15; 4:19; 4:20; 5:9; 5:10; 5:17; 6:5; 6:8; 6:20; 7:9; 7:13; 7:19; 7:25; 7:31; 7:37; 7:43; 7:49; 7:55; 7:61; 7:67; 7:73; 7:79; 7:85; 7:86; 8:19; 15:40; 16:3; 18:3; 18:5; 18:8; 18:9; 18:10; 18:16; 18:17; 18:19; 18:32; 28:18; 28:25; 28:26; 29:1; 29:7; 29:12; 31:6; 35:25)

## honey, honeycomb

### Definition:

“Honey” is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God’s words and decrees are said to be “sweeter than honey.” (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person’s words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), Jonathan, Philistines, Samson)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 06:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 05:06
- Proverbs 05:03

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G3192

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:27](#); [14:8](#); [16:13](#); [16:14](#))

# house

## Definition:

The term "house" refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as "household" or "descendants," etc.

- Sometimes the term "house" means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Sometimes the term "house" means "family" or "descendants," referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase "house of Israel" can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

## Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshipped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells." The phrase "house of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: David, [descendant](#), house of God, household, kingdom of Israel, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 07:49
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 08:39
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 15:24

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:2; 1:4; 1:18; 1:20; 1:22; 1:24; 1:26; 1:28; 1:30; 1:32; 1:34; 1:36; 1:38; 1:40; 1:42; 1:44; 1:45; 2:2; 2:32; 2:34; 3:15; 3:20; 3:24; 3:30; 3:35; 4:2; 4:22; 4:29; 4:40; 4:42; 7:2; 12:7; 16:32; 17:2; 17:3; 17:6; 17:8; 18:1; 18:31; 20:29; 22:18; 24:13; 25:14; 25:15; 26:2; 30:10; 30:16; 32:18; 34:14](#))

## humble, humbled, humility

### Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: [proud](#))

### Bible References:

- James 01:21
- James 03:13
- James 04:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:04
- Matthew 23:12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **34:10** “God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G858, G4236, G4239, G4240, G5011, G5012, G5013, G5391

(Go back to: [Numbers 30:13](#))

## inherit, inheritance, heir

### Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after the parent(s) die. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An "inheritance" is the thing(s) that is received, and an "heir" is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
- Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
- The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions."
- The term "heritage" could be translated as "inherited blessings."

(See also: heir, [Canaan](#), [Promised Land](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- 1 Peter 01:04
- 2 Samuel 21:03
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 05:21
- Genesis 15:07
- Hebrews 09:15
- Jeremiah 02:07
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 079:01

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

(Go back to: Numbers 13:30; 14:12; 16:14; 18:20; 18:23; 18:24; 18:26; 21:24; 21:32; 21:35; 26:53; 26:54; 26:55; 26:56; 26:62; 27:7; 27:8; 27:9; 27:10; 27:11; 32:18; 32:19; 32:32; 32:39; 33:52; 33:53; 33:54; Notes; 34:2; 34:13; 34:14; 34:15; 34:17; 35:8; Notes; 36:2; 36:3; 36:4; 36:7; 36:8; 36:9; 36:12)



# iniquity

## Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), [transgress](#), trespass)

## Bible References:

- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 02:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 03:10

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:15](#); [5:31](#); [14:18](#); [14:34](#); [15:31](#); [18:1](#); [18:23](#); [30:15](#))

# innocent

## Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”
- In the Bible, “blood” can represent “killing,” so “innocent blood” refers to “killing people who did not deserve to die.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- “To shed innocent blood” can be translated as “to kill people who did not deserve to die.”

(See also: guilt)

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:04
- 1 Samuel 19:05
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:07
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 09:23
- Romans 16:18

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:04** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**.”
- **40:08** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, “Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G121

(Go back to: [Numbers 32:22](#))

## Israel, Israelite, Jacob

### Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), deceive, Esau, Isaac, [Israel](#), Rebekah, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:11
- Acts 07:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 04:4-5
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:01** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **07:07** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **07:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **08:01** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G2384

(Go back to: [Numbers 23:7](#); [23:10](#); [24:5](#))

## Israel, Israelites

### Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. The name means "he struggles with God."

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:01
- 1 Kings 08:02
- Acts 02:36
- Acts 07:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 27:09
- Philippians 03:4-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:01** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *Israel* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave Israel* peace along all its borders.
- **16:16** So God punished *Israel* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:06** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:2; 1:3; 1:16; 1:20; 1:44; 1:45; 1:49; 1:52; 1:53; 1:54; 2:2; 2:32; 2:33; 2:34; 3:8; 3:9; 3:12; 3:13; 3:38; 3:40; 3:41; 3:42; 3:45; 3:46; 3:50; 4:46; 5:2; 5:4; 5:6; 5:9; 5:12; 6:2; 6:23; 6:27; 7:2; 7:84; 8:6; 8:9; 8:10; 8:11; 8:14; 8:16; 8:17; 8:18; 8:19; 8:20; 9:2; 9:4; 9:5; 9:7; 9:10; 9:17; 9:18; 9:19; 9:22; 10:4; 10:12; 10:28; 10:29; 10:36; 11:4; 11:16; 11:30; 13:2; 13:3; 13:24; 13:26; 13:32; 14:2; 14:5; 14:7; 14:10; 14:27; 14:39; 15:2; 15:18; 15:25; 15:26; 15:29; 15:32; 15:38; 16:2; 16:9; 16:25; 16:34; 16:38; 16:40; 16:41; 17:2; 17:5; 17:6; 17:9; 17:12; 18:5; 18:6; 18:8; 18:11; 18:14; 18:19;](#)

18:20; 18:21; 18:22; 18:23; 18:24; 18:26; 18:28; 18:32; 19:2; 19:9; 19:10; 19:13; 20:1; 20:12; 20:13; 20:14; 20:19; 20:21; 20:22; 20:24; 20:29; 21:1; 21:2; 21:3; 21:6; 21:10; 21:17; 21:21; 21:23; 21:24; 21:25; 21:31; 22:1; 22:2; 22:3; 23:7; 23:10; 23:21; 23:23; 24:1; 24:2; 24:5; 24:17; 25:1; 25:3; 25:4; 25:5; 25:6; 25:8; 25:11; 25:13; 25:14; 26:2; 26:4; 26:5; 26:51; 26:62; 26:63; 26:64; 27:8; 27:11; 27:12; 27:20; 27:21; 28:2; 29:40; 30:1; 31:2; 31:4; 31:5; 31:9; 31:12; 31:16; 31:30; 31:42; 31:47; 31:54; 32:4; 32:7; 32:9; 32:13; 32:14; 32:17; 32:18; 32:22; 32:28; 33:1; 33:3; 33:5; 33:38; 33:40; 33:51; 34:2; 34:13; 34:29; 35:2; 35:8; 35:10; 35:15; 35:34; 36:1; 36:2; 36:3; 36:4; 36:5; 36:7; 36:8; 36:9; 36:13)

## jealous, jealousy

### Definition:

The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

- These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God’s strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is also “jealous” for his name, desiring that it be treated with honor and reverence.
- Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word “envious.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “jealous” could include “strong protective desire” or “possessive desire.”
- The term “jealousy” could be translated as “strong protective feeling” or “possessive feeling.”
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
- In the context of people’s wrong feelings of anger toward other people who are more successful, the terms “envious” and “envy” could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: envy)

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 12:20
- Deuteronomy 05:09
- Exodus 20:05
- Ezekiel 36:05
- Joshua 24:19
- Nahum 01:2-3
- Romans 13:13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7067, H7068, H7072, G2205, G3863

(Go back to: [Numbers 5 General Notes](#))

## Jebus, Jebusite

### Facts:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Ham, Jerusalem, Melchizedek)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:14
- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 10:16
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Judges 01:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2982, H2983

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:29](#))

# Jericho

## Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Jordan River](#), [Joshua](#), [miracle](#), Salt Sea)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:78
- Joshua 02:1-3
- Joshua 07:2-3
- Luke 18:35
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:01** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- **15:05** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3405, G2410

(Go back to: [Numbers 22:1](#); [26:3](#); [26:63](#); [31:12](#); [33:48](#); [33:50](#); [34:15](#); [35:1](#); [36:13](#))



## Jordan River, Jordan

### Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as “the Jordan.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), Salt Sea, Sea of Galilee)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 01:26-28
- John 03:25-26
- Luke 03:3
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 03:13-15
- Matthew 04:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:02** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G2446

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:29](#); [32:5](#); [32:19](#); [32:21](#); [32:29](#); [33:49](#); [33:51](#); [34:12](#); [35:10](#))

## Joseph (OT)

### Facts:

Joseph was the eleventh son of Jacob and the first son of his mother Rachel.

- Joseph was his father's favorite son.
- His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into slavery.
- While in Egypt, Joseph was falsely accused and put into prison.
- In spite of his difficulties, Joseph remained faithful to God.
- God brought him to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save people in a time when there was little food. The people of Egypt, as well as his own family, were kept from starving.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Jacob](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 04:4-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:02 Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **08:04** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **08:05** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **08:07** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **08:09 Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **09:02** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G2500, G2501

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:10](#); [1:32](#); [13:7](#); [13:11](#); [26:28](#); [26:37](#); [27:1](#); [32:33](#); [34:23](#); [36:1](#); [36:5](#); [36:12](#))

# Joshua

## Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Haggai](#), [Jericho](#), [Moses](#), [Promised Land](#), [Zechariah \(OT\)](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 07:25-27
- Deuteronomy 03:21
- Exodus 17:10
- Joshua 01:03
- Numbers 27:19

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:04** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **14:08** Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."
- **14:14** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.
- **14:15** **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3091, G2424

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:28](#); [13:16](#); [27:18](#); [27:22](#); [32:28](#))

## joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

### Definition:

#### joy

The term "joy" refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

#### rejoice

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." (See: [metonymy](#))

### Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7

- James 01:02
- 3 John 01:1-4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

(Go back to: [Numbers 10:10](#))

# Judah

## Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah." When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah, which includes the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem.

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), Jew, Judah, [Judea](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:09
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:02
- Luke 03:33
- Ruth 01:02

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:7](#))

# Judea

## Facts:

The term “Judea” refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes “Judea” is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province “Judah.”
- Other times “Judea” has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as “Judea Country” and the narrow sense could be translated as “Judea Province,” or “Judah Province” since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Galilee, Edom, [Judah](#), Judah, Samaria)

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- Acts 02:09
- Acts 09:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 04:44
- Luke 05:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 02:01
- Matthew 02:05
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 19:01

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G2453

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:26](#); [1:27](#); [2:3](#); [2:9](#); [7:12](#); [10:14](#); [13:6](#); [26:19](#); [26:20](#); [26:22](#); [34:19](#))

## judge, judgment

### Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, [just](#), law, [law](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17
- 1 Kings 03:09
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:14
- James 02:04
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:01

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.



**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

(Go back to: [Numbers 9:3](#); [27:5](#); [27:11](#); [35:24](#); [35:29](#))

## just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

### Definition:

"Just" and "justice" refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

The terms "unjust" and "unjustly" refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An "injustice" is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being "partial" or "prejudiced" because he is not treating people equally.

The terms "justify" and "justification" refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- "Justification" refers to what God does when he forgives a person's sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."
- Depending on the context, "unjust" could also be translated as "unfair" or "partial" or "unrighteous."
- The phrase "the unjust" could be translated as "the unjust ones" or "unjust people" or "people who treat others unfairly" or "unrighteous people" or "people who disobey God."
- The term "unjustly" could be translated as, "in an unfair manner" or "wrongly" or "unfairly."
- Ways to translate "injustice" could include, "wrong treatment" or "unfair treatment" or "acting unfairly." (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- Other ways to translate "justify" could include "declare (someone) to be righteous" or "cause (someone) to be righteous."
- The term "justification" could be translated as "being declared righteous" or "becoming righteous" or "causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "resulting in justification" could be translated as "so that God justified many people" or "which resulted in God causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "for our justification" could be translated as "in order that we could be made righteous by God."

(See also: forgive, guilt, [judge](#), righteous, righteous)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16

- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:03
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 03:8
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:03
- Luke 18:08
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:04
- Romans 04:1-3
- Galatians 03:6-9
- Galatians 03:11
- Galatians 05:3-4
- Titus 03:6-7
- Hebrews 06:10
- James 02:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G91, G93, G94, G1342, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1738

(Go back to: [Numbers 23:10](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

# king, kingdom, kingship

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), kingdom of God)

## Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:18
- 2 Samuel 05:03
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 14:09

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:06** God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

(Go back to: [Numbers 20:14](#); [20:17](#); [21:1](#); [21:21](#); [21:22](#); [21:26](#); [21:29](#); [21:33](#); [21:34](#); [22:4](#); [22:10](#); [23:7](#); [23:21](#); [24:7](#); [31:8](#); [32:33](#); [33:40](#))

# kingdom

## Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, [king](#), kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, [Judah](#), Judah, [priest](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

(Go back to: [Numbers 24:7](#); [32:33](#))

## know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Definition:

The term "know" and "knowledge" means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression "to make known" means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as "distinguish." When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition "between."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), reveal, understand, wise)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G2589, G4267, G4894

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:3; 1:20; 1:22; 1:24; 1:26; 1:28; 1:30; 1:32; 1:34; 1:36; 1:38; 1:40; 1:42; 1:45; 10:31; 11:16; 11:20; 11:26; 12:4; 12:6; 14:31; 14:34; 14:37; 15:41; 16:5; 16:27; 16:28; 16:30; 16:35; 16:46; 20:10; 20:14; 20:18; 21:28;](#)

22:5; 22:6; 22:19; 22:32; 22:34; 23:22; 24:8; 24:16; 26:2; 27:17; 27:21; 31:17; 31:18; 31:35; 32:23; 33:1; 33:3; 33:54;  
35:26)



## lamb, Lamb of God

### Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [sheep](#), shepherd)

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 12:03
- Ezra 08:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 01:29
- John 01:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:03
- Revelation 15:3-4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:07** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?”
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- **24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world.”
- **45:08** He read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.
- **48:08** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.
- **48:09** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7716, G721, G2316

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:12](#); [6:14](#); [7:15](#); [7:17](#); [7:21](#); [7:23](#); [7:27](#); [7:29](#); [7:33](#); [7:35](#); [7:39](#); [7:41](#); [7:45](#); [7:47](#); [7:51](#); [7:53](#); [7:57](#); [7:59](#); [7:63](#); [7:65](#); [7:69](#); [7:71](#); [7:75](#); [7:77](#); [7:81](#); [7:83](#); [7:87](#); [7:88](#); [28:3](#); [28:9](#); [28:11](#); [28:19](#); [28:27](#); [29:2](#); [29:8](#); [29:13](#); [29:15](#); [29:17](#); [29:20](#); [29:23](#); [29:26](#); [29:29](#); [29:32](#); [29:36](#))

## law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law

### Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms "law" and "God's law" are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).
  - all of God's instructions and will
- The phrase "the law and the prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament")

### Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws," since they refer to many instructions.
- The "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions."
- The phrase "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."

(See also: instruct, [Moses](#), Ten Commandments, lawful, [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:06
- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 03:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.\
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.\
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\
- **27:01** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"\

- **28:01** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws.**"\

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:29](#); [5:30](#); [6:13](#); [6:21](#); [15:16](#); [15:29](#); [19:2](#); [19:14](#); [31:21](#))

## Levi, Levite, Levitical

### Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: Matthew, [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 08:3-5
- Acts 04:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:32

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:47; 1:49; 1:50; 1:51; 1:53; 2:17; 2:33; 3:6; 3:9; 3:12; 3:15; 3:17; 3:20; 3:32; 3:39; 3:41; 3:45; 3:46; 3:49; 4:2; 4:18; 4:46; 7:5; 7:6; 8:6; 8:9; 8:10; 8:11; 8:12; 8:13; 8:14; 8:15; 8:18; 8:19; 8:20; 8:21; 8:22; 8:24; 8:26; 16:1; 16:7; 16:8; 16:10; 17:3; 17:8; 18:2; 18:6; 18:21; 18:23; 18:24; 18:26; 18:30; 26:57; 26:58; 26:59; 31:30; 31:47; 35:2; 35:4; 35:6; 35:7; 35:8](#))

# life, live, living, alive

## Definition:

The term "life" refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

### 1. Physical life

- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."

### 2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- The term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives" could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term "life" could be translated in the following ways: "eternal life" or "God making us alive in our spirits" or "new life by God's Spirit" or "being made alive in our inner self."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally."

(See also: [death](#), everlasting)

## Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:03
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 02:07
- Genesis 07:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:02
- John 01:04
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 07:14

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were *\_living\_* in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

(Go back to: Numbers 4:19; 6:6; 11:6; 14:21; 14:28; 14:38; 15:27; 16:30; 16:33; 16:48; 19:11; 19:17; 21:4; 22:33; 23:10; 24:23; 29:7; 30:2; 30:4; 30:5; 30:6; 30:7; 30:8; 30:9; 30:10; 30:11; 30:12; 30:13; 31:18; 31:19; 31:28; 31:35; 31:40; 31:50; 35:11; 35:15; 35:30)

## livestock, animals

### Facts:

The term “livestock” refers to animals which are raised to provide food and other useful products. Some types of livestock are also trained as work animals.

- Kinds of livestock include sheep, cattle, goats, horses, and donkeys.
- In Biblical times, wealth was partly measured by how much livestock a person had.
- Livestock are used to produce items such as wool, milk, cheese, housing materials, and clothing.
- This term could also be translated as “farm animals.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [cow](#), [ox](#), [donkey](#), goat, horse, [sheep](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 03:15-17
- Genesis 30:29
- Joshua 01:14-15
- Nehemiah 09:36-37
- Numbers 03:41

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H929, H4399, H4735

(Go back to: [Numbers 8:17](#); [18:15](#); [31:11](#); [31:26](#))



## lord, Lord, master, sir

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [ruler](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 39:02
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Lamentations 02:02
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 09:09

- Daniel 09:17-19
- Malachi 03:01
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 06:23
- Ephesians 06:9
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Colossians 03:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 02:01
- 1 Peter 01:03
- Jude 01:05
- Revelation 15:04

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:28](#); [12:11](#); [14:17](#); [16:13](#); [32:25](#); [32:27](#); [36:2](#))

## lots, casting lots

### Definition:

In the Bible, a "lot" is a marked object(s) used as a way of making a fair and/or random decision, usually for the purpose of selecting a specific person within a group. "Casting lots" refers to the process of using "lots" to make a fair and/or random decision.

- In modern times, some cultures "draw" or "pull out" lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- In biblical times, the objects cast (the "lots") were probably small marked stones. It is unknown how the "lots" actually indicated a decision, but it probably involved dropping or throwing marked stones on the ground.
- The phrase "casting lots" can be translated as "tossing lots" or "throwing lots" or "rolling lots." The translation of "cast" should not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- If a decision is made "by lot," this could be translated as "by casting lots" or "by throwing lots," etc.

(See also: Elizabeth, [priest](#), Zechariah (OT), Zechariah (NT))

### Bible References:

- Jonah 01:07
- Luke 01:8-10
- Luke 23:34
- Mark 15:22
- Matthew 27:35-37
- Psalms 022:18-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1486, H5307, G2819, G2975

(Go back to: [Numbers 26:56](#); [33:54](#))

# manna

## Definition:

Manna was a white, grain-like food that God provided for the Israelites to eat during the 40 years of living in the wilderness after they left Egypt.

- Manna looked like white flakes which appeared each morning on the ground under the dew. It tasted sweet, like honey.
- The Israelites gathered the manna flakes every day except on the Sabbath.
- On the day before the Sabbath, God told the Israelites to gather twice the amount of manna so they wouldn't have to gather it on their day of rest.
- The word "manna" means "what is it?"
- In the Bible, manna is also referred to as "bread from heaven" and "grain from heaven."

## Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could include "thin white flakes of food" or "food from heaven."
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [bread](#), [desert](#), [grain](#), heaven, [Sabbath](#))

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 08:3
- Exodus 16:27
- Hebrews 09:3-5
- John 06:30-31
- Joshua 05:12

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4478, G3131

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:6](#); [11:9](#))

## messenger

### Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 06:21
- 2 Kings 01:1-2
- Luke 07:27
- Matthew 11:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G32, G652

(Go back to: [Numbers 20:14](#); [20:16](#); [21:21](#); [22:5](#); [22:22](#); [22:23](#); [22:24](#); [22:25](#); [22:26](#); [22:27](#); [22:31](#); [22:32](#); [22:34](#); [22:35](#); [24:12](#))

# might, mighty, mighty works

## Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), power, [strength](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:22
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H46, H47, H117, H202, H386, H410, H430, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G1411, G1415, G1498, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3167, G3173

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:18](#); [13:28](#); [21:24](#))

## miracle, wonder, sign

### Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: power, [prophet](#), apostle, [sign](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- Acts 04:17
- Acts 04:22
- Daniel 04:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:01
- Exodus 03:19-22
- John 02:11
- Matthew 13:58

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:08** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

- **49:02** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540,, G880, G1213, G1229, G1411, G1569, G1718, G1770, G1839, G2285, G2296, G2297, G3167, G3902, G4591, G4592, G5059

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:2](#))



## Moab, Moabite

### Facts:

The term "Moab" refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendents of a man named "Moab," who was the son of Lot's elder daughter.

- In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
- Ruth is called a "Moabite woman" because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, [Judea](#), Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 19:37
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 01:1-2
- Ruth 01:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4124, H4125

(Go back to: [Numbers 21:11](#); [21:13](#); [21:15](#); [21:20](#); [21:26](#); [21:28](#); [21:29](#); [22:1](#); [22:3](#); [22:4](#); [22:7](#); [22:8](#); [22:10](#); [22:14](#); [22:21](#); [22:36](#); [23:6](#); [23:7](#); [23:17](#); [24:17](#); [25:1](#); [26:3](#); [26:63](#); [31:12](#); [33:44](#); [33:48](#); [33:49](#); [33:50](#); [35:1](#); [36:13](#))

# Moses

## Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Miriam, [Promised Land](#), Ten Commandments)

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:21
- Acts 07:30
- Exodus 02:10
- Exodus 09:01
- Matthew 17:04
- Romans 05:14

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:05** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:07** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:07** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:1; 1:17; 1:19; 1:44; 1:48; 1:54; 2:1; 2:33; 2:34; 3:1; 3:5; 3:11; 3:14; 3:16; 3:38; 3:39; 3:40; 3:42; 3:44; 3:49; 3:51; 4:1; 4:17; 4:21; 4:34; 4:37; 4:41; 4:45; 4:46; 4:49; 5:1; 5:4; 5:5; 5:11; 6:1; 6:22; 7:1; 7:4; 7:6; 7:11; 7:89; 8:1; 8:3; 8:4; 8:5; 8:20; 8:22; 8:23; 9:1; 9:4; 9:5; 9:6; 9:8; 9:9; 9:23; 10:1; 10:13; 10:29; 10:35; 11:2; 11:10; 11:11; 11:16; 11:21; 11:23; 11:24; 11:28; 11:29; 11:30; 12:3; 12:4; 12:7; 12:11; 12:13; 12:14; 13:1; 13:3; 13:16; 13:17; 13:26; 13:30; 14:2; 14:5; 14:11; 14:13; 14:26; 14:36; 14:39; 14:41; 15:1; 15:17; 15:22; 15:23; 15:33; 15:35; 15:36; 15:37; 16:2; 16:3; 16:4; 16:8; 16:12; 16:16; 16:20; 16:23; 16:25; 16:28; 16:36; 16:40; 16:41; 16:42; 16:43; 16:44; 16:46; 16:47; 16:50; 17:1; 17:6; 17:7; 17:8; 17:9; 17:10; 17:11; 17:12; 18:25; 19:1; 20:2; 20:3; 20:6; 20:7; 20:9; 20:10; 20:11; 20:12; 20:14; 20:23; 20:27; 20:28; 21:7; 21:8; 21:9; 21:32; 21:34; 25:4; 25:5; 25:6; 25:10; 25:16; 26:1; 26:3; 26:4; 26:9; 26:52; 26:59; 26:63; 26:64; 27:2; 27:5; 27:6; 27:11; 27:12; 27:15; 27:18; 27:22; 27:23; 28:1; 29:40; 30:1; 30:16; 31:1; 31:3; 31:6; 31:7; 31:12; 31:13; 31:14; 31:15; 31:21; 31:25; 31:31; 31:41; 31:42; 31:47; 31:48; 31:49; 31:51; 31:54; 32:2; 32:6; 32:20; 32:25; 32:28; 32:29; 32:33; 32:40; 33:1; 33:2; 33:50; 34:1; 34:13; 34:16; 35:1; 35:9; 36:1; 36:5; 36:10; 36:13\)](#)

## mourn, mourner, weeping

### Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 01:11
- Genesis 23:02
- Luke 07:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H56, H57, H60, H205, H578, H584, H585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H8386, G2354, G2875, G3602, G3996, G3997

(Go back to: [Numbers 14:39](#))

# name

## Definition:

The term "name" refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term "name" is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
- The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved." (See: [metonymy](#))

## Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
- Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
- The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
- The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
- The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
- The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: [call](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:2; 1:5; 1:17; 1:18; 1:20; 1:22; 1:24; 1:26; 1:28; 1:30; 1:32; 1:34; 1:36; 1:38; 1:40; 1:42; 3:2; 3:3; 3:17; 3:18; 3:40; 3:43; 6:27; 11:3; 11:26; 11:34; 13:4; 13:16; 16:2; 17:2; 17:3; 21:3; 26:53; 27:1; 27:4; 32:38; 32:42; 34:17; 34:19](#))

# nation

## Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), [Canaan](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [people group](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:06
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:05
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:04
- Daniel 03:04
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:05
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 04:16-17

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H524, H776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

(Go back to: [Numbers 14:12](#); [14:15](#); [23:9](#); [24:8](#); [24:20](#))

# Negev

## Facts:

The Negev is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The original word means “the South,” and some English versions translate it this way.
- It could be that the “South” is not located where the Negev Desert is today.
- When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negev or southern region.
- Isaac was living in the Negev when Rebekah traveled to meet him and become his wife.
- The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
- The largest city in the Negev region was Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Abraham, Beersheba, [Israel](#), [Judah](#), Kadesh, Salt Sea, Simeon)

## Bible References:

- Genesis 12:09
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 24:62
- Joshua 03:14-16
- Numbers 13:17-20

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5045, H6160

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:29](#); [21:1](#))

## new moon

### Definition:

The term “new moon” refers to the moon when it looks like a small, crescent-shaped sliver of light. This is the beginning phase of the moon as it moves in its orbit around the planet Earth at sunset. It also refers to the first day a new moon should be visible after the moon has been dark for a few days.

- In ancient times, new moons marked the beginnings of certain time periods, such as months.
- The Israelites celebrated a new moon festival that was marked by the blowing of a ram’s horn.
- The Bible also refers to this time as the “beginning of the month.”

(See also: month, [earth](#), festival, horn, [sheep](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:31
- 1 Samuel 20:05
- 2 Kings 04:23-24
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Isaiah 01:12-13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2320, G3376, G3561

(Go back to: [Numbers 29:6](#))

## oath, swear, swearing, swear by

### Definition:

The term "oath" in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term "swear" means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word "swear" is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, [covenant](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:03
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 01:73
- Mark 06:26
- Matthew 05:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G332, G3660, G3727, G3728

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:19](#); [5:21](#); [11:12](#); [14:16](#); [14:23](#); [30:2](#); [30:13](#); [32:10](#); [32:11](#))



# oil

## Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:21
- Exodus 29:02
- Leviticus 05:11
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Mark 06:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

(Go back to: [Numbers 4:16](#); [18:12](#))

# olive

## Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 06:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 08:11
- James 03:12
- Luke 16:06
- Psalms 052:08

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G65, G1636, G1637, G2565

(Go back to: [Numbers 4:9](#); [4:16](#); [5:15](#); [15:4](#))

## ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

### Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: [command](#), decree, [law](#), ordain, [statute](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 08:31-33
- Malachi 03:6-7

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(Go back to: [Numbers 15:24](#); [29:6](#); [29:18](#); [29:21](#); [29:24](#); [29:27](#); [29:30](#); [29:33](#); [29:37](#); [35:24](#))

# palm

## Definition:

The term “palm” refers to a type of tall tree with long, flexible, leafy branches extending from the top in a fan-like pattern.

- The palm tree in the Bible usually refers to a type of palm tree that produces a fruit called a “date.” The leaves have a feather-like pattern.
- Palm trees typically grow in places that have a hot, humid climate. Their leaves stay green all year long.
- As Jesus was entering Jerusalem riding on a donkey, the people laid palm branches on the ground in front of him.
- Palm branches signified peace and the celebration of a victory.

(See also: [donkey](#), Jerusalem, [peace](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:29-30
- Ezekiel 40:14-16
- John 12:12-13
- Numbers 33:09

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3712, H8558, H8560, H8561, G5404

(Go back to: [Numbers 33:9](#))

# Passover

## Facts:

The “Passover” is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God “passed over” the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God “passed over” their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Passover” could be translated by combining the words “pass” and “over” or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:07
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:23
- Deuteronomy 16:02
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 06:21-22
- John 13:01
- Joshua 05:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 09:03

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:14** God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- **38:01** Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- **38:04** Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.
- **48:09** When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- **48:10** Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6453, G3957

(Go back to: [Numbers 9 General Notes](#); 9:2; 9:4; 9:5; 9:6; 9:12; 9:13; 9:14; [Notes](#); 33:3)

## peace, peaceful, peacemakers

### Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:26](#); [25:12](#))

## people of God

### Definition:

The concept of the “people of God” in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the "Church," meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the "sons of God" or "children of God."
- When God uses the phrase “my people,” he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God’s people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:02
- Acts 07:34
- Acts 07:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- Jeremiah 06:20-22
- Joel 03:16-17
- Micah 06:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H430, H5971, G2316, G2992

(Go back to: [Numbers 23 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

## people, people group,

### Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), world)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:07
- Deuteronomy 28:09
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 01:16

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere.”



- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God’s people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:03** He (Jesus) said, “Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**” and, “The fields are ripe for harvest!”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G1074, G1085, G1218, G1484, G2560, G2992, G3793

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:21; 5:27; 11:1; 11:2; 11:8; 11:10; 11:11; 11:12; 11:13; 11:14; 11:16; 11:17; 11:18; 11:21; 11:24; 11:29; 11:32; 11:33; 11:34; 11:35; 12:15; 12:16; 13:18; 13:28; 13:30; 13:31; 13:32; 14:1; 14:9; 14:11; 14:13; 14:14; 14:15; 14:16; 14:19; 14:39; 15:26; 15:30; 16:41; 16:47; 20:1; 20:3; 20:20; 21:2; 21:4; 21:5; 21:6; 21:7; 21:16; 21:18; 21:23; 21:29; 21:33; 21:34; 21:35; 22:3; 22:5; 22:6; 22:11; 22:12; 22:17; 22:41; 23:9; 23:24; 24:14; 25:1; 25:2; 25:4; 31:3; 31:32; 32:15; 33:14](#))

# perish

## Definition:

The term "perish" means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

## Spiritual Meaning of "Perish:"

- People who are "perishing" are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who "perish" will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God's punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When "perish" is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "be lost from God's people," "die eternally," "be punished in hell," or "be destroyed."
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean "die physically" or "cease to exist."

(See also: [death](#), everlasting)

## Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:23
- 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 049:18-20
- Zechariah 09:5-7
- Zechariah 13:08

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G1311, G2704, G4881, G5356

(Go back to: [Numbers 17:12](#); [21:29](#); [21:30](#); [33:52](#))

## possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

### Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:70
- 1 Kings 09:17-19
- Acts 02:45
- Deuteronomy 04:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H270, H272, H834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G1139, G2192, G2697, G2722, G2932, G2933, G2935, G4047, G5224, G5564

(Go back to: [Numbers 33:53](#))

## pray, prayer

### Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), forgive, praise)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:05** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:2](#); [11:12](#); [11:14](#); [11:21](#); [21:7](#); [22:30](#); [22:32](#))

## preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

### Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: good news, Jesus, kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 04:42
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 09:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:02** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:01** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:06** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

### Word Data:

- Strong's:
  - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G1229, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G4283
  - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:14](#); [8:7](#); [27:7](#); [27:8](#); [32:21](#); [33:8](#); [34:4](#))

## priest, priesthood

### Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), chief priests, high priest, mediator, [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 01:44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:04
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:06

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was

sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.

- **19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

(Go back to: [Numbers 3 General Notes](#); [3:3](#); [3:6](#); [3:32](#); [4:16](#); [4:28](#); [4:33](#); [5:8](#); [5:9](#); [5:10](#); [5:15](#); [5:16](#); [5:17](#); [5:18](#); [5:19](#); [5:21](#); [5:23](#); [5:25](#); [5:26](#); [5:30](#); [6:10](#); [6:11](#); [6:16](#); [6:17](#); [6:19](#); [6:20](#); [7:8](#); [10:8](#); [15:25](#); [15:28](#); [Notes](#); [16:37](#); [16:39](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [18:28](#); [19:3](#); [19:4](#); [19:6](#); [19:7](#); [25:7](#); [25:11](#); [26:1](#); [26:3](#); [26:63](#); [26:64](#); [27:2](#); [27:19](#); [27:21](#); [27:22](#); [31:6](#); [31:12](#); [31:13](#); [31:21](#); [31:26](#); [31:29](#); [31:31](#); [31:41](#); [31:51](#); [31:54](#); [32:2](#); [32:28](#); [33:38](#); [34:17](#); [35:25](#); [35:28](#); [35:32](#))



# prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

## Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

## Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: angel, authority, Christ, demon, [lord](#), power, ruler, Satan, Savior, [spirit](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 05:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 01:52

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H117, H324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G747, G758, G1413, G3175

(Go back to: [Numbers 7:3](#); [7:10](#); [10:4](#); [21:18](#); [22:8](#); [22:13](#); [22:14](#); [22:15](#); [22:21](#); [22:35](#); [23:6](#); [23:17](#); [27:2](#); [31:14](#); [31:48](#); [31:52](#); [31:54](#); [36:1](#))

## profane, profaned

### Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb to “profane” could be translated as to “treat as unholy” or to “be irreverent toward” or to “dishonor.”
- God told the Israelites that they “profaned” themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves “unclean” or “dishonored” by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective “profane” could be translated as “dishonoring” or “godless” or “unholy.”

(See also: defile, [holy](#), [clean](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:16-18
- Ezekiel 20:09
- Malachi 01:10-12
- Matthew 12:05
- Numbers 18:30-32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2455, H2490, H2491, H5234, H8610, G952, G953

(Go back to: [Numbers 25:1](#))

## promise, promised

### Definition:

When used as a verb, the term "promise" refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term "promise" refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
- To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:09
- James 01:12
- Numbers 30:02

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children." ⚡
- **03:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God's **promise**.
- **05:04** "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**."
- **08:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:01** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

(Go back to: [Numbers 30 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

## Promised Land

### Facts:

The term “Promised Land” only occurs in the Bible stories, not the Bible text. It is an alternate way of referring to the land of Canaan which God had promised to give to Abraham and his descendants.

- When Abram was living in the city of Ur, God commanded him to go live in the land of Canaan. He and his descendants, the Israelites, lived there for many years.
- When a severe famine caused there to be no food in Canaan, the Israelites moved to Egypt.
- Four hundred years later, God rescued the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and brought them back to Canaan again, the land God had promised to give them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Promised Land” can be translated as the “land that God said he would give to Abraham” or “land that God promised to Abraham” or “land God promised to his people” or “land of Canaan.”
- In the Bible text, this term occurs as some form of “the land God promised.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [promise](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 08:1-2
- Ezekiel 07:26-27

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:01** They (Israelites) were no longer slaves, and they were going to the **Promised Land**!
- **14:01** After God had told the Israelites the laws he wanted them to obey as part of his covenant with them, God began leading them from Mount Sinai toward the **Promised Land**, which was also called Canaan.
- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the **Promised Land** to their descendants, but now there were many people groups living there.
- **14:14** Then God led the people to the edge of the **Promised Land** again.
- **15:02** The Israelites had to cross the Jordan River to enter into the **Promised Land**.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the **Promised Land**.
- **20:09** This period of time when God’s people were forced to leave the **Promised Land** is called the Exile.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H776, H3068, H3423, H5159, H5414, H7650

(Go back to: [Introduction to Numbers](#); [Numbers 13 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

# prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

## Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, [false god](#), false prophet, fulfill, [law](#), vision)

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.

- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

(Go back to: [Numbers 11 General Notes](#); [11:25](#); [11:26](#); [11:29](#); [Notes](#); [12:6](#); [Notes](#))

## prosper, prosperity, prosperous

### Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well and can refer to prospering physically or spiritually. When people or a country are “prosperous,” it means they are wealthy and have all that they need to be successful. They are experiencing “prosperity.”

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: [bless](#), [fruit](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:06
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 001:3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965

(Go back to: [Numbers 14:41](#); [24:18](#); [31:9](#))

## prostitute, harlot, whored

### Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: adultery, [false god](#), sexual immorality, [false god](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 34:31
- Genesis 38:21
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 21:31

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G4204

(Go back to: [Numbers 15:39](#))



## prostrate, worship

### Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), praise, honor)

### Bible References:

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:07
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 02:08

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

(Go back to: [Numbers 22:31](#); [25:2](#))

## proud, pride, prideful

### Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: [arrogant](#), [humble](#), [joy](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 01:12
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 01:51

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G1391, G1392, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3173, G5187, G5229, G5243, G5244, G5308, G5309, G5426

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:5](#); [14:17](#))

## pure, purify, purification

### Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: [atonement](#), [clean](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:05
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- James 04:08
- Luke 02:22
- Revelation 14:04

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G48, G49, G53, G54, G1506, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514

(Go back to: [Numbers 8:6](#); [8:7](#); [8:15](#); [Notes](#); [19:12](#); [19:19](#); [31:23](#); [31:24](#))

## rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

### Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, governor)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **18:09** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **45:03** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G3893, G4955

(Go back to: [Numbers 14:9](#); [20:24](#); [27:14](#))

# rebuke

## Definition:

The term "rebuke" refers to correcting someone verbally, usually with sternness or force.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by "sternly correct" or "admonish."
- The phrase "a rebuke" could be translated by "a stern correction" or "a strong criticism."
- "Without rebuke" could be translated as "without admonishing" or "without criticism."

(See also admonish, disobey)

## Bible References:

- Mark 01:23-26
- Mark 16:14
- Matthew 08:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H4045, H4148, H8156, H8433, G1649, G1651, G1969, G2008, G3679

(Go back to: [Numbers 20:3](#))

## redeem, redeemer, redemption

### Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: free, ransom)

### Bible References:

- Colossians 01:13-14
- Ephesians 01:7-8
- Ephesians 05:16
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Galatians 04:05
- Luke 02:38
- Ruth 02:20

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G59, G629, G1805, G3084, G3085

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:8](#); [18:15](#); [18:16](#); [18:17](#); [35:12](#); [35:19](#); [35:21](#); [35:24](#); [35:25](#); [35:27](#))

## rest, rested, restless

### Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: remnant, [Sabbath](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 02:03
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G1981, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2681, G2838, G3062, G4520

(Go back to: [Numbers 10:33](#); [11:26](#))

## restore, restoration

### Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:10
- Acts 03:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 05:22
- Leviticus 06:5-7
- Luke 19:08
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 080:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:8](#); [8:25](#); [10:36](#); [14:3](#); [14:43](#); [17:10](#); [18:9](#); [22:34](#); [23:5](#); [23:16](#); [23:20](#); [25:11](#); [32:15](#); [32:18](#); [32:22](#); [35:28](#); [35:32](#))



# return

## Definition:

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: turn)

## Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:7](#); [11:4](#); [13:25](#); [13:26](#); [14:4](#); [14:36](#); [16:50](#); [22:8](#); [23:6](#); [24:25](#); [25:4](#); [33:7](#); [35:25](#))

# Reuben

## Facts:

Reuben was the firstborn son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- When his brothers were planning to kill their younger brother Joseph, Reuben spared Joseph's life by telling them to put him into a pit instead.
- Reuben came back later to rescue Joseph, but the other brothers had sold him as a slave to merchants passing by.
- Reuben's descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), Leah, twelve tribes of Israel)

## Bible References:

- Genesis 29:32
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 42:22
- Genesis 42:37

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H7205, H7206, G4502

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:20](#); [1:21](#); [2:10](#); [2:16](#); [7:30](#); [10:18](#); [13:4](#); [16:1](#); [26:5](#); [32:1](#); [32:2](#); [32:6](#); [32:25](#); [32:29](#); [32:31](#); [32:33](#); [32:37](#))

# Sabbath

## Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

## Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [rest](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 02:06
- Leviticus 19:03
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 02:27
- Matthew 12:02
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:05** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **26:02** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:03** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4868, H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

(Go back to: [Numbers 15:32](#); [Notes](#); [28:9](#); [28:10](#))

## sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

### sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.

### offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [drink offering](#), [false god](#), fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, [priest](#), sin offering, [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:06
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 05:23

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me.” Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.

- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:9](#); [6:17](#); [6:18](#); [7:13](#); [7:19](#); [7:25](#); [7:31](#); [7:37](#); [7:43](#); [7:49](#); [7:55](#); [7:61](#); [7:67](#); [7:73](#); [7:79](#); [7:88](#); [10:10](#); [15:3](#); [15:8](#); [15:19](#); [15:20](#); [15:21](#); [18:8](#); [18:11](#); [18:19](#); [18:24](#); [18:26](#); [18:27](#); [18:28](#); [18:29](#); [28:5](#); [31:29](#); [31:41](#))

# sanctuary

## Definition:

The term “sanctuary” literally means “holy place” and refers to a place that God has made sacred and holy. It also can refer to a place that provides protection and safety.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sanctuary” was often used to refer to the tabernacle or temple building where the “holy place” and “most holy place” were located.
- God referred to the sanctuary as the place where he lived among his people, the Israelites.
- He also called himself a “sanctuary” or safe place for his people where they can find protection.

## Translation Suggestions:

- This term has a basic meaning of “holy place” or “place that is set apart.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sanctuary” could be translated as “holy place” or “sacred building” or “God’s holy dwelling place” or “holy place of protection” or “sacred place of safety.”
- The phrase “shekel of the sanctuary” could be translated as “kind of shekel given for the tabernacle” or “shekel used in paying the tax to take care of the temple.”
- Note: Be careful that the translation of this term does not refer to a worship room in a modern-day church.

(See also: [holy](#), Holy Spirit, [holy](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), tax, [temple](#), )

## Bible References:

- Amos 07:13
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Ezekiel 25:03
- Hebrews 08:1-2
- Luke 11:49-51
- Numbers 18:01
- Psalms 078:69

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4720, H6944, G39

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:38](#); [10:21](#); [18:1](#))

## seed, semen

### Definition:

A "seed" is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term "seed" is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called "semen."
- Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a person's offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term "seed" to refer to the Word of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for "seed" that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word "descendant" or "descendants" instead of "seed." Some languages may have a word that means "children and grandchildren."
- For a man or woman's "seed," consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), offspring)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 01:11
- Jeremiah 02:21
- Matthew 13:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G4615, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:13](#); [5:28](#); [20:5](#))

## seek, search, look for

### Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), true)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:06
- Luke 11:09
- Psalms 027:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2052, G2212

(Go back to: [Numbers 16:10](#); [35:23](#))



## **servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women**

### **Definition:**

The term "serve" generally means to do work, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts. The term refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. In the Bible, any of the following people might be called a "servant:" a slave, a young female worker, a young male worker, someone who obeys God, and others. In biblical times, there was less of a difference between a "servant" and a "slave" than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of a household, and many servants were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- The term "serve" can also be translated as "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to "distribute food."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."

(See also: commit, enslave, household, [lord](#), obey, righteous, [covenant](#), law,)

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8

- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

### Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257
- (Serve) H327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402, G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:50](#); [3:31](#); [4:9](#); [4:12](#); [4:14](#); [4:35](#); [4:39](#); [4:43](#); [8:25](#); [8:26](#); [11:11](#); [11:27](#); [11:28](#); [12:7](#); [14:24](#); [18:21](#); [22:18](#); [22:22](#); [31:49](#); [32:5](#); [32:25](#); [32:27](#); [32:31](#))

## set apart

### Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), sanctify, [appoint](#))

### Bible References:

- Ephesians 03:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12
- Numbers 03:11-13
- Philippians 01:1-2
- Romans 01:01

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G873

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:11](#); [7:1](#); [8:14](#); [16:38](#); [20:12](#); [20:13](#); [27:14](#))

## shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

### Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

### Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, [rebuke](#), [false god](#), [humble](#), Isaiah, [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 03:07
- Genesis 34:07
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Psalms 022:06
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 09:05
- Proverbs 25:7-8

- Psalms 006:8-10
- Psalms 123:03
- 1 Timothy 05:7-8
- 1 Timothy 06:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H937, H954, H955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G149, G152, G153, G410, G422, G423, G808, G818, G819, G821, G1788, G1791, G1870, G2617, G3059, G3679, G3680, G3681, G3856, G5014, G5195, G5196, G5484

(Go back to: [Numbers 12:14](#))

## sign, proof, reminder

### Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- Signs can help people to remember a promise that God has made:
  - The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
  - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
  - In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will “confirm” his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
  - An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
  - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
  - The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
  - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), apostle, Christ, [covenant](#), circumcise)

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:18-19
- Exodus 04:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 01:14
- Genesis 09:12
- John 02:18
- Luke 02:12
- Mark 08:12
- Psalms 089:5-6

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G364, G880, G1213, G1229, G1718, G1730, G1732, G1770, G3902, G4102, G4591, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5280

(Go back to: [Numbers 14:22](#))

# silver

## Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:06
- Matthew 26:15

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:48](#); [3:49](#); [3:50](#); [3:51](#); [7:13](#); [7:19](#); [7:25](#); [7:31](#); [7:37](#); [7:43](#); [7:49](#); [7:55](#); [7:61](#); [7:67](#); [7:73](#); [7:79](#); [7:84](#); [7:85](#); [10:2](#); [18:16](#); [22:18](#); [24:13](#); [31:22](#))

## sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), [flesh](#), tax collector)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23



- Romans 08:04

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:6](#); [5:7](#); [6:11](#); [6:16](#); [8:7](#); [8:12](#); [8:21](#); [12:11](#); [14:40](#); [15:25](#); [15:27](#); [16:22](#); [16:26](#); [18:9](#); [19:9](#); [19:12](#); [19:13](#); [19:19](#); [19:20](#); [Notes](#); [21:7](#); [22:34](#); [28:22](#); [29:5](#); [29:11](#); [29:16](#); [29:19](#); [29:22](#); [29:25](#); [29:28](#); [29:31](#); [29:34](#); [29:38](#); [31:19](#); [31:20](#); [31:23](#); [Notes](#); [32:23](#))

## slaughter, slaughtered

### Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: angel, [cow](#), disobey, Ezekiel, [servant](#), slay)

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 07:01
- Isaiah 34:02
- Jeremiah 25:34

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G2871, G4967, G4969

(Go back to: [Numbers 14:16](#); [19:3](#))

## son

### Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- In the Bible, the phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person's father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: Azariah, [descendant](#), [ancestor](#), [firstborn](#), Son of God, sons of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians’ firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** “Is this the **son** of Joseph?” they said.

**Word Data:**

• Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

(Go back to: Numbers 1:2; 1:3; 1:5; 1:6; 1:7; 1:8; 1:9; 1:10; 1:11; 1:12; 1:13; 1:14; 1:15; 1:18; 1:20; 1:22; 1:24; 1:26; 1:28; 1:30; 1:32; 1:34; 1:36; 1:38; 1:40; 1:42; 1:45; 1:49; 1:52; 1:53; 1:54; 2:2; 2:3; 2:5; 2:7; 2:10; 2:12; 2:14; 2:18; 2:20; 2:22; 2:25; 2:27; 2:29; 2:32; 2:33; 2:34; 3:2; 3:3; 3:4; 3:8; 3:9; 3:10; 3:12; 3:15; 3:17; 3:18; 3:19; 3:20; 3:22; 3:24; 3:25; 3:28; 3:29; 3:30; 3:32; 3:34; 3:35; 3:36; 3:38; 3:39; 3:40; 3:41; 3:42; 3:43; 3:45; 3:46; 3:48; 3:50; 3:51; 4:2; 4:3; 4:4; 4:5; 4:15; 4:16; 4:19; 4:22; 4:23; 4:27; 4:28; 4:29; 4:30; 4:33; 4:34; 4:35; 4:38; 4:39; 4:41; 4:42; 4:43; 4:45; 4:47; 5:2; 5:4; 5:6; 5:9; 5:12; 6:2; 6:10; 6:12; 6:14; 6:23; 6:27; 7:7; 7:8; 7:9; 7:12; 7:15; 7:17; 7:18; 7:21; 7:23; 7:24; 7:27; 7:29; 7:30; 7:33; 7:35; 7:36; 7:39; 7:41; 7:42; 7:45; 7:47; 7:48; 7:51; 7:53; 7:54; 7:57; 7:59; 7:60; 7:63; 7:65; 7:66; 7:69; 7:71; 7:72; 7:75; 7:77; 7:78; 7:81; 7:83; 7:87; 7:88; 8:6; 8:8; 8:9; 8:10; 8:11; 8:13; 8:14; 8:16; 8:17; 8:18; 8:19; 8:20; 8:22; 8:24; 8:25; 9:2; 9:4; 9:5; 9:7; 9:10; 9:17; 9:18; 9:19; 9:22; 10:8; 10:12; 10:14; 10:15; 10:16; 10:17; 10:18; 10:19; 10:20; 10:22; 10:23; 10:24; 10:25; 10:26; 10:27; 10:28; 10:29; 11:4; 11:28; 13:2; 13:3; 13:4; 13:5; 13:6; 13:7; 13:8; 13:9; 13:10; 13:11; 13:12; 13:13; 13:14; 13:15; 13:16; 13:24; 13:26; 13:32; 13:33; 14:2; 14:5; 14:6; 14:7; 14:10; 14:18; 14:27; 14:29; 14:30; 14:33; 14:38; 14:39; 15:2; 15:8; 15:9; 15:18; 15:24; 15:25; 15:26; 15:29; 15:32; 15:38; 16:1; 16:2; 16:7; 16:8; 16:10; 16:12; 16:27; 16:37; 16:38; 16:40; 16:41; 17:2; 17:5; 17:6; 17:9; 17:10; 17:12; 18:1; 18:2; 18:5; 18:6; 18:7; 18:8; 18:9; 18:11; 18:16; 18:19; 18:20; 18:21; 18:22; 18:23; 18:24; 18:26; 18:28; 18:32; 19:2; 19:9; 19:10; 20:1; 20:12; 20:13; 20:19; 20:22; 20:24; 20:25; 20:26; 20:28; 21:10; 21:24; 21:29; 21:35; 22:1; 22:2; 22:3; 22:4; 22:5; 22:10; 22:16; 23:18; 23:19; 24:3; 24:15; 24:17; 25:6; 25:7; 25:8; 25:11; 25:13; 25:14; 26:1; 26:2; 26:4; 26:5; 26:8; 26:9; 26:11; 26:12; 26:15; 26:18; 26:19; 26:20; 26:21; 26:23; 26:26; 26:28; 26:29; 26:30; 26:33; 26:35; 26:36; 26:37; 26:38; 26:40; 26:41; 26:42; 26:44; 26:45; 26:47; 26:48; 26:51; 26:62; 26:63; 26:64; 26:65; 27:1; 27:3; 27:4; 27:8; 27:11; 27:12; 27:18; 27:20; 27:21; 28:2; 28:3; 28:9; 28:11; 28:19; 28:27; 29:2; 29:8; 29:13; 29:17; 29:20; 29:23; 29:26; 29:29; 29:32; 29:36; 29:40; 30:1; 31:2; 31:6; 31:8; 31:9; 31:12; 31:16; 31:30; 31:42; 31:47; 31:54; 32:1; 32:2; 32:6; 32:7; 32:9; 32:11; 32:12; 32:17; 32:18; 32:25; 32:28; 32:29; 32:31; 32:33; 32:34; 32:37; 32:39; 32:40; 32:41; 33:1; 33:3; 33:5; 33:38; 33:39; 33:40; 33:51; 34:2; 34:13; 34:14; 34:17; 34:19; 34:20; 34:21; 34:22; 34:23; 34:24; 34:25; 34:26; 34:27; 34:28; 34:29; 35:2; 35:8; 35:10; 35:15; 35:34; 36:1; 36:2; 36:3; 36:4; 36:5; 36:7; 36:8; 36:9; 36:11; 36:12; 36:13)

## spear, spearmen

### Definition:

A spear is a weapon with a long wooden handle and sharp metal blade on one end that is thrown a long distance.

- Spears were commonly used for war in biblical times. They are sometimes still used in present-day conflicts between certain people groups.
- A spear was used by a Roman soldier to pierce the side of Jesus while he hung on the cross.
- Sometimes people throw spears to catch fish or other prey to eat.
- Similar weapons are the "javelin" or "lance."
- Make sure that the translation of "spear" is different from the translation of "sword," which is a weapon that is used for thrusting or stabbing, not throwing. Also, a sword has a long blade with a handle, while a spear has a small blade on the end of a long shaft.

(See also: prey, Rome, [sword](#), warrior)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 13:19-21
- 2 Samuel 21:19
- Nehemiah 04:12-14
- Psalm 035:03

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1265, H2595, H3591, H6767, H7013, H7420, G3057

(Go back to: [Numbers 25:7](#))

## spirit, spiritual

### Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings, which give nourishment to a person’s spirit, and “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: angel, demon, Holy Spirit, soul)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:14](#); [5:30](#); [Notes](#); [11:29](#); [11:31](#); [14:24](#); [24:2](#); [27:18](#))

## statute

### Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), decree, [law](#), [ordinance](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 06:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:02

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H2708, H7010, G1345

(Go back to: [Numbers 15:16](#); [30:16](#))



## strength, strengthen, strong

### Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

### Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
  - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
  - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
  - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
  - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
  - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
  - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
  - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
  - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
  - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
  - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
  - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), persevere, right hand, save)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 021:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633, G461, G950, G1411, G1412, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1991, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G3756, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:31](#); [14:13](#); [14:17](#); [20:20](#))

## sword, swordsmen

### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

### Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), [tongue](#), word of God)

### Bible References:

- Acts 12:02
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 02:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 01:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

(Go back to: [Numbers 14:3](#); [14:43](#); [19:16](#); [20:18](#); [21:24](#); [22:23](#); [22:29](#); [22:31](#); [31:8](#))

# tabernacle

## Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take the tabernacle apart and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when the temple was built in Jerusalem by Solomon.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The word “tabernacle” means “dwelling place.” Other ways to translate it could include, “sacred tent” or “tent where God was” or “God’s tent.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “temple.”

(See also: [altar](#), altar of incense, ark of the covenant, [temple](#), tent of meeting)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:30
- 2 Chronicles 01:2-5
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 07:45
- Exodus 38:21
- Joshua 22:19-20
- Leviticus 10:16-18

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H168, H4908, H5520, H5521, H5522, H7900, G4633, G4634, G4636, G4638

(Go back to: [Numbers 4 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

## temple

### Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), Solomon, Babylon, Holy Spirit, [tabernacle](#), courtyard, Zion, [house](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 03:02
- Acts 03:08
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 079:1-3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:06** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:04** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:07** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3485

(Go back to: [Numbers 18:11](#); [18:13](#); [30:3](#))

## test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

### Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: tempt)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 04:01
- 1 Thessalonians 05:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:01
- Isaiah 07:13
- James 01:12
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Malachi 03:10
- Philippians 01:10
- Psalm 026:02

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1242, G1263, G1303, G1382, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3984, G4303, G4451, G4828, G6020

(Go back to: [Numbers 13 General Notes](#))

## testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

### Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, [judge](#), [prophet](#), [testimony](#), true)

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 06:03
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 01:44
- John 01:07



- John 03:33
- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 07:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 01:09
- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Timothy 05:19-20
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- 1 John 05:6-8
- 3 John 01:12
- Revelation 12:11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:07** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

(Go back to: [Numbers 35:30](#))

# thresh

## Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating grain from the rest of the plant.

- Threshing a crop loosens the grain from the stalk. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the seed from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: [chaff](#), [grain](#), [winnow](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:07
- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Daniel 02:35
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Ruth 03:1-2

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, G248

(Go back to: [Numbers 15:20](#); [18:27](#); [18:30](#))

## to minister, ministry

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “ministry” refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of “ministering” to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to “minister” could also be translated as to “serve” or to “care for” or to “meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to “serve” or to “work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: [serve](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 06:04
- Acts 21:17-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G1247, G1248, G1249, G2023, G2038, G2418, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3930, G5256, G5257, G5524

(Go back to: [Numbers 7:2](#))

## tongue, language

### Definition:

The term "tongue" refers to the organ inside a person's mouth that is used to speak. The term is often used figuratively to mean "language" or "speaking." There also several other figurative meanings as well.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is "language" or "speech."
- Sometimes "tongue" may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the "gifts of the Spirit."
- In the book of Acts, the expression "tongues" of fire refers to "flames" of fire, presumably shaped like tongues.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "tongue" can be translated as "language" or "supernatural language." If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as "language."
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as "flames."
- The expression "my tongue rejoices" could be translated as "I rejoice and praise God" or "I am joyfully praising God."
- The phrase, "tongue that lies" could be translated as "person who tell lies" or "people who lie."
- Phrases such as "with their tongues" could be translated as "with what they say" or "by their words."

(See also: gift, Holy Spirit, [joy](#), praise, [rejoice](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 03:18
- 2 Samuel 23:02
- Acts 02:26
- Ezekiel 36:03
- Philippians 02:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3956, G1100, G1258, G2084

(Go back to: [Numbers 30:14](#))

## transgress, transgression

### Definition:

The term “transgress” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. The term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a command, rule, or moral code.

- This term is very similar to the word “trespass,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against God than against other people.
- To “transgress” can also be described as to “cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “transgress” could be translated as to “sin” or to “disobey” or to “rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: [parallelism](#))

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), trespass, [iniquity](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 04:06
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Galatians 03:19-20
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 032:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G458, G459, G3845, G3847, G3848, G3928

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:6](#); [5:12](#); [5:27](#); [31:16](#))

## tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#), [nation](#), [people group](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 02:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:4; 1:21; 1:23; 1:25; 1:27; 1:29; 1:31; 1:33; 1:35; 1:37; 1:39; 1:41; 1:43; 1:47; 4:18; 7:12; 13:2; 13:4; 13:5; 13:6; 13:7; 13:8; 13:9; 13:10; 13:11; 13:12; 13:13; 13:14; 13:15; 18:2; 24:2; 24:17; 31:4; 31:5; 31:6; 32:33; 33:54; 34:19; 34:21; 34:23; 36:3; 36:9](#))

# trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship

## Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

## Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), persecute)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:06
- Matthew 26:36-38

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H205, H926, H927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G387, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2873, G3636, G3926, G3930, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5182

(Go back to: [Numbers 20:14](#))

## trumpet, trumpeters

### Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel's public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: angel, [assembly](#), [earth](#), horn, [Israel](#), [wrath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 09:13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:19
- Matthew 06:02
- Matthew 24:31

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G4536, G4537, G4538

(Go back to: [Numbers 10:8](#); [10:9](#); [10:10](#))



## trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

### Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: believe, confidence, [faith](#), [faithful](#), true)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 1 Timothy 04:09
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 031:05
- Titus 03:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:02** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:06** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

(Go back to: [Numbers 21 General Notes](#))

## unleavened bread

### Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#), [Egypt](#), [feast](#), [Passover](#), [servant](#), [sin](#), yeast)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:03
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 06:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 06:21
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Luke 22:01

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G106

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:15](#); [6:19](#); [9:11](#); [28:17](#))

# **vine**

## **Definition:**

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [vineyard](#))

## **Bible References:**

- Genesis 40:09
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:01
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:03
- Matthew 21:35-37

## **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G288, G290, G1009, G1092

(Go back to: [Numbers 20:5](#))

# **vineyard**

## **Definition:**

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [vine](#))

## **Bible References:**

- Genesis 09:20-21
- Luke 13:06
- Luke 20:15
- Matthew 20:02
- Matthew 21:40-41

## **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G290

([Go back to: Numbers 16:14](#))

## voice

### Definition:

The term "voice" refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

### Translation Suggestions

- The expression "to hear someone's voice" can mean either "to hear someone speaking" or "to heed what someone says."
- The Bible describes God as "speaking" and having a "voice," even though God doesn't have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term "voice" sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: "A voice is heard in the desert saying, 'Prepare the way of the Lord.'" This could be translated as "A person is heard calling out in the desert...." (See: [synecdoche](#))
- However, sometimes the word "voice" is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a "voice" that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: [metaphor](#))

(See also: [call](#), [proclaim](#), [splendor](#).)

### Bible References:

- John 05:36-38
- Luke 01:42
- Luke 09:35
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 12:19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456

(Go back to: [Numbers 14:22](#); [21:3](#))

## VOW

### Definition:

A "vow" is a solemn promise or oath that a person makes to God.

- If a person in ancient Israel made a vow to God, that person was obligated to fulfill the vow. The ancient Israelites believed that God might punish a person who did not fulfill a vow that he made.
- In ancient Israel, sometimes a person would ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow. However, the ancient Israelites did not believe that God was obligated to fulfill these requests.
- Depending on the context, the term "vow" can be translated as "solemn promise" or "solemn oath" or "promise made to God."

(See also: [promise](#), [oath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 07:27-28
- Acts 21:23
- Genesis 28:21
- Genesis 31:12-13
- Jonah 01:14-16
- Jonah 02:9-10
- Proverbs 07:14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5087, H5088, G2171

(Go back to: [Numbers 6 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

## walk, walked

### Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, honor)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Kings 02:04
- Colossians 02:07
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 17:01
- Isaiah 02:05
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 04:02

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G1704, G4043, G4198, G4748

(Go back to: [Numbers 10:29](#); [10:30](#); [10:32](#); [14:14](#); [20:17](#); [21:22](#); [22:6](#); [22:11](#); [22:12](#); [22:13](#); [22:14](#); [22:20](#); [22:22](#); [22:35](#); [22:37](#); [23:7](#); [23:13](#); [23:27](#); [24:1](#); [24:14](#); [24:25](#); [32:41](#); [32:42](#))

## watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

### Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:06
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G991, G1127, G1492, G2334, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5438

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:28](#); [3:32](#); [3:38](#); [9:23](#); [18:7](#); [23:12](#); [28:2](#); [31:30](#); [31:47](#))



## wine, wineskin, new wine

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), winepress)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:23
- Genesis 09:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 02:3-5
- John 02:10
- Matthew 09:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:3](#); [6:4](#); [6:20](#); [15:5](#); [15:7](#); [15:10](#); [18:12](#); [28:14](#))

## winnow, sift

### Definition:

The terms “winnow” and “sift” mean to separate grain from unwanted materials. In the Bible, both words can also be used to refer to separating or dividing people.

- To “winnow” means to separate grain from the unwanted parts of the plant by tossing both the grain and chaff into the air, allowing the wind to blow the chaff away.
- The word “sift” refers to shaking the winnowed grain in a sieve to get rid of any remaining unwanted materials, such as dirt or stones.
- In the Old Testament, “winnow” and “sift” are used figuratively to describe hardship that separates the righteous people from the unrighteous people.
- Jesus also used the term “sift” in this figurative way when he was telling Simon Peter about how he and the other disciples would be tested in their faith.
- To translate these terms, use the words or phrases in the project language that refer to these activities; possible translations might be “shaking” or “fanning.” If winnowing or sifting are not known, then these terms could be translated by a term that refers to a different method of separating grain from chaff or dirt, or by describing this process.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: chaff, [grain](#))

### Bible References:

- Isaiah 21:10
- Luke 22:31
- Matthew 03:12
- Proverbs 20:08
- Ruth 03:02

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2219, H5128, H5130, G4425, G4617

(Go back to: [Numbers 16:37](#))

## wrath, fury

### Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- Luke 03:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 03:07
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 01:18
- Romans 05:09

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G2372, G3709, G3949, G3950

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:33](#); [25:11](#))

# Yahweh

## Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, “to be.”

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.

## Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [Lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:07
- Daniel 09:03
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 02:04
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:04
- Isaiah 38:08
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 01:09
- Lamentations 01:05
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 03:04
- Micah 02:05
- Micah 06:05
- Numbers 08:11

- Psalm 124:03
- Ruth 01:21
- Zechariah 14:5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:05** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

(Go back to: Numbers 1:1; 1:19; 1:48; 1:54; 2:1; 2:33; 2:34; 3:1; 3:4; 3:5; 3:11; 3:13; 3:14; 3:16; 3:39; 3:40; 3:41; 3:42; 3:44; 3:45; 3:51; 4:1; 4:17; 4:21; 4:37; 4:41; 4:45; 4:49; 5:1; 5:4; 5:5; 5:6; 5:8; 5:11; 5:16; 5:18; 5:21; 5:25; 5:30; 6:1; 6:2; 6:5; 6:6; 6:8; 6:12; 6:14; 6:16; 6:17; 6:20; 6:21; 6:22; 6:24; 6:25; 6:26; 7:3; 7:4; 7:11; 8:1; 8:3; 8:4; 8:5; 8:10; 8:11; 8:12; 8:13; 8:20; 8:21; 8:22; 8:23; 9:1; 9:5; 9:7; 9:8; 9:9; 9:10; 9:13; 9:14; 9:18; 9:19; 9:20; 9:23; 10:1; 10:9; 10:10; 10:13; 10:29; 10:32; 10:33; 10:34; 10:35; 10:36; 11:1; 11:2; 11:3; 11:10; 11:11; 11:16; 11:18; 11:20; 11:23; 11:24; 11:25; 11:29; 11:31; 11:33; 12:2; 12:4; 12:5; 12:6; 12:8; 12:9; 12:13; 12:14; 13:1; 13:3; 14:3; 14:8; 14:9; 14:10; 14:11; 14:13; 14:14; 14:16; 14:18; 14:20; 14:21; 14:26; 14:28; 14:35; 14:37; 14:40; 14:41; 14:42; 14:43; 14:44; 15:1; 15:3; 15:4; 15:7; 15:8; 15:10; 15:13; 15:14; 15:15; 15:17; 15:19; 15:21; 15:22; 15:23; 15:24; 15:25; 15:28; 15:30; 15:31; 15:35; 15:36; 15:37; 15:39; 15:41; 16:3; 16:5; 16:7; 16:9; 16:11; 16:15; 16:16; 16:17; 16:19; 16:20; 16:23; 16:28; 16:29; 16:30; 16:35; 16:36; 16:38; 16:40; 16:41; 16:42; 16:44; 16:46; 17:1; 17:7; 17:9; 17:10; 17:11; 17:13; 18:1; 18:6; 18:8; 18:12; 18:13; 18:15; 18:17; 18:19; 18:20; 18:24; 18:25; 18:26; 18:28; 18:29; 19:1; 19:2; 19:13; 19:20; 20:3; 20:4; 20:6; 20:7; 20:9; 20:12; 20:13; 20:16; 20:23; 20:27; 21:2; 21:3; 21:6; 21:7; 21:8; 21:14; 21:16; 21:34; 22:8; 22:13; 22:18; 22:19; 22:22; 22:23; 22:24; 22:25; 22:26; 22:27; 22:28; 22:31; 22:32; 22:34; 22:35; 23:3; 23:5; 23:8; 23:12; 23:16; 23:17; 23:21; 23:26; 24:1; 24:6; 24:11; 24:13; 25:3; 25:4; 25:10; 25:16; 26:1; 26:4; 26:9; 26:52; 26:61; 26:65; 27:3; 27:5; 27:6; 27:11; 27:12; 27:15; 27:16; 27:17; 27:18; 27:21; 27:22; 27:23; 28:1; 28:3; 28:6; 28:7; 28:8; 28:11; 28:13; 28:15; 28:16; 28:19; 28:24; 28:26; 28:27; 29:2; 29:6; 29:8; 29:12; 29:13; 29:36; 29:39; 29:40; 30:1; 30:2; 30:3; 30:5; 30:8; 30:12; 30:16; 31:1; 31:3; 31:7; 31:16; 31:21; 31:25; 31:28; 31:29; 31:30; 31:31; 31:37; 31:38; 31:39; 31:40; 31:41; 31:47; 31:50; 31:52; 31:54; 32:4; 32:7; 32:9; 32:10; 32:12; 32:13; 32:14; 32:20; 32:21; 32:22; 32:23; 32:27; 32:29; 32:31; 32:32; 33:2; 33:4; 33:38; 33:50; 34:1; 34:13; 34:16; 34:29; 35:1; 35:9; 35:34; 36:2; 36:5; 36:6; 36:10; 36:13)

## zeal, zealous

### Definition:

The terms “zeal” and “zealous” refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The “zeal of the Lord” or the “zeal of Yahweh” refers to God’s strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “be zealous” could also be translated by, “be strongly diligent” or “make an intense effort.”
- The term “zeal” could also be translated as “energetic devotion” or “eager determination” or “righteous enthusiasm.”
- The phrase, “zeal for your house” could be translated, “strongly honoring your temple” or “fervent desire to take care of your house.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:31
- 1 Kings 19:9-10
- Acts 22:03
- Galatians 04:17
- Isaiah 63:15
- John 02:17-19
- Philippians 03:06
- Romans 10:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7068, G2205, G2206, G2207, G6041

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:14](#); [5:30](#))

# Contributors

## unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki  
Cheryl Stieben  
Cheryl Warren  
Christian Berry  
Christine Harrison  
Clairmene Pascal  
Connie Bryan  
Connie Goss  
Craig Balden  
Craig Lins  
Craig Scott  
Cynthia J Puckett  
Dale Hahs  
Dale Masser  
Daniel Lauk  
Daniel Summers  
Darlene M Hopkins  
Darlene Silas  
David Boerschlein  
David F Withee  
David Glover  
David J Forbes  
David Mullen  
David N Hanley  
David Sandlin  
David Shortess  
David Smith  
David Whisler  
Debbie Nispel  
Debbie Piper  
Deborah Bartow  
Deborah Bush  
Deborah Miniard  
Dennis Jackson  
Dianne Forrest  
Donna Borkenhagen  
Donna Mullis  
Douglas Hayes  
Drew Curley  
Ed Davis  
Edgar Navera  
Edward Kosky  
Edward Quigley  
Elaine VanRegenmorter  
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas  
Ellen Lee  
Emeline Thermidor  
Emily Lee  
Esther Roman  
Esther Trew  
Esther Zirk  
Ethel Lynn Baker  
Evangeline Puen  
Evelyn Wildgust  
Fletcher Coleman



Freda Dibble  
Gail Spell  
Gary Greer  
Gary Shogren  
Gay Ellen Stulp  
Gene Gossman  
George Arlyn Briggs  
Gerald L. Naughton  
Glen Tallent  
Grace Balwit  
Grace Bird  
Greg Stoffregen  
Gretchen Stencil  
Hallie Miller  
Harry Harriss  
Heather Hicks  
Helen Morse  
Hendrik deVries  
Henry Bult  
Henry Whitney  
Hilary O'Sullivan  
Ibrahim Audu  
Ines Gipson  
Irene J Dodson  
Jackie Jones  
Jacqueline Bartley  
James Giddens  
James Pedersen  
James Pohlig  
James Roe  
Janet O'Herron  
Janice Connor  
Jaqueline Rotruck  
Jeanette Friesen  
Jeff Graf  
Jeff Kennedy  
Jeff Martin  
Jennifer Cunneen  
Jenny Thomas  
Jerry Lund  
Jessica Lauk  
Jim Frederick  
Jim Lee  
Jimmy Warren  
Jim Rotruck  
Jim Swartzentruber  
Jody Garcia  
Joe Chater  
Joel Bryan  
Joey Howell  
John Anderson  
John Geddis  
John D Rogers  
John Hutchins  
John Luton

John Pace  
John P Tornifolio  
Jolene Valeu  
Jon Haahr  
Joseph Fithian  
Joseph Greene  
Joseph Wharton  
Joshua Berkowitz  
Joshua Calhoun  
Joshua Rister  
Josh Wondra  
Joy Anderson  
Joyce Jacobs  
Joyce Pedersen  
JT Crowder  
Judi Brodeen  
Judith Cline  
Judith C Yon  
Julia N Bult  
Patty Li  
Julie Susanto  
Kahar Barat  
Kannah Sellers  
Kara Anderson  
Karen Davie  
Karen Dreesen  
Karen Fabean  
Karen Riecks  
Karen Smith  
Karen Turner  
Kathleen Glover  
Kathryn Hendrix  
Kathy Mentink  
Katrina Geurink  
Kay Myers  
Kelly Strong  
Ken Haugh  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Kristin Butts Page  
Kristin Rinne  
Kwesi Opoku-debrah  
Langston Spell  
Larry Sallee  
Lawrence Lipe  
Lee Sipe  
Leonard Smith  
Lester Harper  
Lia Hadley  
Linda Buckman  
Linda Dale Barton  
Linda Havemeier  
Linda Homer  
Linda Lee Sebastien  
Linn Peterson  
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box  
Luis Keelin  
Madeline Kilmore  
Maggie D Paul  
Marc Nelson  
Mardi Welo  
Margo Hoffman  
Marilyn Cook  
Marjean Swann  
Marjorie Francis  
Mark Albertini  
Mark Chapman  
Mark Thomas  
Marselene Norton  
Mary Jane Davis  
Mary Jean Stout  
Mary Landon  
Mary Scarborough  
Megan Kidwell  
Melissa Roe  
Merton Dibble  
Meseret Abraham-Zemedet  
Michael Bush  
Michael Connor  
Michael Francis  
Michael Geurink  
Mike Tisdell  
Mickey White  
Miel Horrilleno  
Monique Greer  
Morgan Mellette  
Morris Anderson  
Nancy C. Naughton  
Nancy Neu  
Nancy VanCott  
Neal Snook  
Nicholas Scovil  
Nick Dettman  
Nils Friberg  
Noah Crabtree  
Pamela B Johnston  
Pamela Nungesser  
Pamela Roberts  
Pam Gullifer  
Pat Ankney  
Pat Giddens  
Patricia Brougher  
Patricia Carson  
Patricia Cleveland  
Patricia Foster  
Patricia Middlebrooks  
Paul Mellema  
Paula Carlson  
Paula Oestreich  
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser  
Peggy Anderson  
Peggyrose Swartzentruber  
Peter Polloni  
Phillip Harms  
Phyllis Mortensen  
Priscilla Enggren  
Rachel Agheyisi  
Rachel Ropp  
Raif Turner  
Ray Puen  
Reina Y Mora  
Rene Bahrenfuss  
Renee Triplett  
Rhonda Bartels  
Richard Beatty  
Richard Moreau  
Richard Rutter  
Richard Stevens  
Rick Keaton  
Robby Little  
Robert W Johnson  
Rochelle Hook  
Rodney White  
Rolaine Franz  
Ronald D Hook  
Rosario Baria  
Roxann Carey  
Roxanne Pittard  
Ruben Michael Garay  
Russell Isham  
Russ Perry  
Ruth Calo  
Ruth E Withee  
Ruth Montgomery  
Ryan Blizek  
Sam Todd  
Samuel Njuguna  
Sandy Anderson  
Sandy Blanes  
Sara Giesmann  
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)  
Sharon Johnson  
Sharon Peterson  
Sharon Shortess  
Shelly Harms  
Sherie Nelson  
Sherman Sebastien  
Sherry Mosher  
Stacey Swanson  
Steve Gibbs  
Steve Mercier  
Susan Langohr  
Susan Quigley  
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards  
Sylvia Thomas  
Sze Suze Lau  
Tabitha Price  
Tammy L Enns  
Tammy White  
Teresa Everett-Leone  
Teresa Linn  
Terri Collins  
Theresa Baker  
Thomas Jopling  
Thomas Nickell  
Thomas Warren  
Tim Coleman  
Tim Ingram  
Tim Linn  
Tim Lovestrand  
Tim Mentink  
Tom Penry  
Tom William Warren  
Toni Shuma  
Tracie Pogue  
Tricia Coffman  
Vicki Ivester  
Victoria G DeKraker  
Victor M Prieto  
Vivian Kamph  
Vivian Richardson  
Ward Pyles  
Warren Blaisdell  
Wayne Homer  
Wendy Coleman  
Wendy Colon  
Wilbur Zirk  
Wil Gipson  
William Carson  
William Cline  
William Dickerson  
William Smitherman  
William Wilder  
Yvonne Tallent

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors**

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
David Trombold, M. Div.  
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
David Trombold  
Dean Ropp  
Gene Mullen  
James Vigen  
Leonard Smith  
Nicholas Alsop  
Michael Francis  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors**

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
David Trombold, M. Div.  
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
David Trombold  
Dean Ropp  
Gene Mullen  
James Vigen  
Leonard Smith  
Nicholas Alsop  
Michael Francis  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors**

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages

Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology  
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics  
Bev Staley  
Carol Brinneman  
Jody Garcia  
Kara Anderson  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Lizz Carlton  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors**

Andrew Belcher  
David Book  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Lizz Carlton  
Jan Zanutto  
Matthew Latham  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Richard Joki  
Door43 World Missions Community